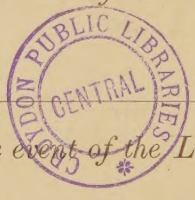
This Volume is presented *by the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury*

to _____

and will, in the event of the Library being broken up, be returned to the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Westminster.



W., 10,000—20/9/98.

Return to R. A.L.G.

Croydon Public Libraries.

Central Reference Library.

T

Accession No. 5417 Class No. 942.03

Besides the class topic, other topics treated of in this book are as follows:—

Topic No.	Pages.	Topic No.	Pages.

BROMLEY LIBRARIES
3 0128 01796 9380

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES CENTRAL

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

RADULPHI DE COGGESHALL CHRONICON ANGLICANUM.

RADULPHI DE COGGESHALL CHRONICON ANGLICANUM.

RADULPHI DE COGGESHALL CHRONICON ANGLICANUM,

DE EXPUGNATIONE TERRÆ SANCTÆ LIBELLUS,

THOMAS AGNELLUS DE MORTE ET SEPULTURA HENRICI REGIS ANGLIÆ JUNIORIS,

GESTA FULCONIS FILII WARINI,

EXCERPTA EX OTIIS IMPERIALIBUS GERVASII TILEBURIENSIS.

EX CODICIBUS MANUSCRIPTIS

EDIDIT

JOSEPHUS STEVENSON.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMAN & Co., PATERNOSTER ROW; TRÜBNER & Co., LUDGATE HILL:
ALSO BY PARKER & Co., OXFORD;
MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE;
A. & C. BLACK, EDINBURGH; AND A. THOM, DUBLIN.

1875.

CR 5417
9r 1914

BROMLEY PUBLIC LIBRARIES
AL
LS
CLASS
L65 4
ACC.
01796 9380
[942.

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Radulphi de Coggeshall Chronicon Anglicanum -	1
De Expugnatione Terræ Sanctæ per Saladinum Libellus - - - - - - -	209
Magistri Thomæ Agnelli, Wellensis Archidiaconi, Sermo de Morte et Sepultura Henrici Regis Junioris - - - - - - -	263
The Legend of Fulco Fitz-warin - - -	275
Excerpta ex Otiis Imperialibus Gervasii Tileburiensis - - - - - - -	419

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

AMONG the several religious institutions which sprung into existence during the remarkable revival of the spiritual life which distinguished the eleventh century, a prominent place must be assigned to the Order of the Reformed Benedictines of Citeaux, founded in 1098 by Robert, abbot of Molesme, under the protection of Eudo, duke of Burgundy. In France, the country of its birth, its reputation was at once confirmed and extended by the virtue, the learning, and the eloquence of its noblest representative, S. Bernard, "the last of the Fathers." Thence crossing over into England it made for itself a new home, leaving behind it for our admiration traces of its former splendour in the ruined abbeys of Melrose, Fountains, and Rievaulx in the north, of Tintern in the west, and Netley in the south of our island. From the date of its arrival among us, under the patronage of Stephen of Blois, such was the welcome which it received from the devotion and the liberality of our countrymen, that within the limited space of three years no less than 18[1] establishments were founded, endowed, and peopled in England. Of these the fifth in order of time was the abbey of Coggeshall, which never attained an important position in the history of the Order,[2] but which nevertheless is worthy of memory from the Chronicle for which we are

[1] See Manrique, Annals Cisterciensis, i. 302; ii. 90, 106, 123, fol. Lugd. 1642.

[2] According to Speed's valuation, its revenues, at the time of the suppression of the Religious Houses, amounted only to 298*l.* 8*s.* of annual income.

indebted to the industry of its inmates. According to the usual custom of such establishments, a record was kept of the foundation of the church, of its dedication, of its growth, and of its fortunes, for good or for evil. But inasmuch as the house, regarded individually, was only one of a great and widespread community, the history of each sister monastery of the same Order excited the sympathy and claimed the notice of the chronicler. In process of time the work extended yet further; the monk deputed by his brethren to chronicle the events of the house noted down such matter, external to his own monastery, as appeared to him to be of interest or importance; events which took place in his own immediate neighbourhood, which were connected with its benefactors, which affected its property, or which in any other way excited his curiosity by their unfrequency or their importance; all these were carefully recorded. The narrative thus compiled rather than constructed, varied of necessity in its general character in proportion to the ambition and the opportunities of the chronicler; and we cannot wonder if as the pen passed from one hand to another the record of successive events which it has preserved to us is at one period dull, barren, and lifeless, while at another it is vigorous, vivid, and replete with observation.

The Chronicle of Coggeshall here printed is constructed upon this simple basis, and its contents may conveniently be arranged with sufficient precision under one or other of the three following heads:—

I. Events which affect more or less immediately the general history of the whole Cistercian Order.

II. Events connected directly or indirectly with the locality within which the abbey of Coggeshall was founded.

III. Events which, from their general importance or singularity, attracted the notice of the author, and appeared to him to be worthy of being recorded.

Upon each of these three classes a few remarks become necessary:—

I. The basis and framework of the Chronicle is of the simplest and most inartistic character. At first it aims only at recording the fortunes of this new offshoot from the great Order of S. Benedict. Hence the notices of S. Bernard,[1] of S. Malachi, archbishop of Armagh,[2] remarkable from his connexion with Clairvaulx; of Louis VII. king of France, because he was the founder of a Cistercian monastery, in which he was buried[3]; of the succession of Baldwin, bishop of Worcester, to the archbishoprick of Canterbury, because he was of the same Order as the Chronicler[4]; and of incidents which happened at Soine in Denmark, and at Morimond in France, both of which were daughters of Citeaux.[5] The history of Joachim, the enthusiast of Calabria, is recounted with a minuteness of detail which might seem inexplicable,[6] but from the fact of his being a Cistercian. Of more moment, but pointing in the same direction, is the minute and interesting account here given of the strife between the Order and king John, which was appeased by the intervention of archbishop Hubert; an act which induced the monk of Coggeshall to insert in his history the touching and picturesque circumstances which attended the death of that prelate a few years afterwards.[7] Hence also the origin of the narratives about Fulco of Neuilly, Maistro Reiner, the bishop of Palestrina, and the abbot of Flavigny,[8] which derive their interest solely from their connexion with the Cistercian Order. Various other notices of a similar character occur from time to time, and will not fail to attract the notice of the reader.

II. By an easy transition, the thoughts of the Chronicler passed from the general interests of the mother

[1] A.D. 1113, 1153.
[2] A.D. 1148.
[3] A.D. 1181.
[4] A.D. 1184.
[5] See p. 36, and Manrique, Annal. A.D. 1115, c. 3. § 1. and 1148, c. 16. § 8.
[6] p. 67. See Manrique, A.D. 1165, c. 3.
[7] p. 156.
[8] pp. 129, 132, 133.

house in France to the daughter establishment at Coggeshall. But here his narrative is unexpectedly scanty. Its author does little more than notice in the briefest possible terms the foundation of the monastery and the succession of a few of its superiors[1]; many incidents connected with its fortunes, the knowledge of which has reached us from other sources, being passed over in silence.[2] But there are frequent traces of local influence, and of information derived from local sources. Prominence is given to the succession of the neighbouring sees of Norwich,[3] Ely, and Lincoln.[4] The abbey of Bury S. Edmunds was a near neighbour; hence the details respecting the examination of the shrine of the martyr in whose honour it was founded.[5] At no great distance was Bromholm. What more natural than that the history of the famous Rood there preserved should be chronicled by our author?[6] Of a more dubious character are the wild stories about the mer-man captured in the sea off Orford,[7] of the green boy and girl,[8] and of the house haunted by the familiar spirit called Malkin.[9] The reader interested in the history of fairy mythology will not fail to notice in this legend, among several other curious details, a reference to the widespread idea of the invisible hat,[10] and of the mysterious visitors at Coggeshall itself, each of which stories was obviously derived from information obtained on the spot.

The hospitality so readily exercised by the monastic orders naturally brought many travellers under their roof, from whom the inmates derived information which

---

[1] pp. 11, 16, 18, 65.

[2] Thus, we find here no record of the disputes which the monks of Coggeshall waged with their brethren of Romilly, which form the subject of two of the Epistles of John of Salisbury. See Bibl. Patrum, vol. xxiii, p. 412, ed. Lugd. 1677.

[3] pp. 96, 110, 162.

[4] pp. 170, 26, 28, 187.

[5] p. 85.

[6] p. 201.

[7] p. 117.

[8] p. 118.

[9] p. 120.

[10] p. 134.

at times must have been of the highest value. Details of this nature find a place more than once in the pages of our Chronicle, and contribute in no slight degree to its importance as well as its interest, vouched for, as they are, by men who took part in the incidents which they narrated. Thus, Hugh de Neville [1] furnished the particulars of an engagement between king Richard and the Saracens, in which he himself had taken a share,[2] details so minute and characteristic [3] as to mark the result of personal observation. One of these histories, having reference to the heresy of the Publicani, was recounted to the Essex chronicler by a native of that county, the celebrated Gervase of Tilbury, who was a principal actor in it, by no means to his own credit, he at that time being one of the household of Philip, archbishop of Rheims.[4] Worthy of especial notice is the narrative which supplies us with an account of the capture of king Richard on his way home from Palestine, the details of which, strikingly minute and picturesque, are given upon the authority of Anselm the chaplain,[5] one of the little party who accompanied the king in his ill-advised expedition through Germany. It is not impossible that from the same source may have been derived the account of Richard's death, and that estimate of his character in which his qualities for good and evil are summed up with a precision which would seem to be founded upon personal observation and acquaintance; unless, indeed,

[1] That Hugh de Neville was at this time with Richard appears from Brompton, ap. Decem Scriptt. col. 1248, where he is characterised as a "serviens probatissimus," after the narrative of the so-called Vinesauf, ap. Gale's Scriptt. ii. 417.

[2] pp. 43–50.

[3] As, for example, the notice of the fact that at this time there were in Richard's force only six horses and one mule, p. 46.

[4] See the Preface to the Otia Imperialia of Gervase of Tilbury by Leibnitz, in his Scriptores Rerum Brunsuic., § lxiii. Præf. tom. i. fol. Hanov. 1717. As the incident to which Gervase refers occurred during the pontificate of William of Champagne, we must ascribe it to a date somewhere between 1176 and 1202. See Gall. Christ. ix. 95.

[5] p. 54.

the claims of Milo, abbot of the Cistercian monastery of Pin—who was with the king when he received his death-wound, who heard his confession, and administered to him the sacrament of extreme unction—may be considered superior.[1] But whether the chaplain Anselm, or Milo the abbot, be the source whence this account of Richard's last hours was derived, it is satisfactory to know that in either case the narrative can reasonably be referred to a credible authority.

It is instructive to observe the manner in which these notices, thus obtained from time to time, are inserted into the text of the Chronicle. It frequently happened that after the author had completed the narrative of some incident which he thought worthy of being recorded, and had entered a fair copy of it in his manuscript, information reached him, fuller, more interesting, or more authentic than that which had previously been at his command. A few illustrations will suffice to show how he acted under the circumstances and dealt with the new matter.

Having completed his account of Richard's exploits in the Holy Land, the Coggeshall historian obtained from a later source an account of the treachery of the Duke of Burgundy.[2] This he copied upon a separate piece of parchment and inserted it between the leaves of his manuscript.

The chaplain Anselm appears to have paid a visit to Coggeshall, and to have given his entertainers an account of king Richard's capture on his homeward journey, of which he himself was an eye-witness. It naturally interested his auditory, and it was thought desirable to insert it in the Chronicle of the household. Unfortunately the narrative of that event was already upon record.[3] The reminiscences of the chaplain, however, were too precious to be lost. The manuscript was

[1] p. 98.
[2] p. 38.
[3] pp. 54, 55.

produced from the Scriptorium, the knife of the Chronicler erased from the completed page of the volume a portion of the narrative as it at that time stood, and in its place he inserted, in a smaller and more compressed hand, those particulars for the preservation of which we are indebted to his zeal and discrimination.

It would be easy to multiply illustrations of this system of gradual accretion by which the Chronicle attained its present proportions. Sometimes it is by the insertion of a new leaf,[1] sometimes by the addition of supplementary matter upon a space from which the earlier text had been removed by erasure,[2] sometimes by notes written in the margin,[3] sometimes by corrections introduced between the lines.[4] But this new matter, whatever be its extent or its importance, shows the conscientious honesty of the writer, and impresses us with the conviction that he did his best to secure and to perpetuate the truth.[5]

The Coggeshall historian notices from time to time such remarkable occurrences connected with the weather as seemed to him worthy of being recorded; for instance, floods,[6] frosts,[7] and tempests[8] of thunder and lightning, together with the famines and pestilences by which they were followed.[9] He chronicles also with remarkable

[1] See pp. 38, 125. The leaf numbered 56 is an addition unconnected with the context, see note, p. 46. It is added in the Appendix to this Preface, p. xxvii.

[2] pp. 10, 18, 25, 29, 30, 36, 38, 53, 54, 83, 97, 130, 168, 191, 195.

[3] pp. 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 10, 11, 15, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 25, 26, 37, 42, 43, 44, 53, 57, 65, 68, 80, 96, 128, 150, 168, 171.

[4] pp. 35, 57, 194, etc.

[5] At the risk of being tedious, I ask permission, before dismissing this part of the subject, to cite an instance of this attention to minute accuracy of detail. The narrative, as it originally stood in the Cottonian text, represents king Richard as having put to the torture the whole of the prisoners who had fallen into his hands on a certain occasion. Afterwards, however, it appeared that this was an exaggeration, and that only one of them was so treated. Hereupon the chronicler proceeded to amend his account of the incident, and by means of erasure and interlineation expressed the truth as it now stands in his narrative. See p. 39.

[6] pp. 60, 129, 142, 155.

[7] pp. 13, 151.

[8] pp. 16, 18, 58, 60, 88, 129, 142, 155.

[9] pp. 8, 9, 151.

precision the various earthquakes,[1] comets,[2] eclipses,[3] and other wonderful appearances in the heavens,[4] which terrified the generation in which he lived.

Reference is seldom made to written authorities of an earlier date, and those which are cited are of minor importance, and do not seem to have exercised any considerable influence upon the narrative. The Life of B. Audoenus is referred to,[5] as also the account of the Visions of the Monk of Eynsham;[6] these, with the Passion of St. Thomas of Canterbury,[7] and the History of the Britons,[8] both too vague to be of any value, complete the written sources of information, which were open to the inspection of the Essex Chronicler.[9] He does not seem to have been aware that his friend Gervase of Tilbury was engaged, at the same time with himself, upon an extensive work, which embraced within its limits a considerable amount of information upon the history of England.

Of the manuscripts which we possess in our day little need be said beyond the fact that the author's autograph copy has come down to us, with all those corrections and additions to which reference has already been so frequently made in this Preface. As these variations in the original are noticed at the bottom of each page of the present edition, the reader, without much trouble to himself, can form his own estimate of the character of this manuscript, and trace the process by which each sentence of the narative assumed its present form. With such a document as the

[1] pp. 7, 9, 11, 15, 20, 141.
[2] pp. 5, 88.
[3] pp. 9, 11, 20, 30.
[4] pp. 5, 65.
[5] p. 118.
[6] These visions are inserted in the Chronicle of Matthew Paris, A.D. 1196, p. 153 seqq. edit. Watts.
[7] p. 26.
[8] p. 19.
[9] Two official documents are inserted. Of the former,—a letter from king Richard addressed to the Bishop of Ely (p. 84); about his exploits in France,—another copy occurs in Hoveden's Chronicle, f. 444 b. Of the second, king John's account of his successes at Mirabel (p. 137), no other copy is known to exist.

author's earliest copy before us, the two transcripts which were made from it at a comparatively early period, and which are cited in the notes, are reduced to insignificance as possessing no critical value. The only help which they have conferred upon the present edition is confined to the recovery of the reading of a few passages, in which the text of the earlier copy has become defaced by time or accidental injury. The copy at Paris[1] furnished the learned Benedictine, Dom Martene, with the source from

[1] This Paris MS. formerly belonged to the abbey of S. Victor, and bore the number 476; previously 129 and 675; the earliest press mark was A A A 13. The arms of the abbey of S. Victor are given at the bottom of the page, and again at the beginning of a copy of Vegetius de Re Militari (fol. 103), in the same volume. The handwriting is of the XIII. century, and by no means carefully executed.

The first article in the volume is thus described on the fly leaf by a scribe of the XV. century, "Cronica "de Captione Jerusalem a Saracenis, "anno Domini Mille, centum "xxxxvij., et continuata de quibus- "dam contingentibus usque ad "annum Mille ijc., a folio 1. usque "ad fol. 78."

"Hic est Liber Ecclesiæ Beati "Victoris, Paris." (the words "Vic- "toris, Paris." are written on an erasure), "quem qui abstulerit vel ". . . . . fraudem fecerit, sit ana- "thama maranatha."

Immediately following the "Chronicon Terræ Sanctæ," and without any title or rubric, occur a few detached passages respecting Ferrand, Count of Flanders, master Eustace, King John's disputes with the Barons (in the present edition pp. 172, 177, 183); these are followed by the wonderful histories of the incidents at Orford, Woolpits, and Dagheworthe (pp. 177, 118, 120). Then succeeds the Chronicon Anglicanum, on fol. 54 of the MS., preceded by the rubric "Adventus "Normannorum in Angliam."

On a fly leaf, at the end of the volume, in a hand of the XV. century, occurs the following note: "Iste liber est Sancti Victoris "Parisiensis, quicumque eum "furatus fuerit, vel celaverit, vel "titulum istum deleverit, anathema "sit."

The same volume contains the Life of S. Brendan, abbot, beginning, "S. Brendanus, filius Finlocha, ne- "potis Althi, de genere Eogeni" . . . It ends . . . "quod etiam rei "probavit eventus; quia cunctis "per se bene dispositis, parvo inter- "jacente temporis intervallo, sa- "cramentis munitus divinis, inter "manus discipulorum gloriose "migravit ad Dominum ij. nonas "Augusti, cui est honor et gloria "in sæcula sæculorum. Amen. "Explicit vita S. Brendani."

Another copy of the same legend occurs in the Cottonian MS., Vesp. B. x., fol. 11, b.

which he published the edition given by him in his Collections, the only edition to which reference could be made up to the present time, when it is superseded by the paramount authority of the Cottonian autograph.

The "Chronicon Anglicanum" is followed by the "Libellus de Expugnatione Terræ Sanctæ per Saladinum," (p. 209) which contains a narrative of the exploits and sufferings of the Christians in Palestine during the years 1186, 1187, and 1188. The authorship of these two works has been ascribed to one and the same individual, but upon grounds which are open to grave objections. There is no direct evidence for the assumption, either external or internal; there is a marked difference between the two in respect to style and the general treatment of the narrative; and in some few instances the facts recorded in the one are inconsistent with the corresponding statement in the other. The assertion that they are to be ascribed to the same pen has probably arisen from the circumstance that they both occur in the same volume. But to whatever source it be referred, it would appear to be untenable.

Looking at the "Libellus,"[1] then, as distinct from the "Chronicon," the first question which arises is as to its authorship. The narrative would seem to have been drawn up by one whose knowledge of this expedition to the Holy Land was on the whole accurate and trustworthy. He was well acquainted with the leading events which occurred at the time when he wrote, while his knowledge of the geography of the country was so minute as to imply that it must have been gained from personal inspection. Were it permitted to theorise, it might be conjectured, from the frequency and the admiration with which the exploits of the Knights Templars and the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem are mentioned, that the writer may possibly have been

[1] This is the author's own designation of his book, see p. 259.

connected with one or both of these great military Orders.[1]

Incorporated in this history, yet apparently of an independent origin, is a remarkable narrative furnished to the author of the "Libellus" by one who was certainly an eye-witness of much which is here recorded. We are left in ignorance as to his name, but his authority and credibility are indisputable. He formed one of the garrison of the city of Jerusalem when it was besieged by the Saracens in September 1187, and while on duty upon the wall, was struck in the face by an arrow, the iron head of which still remained in the wound at the time when this narrative was penned.[2] There is nothing in his history which is inconsistent with this statement, and much that is in harmony with it. Again, he heard, he tells us, a proclamation made by authority of the Patriarch and the other nobles who were within the city, by which they offered a reward to those who would consent to keep watch upon the ramparts for a single night.[3] At the end of his narrative the writer informs those of his readers who desire further information upon the events which occurred in Palestine subsequent to the arrival of the kings of France and England, that they will find the subject fully treated in the book which the Prior of the Holy Trinity of London translated from French into Latin with no less accuracy than elegance.[4]

The brief narrative which follows (p. 263) will be read with interest, since it furnishes us with a contemporaneous

[1] The writer's interest in the affairs of Essex, within which county it will be remembered Coggeshall was situated, shows itself in the laudatory notice of Ralph de Altaripa, archdeacon of Colchester. See p. 254.

[2] p. 243.

[3] p. 245.

[4] p. 257, at the bottom of fol. 17 of the Cottonian copy of this "Li-" bellus," occurs a half defaced annotation which might possibly have thrown some light upon the authorship of this treatise, had it been legible. See the present volume, p. 251, note 1.

account of an event which deeply moved the feelings of England and France at the time when it occurred, and exercised no trifling influence upon the history of these two kingdoms. It gives certain minute details respecting the death[1] of Henry, Courtmantel, as he was styled, the son of Henry the Second, king of England, who was also himself crowned during the lifetime of his father; and it then proceeds to narrate the circumstances connected with his interment, first at Le Mans, and subsequently at Rouen.[2] This little history, written with considerable taste and feeling, is the production of a warm partizan of the young king, Thomas Agnellus[3] by name, Archdeacon of Wells, who embodied it in a sermon which he preached in commemoration of young Henry. He speaks of him in terms of the highest eulogy, almost as if he were already canonized; he passes over unnoticed his various acts of disobedience and rebellion, and does not scruple to ascribe his death to the envy of his father.[4] Some of his information, or all, was derived from Queen Eleanor, the wife of the elder Henry, and the mother of the younger—by no means a trustworthy witness upon such a subject; and although the facts here recounted may be accurately narrated, the sentiments of the writer must be received with due caution. The story is well told, and excites our interest and sympathy. It places us by the bedside of the dying prince, repeats the conversation which passed between him and one of his attendants, traces the route taken by the funeral procession from the place of his death

[1] In the text it is ascribed to A.D. 1182; the real date is 1183.

[2] Compare with this narrative the letter of Bertrand, bishop of Agen (who was present at the death of the young king, and who administered to him Extreme Unction), given in Hoveden's Chron., vol. 1. preface, p. lxvii., edit. Stubbs.

[3] Nothing is known of this writer; *see* Hardy's "Descriptive Catalogue," ii. 449. Apparently he is the individual indicated by the initial T. among the archdeacons of Wells, where his date is ascribed to the year 1186. *See* Hardy's Le Neve, 1, 158.

[4] . . . . paricidali extinctus invidia . . . . are the terms used by the preacher.

to Le Mans, where the corpse was forcibly interred, and from which resting place it was removed, after a detention of thirty-four days, and finally deposited in the cathedral church of Rouen. The incidents which occurred on the road are carefully described.

This little narrative is printed from a manuscript in the Bodleian Library M.S., Laud. 1100 (or 71), fol. 118 b. a volume containing the Archdeacon's sermons. No other copy is known.

The adventures of Fulk FitzWarin, which follow in the present volume (p. 275), form a good example of a certain species of narrative which was very popular during the Middle Ages, not only in our own country, but upon the continent. So generally did it prevail, that there is scarcely a nation the literature of which does not afford an illustration. Reared upon a basis of truth, more or less broad and firm according to circumstances, is erected a large and ambitious superstructure of fable, the marvels of which are due to the inventive powers of the *trouveur*. There is no lack of narratives of this kind; indeed it would not be easy to exhaust their titles. It may be enough to specify the poems of Beowulf, Havelock, and Grim, among our Saxon ancestors; the lay of the Nibelungen for the north of Europe; the romances of Charlemagne and his Paladins, and of the Cid Campeador for the south; while within the limits of our own country we possess those remarkable cycles of legends of which King Arthur, Gawin, Guy of Warwick, and Bevis of Hampton are respectively the central figures. Coming down to a later period, and falling somewhat more closely within the jurisdiction of history, are the metrical life of Richard Cœur-de-Lion, the ballads of Robert Hood, the outlaw of Sherwood Forest, and the life of William Wallace, which a wide-spread tradition ascribes to Blind Harry. Each of these narratives, be it prose or poetry, possesses along with a substratum of history, a large proportion of the alloy

of fiction; and these are so intermixed and intermingled that it is always difficult to specify the exact line at which the history ends and the fiction begins.

The narrative which professes to recount the adventures of Fulk FitzWarin has its share of both of these elements. As it would be rash to assert that it consists of nothing save unadulterated truth, so it would be equally rash to affirm that it contains no historical truth whatever. When we examine the statements as to persons, places, and incidents which are embodied in it, and compare them with undisputed facts, which rest upon evidence which cannot be called into question, we find many points of similarity, too numerous and too decided to be accidental. Assuming that the hero of the romance was a real personage, and actually existed at the time he is said to have lived, can we find any trace of him in authentic history? The question must be answered in the affirmative, and with it may be joined the remark that there is a remarkable harmony between the two. Thus, for example, testing the romance by the entries in the Close Rolls, the former tells us that the name of Fulk's wife was Matilda, that she was a widow, and that she held lands in Ireland, facts which admit of a distinct proof.[1] In both of these authorities, Whittington is the name of Fulk's castle.[2]

The Chancery Records show that there was some connexion, by blood or locality, between the FitzWarins and the family of Hodnet; accordingly in the legend, Baldwin de Hodnet is one of Fulk's most attached companions.[3] The fiction gives to Fulk's brothers the names of William, Philip, John, and Alan; similar names occur in the Chancery Enrollments.[4] It may appear a

[1] See pp. 342, 362, and compare Close Rolls, ed. Hardy, pp. 92, 352.

[2] See p. 228, with which compare Close Rolls, pp. 126, 410, 554, 565.

[3] See pp. 276, 329, 330, 337, 364. Cf. Rot. Claus. 554, 565.

[4] See pp. 337, 341, 374, 395, 396, 403, 406.

trifling coincidence, and so it is, yet it is worth mentioning, that the hero of the romance is perfectly familiar with shipping matters, and does not hesitate to undertake several long voyages, one of which is to Norway; in keeping with which we find that the Fulk of the Close Rolls has a grant made to him of the rigging and fittings of an old Norwegian galley.[1]

This legend is known to us by means of only a single manuscript, preserved in the old Royal Collection in the British Museum (12. c. xii.), the age of which may be referred to the early part of the reign of King Edward the First. The story, however, as it might at first sight appear, in a different form, was seen by the antiquary Leland, for he describes it as being in poetry, and has given an abstract of its contents. Without venturing peremptorily to decide whether the copy seen by Leland, and that with which we are acquainted in our day is one and the same, or whether they are distinct recensions from a common source, thus much must be remarked, that in the text as we now have it many traces remain of its former metrical character. The poem, however, has perished, and we possess nothing beyond the prose narrative here given to the public.

Gervase of Tilbury, so named from his birthplace in the county of Essex, was the author of several works, some of which are of considerable interest as illustrating the history of our nation. Having entered into the service of Henry the Lion, duke of Brunswick, (husband to Matilda, the eldest daughter of Henry the Second of England,) he was entrusted with the office of Mareschal, or Governor of the kingdom of Arles. While so employed he produced the remarkable work, whence are derived the extracts given in the present volume (p. 419). It is dedicated[2] to the Emperor, Otto the Fourth of

[1] See pp. 369, 378, and with these cf. Rot. Claus., p. 136.

[2] The beginning and conclusion of this Dedication are appended to the present preface, No. III.

Germany, nephew consequently to our kings, Richard the First and John.[1]

The "Otia Imperialia" is a work of a most miscellaneous and comprehensive character, and which may justly be regarded as an encyclopedia of the literature of the Middle Ages. It is divided into three books. In the first book the author treats of the creation of the world and of chaos; of the heavenly bodies and of the animals living on this lower earth; of paradise and hell. The history of the patriarchs of the Old Testament having been narrated, the first book concludes with an account of the Deluge.

In the second book, Gervase treats of Asia Minor, occupying himself at considerable length with an account of the patriarchates into which it was divided. Passing into Italy, we have a curiously minute description of the city of Rome, from which may be gleaned many interesting details respecting its gates, walls, and towers; its hills, baths, palaces, and theatres; its cemeteries, fountains, and churches. There occurs a special notice of the basilica of Saint Peter. The measurement of several of these edifices is given. The author next enumerates the ecclesiastical divisions of the chief nations of Europe, for which he quotes as his authority the Papal archives. France, Spain, England, Wales, and Scotland are next described; after which he passes into Africa, and on his return gives an account of the islands of the Mediterranean Sea. A sketch of the history of the Roman Empire succeeds; and the second book finishes with an account of the sovereigns of England.

The third book, perhaps the most curious of the whole, is devoted to an enumeration, more or less detailed according to the amount of the author's information, of the principal marvels of nature and of art which had

[1] The date of its completion is uncertain, probably between 1208 and 1214. In the third Book an event is recorded which occurred in the year 1211.

come under his notice.[1] Of these very many have reference to our own country, and throw no little light upon the superstitions and traditions which were current among our forefathers at the beginning of the thirteenth century.

The extracts given in the present volume from the "Otia Imperialia" are taken from a manuscript of the fourteenth century, in the collection of the Queen of Sweden, now in the Vatican Library. A few passages in which it is defective, illegible, or incorrect, have been supplied or amended by a second copy in the Library of the Barberini Palace (No. 874).[2] It should be stated, however, that the Cottonian copy, Vespasian, E. IV., is on the whole more carefully written than either of the two manuscripts at Rome just mentioned.

No complete edition of the "Otia Imperialia" has yet appeared. Considerable portions however are given by Leibnitz in his Scriptores Rerum Brunvicensium, Vol. I. pp. 881–1104. The MSS. are comparatively scarce; the greater number are in the National Library in Paris.[3]

JOSEPH STEVENSON.

[1] Prefixed to this Book is the following rubric: "Incipit tertia "divisio, continens Mirabilia unius- "cujusque provinciæ; non omnia, "sed ex omnibus aliqua." This portion of Gervase's history has been edited and carefully annotated by F. Liebrecht, 8vo., Hanov., 1856. Three of these "Mirabilia" are appended to the present Preface, No. IV., as a specimen of the information collected by Gervase.

[2] Now marked xxxiii. 131, a volume on paper, written in the xv. century, apparently in France.

[3] See them enumerated in Potthast's Bibliotheca Historica Medii Ævi, i. 334. 8vo., Berl., 1862.

APPENDIX TO PREFACE.

No. I.

De sacris reliquiis.

Guidone rege Ierosolimorum in bello cum Cruce Dominica capto, Salahadinus mox obsedit urbem Jerusalem. Cives vero qui in ea remanserant, ex infortunia quod acciderat animo consternati, seque posse resistere Saläadino desperantes, urbem ei protinus tradiderunt. At ipse neminem de urbe egredi permisit nisi se prius quilibet x. bisanciis redemisset. Divitibus autem se statim redimentibus, inventi sunt vij. M. in urbe qui nihil habebant unde se redimerent; quorum calamitati cæteri compatientes, unanimi consilio acceperunt cruces aureas et argenteas, calices et phylacteria, et decrustaverunt Sepulchrum Dominicum et cætera ornamenta quæ in singulis ecclesiis reperiebantur, ad redemptionem pauperum. Colligerunt etiam omnes sacras reliquias quas in sacrosanctis locis reperire poterant, et posuerunt eas in iiijor magnis eburneis capsellis. Has autem capsellas Saläadinus inter cætera quæ perscrutabatur intuens, et quid in eis contineretur diligenter inquirens, jussit eas asportari apud Baldac, et tradere caliphæ de Baldac, ne Christiani de ossibus mortuorum suorum gloriarentur ulterius, et putarent se eos habere intercessores in cœlis quorum ossa venerabantur in terris.

Princeps autem Antiochenus, et Patriarcha, et cæteri fideles tanto thesauro nullo modo fraudari volentes, promiserunt sub juramento easdem reliquias se redempturos lij. millibus bisantiis. Quod si præfatam pecu-

niam tempore constituto persolvere nequirent, easdem reliquias eidem redderent. Unde factum est ut princeps Antiochenus prædictas reliquias secum sustolleret sigillatas; sed pecuniam prænominatam nullatenus perquirere potuit. Quapropter in magno dolore et animi mœrore cuncti fideles terræ illius constituti sunt. Termino autem a Saläadino præfixo adveniente, præfatus princeps reliquias sanctas secum detulit ut easdem Saläadino reconsignaret. Quod rex Ricardus, cum esset apud Furbie, intuens, et rem gestam ex ordine cognoscens, mox prænominatam pecuniam pro sanctis reliquiis Saläadino persolvit, et sanctorum pignora devotus retinuit. Quælibet autem capsella tantæ capacitatis et ponderositatis erat, quod vix a quatuor viris diutius portaretur.

No. II.

In insula Cypri habetur quidam fons de rupe ebulliens ad pedem cujusdam montis, qui vocatur Arsinöe. Fons iste omnium colorum varietates a se singillatim emittit, quas colorum aquaticas varietates in singulis canalibus conprovinciales accipientes in montis vertice deferunt, illamque coloratam aquositate contra solis ardorem in receptaculis exsiccant quoadusque inspissetur, et quasi gumma lucidissima efficiatur. Hæc autem gumma apud Alexandriam et in multis locis venumdatur, et preciosæ et sericæ vestes, cujuslibet sint coloris, ex ea tinguntur. Sed aqua illa colorata nullam habet tingendi efficaciam, nisi quando per totam mensem Junii ex prædicto fonte profluit et ab incolis recipitur et desiccatur.

In prædicta insula quidam ros quodam tempore anni super arbusta descendens ab incolis diligenter colligitur; quem rorem Manna vocant. Qui ros diu bullitus induratur, et thus lucidissimum atque odoriferum quasi thymiama efficitur.

No. III.

In nomine Domini nostri Jesu Christi incipit liber a magistro Gervasio Tilleburiensi editus, et intitulatur Ottoni Imperatori Romanorum.

Serenissimo domino suo Ottoni Quarto, Romanorum Imperatori semper augusto, Gervasius Tileburiensis, vestri dignatione marescallus regni Arelatensis, humilis, devotus et fidelis, salutem, et victoriam, et pacem interiorem et exteriorem.

Duo sunt, Imperator Auguste, quibus hic mundus regitur, Sacerdotium et Regnum. Sacerdos orat, rex imperat. Sacerdos debita dimittit; rex errata punit. Sacerdos animas ligat et solvit; rex corpora cruciat et occidit. Uterque Divinæ legis executor, suum justitiæ debitum cuique tribuit, malos coercendo et bonos remunerando . . . . .

Quippe ex animi mei voto pridem fuerat post Librum Facetiarum, quem ex mandato domini mei illustrissimi regis Anglorum Henrici Junioris, avunculi vestri, dictaveram, alium ad resensendam ejus benevolentiam libellum dictare, per tres dicisiones distinctum, in quo totius orbis descriptio saltem in summa contineretur, et provinciarum divisio cum majoribus minoribusque sedibus; et sic singularia cujusque provinciæ mirabilia subnectere, quæ fortasse mirabilia audisse apud ignorantes deliciosasque aures delectabile foret. Nec jam, sicut fieri solet, optimates per mimorum aut histrionum linguas mendaces percipiant Dei virtutes, sed per fidelem narrationem, quæ vel ex veteribus auctorum libris congessimus, vel ex oculata fide firmavimus, cui quotidiana subest probatio, si loca singularia fuerint per descriptas provincias perscrutata.

Quoniam igitur tam honoratissimi Principis, domini avunculi vestri, judicio devotum opus servitutis meæ subtrahitur, deliberavi celsitudini vestræ id oblatum ferre, ut qui ex divina dispositione digniorem locum

imperii tenetis, illi in devoto tractatus mei servitio succedatis; et quod ex officio marescalciæ sub debito armorum ministerio exequi teneor, acutæ linguæ gladio ducam in ministerium. Id ergo precor apud Imperialis Majestatis benevolentiam, ut non ex vestra dignitate judicetis quod offero, sed ex affectu offerentis, qui quod defuit in oblationis tantillæ pretio supplevit votivo ministrandi desiderio.

Valeat in ævum dominatio vestra, sic feliciter regnans in temporali regno ut conregnetis in æternum cum Christo.

No. IV.

De vado Rodestini.

In Britannia Majore, episcopatu Lincolniensi, loco qui ab indigenis Rodestum nominatur, est aqua perfluens ad quantitatem grandis rivi, modico vado passim transmeabilis. In hoc si duos equos septennes adaquaveris, quantumcunque sint in corporis dimensione inæquales, in humectatione tibiarum et laterum invenire pariter poteris sub æqualitate altitudinis humectatos. Cumque aquam modice vadosam transieris, occurret in ripa mausoleum apertum, unius hominis capax, quod ad omnem plenæ ætatis hominem in longitudine videbis convenire.

De aqua quæ lassatis potata reparat vires.

In Britannia Majore, episcopatu Conventrensi et comitatu de Stafford, ad radicem montis cui Mahul indigenæ nomen indiderunt, est aqua in modum paludis amplæ diffusa, in territorio villæ quam Magdaleam dicunt. In hac palude aqua est limpidissima et silvæ infinitæ continua, quæ tantam habent in resumendis corporum viribus efficaciam, quod quotiens venatores cervos, aliasve feras, insecuti fuerint usque ad equorum lassitudinem, si in ipso æstuantis solis ardore aquam gustaverint, ac

equis exposuerint hauriendam, sic amissas currendi vires reparant quod non cucurrisse dietam, sed vix attigisse jam cœptam arbitreris. Nec absimilis est herbæ cerifolii aut panis calidi virtus, quibus mustela ex diutina cum serpente concertatione lassata se implicat, ut ex confricatione herbarum amissas vires resumat.

De antipodibus et eorum terra.

In Britannia Majore castrum est inter montana quædam situm, cui populus nomen Pech imposuit. Munitio ejus difficile expugnabilis, et in monte caverna foraminis, quæ velut fistula ventum pro tempore validissime eructat. Unde tanta prodeat aura miratur populus; et inter plurima quæ ibidem cum admiratione geruntur, accepi a viro religiosissimo Roberto priore de Kenildewrtha exinde oriundo, quod cum vir nobilis Guillelmus Peverelli castrum cum adjacente baronia prætaxatum possideret, (vir quidem strenuus et potens, ac in animalibus diversis copiosus,) uno aliquo die subulcus ejus, cum segnis circa creditum sibi ministerium esset, suem gravidam de genere scropharum magis generosam perdidit. Timens ergo propter jacturam asperiora vicarii dominici verba, cogitavit penes se si quo fortassis casu sus illa foramen Pech famosum, sed usque ad illa tempora inscrutatum, subintrasset. Apponit in animo ut abditi loci se faciat perscrutatorem. Intrat cavernam tempore tunc ab omni vento tranquillam, et cum diutinam in procedendo viam perfecisset, tandem ab opacis in lucidum locum obvenit solutus in spaciosam camporum planitiem. Terram ingressus late cultam, messores reperit fructus maturos colligentes, et inter spicas pendentes scropham, quæ multiplicaverat ex se suculus editos, recognovit. Tunc miratus subulcus et de redintigrata jactura congratulatus, facto rerum prout evenerat verbo cum præposito terræ illius, scropham recipit et

cum gaudio dimissus ad gregem porcorum educit. Mira res; a messibus subterraneis veniens, hyemalia frigora videt in nostro hemisphærio perseverare, quod utique solis absentiæ ac vicariæ præsentiæ merito ascribendum duxi.

RADULPHI DE COGGESHALE CHRONICON ANGLICANUM.

Anno ab Incarnatione Domini MLXVI. Willelmus, f. 43.
dux Normannorum, contracto a partibus transmarinis innumerabili exercitu, in Angliam applicuit apud Hastinghes,[1] ac justo Dei judicio die Sancti Calixti[2] papæ, regem Haraldum, qui imperium Angliæ injuste usurpaverat, regno simul ac vita privavit, quamvis quidam contendant ipsum Haraldum inter occisos delituisse, nocturnaque fuga lapsum, post multas peregrinationes, apud Cestriam eremeticam vitam duxisse, et usque ad ultima tempora regis Henrici Secundi, in sancto proposito perdurasse.[3]

A.D. MLXVII. MLXVIII.

MLXIX. Robertus, cognomento Cumin, cum septingentis hominibus suis in Dunhelmo occiditur; unde rex Willelmus iratus, totam depopulatus est Northumbriam.

MLXX. Malcolmus,[4] rex Scotorum, terram regis Willelmi ferro flammisque devastare cœpit. Lanfrancus in archiepiscopatum[5] provehitur.

---

[1] *Hastinghes*] Hastinges, H.

[2] *Sancti Calixti*] October 14.

[3] *perdurasse*] In V. an erasure of a line here occurs, and the following date is omitted.

[4] *Malcolmus*] Malcolinus, H.

[5] *archiepiscopatum*] In V. the reading is uncertain.

MLXXI.

MLXXII.[1] Malcolmus[2] regi Willelmo occurrens, in loco qui dicitur Abernith, ei homagium fecit.

M.LXXIII.

Rex Willelmus Cinomannis sibi subegit.

MLXXIV.[3] Tria monasteria a tribus monachis instaurata sunt; unum Dunhelmi, aliud Eboraci, tertium apud Witebi.

MLXXV. MLXXVI. MLXXVII. MLXXVIII.

MLXXIX. Malcolmus[2] totam Northimbriam usque ad fluvium Tine devastavit. Robertus Curtehose Novum Castellum super Tine condidit.

M.LXXX. Walcherus Dunhelmensis episcopus a Northimbrensibus occiditur.

MLXXXI. MLXXXII. MLXXXIII. MLXXIV. MLXXXV.

MLXXXVI. Rex Willelmus describi fecit omnes barones et feudatos milites, et quot carrucatas terræ quisque habebat, et reditus possessionum.

MLXXXVII. Rex Willelmus in Franciam cum exercitu venit, atque oppidum quod Mantua dicitur, cum ecclesiis combussit, ubi et duo reclusi combusti sunt; indeque cum gravi viscerum cruciatu Normanniam rediens, Willelmo filio suo regnum Angliæ tradidit,
f. 43 *b.* sicque defunctus est quinto[4] iduum Septembrium die, et Cadomi sepultus, postquam viginti annis, mensibus decem, et octo et viginti diebus genti Anglorum præfuit; cui successit in regnum Willelmus filius ejus, et Robertus Curtehose primogenitus ejus in ducatu Normanniæ.

MLXXXVIII. Corpus[5] beati Nicholai de Mirrea civi-

---

[1] *MLXXII.*] Om. in V.

[2] *Malcolmus*] Malcolinus, H.

[3] *MLXXIV.*] In the margin of V., but so indefinitely placed that it is impossible to state to what entry it is meant to apply.

[4] *quinto*] Sept. 9. A word has been erased before this date in C.

[5] *Corpus . . . . transfertur*] The whole of this passage is written in the margin of C. in a smaller hand and with different ink. It does not occur in H. A marginal note in V. reads, "Translatio Sancti Nicholai ad Barum."

tate in locum, qui Barum dicitur, quinto idus Maii[1] transfertur.

MLXXXIX.[2] Lanfrancus Dorobernensis archiepiscopus obiit. Tertio idus Agusti[3] terræ motus permaximus per Angliam extitit.[4]

MXC. MXCI. MXCII.

MXCIII. Rex Willelmus Anselmo Beccensi abbati archiepiscopatum Cantuariæ, et Roberto Bloiet Lincoliensem dedit præsulatum.

Rex Scotorum Malcolmus[5] et Edwardus filius ejus, cum multis aliis, a militibus Roberti Northumbrorum comitis occisi sunt; quo audito, regina Margareta præ dolore decidit in ægritudinem, et tertia die vitam finivit. Scotti regem suum Dunecanum peremerunt, et Duvenaldum sibi regem[6] constituerunt.

MXCIV. Urbanus papa concilium tenuit apud Clarummontem, hortatusque est Christianos proficisci in Jerusalem ad debellandos paganos. Cujus hortatu quamplurimi cruce Christi signati, ad illud iter aggrediendum se paraverunt; quorum duces et primates erant Podiensis episcopus, comes Sancti Ægidii, Reimundus, Hugo Magnus, Philippi Francorum regis germanus, dux Lothariensis Godefridus, et Baldewinus, frater ejus; comes Stephanus Blesensis, Robertus comes Flandrensis, Robertus Curtehose, dux Normannorum, et Boamundus, Roberti Wiscardi filius.

MXCV.

MXCVI. Hoc anno[7] fuit motio Christianorum euntium Jerusalem super paganos.

MXCVII.[8] Sexto nonas Octobris[9] stella cometes

---

[1] *quinto idus Maii*] May 11.

[2] *MLXXXIX.*] So corrected from 1099 in C.

[3] *Tertio idus Agusti*] August 11.

[4] *extitit*] In V. an erasure of nearly a line occurs.

[5] *Malcolmus*] Malcolinus, H.

[6] *regem*] Om. V.

[7] *Hoc anno*] V. ascribes this to A.D. 1095.

[8] *MXCVII. . . . emittentes*] The whole of this entry occurs (nearly defaced) on the margin of C., from whence it has been carried into the text of H.

[9] *sexto nonas Octobris*] October 2.

apparuit quindecim diebus, majorem emittens ad orientem, minorem versus euro-austrum. Apparuerunt et aliæ stellæ, quasi inter se emittentes.

MXCVIII. Guilelmus rex Cinomannensem civitatem suæ ditioni subegit.

Antiochia a Christianis capta est quarto nonas Junii,[1] feria quarta, et lancea, qua mundi Salvator vulneratus fuerat, Sancto Andrea revelante, inventa.

Hoc anno incepit ordo Cisterciensis.[2]

f. 44. MXCIX. Idus Julii[3] feria sexta, Jerusalem a Christianis capta est, et dux Godefridus ab omni exercitu in regem est electus. Obiit Urbanus papa.

MC. Guillelmus rex junior in Nova Foresta, cum fuisset venatu occupatus, a quodam Franco, Gualtero, cognomine Tirel, sagitta percussus vitam finivit quarto nonas Augusti,[4] feria quinta, cum regnasset tredecim annis, octo et triginta diebus minus. Cui successit frater ejus Henricus in regnum; et mox nonis Augusti,[5] die Dominica, in Westmonasterio a Mauritio Londoniensi episcopo in regem est consecratus. Die vero Sancti Martini[6] consecrata est Matildis, filia regis Scottorum Malcolmi,[7] in reginam Anglorum ab Anselmo archiepiscopo.

MCI. Robertus Curtehose, dux Normanniæ, rediens ab Hierusalem cum navali exercitu, applicuit apud Portesmuthe, regem Henricum fratrem suum expugnaturus; sed mediantibus utrorumque baronibus, locuti sunt ad invicem rex et dux de pace et concordia. Iterum motio facta est euntium Hierusalem.

MCII. Anselmus archiepiscopus tenuit concilium cum omnibus Angliæ episcopis; ac plures abbates, tam Fran-

---

[1] *quarto nonas Junii*] June 2, being Wednesday.

[2] *Hoc . . . Cisterciensis*] An addition in the margin of C. It does not occur in H. nor in V.

[3] *Idus Julii*] Friday, 15 July.

[4] *quarto nonas Augusti*] Thursday, 2 August.

[5] *nonis Augusti*] Sunday, 5 August.

[6] *Die S. Martini*] November 11.

[7] *Malcolmi*] Malcolini, H.

cigenos quam Anglos,[1] quia inhoneste se habuerunt, degradavit, cunctisque prohibuit presbyteris diutius[2] uxores habere.

MCIII.

MCIV. Mirabile[3] signum apparuit in cœlo ab hora sexta usque ad horam nonam, septimo idus Junii[4] in ebdomada Pentecostes, feria tertia, multis intuentibus atque mirantibus, et pene omnibus qui tunc in curia regis Henrici erant primi apud Londonias.[5] Fuerunt autem tres circuli, quorum duo in medio primi sic sibi copulabantur ut sol intra primum[6] existens infra convertionem duorum aliorum situs videretur. Primus quoque circulus (id est, medius) duo cornua ex se immittebat, quasi caprina, a dextra et læva parte sua supra solem; a dextra quoque et læva aliorum circulorum lateraliter apparebant duo semicirculi modico spatio ab eis distantes.

Corpus Sancti Cuthberti incorruptum et flexibile inventum[7] est post annos quadringentos et octodecim depositionis suæ, et una cum eo caput Sancti Oswaldi, regis et martyris, et reliquiæ Sancti Bedæ, inclyti doctoris.

MCV. Henricus, rex Anglorum, transiens mare, Bajocensem civitatem cum ecclesia Beatæ Mariæ, quæ intus erat, combussit. Tunc etiam Roberto fratri suo abstulit Cadomum.

MCVI. Cometes[8] apparuit xiiij. kalendas Martii[9] in

[1] *quam Anglos*] In the margin of V.

[2] *diutius*] An interlinear gloss in C. here adds, "id est, ulterius." It is carried into the text in H.

[3] *Mirabile . . . . distantes*] The whole of this passage occurs as a marginal note in C., where it is much defaced, but it is carried into the text in H. The later copyist has committed a few errors, which have been here amended.

[4] *septimo idus Junii*] Tuesday, 7 June.

[5] *Londonias*] Londoniensi, H.

[6] *primum*] This passage is obviously corrupt in H., which reads *primi*.

[7] *inventum*] Originally written "inventus" in V., but corrected by the first hand.

[8] *Cometes . . . duravit*] This passage occurs in the margin of C., but in the text of H., where it forms a portion of the year 1105. It is nearly defaced in C.

[9] *xiiij. kalendas Martii*] February 16.

parte dextra Zefiri, qui et Africus nominatur, id est, inter meridiem et occidentem. Parva intuentibus videbatur, sed tamen coma ejus, id est radius, nimis longa et magna videbatur ; luna tunc erat xi. et xxiii. dies duravit.

Robertus, dux Normanniæ, apud Tenerchebrai, vigilia Sancti Michaelis,[1] a fratre suo Henrico capitur, et cum eo comes Guillelmus de Moretonio, et Robertus de Stutevile, et plures alii, et sic ab illo die tota Normannia regi Henrico subjecta est. Dux vero Robertus
f. 44 *b.* in quadam turri relegatus est usque diem obitus sui.

MCVII.

MCVIII. Rex Henricus constituit legem ut fures et latrones suspenderentur. Monetam quoque corruptam et falsam qui deprehensus fuisset facere, sine ulla redemptione oculos et testiculos amitteret.

Philippus, rex Francorum, obiit, cui successit Ludovicus filius ejus, qui genuit sex[2] filios et unam filiam, Philippum, qui fuit inunctus in regem, de quo inauditum contigit infortunium. Cum enim quadam die per Parisius equitaret, obvio[3] porco diabolico offensus equus cecidit, et sessorem suum ad silicem contrivit, et nocte sequenti spiritum exhalavit ; et statim Ludovicus, frater ejus, ab Innocentio papa coronatur petitione patris. Tertius filius regis fuit Henricus, monachus Claravalensis, et postea Remensium archiepiscopus. Quartus Robertus comes Drocensium,[4] pater Roberti, comitis de Perche, et episcopi Belvacensis, et episcopi Aurelianensis.[5] Quintus filius fuit Philippus, clericus. Sextus Petrus, qui duxit filiam Reginaldi de Cortenai,[6] cum terra ipsius. Soror istorum regis filia fuit Constantia, quæ primo tradita est Eustachio comiti Boloniensi,

[1] *vigilia Sancti Michaelis*] September 28.
[2] *sex*] vii. is the reading of V.
[3] *obvio*] ab uno, V.
[4] *Drocensium*] Dorcentium, H.
[5] *Aureliacensis*] Eurœliacensis, V.
[6] *Cortenai*] Curtenay, V.

filio regis Stephani, ac postmodum Raimundo, comiti Sancti Ægidii, quam postea repudiavit.

MCIX. Dorobernensis archiepiscopus Anselmus obiit. Elyensis abbatia in sedem episcopalem mutata est.

MCX. Rex Anglorum Henricus filiam suam Mathildem dedit Henrico imperatori Teutonicorum in conjugem.

MCXI. MCXII.

MCXIII. Beatus Bernardus, annos natus circiter viginti duo, Cistercium ingressus cum sociis amplius quam triginta, sub abbate Stephano suavi jugo Christi collum submisit, anno a constitutione domus Cisterciencis quinto decimo.

MCXIV. Tamisia[1] exsiccata est sexto idus Octobris.[2] Mathildis, filia regis Henrici, apud Magontiam desponsata est, et in imperatricem consecrata.

MCXV. MCXVI.

MCXVII. Apud Longobardiam terræ motus magnus factus est per dies quadraginta, ita ut domus plurimæ corruerent, et villa quædam prægrandis mota est repente de statu proprio, jamque in longe remoto constitere cernitur loco. f. 45.

Mediolanis, dum patriciæ dignitatis viri de republica tractantes sub una residerent turri, auribus omnium vox foras[3] insonuit, unum ex illis vocans nomine, et festinato exire rogans. Quo tardante,[4] persona quædam coram[5] apparuit, quem vocatum virum ut egrederetur prece obtinuit. Exeunte autem illo, turris repente cecidit, et omnes qui ibi aderant casu miserabili oppressit.

MCXVIII. Mathildis regina Anglorum apud Westmonasterium calendis Maii[6] obiit, et in ipso monasterio est sepulta. Paschalis papa obiit.

---

[1] *Tamisia . . . Octobris*] A marginal note in C. It occurs in the text of H., but is not noticed in V.

[2] *sexto idus Octobris*] October 10.

[3] *vox foras*] foras vox, V.

[4] *tardante*] tradante, H.

[5] *coram*] Above the line in V.

[6] *calendis Maii*] May 1.

MCXIX. Gelasius papa obiit. Calixtus papa Gisortium venit, cui[1] rex Henricus occurrit, impetravitque ab eo omnes consuetudines quas pater suus in Anglia et in Normannia habuerat, et maxime ut neminem aliquando legati officio in Anglia fungi permitteret.

Obiit Herebertus episcopus Norwicensis, cui successit Ebrardus episcopus.

MCXX. Rupis allisio maris unam demersit navem apud Barbefleot, in quâ pene tota propago omnium nobilium Normannorum, una cum Willelmo filio regis Henrici et quodam alio notho, cum[2] duabus filiabus regis, et una ejus nepe,[3] aliique quamplures fere trecenti homines perierunt, septimo kalendas Decembris, nec eorum corpora inventa sunt.[4]

MCXXI. MCXXII. MCXXIII.

MCXXIV. Obiit Calixtus papa, cui successit Honorius papa.

MCXXV. In[5] territorio quod Gyssic nominatur, quatuor dies ante Nativitatem beati Johannis,[6] de quodam fonte sanguis cepit emanare, et sic miro modo per totam æstatem non defecit, nisi quod semper in sabbato ad horam nonam sanguis ille cessavit, et iterum mane feria secunda fluere cepit per totam septimanam usque ad aliud sabbatum.

Fames valida, ut summa frumenti XX. solidis venderetur.[7]

Obiit Henricus imperator, reversaque est Matildis

---

[1] *venit, cui*] veniens, C. H. V.

[2] *cum*] et cum, C. V.

[3] *nepe*] nepote, V.

[4] *septimo kalendas . . . . inventa sunt*] Nov. 25. A marginal addition in C., but carried into the text of H.

[5] *In . . . . sabbatum*] The whole of this paragaaph is written in the margin of C. in a minute hand. It forms a portion of the text of H.

[6] *quatuor dies ante Nativitatem B. Johannis*] Namely, on June 21.

[7] *ut . . . . venderetur*] This passage, added between the lines in C., occurs in the margin of H. V. reads simply, "Fames valida."

imperatrix ad patrem suum, qui tradidit eam Galfrido Plantegenest,[1] comiti Andegavensium, filio Fulconis comitis et regis Hierosolymitani. Qui Galfridus genuit ex ea regem Henricum, Gaufridum, et Willelmum Longespee.

MCXXVI.

MCXXVII. Occisus est Carolus comes Flandrensis.

MCXXVIII. MCXXIX. MCXXX. MCXXXI.

MCXXXII. Hoc anno maxima pestis animalium facta est, et facta est abbatia de Reivallis a Waltero de Spec, qui et ecclesiam Sanctæ Trinitatis de Kirkeham et Carram[2] fundavit, necnon et abbatiam Sanctæ Mariæ de Sartis.

Tantus fuit terræ motus ut subsidere ipsa terra videretur, horrifico sono prius sub terra audito.[3] Natus est rex Henricus Secundus, filius Gaufridi comitis.[4]

MCXXXIII. Eclipsis solis facta est quarto nonas Augusti,[5] luna vigesima septima existente, et apparuerunt stellæ, et obtenebratus est dies hora sexta. Rex Henricus eadam die mare ingrediens[6] transfretavit ab Anglia, postmodum vivus numquam reversurus.

MCXXXIV.

MCXXXV. Obiit Honorius papa, cui successit Innocentius papa.

MCXXXVI. Eclipsis lunæ facta est calendis Januarii.[7] Obiit[8] rex Henricus quarto nonas Decembris,[9] cujus corpus exenteratum ac sale conditum delatum est in

[1] *Plantegenest*] Plantenest, V.

[2] *et Carram*] Om. V.

[3] *Tantus . . . . audito*] This passage occurs in the margin of C., and also in that of H., by a different hand.

[4] *comitis*] This passage also occurs in the margin of C.

[5] *quarto nonas Augusti*] August 2. This date is correct.

[6] *ingrediens*] In the margin of V.

[7] *calendis Januarii*] 1 January; but the eclipse occurred in 1135.

[8] *Obiit*] In V. a marginal addition, written with a style, reads, "apud Sanctum Dionysium." Another is nearly defaced, the words "episcopus Wintoniæ" being alone legible.

[9] *quarto nonas Decembris*] December 2, 1135.

Angliam, et apud monasterium de Redinghes,[1] quod ipse fundaverat, humatum est. Cui successit Stephanus, nepos ejus ex sorore, filius Stephani comitis Blesensis, qui illum et comitem Theobaldum ex filia regis Willelmi[2] Bastardi genuerat. Porro rex Stephanus duxerat uxorem Mathildem,[3] (cujus mater dicebatur Maria, soror reginæ Mathildis, quarum pater rex Malcomus)[4] filiam[5] Eustachii comitis Boloniensis, cum honore Boloniæ. Hic Eustachius frater extitit Godefridi ducis Lothariæ, et postmodum regis Hierosolymitani, et frater Baldewini comitis de Roheise, qui postea rex Hierosolymitanus post fratrem suum Godefridum effectus est. De ista regina Mathildi et pio rege Stephano natus est Eustachius comes Boloniæ, et Willelmus comes Warenniæ. Quamdam etiam filiam habuerunt, quæ de monasterio sanctimonialium postmodum abstracta, comiti Matthæo fratri Philippi[6] comitis Flandrensis traditur in uxorem ex qua duas habuit filias, quarum una data est duci Luvanæ, alia vero post tertium maritum nupsit filio comitis de Dammartin.[7]

Eodem anno obiit Willelmus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, cui successit Teobaldus.[8] Facta est[9] abbatia de Sartis.

MCXXXVII. Ludovicus Ludovici filius petitione patris ab Innocentio papa in regem consecratur, qui accepit in uxorem Alienoridem, filiam Willelmi comitis Aquitaniæ, ex qua habuit duas filias, Mariam et Aaliz. Maria nupsit Henrico comiti Trencensi, filio Theobaldi comitis, fratris regis Stephani. Aaliz, soror Mariæ, tradita est

[1] *Redinghes*] Redinges, H. V.

[2] *regis Willelmi*] Written upon an erasure in H.

[3] *Mathildem*] Om. H. In V. the words "uxorem Mathildem" are written by a later hand in the margin.

[4] *cujus . . . . Malcolmus*] A marginal note in C.; in the text of H.

[5] *filiam*] Matildem filiam, H.; Mathildam, V.

[6] *Philippi*] Written upon an erasure in C.

[7] *ex qua . . . . Dammartin*] In the margin of C. In the text of H. and V.

[8] *Teobaldus*] Theobaldus, V.

[9] *Facta est*] Facta est etiam, H.

comiti Theobaldo Blesensi, fratri supradicti Henrici. Ex comite Henrico et Maria ortus est Henricus comes, qui cum rege Philippo profectus est Hierosolymam, cui et rex Richardus regnum illud concessit.[1] f. 46.

MCXXXVIII. Theobaldus factus est archiepiscopus Cantuariensis.

MCXXXIX. Venit imperatrix Mathildis in Angliam.

MCXL. Facta est abbatia de Cogeshala[2] a rege Stephano et regina Mathildi, qui etiam fundaverunt abbatiam de Furneis, et abbatiam de Lungviliers,[3] et abbatiam de Favresham, ubi etiam corpora eorum humata sunt. Eodem anno convenit conventus apud Cogeshala[4] tertio nonas Augusti.[5]

Facta est eclipsis solis tertio decimo calendas Aprilis,[6] luna vicesima octava. Comes[7] Albericus de Ver a civibus Londoniæ peremtus est. Hac tempestate magister Petrus Abaelardus extitit, et magister Gilebertus Porreie,[8] episcopus Pictavis, et Hugo de Sancto Victore.

MCXLI. Bellum factum est inter Stephanum regem et Robertum comitem de Glocestre, in quo victus est rex et captus apud Lincolniam in Purificatione Sanctæ Mariæ,[9] quæ evenit in die Dominica per *E* litteram stantem, quarto nonas Februarii, et solutus est a carcere octavo decimo kalendas Octobris,[10] capto comite Roberto a Willelmo de Ypra.[11]

Obiit Innocentius papa. Successit Cœlestinus papa; post eum Lucius papa; quo defuncto, successit Eugenius papa.

---

[1] *cui . . . concessit*] A marginal addition in C. In the text of H. and V.

[2] *Cogeshala*] Coggeshale, V.

[3] *et abbatiam de Lungviliers*] Om. V.

[4] *Cogeshala*] Coggeshale, V.

[5] *tertio nonas Augusti*] August 3.

[6] *tertio decimo calendas Aprilis*] March 20. This date is correct.

[7] *Comes*] V. here inserts the date MCXL.

[8] *Porreie*] Poreie, V.

[9] *Purificatione S. Mariæ*] Feb. 2, being Sunday.

[10] *octavo decimo kalendis Octobris*] September 14.

[11] *et solutus . . . Ypra*] In the margin of C., but carried into the text of H.

MCXLII. Captus est Robertus episcopus[1] apud Fullam.

MCXLIII. Galfridus de Mandavilla per violentiam intravit in Rameseiam, et monachos fugavit, et ibidem[2] obiit.

MCXLIV. Puer Willelmus crucifixus est a Judæis apud Norwic.[3]

MCXLV. Ebrardus[4] episcopus a Norrewico recessit Fontenetem.[5]

MCLXVI.[6] Rex Ludovicus, cum regina Alienor et cum proceribus regni Francorum, profectus est Ierosolymam, et dux Saxonum Frethericus postea imperator; et Damascum obsederunt. Sed jam cum capienda esset civitas, ab obsidione remoti sunt per fratres Templi, ut dicitur, qui pecuniam a Noradino acceperant. Civitas Ulixisbona capta est.

MCXLVII. Facta est abbatia de Saltereia. Willelmus
f. 46 *b.* episcopus Norwicensis factus est.

[MCXLVIII. Translatio Sancti Erkenwaldi Londoniensis episcopi.][7]

MCXLVIII.[8] Rex Ludovicus ab Hierosolyma regreditur. Post cujus regressionem Galfridus comes Andegavensis et Henricus filius ejus conquesti sunt regi de Stephano rege Anglorum, qui eis regnum Angliæ et ducatum Normanniæ injuste auferebat. Rex vero Ludovicus Normanniam aggrediens, manu forti eam cepit, et Henrico tradidit, et eum pro eadem terra in hominem ligium accepit. Ille vero pro collato adjutorio Vilcassinum Normanniæ, quod est inter Itam et Andelam, regi Ludovico totum immune dedit; in qua terra continetur Gisortium, Néefle, et Stripiniacum. Nec multo

---

[1] *Episcopus*] In V. the word *Londoniensis* is added as an interlineation written with a style.

[2] *ibidem*] ibidem obidem, V. (*sic*).

[3] *Norwic*] Here in V. is written with a style, "Obiit Galfridus de "Mandev."

[4] *Ebrardus*] Everardus, H.

[5] *Fontenetem*] Added in C. in a different ink.

[6] *MCXLVI.*] MCXLVII, V.

[7] *Translatio . . . episcopi*] This passage, which occurs neither in C. nor H., is obtained from V.

[8] *MCXLVIII.*] V. ascribes this to 1149.

post rex Ludovicus repudiavit Alienoridem conjugem suam, linea consanguinitatis inter eos jurata; quam sine mora Henricus dux Normanniæ accepit in uxorem cum comitatu Aquitaniæ. Postea rex Ludovicus duxit Constantiam filiam imperatoris Hispaniæ, ex qua habuit filiam nomine Margaritam, quæ Henrico juniori, filio regis Henrici, in matrimonio juncta est. Vilcassinensem autem terram dedit rex Ludovicus filiæ suæ in matrimonio. Deinde rex genuit aliam filiam de Constantia nomine Adelaidis,[1] in cujus partu mater diem clausit extremum. Postmodum rex Ludovicus duxit Alam[2] filiam Theobaldi comitis Blesensis, sororem Henrici comitis Trecensis, et Theobaldi comitis, et Willelmi Remorum archiepiscopi, ex qua unum habuit filiam nomine Philippum, qui anno Incarnationis MCLXV. hæc[3] nobilissima proles processit ad ortum.

Beatus Malachias, episcopus Hibernensis, et apostolicæ sedis legatus, anno Incarnationis Domini MCXLVIII. ætatis suæ quinquagesimo quarto, loco et tempore quo præelegit et prædixit, scilicet, apud Claram-vallem, die Omnium Sanctorum,[4] ab angelis assumptus feliciter obdormivit in Domino.

MCXLIX. Facta est abbatia de Sibetuna.[5]

MCL. MCLI. MCLII. Hoc tempore gelare cœpit a quarto idus Decembris usque ad undecimum calendas Martii,[6] et sic Tamisia gelata est, ut pede et equo transiretur.[7] f. 47.

MCLIII. Beatus Bernardus, Claræ-vallis cœnobii primus abbas, aliorum quoque amplius quam centum et

[1] *Adelaidis*] The last syllable of this word has been altered in C.

[2] *Alam*] aliam, V.

[3] *hæc*] In C. ħ, and written upon an erasure. The text appears to be defective or faulty. H. affords no assistance, nor does V., their readings being exactly similar.

[4] *die Omnium Sanctorum*] November 1.

[5] *Sibetuna*] Sipetuna, H.

[6] *quarto idus . . . Martii*] From 10 December to 19 February.

[7] *Hoc . . . transiretur*] This passage is so written in C., that it is not easy to decide to what year it belongs; and the same obscurity is studiously preserved in H. In V. no date occurs between A.D. 1149 and 1153.

sexaginta monasteriorum pater, annis circiter sexaginta tribus expletis, tertio decimo calendas Septembris,[1] inter filiorum manus obdormivit in Domino; eodem videlicet anno quo beatus papa Eugenius tertius, ejusdem patris sancti in sancta conversatione filius, ab hac luce migravit ad veram lucem; successore ejus Anastasio Romanæ ecclesiæ præsidente, regnantibus autem in Romanorum imperio Friderico illustri, in Francorum regno piissimo Ludovico, Ludovici filio.

Eodem anno facta est abbatia de Tileteia.

MCLIV.[2] Obiit piissimus rex Stephanus nono calendas Novembris,[3] sepultusque est in ecclesia de Faveresham, quam ipse fundaverat cum regina sua Mathildi. Cui successit in regnum Henricus filius[4] imperatricis, dux Normanniæ et comes Aquitaniæ et Andegaviæ; consecratusque est in regem apud Westmonasterium a Theobaldo archiepiscopo eodem anno, Dominica[5] ante Natale Domini. Qui ex Alienoride conjuge sua genuit quatuor filios, videlicet Willelmum, qui in puerili ætate mortuus est, Henricum regem, Ricardum Pictavinum et regem, Galfridum comitem Britonum, Johannem regem, prius[6] comitem Gloecestriæ, et Moretanniæ. Habuit etiam ex ea tres filias, quarum una tradita est Willelmo regi Siciliæ, alia regi[7] Petit Hispaniæ, tertia[8] Henrico duci Saxoniæ, qui dux postmodum rebellans contra

---

[1] *tertio decimo calendas Septembris*] August 20.

[2] *MCLIV.*] Here in the margin of C. occurs the rubric, "De obitu "regis Stephani et de coronatione "regis Henrici II." The same words are written in the margin of H. with a style, but they are not noticed in V.

[3] *nono calendas Novembris*] October 24.

[4] *filius*] filius filius, V. (*sic*).

[5] *Dominica*] Namely, on Sunday, 19 December.

[6] *regem, prius*] In C. these two words are written partly upon an erasure, partly above the line, and at a later period. They occur in the text of H. In V. the word "regem" stands in the margin.

[7] *regi*] In V. a space and a flaw in the parchment occur; apparently the result of an erasure.

[8] *tertia*] A marginal note in C. here adds, "Mater Othonis." It does not occur in H. nor V.

imperatorem Frethericum avunculum suum, ducatum amisit; sed filius ejus postea recuperavit.

Obiit Anastasius papa, successit Adrianus Anglicus.

MCLV. Rex Henricus Secundus Hugonem de Mortemari devicit. Natus est Henricus Tertius.[1]

MCLVI. Willelmus filius regis Henrici moritur.

MCLVII. Rex Henricus perrexit cum magno exercitu in Gualias, ubi quamplurimi, tam nobiles quam mediocres, a Gualensibus occisi sunt. f. 47 *b*.

MCLVIII. Willelmus, frater Henrici regis, moritur.

MCLIX. Rex Henricus cum exercitu maximo adiens Tolosam diutius eam obsedit; sed rex Ludovicus cum suo exercitu superveniens, ut auxilium præberet Raimundo[2] comiti Sancti Ægidii, (cujus uxorem Constantiam idem comes habuit in uxorem,) illum ab obsidione amovit. Willelmus comes Warenniæ, filius regis Stephani, ibidem moritur.

MCLX.[3] Obiit Adrianus papa, cui successit Alexander Tertius.

MCLXI. Obiit Teobaldus[4] archiepiscopus, cui successit Thomas cancellarius[5] domini regis.

MCLXII.

MCLXIII. Rex Henricus perrexit Gualias contra Ris regem, qui statim est ei subditus.

MCLXIV. Concilium celeberrimum celebratum est, præsidente papa Alexandro Tertio apud Turonis.

[Duellum inter Robertum de Munfort et Henricum de Essexe apud Radingum.][6]

MCLXV. Terræmotus magnus factus est in Conversione Sancti Pauli.[7] [Thomas archiepiscopus subiit exilium.][8]

---

[1] *Natus . . . Tertius*] A latter addition in the margin of C., but in the text of H. and V.

[2] *Raimundo*] Reimundo, V.

[3] MCLX.] MCLIX., V.

[4] *Teobaldus*] Theobaldus, V.

[5] *cancellarius*] In V. a marginal note here refers to A.D. 1162.

[6] *Duellum . . . Radingum*] This passage does not occur in C. or H., and in V. it is an early addition in the margin.

[7] *conversione S. Pauli*] January 25.

[8] [*Thomas . . . exilium*] From the margin of V., in an early hand.

MCLXVI. Obiit Galfridus junior de Mandavilla.

MCLXVII. Obiit imperatrix, mater Henrici Secundi regis.[1] Apud Cogeshalam[2] dedicatum est altare magnum in honore gloriosæ Virginis Mariæ et Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, die Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ,[3] a venerabili Gileberto Foliot, Londoniensi episcopo, qui eadem die super illud altare missam solemniter celebravit, domno Simone de Toni abbate ejusdem loci existente.

MCLXVIII. Domnus Simon abbas secundus recessit a Cogeshala[4] et ad Mailros[5] monasterium suum regreditur.

MCLXIX.[6] Cui successit domnus Odo,[7] abbas tertius ejusdem loci.

MCLXX. Henricus, filius Henrici regis, adhuc juvenis, vivente patre, inconsulte ab archiepiscopo Eboracensi Rogero apud Westmonasterium coronatus est.

f. 48. MCLXXI. Beatus Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, quondam regis Henrici Secundi cancellarius, pro ecclesiasticæ dignitatis libertate tuenda, postquam septem annis exilium perpessus fuerat, in basilica sedis suæ coram altare beati Benedicti, quinta die[8] Natalis Domini, dum vespertina synaxis ageretur, martyrio coronatus est.

[Obiit Henricus episcopus Wintoniensis.][9]

MCLXXII. Auditi sunt horrendi fragores tonitruorum, et coruscationes insolitæ fulminum visæ in nocte Dominicæ Nativitatis per totam Angliam atque Normanniam.

---

[1] *Obiit . . . regis*] In the margin of C. H. places it in 1166; V. in 1167.

[2] *Cogeshalam*] Coggeshale, V.

[3] *die Assumptionis B. Mariæ*] August 15.

[4] *Cogeshala*] Coggeshale, V.

[5] *Mailros*] Milros, V.

[6] MCLIX.] This date does not occur in H.

[7] *Odo*] This word is written on an erasure in C. In V. a considerable blank occurs immediately before it.

[8] *quinta die*] December 29.

[9] *Obiit . . . Wintoniensis*] A marginal note in V.

Ordinatio domni Simonis, episcopi Muraviensis, decimo calendas Februarii,[1] quondam abbatis de Cogeshala.[2]

MCLXXIII. Orta est dissentio magna inter Henricum regem Angliæ et Henricum filium ejus, et Ludovicum regem Franciæ. Nam rex Ludovicus, cujus filiam idem Henricus junior in uxorem duxerat, comesque Flandrensis Philippus,[3] et reliqui proceres regni Francorum, suggestione ac petitione ejusdem Henrici,—qui juvenili ductus levitate, et quorumdam malignantium adulatorio adquiescens consilio, pro patre, eo adhuc vivente, regnare volebat,—contra regem Henricum unanimiter insurrexerunt, ejusque terram transmarinam rapinis et incendiis devastantes, Rothomagum etiam diutius obsiderunt.

Eodem anno comes Sancti Ægidii fecit homagium regi Henrico de comitatu Tolosano, salva fide Lodowici regis Francorum.[4]

Robertus etiam comes Leircestriæ[5] cum multitudine Flandrensium in Angliam eodem tempore applicans, a comite Hugone Bigod recepti sunt, qui postquam Gipeswic et castellum quod dicitur Haghene[6] cum circumadjacente regione depopulati sunt, terram Sancti Edmundi cum abbatia deprædari[7] disposuerant. Quo pervenientes, justo Dei judicio, et meritis sanctissimi regis et martyris, Flandrenses quidem ignominiose a militibus regis[8] interempti sunt. Comes vero cum comitissa, quæ se armis militaribus præmunierat, capti et in carcere diutius sunt retrusi. Willelmus etiam

[1] *decimo calendas Februarii*] January 23.

[2] *Cogeshala*] Coggeshale, V.

[3] *Philippus*] Written upon an erasure in C.

[4] *Eodem . . . Francorum*] This passage is written by a different but contemporaneous hand in the margin of C. In H. it is also a marginal addition by a second hand. It is carried into the text of V.

[5] *Leircestriæ*] Leicestriæ, V.

[6] *Gipeswic . . . Haghene*] In C. written partly upon an erasure in the text, and that being insufficient, the words "dicitur Haghene" are carried into the margin. In the text of H. and V.

[7] *deprædari*] deprædare, C. H. V.

[8] *et martyris . . . regis*] Om. V.

rex Scotiæ, qui simul cum Henrico juniore contra
f. 48 b. regem conspiraverat, eodem tempore Northumbriam depopulans, a Ranulfo de Glanvilla et Roberto de Stutevile, qui contra cum exercitum duxerant, apud Alnewic captus est. Quem postmodum rex Henricus ad regnum suum redire[1] permittens, tria ejus præcipua castella loco obsidum in sua manu retinuit, militesque proprios in eisdem locavit. Episcopus similiter Dunhelmensis, et Rogerus de Mubrai,[1] comes Willelmus de Albemare, comes Cestriæ, comes Willelmus Gloecestriæ, et alii quamplures nobilium, unanimiter conspiraverant contra regem: sed de his omnibus læta potitus victoria, castella et munitiones eorum funditus evertit. Muros antiquos Leircestriæ[3] dissipavit. Reginam insuper suam Alienor, quæ cum filiis[4] in eum insurgere voluit, per multos annos inclusam tenuit.

Anno MCLXXIV. [Ricardus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis et Rogerus episcopus Wintoniensis Romæ consecrati sunt.][5] Captus est Willelmus rex Scotiæ.[6]

Anno MCLXXV. Oritur hæresis perniciosa Publicanorum in Francia.

Anno MCLXXVI. Obiit piæ memoriæ domnus Odo, abbas tertius [de Cogeshala:[7] cui successit domnus Petrus, monachus de Valle-Dei, frater magistri Stephani, cancellarii Lincolniensis ecclesiæ. Facta sunt tonitrua, coruscationes, et sæva tempestas, et grando[8] igni permixtus, cujus petræ ova gallinaria superabant.[9]

---

[1] *redire*] Om. V.

[2] *Mubrai*] Mumbrai, V.

[3] *Leircestriæ*] Leicestriæ, V. C. here adds "atque Cestriæ," but it has been struck out with a pen. H. does not notice the addition, nor does V.

[4] *filiis*] filiis suis, V.

[5] *Ricardus . . . sunt*] In the margin of V.

[6] *Captus . . . Scotiæ*] Added in C. by a different hand. In the text of H. and V.

[7] *Cogeshala*] Coggeshale, V.

[8] *et grando*] ingrando, H.

[9] *Facta . . . . superabant*] This sentence occurs in the margin of C., written by the first hand. It is carried into the text of H., but is not noticed by V.

Anno MCLXXVII. Obiit comes Hugo Bigod, vir magnificus.

Anno MCLXXVIII. Reliquiæ Sancti Amphibali martyris, qui beatum Albanum, Angliæ protomartyrem, ad fidem Christi convertit, sicut in historia Britonum legitur, inventæ sunt; et lapides pluebant.[1]

Anno MCLXXIX. Concilium celeberrimum apud Romam celebratum est, præsidente papa Alexandro Tertio.

Imperator Frethericus, cum omni gente sua, schismatico papa derelicto, ad unitatem sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ rediit, et papæ Alexandro debitam reverentiam et subjectionem exhibuit.

Obiit Richardus de Luci, et apud abbatiam suam de Liethnes[2] jacet sepultus.

Mutata est moneta in Anglia.[3]

MCLXXX. Canonici de Perendune migraverunt Maldonam.

Anno MCLXXXI. Obiit Alexander papa, cui successit Lucius papa.

Obiit Rogerus archiepiscopus Eboracensis.

Obiit et rex Ludovicus, et in quadam abbatia ordinis Cisterciensis quam ipse fundaverat, sepultus est, quæ vocatur Barbeaus[4] super Sequana,[5] et regnavit pro eo Philippus[6] filius ejus, strenuissimus et victoriosissimus rex; qui duxit in uxorem filiam comitis de Hanou, neptem videlicet Philippi comitis[7] Flandriæ, f. 49.

[1] *et lapides pluebant*] By a different hand in C. Not in H., but carried into the text of V., which at this point introduces the death of Richard de Luci.

[2] *Liethnes*] Liesnes, V.

[3] *Obiit . . . Anglia*] These two notices are written in the margin of C. The text of H. gives the former only.

[4] *Barbeaus*] Barbeus, H.; Barbaus, V.

[5] *Sequana*] Secana, V.

[6] *Philippus*] In C. the handwriting here changes in size, and its style is somewhat different. This alteration takes place at the top of f. 49, which appears to be an addition, as well as f. 50. The first and second lines of f. 51 are written upon an erasure, and then, at A.D. 1189, the original execution of the MS. is resumed. No change occurs in H. nor V.

[7] *comitis*] Om. V.

ex qua suscepit filium nomine Lodovicum, qui natus est anno incarnationis Domini MCLXXXVII.[1] Regina vero postmodum moritur, eodem videlicet anno quo idem rex Philippus iter suum in Hierosolymam arripuit.

Puer Robertus a Judæis crudeliter occiditur apud Sanctum Ædmundum.

Anno MCLXXXII. Rex Henricus Secundus pacem reformavit inter Philippum regem Galliæ et Philippum comitem Flandriæ.

Anno MCLXXXIII. Henricus rex junior, qui contra patrem rebellaverat, apud Marteus moritur absque liberis, sepultusque est Rothomagi in ecclesia Beatæ Mariæ; cujus uxor Margareta regi Belo Hungariorum postmodum nupsit.

Anno MCLXXXIV. Obiit Richardus archiepiscopus Catuariensis, cui successit magister Baldewinus Wigorniensis episcopus, qui prius fuerat monachus ordinis Cisterciensis, et abbas de Forde extiterat.

Obiit Abel, primus abbas de Sancta-Oystha.

Anno MCLXXXV. Obiit Lucius papa, cui successit Urbanus papa.

Terræ motus factus est quinto decimo kalendas Maii,[2] et eclipsis solis fuit.

Patriarcha[3] Hierosolymitanus in Angliam venit.

Comes Johannes adiit Hiberniam cum multis militibus.

Anno MCLXXXVI.[4] Obiit Gaufridus comes Britonum, filius regis Henrici, apud Parisius, sepultusque est primus omnium in ecclesia Beatæ Mariæ in eadem urbe; qui ex filia Conani comitis genuerat eodem anno filium, qui Arturus appellatus est.

Anno MCLXXXVII. Natus est Arturus, filius Gaufridi,

[1] *MCLXXXVII.*] Here, in the margin of C., written with a style, and nearly defaced, occur the words, "iij. "nonas Septembris, feria v." It is not noticed in H. The day indicated is Thursday, 3 September.

[2] *quinto decimo kalendas Maii*] April 17.

[3] *Patriarcha*] In V. ascribed to A.D. 1176.

[4] *MCLXXXVI.*] MCLXVII., V.

comitis Britanniæ. Item natus est Lodowicus, filius regis Philippi Franciæ.[1]

Hoc anno Saláádini exercitus Christianorum exercitum, laborioso itinere confectum et nimio caloris æstu prægravatum, aqua omnino deficiente, expugnavit in loco qui dicitur Marescaucie, qui locus distat a civitate Tyberiadis tribus millibus. Tunc sex ex militibus regis Guidonis ad Saláádinum confugerunt, et de omni re et proposito Christianorum eum[2] instruxerunt. Unde Saláádinus, qui antea de discrimine belli dubitabat, resumpsit vires, et cum infinita f. 49 *b*. multitudine bellatorum Christianos omni genere pugnandi invasit et expugnavit. Tandem Tekedinus, nepos Saláádini, Guidonem regem Hierusalem fugam arripientem cepit cum Cruce Dominici ligni, interfecto Rufino episcopo de Achon, qui eam, contra consuetudinem, loricatus portavit, et hoc digno Dei judicio, quia magis in armis terrenis quam in cœlestibus confidentiam habuit. Princeps Reginaldus ibidem interfectus est; Rogerus de Mumbrai, Hugo de Bellocampo capti sunt, et plures nobilium cum eis; et fere universus exercitus Christianorum a Sarracenis confractus, captus et trucidatus est; sed comes Tripolitanus cum quibusdam aliis per fugam illæsus evasit.

Statim vero Saláádinus militiæ Templi et Hospitalis milites segregari fecit ab aliis et coram se decapitari, et ipse principem Reimundum de Castellione propria manu interfecit. Deinde civitatem Achon cepit et adjacentia loca, et munitiones fere omnes de partibus illis, absque Tyro, quam Conradus le Marchis viriliter tuebatur. Cumque hanc civitatem capere non posset, abiit inde et cepit Baruth, et utramque civitatem quæ dicitur Gibelet, et Sydonem et Cæsaream, Joppen et Nazareth, et Sanctum Georgium et montem Thabor,

[1] *Natus . . . . . Franciæ*] In the margin of C. These passages also occur in the margin of H., but they are not recognized by V.

[2] *eum*] Om. V.

et Fabam et Cavam Templi, et alia plura castella. Saphadinus autem, frater Saláádini, cum exercitu suo, (quem de Ægypto et Alexandria et Babylone conduxerat),[1] omnem regionem a Darone et Gazaris usque Hierusalem, castella omnia et civitates confrigendo et interficiendo habitatores, captivavit, absque Aschalone civitate, quæ muris fortissimis munita erat. Deinde applicuit ad Joppen,[2] et cepit eam cum tota regione illa, et castellum quod vocatur Mirabel, et omnia montana circa Bethléém, a meridie et occidente Hierusalem. Regina vero, Guidonis regis uxor, recepit se cum familia et duabus filiabus suis in civitate Aschalona,[3] et eam munivit victualibus et bellatoribus; sed postmodum anno sequenti tradidit civitatem Saláádino
f. 50. pro redemptione mariti sui, et sic liberavit eum a carcere Saláádini. Comes Tripolitanus, cum terram suam tradere proposuisset Saláádino, inventus est mortuus in lecto suo. Unde uxor illius tradidit se et civitatem Tripolim Reimundo principi Antiochiæ, qui bene munierat Antiochiam cum tota fere terra sua contra Saláádinum.

Post hæc, vicesima die mensis Septembris sancta civitas Hierusalem obsessa est ab incredulis cum magno clangore tubarum, et strepitu armorum, et ululatu vociferantium. Hierosolymitæ vero per unam hebdomadam viriliter contra eos certabant. Sed tandem Christiani crudeli et indefesso Turcorum certamine sic defatigati et defecti erant, ut vix viginti vel triginta ad defensiones murorum civitatis apparerent. Non inveniebatur jam homo tam audax in omni civitate qui pro pretio centum Bisantiorum auderet una nocte ad defensionem vigilare. Inter hæc habitatores Hierusalem, necessitate compulsi, legatos[4] ad regem Syriæ per ter mittunt, supplicantes quatenus centum Bisantiorum pro

---

[1] *quem . . . conduxerat*] Om. V.
[2] *Joppen*] Jopen, V.
[3] *Aschalona*] Aschalonia, V.
[4] *legatos*] Om. V.

sua redemptione ab eis accipiat,[1] et eos libere de sancta civitate cum suis egredi permittat. At illo renuente, tandem, accepto consilio, tale tributum Hierosolymitis instituit, quatenus unusquisque masculus decem annorum et supra, pro sui liberatione decem Bisantios persolveret, femina quinque, puer septem annorum et infra, unum; et sic a servitute liberati, quo vellent securi abirent. Placuit ergo conventio ista domino patriarchæ et cæteris qui pecunias[2] habebant; qui vero aureos non habebant, lamentabili voce indesinenter plangebant. Igitur anno MCLXXXVII. tradita est Hierusalem (proh dolor!) in manibus nefandorum a Christianis, qui eam possederant per quater viginti et septem annos ex quo erepta fuerat a potestate paganorum.

Obiit Urbanus papa, cui successit Gregorius cancellarius, qui et magister Albertus dictus est, qui vix per duos menses papatum tenuit, et sepultus est apud Pise, f. 50 *b*. cui successit Clemens papa.

Obiit Gilebertus Foliot, Londoniensis episcopus.

De principibus qui crucem sumpserunt.

Anno MCLXXXVIII. Hortatu Gregorii papæ Philippus rex Galliæ, Henricus rex Angliæ, Ricardus comes Pictavinus, Philippus comes Flandrensis, dux Burgundiæ, Theobaldus comes Blesensis, Henricus comes Trecensis, Jacobus de Avethne,[3] Bernardus de Sancto Walerico, Willelmus de Barres, Willelmus comes de Mandeville, Ranulphus de Glanville, Robertus comes Leircestriæ,[4] comes de Ferrariis, et reliqui principes, comites et barones, et præcipui milites totius fere Christianitatis, necnon et Willelmus Remensis archiepiscopus, et Balduinus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, episcopus Belvacensis, Hubertus Walter episcopus Saresberiæ, archi-

[1] *accipiat*] Omitting the intermediate clause, MS. V. here reads "accipiat. At illo," &c.

[2] *pecunias*] pecuniam, V.

[3] *Avethne*] Auehtne, V.

[4] *Leircestriæ*] Leicestriæ, V.

diaconus Colecestriæ, magister Radulfus de Altaripa, et alii quamplures nobiles et ignobiles, tam clerici quam laici, quorum non erat numerus, signum sanctæ crucis zelo Dei accensi in vestibus sumpserunt.[1]

Eodem anno, Fredericus Romanorum imperator iter peregrinationis Hierosolymitanæ arripuit, ducens in comitatu suo septem antistites cum uno archipræsule, duos duces, comites decem et novem, tres marchiones, tria millia militum et reliquorum circiter octoginta millia; qui nolens se committere ventis et mari, duxit exercitum suum per terram Belis regis Hungariorum, et per terram Ysakii imperatoris Constantinopolitani, deinde per terram soltani de Yconia, ubi graves impugnationes cum exercitu suo pertulit, antequam Yconiam et quasdam alias Asiæ civitates armata manu caperet. Cumque perveniret in Armenia, terra Rupini de la Muntaine, ad fluvium qui dicitur Selef, et major pars exercitus sui per vadum transiret; ille moram summariorum diutius non ferens, misit se cum equo suo in flumine juxta vadum, et corruens de equo solus submersus est. Tractusque in terram sui evisceraverunt eum, carnemque aqua decoctam et ab ossibus separatam sepelierunt Antiochiæ; ossa autem illius Conradus
f. 51. filius ejus secum transtulit apud Tyrum, ut loca quæ vivus non poterat, saltem mortuus visitaret. Cujus exercitus ita variis eventibus postea dissipatus est, ut vix cum filio ante Achon quingenti viri reperirentur.

De dissentione regum, et de morte regis Henrici,

Anno MCLXXXIX.[2] Postquam rex Philippus Galliæ et Henricus rex Angliæ, eorumque principes et comites, archiepiscopi et episcopi, possessiones tam clericorum

[1] *sumpserunt*] "Obiit Ricardus "episcopus Wintoniæ," V., in the margin.

[2] *MCLXXXIX.*] Here the original hand is resumed in C.

quam laicorum, et redditus ecclesiasticos et pecuniam singulorum violenta manu decimaverant ad conficiendum iter Hierosolymitanum, justo Dei judicio, (qui odio habet rapinam in holocaustum,) orta est magna dissensio inter prædictos reges et principes, unde tota illa pecunia violenter collecta, in donativis militum et stipendiis exercituum penitus consumpta est. Nam utrorumque exercitus ad pugnam ter evocatus, maximam stragem hominum deprædationesque animalium, incendia desolationesque ecclesiarum, urbium, villarum, subversiones castellorum operatus est. Castellum Radulfi, cum comitatu quem Baldewinus de Riveres tenuit, et Ysoudun, et quinque comitatus in Caorzin, Cinomannis etiam atque Turonis, a rege Philippo capta sunt. Unde rex Henricus Anglorum, qui armis et potentia, seu divitiis atque prudentia, de hostibus suis semper triumphare consueverat, vehementi tristitia affectus et tactus dolore cordis intrinsecus, decidit in subitaneam ægritudinem, qua etiam ex hac luce subtractus est apud Chinun castellum suum, mense Julio, secundo nonas,[1] Julii, et apud sanctimoniales Fontis-Ebraldi sepultus ; qui regnum Anglorum per triginta et quatuor[3] annos et septem mensibus et diebus tribus,[2] cum ducatu Normanniæ et comitatu Aquitaniæ et Andegaviæ, strenuissime rexerat, semper paci civium, pauperum atque mediocrum studens, nobilium ac potentum arrogantiam atque tyrannidem potenter reprimens, fures, reos atque criminosos immisericorditer puniens. Gualenses etiam regibus Angliæ semper rebelles, non sine magna suorum principum amissione et exercitus sui dispendio, debellaverat, ac tandem invitos nolentes-

[1] *secundo nonas*] July 6. In C., written upon an erasure, which also adds in the margin, "anno ætatis "suæ lvj." In H. the words, "ij. "nonas Julii" form part of the text, "anno ætatis suæ lvij." being added in the margin. V. reads, "secundo "nonas Julii, et apud," &c., as in the text.

[2] *tribus*] In the margin of C.

[3] *triginta et quatuor*] The last four numerals are written upon an erasure in C.

que subjugaverat. Insuper et maximam partem Hiberniæ, tum per se, tum per suos principes, suo dominio subegerat.

f. 51 *b.* Cumque in regni sui negotiis tractandis, providendis, disponendis, ubique fortunatissimus existeret, a filiis tamen suis, quos genuerat, enutriverat, exaltaverat, multoties graviter infestabatur, sed præcipue ab Henrico, quem regni diademate inconsulte insigniverat, sicut superius descripsimus. Quæ persecutio intestina atque domestica ideo ei justo Dei judicio, ut credimus, illata est, quia in beatum Thomam plurimum deliquerat. Nam cum latiore imperii potentia, divitiis ac seculari magnificentia præ cunctis regibus Angliæ, qui ante eum regnaverant, præpolleret, non tamen his contentus, ausu temerario irruit in divina, libertates videlicet ecclesiasticæ dignitatis ac jura ecclesiastica usurpare contendens, sicut in passione beati Thomæ plenius legitur. Quod inexorabilis discordiæ inter ipsum et beatum Thomam seminarium fuisse dinoscitur. Archiepiscopatus insuper et episcopatus vacantes, necnon et abbatias propriis pastoribus orbatas, et census ecclesiasticos in proprios usus, multis annis retinere consueverat. Quæ nimirum contra sacros canones illicite usurpata, regiæ majestatis serenitatem plurimum obnubilabant.

Obiit[1] Galfridus Ridel, episcopus Elyensis.

Obiit Willelmus de Mandaville, secundo idus Decembris.[2]

De coronatione regis Ricardi, et de persecutione Judaica.

Henrico autem rege jam defuncto, Ricardus comes Pictavinus filius ejus successit ei in regnum, eodem videlicet anno, atque in mense Septembri, Dominica[3]

[1] *Obiit . . . Decembris*] These two entries are written in red ink in the margin of C. They also occur in the margin of H., but are not recognized by V.

[2] *secundo idus Decembris*] December 12.

[3] *Dominica*] Sunday, 3 September, 1189.

ante Nativitatem beatæ Mariæ, a Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Westmonasterium coronatus est. In cujus coronatione plurimi Judæorum Londoniis habitantium a Christianis, quadam inter eos dissensione suborta, trucidati sunt, atque domus eorum, quæ quasi palatia regum erectæ fuerant, concrematæ sunt atque eversæ; quæ persecutio Judæorum, in ortu jubilæi sui, in quo aliquod divinæ clementiæ signum aut diuturnæ captivitatis remissionem sibi fore cœlitus venturam interpretabantur, inchoata, vix per annum nec terrore regio, nec imperiali ejus edicto, nisi sub juratoria tandem cautione [a] Judæis præstita, conquiescere potuit. Ubicumque enim inimici Christi a Christianis immisericorditer perimebantur, nec ullus subterfugii locus eis tutus aderat, nisi in castellis regiis inclusi tenerentur. Sed nec sic quidem mortis evasere pericula. Nam cum f. 52.
apud Eboracum quadringenti et eo amplius Judæi in munitione regia inclusi haberentur, ob persecutionem Christianorum, qui tunc ad comitatus convenerant, declinandam, nihilominus tamen a quibusdam militibus et prædictæ urbis civibus sunt obsessi et acrius expugnati. Cumque assultus expugnantium diutius ferre non possent, et jam omnis spes evadendi sublata fuisset, miserabilem mortem dirioris mortis metu voluntarie sibi ipsimet accersierunt, eligentes potius mutua cæde deperire quam persequentium rabie truculentius atque impudentius jugulari. Erat autem quidam inter eos natu major et in lege Mosaica instructior, quem Rabi cognominabant, cui omnes auscultabant, a minimo usque ad maximum, qui eosdem ad tam horribile genus mortis exhortationibus et exemplari doctrina patrum in Veteri Lege præcedentium, animaveret. Cumque fere omnes, exceptis quibusdam paucis, qui se postmodum in Dominum Jesum credere simularunt,[1] ejus hortatui[2] obtemperarent, ille, arrepto cultro, incidit fibras gutturis singulorum cum arteriis, projectis prius eorum pecuniis

[1] *simularunt*] simulaverunt, V. | [2] *hortatui*] optatui, V.

in aqua cœnulenta, quæ subtus decurrebat, ac tandem semetipsum simili morte[1] jugulans. Sicque inimici Christiani nominis cadavera inhumata canibus et avibus exposuerunt; animas vero gehennalibus flammis in perpetuum cruciandas tradentes. Quod miserabile infortunium non sine divina animadversione eis contigisse arbitrandum est. Nam cum gens illa nefaria per regnum Angliæ circumquaque dispersa sub Henrico rege Secundo in diuturna pacis securitate et temporum tranquillitate vitam in omnibus temporalibus opulentissimam duxisset, in tantam prorupit audaciam, immo vesaniam, ut Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum sacrilego ore non solum in secretis suis conventiculis, sed etiam publica voce impie[2] blasphemaret, ac fidei nostræ atque ecclesiasticis sacramentis palam conviciando derogaret, nec non et quosdam Christianorum pretio comparatos ad dedecus et improperium fidei Christianæ et ad majorem
f. 52 *b.* suæ damnationis cumulum cruci affigeret. Plures insuper nobilium atque mediocrum ad summam egestatem, distractis patrimoniis[3] et possessionibus per Judaici fœnoris occasionem pervenerant; unde non immerito tam crudelis persecutio a Christianis eis illata est.

Quomodo rex Ricardus episcopatus vacantes dederit, quos pater ejus diu retinuerat.

Rex autem Ricardus in regni solio sublimatus, fratri suo notho Galfrido Eboracensem dedit archiepiscopatum; Godefrido de Luci, filio Ricardi de Luci, Wintoniensem dedit episcopatum; Ricardo archidiacono[4] Helyensi, Londoniensem; Huberto Waltero, clerico Ranulfi de Glanvilla, Salesberiensem; Willelmo de Longocampo, Helyensem, qui et cancellarius domini regis effectus est, cujus etiam industriæ regnum Angliæ et

[1] *morte*] morte seipsum, V. (*sic*).

[2] *impie*] Written in C. upon an erasure previously occupied by a longer word.

[3] *patrimoniis*] patrociniis, V.

[4] *archidiacono*] In C. this word is written upon an erasure.

negotia regni commissa sunt, rege Ricardo Hierosolymam proficiscente.

De regum profectione.

Anno MCXC. Rex Ricardus et rex Philippus iter Hierosolymitanum in æstate arripuerunt; sed per totam hyemem in Sicilia apud Messanam[1] demorati sunt, classem suam præparentes, atque exercitum suum et victualia aggregantes.

De transfretatione regum, et de morte principum.

Anno MCXCI. Prædicti reges cum exercitu suo mare Siculum in vernali tempore transfretaverunt, cum jam plures ex episcopis et comitibus superius memoratis cum aliis innumerabilibus, anno præcedenti reges præcesserant, atque Acres[2] diutius frustra obsederant. In qua obsidione obiit archiepiscopus Baldewinus, Radulfus de Fugieres,[3] comes Robertus de Perche,[4] comes Theobaldus Blesensis,[5] comes Stephanus frater ejus, Conradus filius imperatoris Fretherici, comes de Ferrariis, comes Robertus[6] Leircestriæ, Ranulfus de Glanville, Radulfus de Altaripa, archidiaconus Colcestriæ, et fere omnes nobiles et alii quamplures, ex nimia aeris intemperie.

Obiit Clemens papa, cui successit Cœlestinus papa, qui et Jacinctus antea dictus est.

De coronatione imperatoris.

Eodem anno, Henricus rex, filius imperatoris Fretherici, consecratus est in imperatorem a Cœlestino papa in Paschali solemnitate.[7]

[1] *Messanam*] So corrected, apparently by the first hand, in C. from "Meschines," which is the unaltered reading of H. and V.

[2] *Acres*] Glossed in C. "Achon." The gloss is carried into the text of H. and V.

[3] *Radulfus de Fugieres*] Written in C. upon an erasure.

[4] *de Perche*] Upon an erasure in C.

[5] *Blesensis*] Added in C. above the line. In the text of H. and V.

[6] *Robertus*] In C. this is an interlineation. In H. in the text.

[7] *Paschali solemnitate*] In A.D. 1191, Easter day fell upon 14 April.

Mense Junio in vigilia[1] beati Joannis-Baptistæ, eclipsis solis apparuit particularis circa horam sextam, et perduravit usque in octavam horam, luna vicesima septima, sole in signo Cancri existente.

De morte comitis Flandrensis.

Comes[2] Flandrensis Philippus, qui sororem regis de
f. 53. Portingal duxerat in uxorem, cum rege Philippo in terram Hierosolymitanam proficiscens, absque liberis obiit.

De captione archiepiscopi Eboracensis et de objectione cancellarii.

Archiepiscopus Eboracensis Galfridus, a Roma rediens et jam consecratus, apud Dovre[3] cum suis applicuit, quem Matthæus de Clere, ex præcepto cancellarii regis, violenta manu ecclesiam beati Martini ingrediens, ab altari abstraxit die Exaltationis[4] Sanctæ Crucis, archiepiscopo crucem suam in manu tenente; ipsumque carcerali custodiæ mancipavit. Quæ temeraria præsumptio, licet pro securiori pace regni tuenda acta sit, in cancellarii tamen dejectionem, ut dicebatur, plurimum redundavit. Nam illico subortis quibusdam simultatibus inter ipsum cancellarium et comitem Johannem, regni sibi commissi administrationem perdidit, et de regno egredi compulsus est.[5]

Quomodo rex Ricardus subegit sibi Cyprum, et desponsavit reginam suam.

Rex Philippus in vernali tempore mare Mediterraneum cum suis, ut jam dictum est, ingressus, apud

[1] *vigilia*] June 23.

[2] *Comes*] A change in the style of the writing is here visible in C.

[3] *Dovre*] Dovoriam, V.

[4] *die Exaltationis*] September 14.

[5] *Quæ .... compulsus est*] This passage is written partly upon an erasure in C., and partly in the margin. In the text of H. and V.

Ptolomaidam[1] applicuit; quem rex Ricardus cum universo comitatu suo illico subsequens, Dei judicio in Cyprum insulam appulsus est, ubi cum aliquantulum temporis ob sui suorumque recreationem, ac recentium victualium aggregationem, post tædiosam maris vexationem pausare decrevisset, dominus illius insulæ, qui sibi nomen imperatoris usurpabat, prohibuit ne fines suos ingredi præsumeret, bellum applicantibus intentans. Interdixit etiam ne quis suorum exercitui regis victualia venderet, aut res venales exponeret. Cujus animositatem ac detestandam inhumanitatem rex Ricardus non æquo animo ferens, prædictam insulam armata manu viriliter aggressus est, eamque suæ ditioni infra breve tempus subegit; ipsumque imperatorem, (qui obsides pacis tradiderat, sed fœdus pacis initum ruperat,) de civitate in civitatem fugientem comprehendit, comprehensumque custodiæ carcerali mancipavit. Cumque dominium totius insulæ ac thesauros imperatoris obtinuisset, necnon et filiam ejus, nobiliores quoque[2] loco obsidum recepisset, desponsavit ibidem reginam suam, filiam videlicet regis de Novaria, quam regina Alienor adduxerat ad filium suum in Sicilia commorantem.

De adventu regis ad Achon, et de frumenti venditione.

Audiens igitur rex Ricardus exercitum Domini apud Ptolomaidam maxima famis inedia laborare, ita ut sex- f. 53 *b*.

[1] *Ptolomaidam*] Tholomaidam, V. An interlinear note in C. reads thus: "Quæ et Achon dicta est, "non Accaron, ut plerique æsti- "mant, sicut Hieronymus testatur "in vita beatæ Paulæ, et sicut Ful- "cho Carnotensis plenius descrip- "sit." The first passage referred to is to be found in S. Jerome's Ep. cviii. § 8 (vol. i. p. 882, ed. Migne), and that quoted from Fulcho Carnot. in DuChesne's Scriptt. RerumFranc. iv. 832, § 17. H. does not recognize this note, nor does V.

[2] *nobiliores quoque*] "et nobi- "liores" as originally written in C., but altered by erasure and interlineation. H. and V. have the amended reading.

a rius frumenti sexaginta[1] marcis venundaretur, ex Cypro insula quam subegerat victualium copiam undique aggregans, tantæ calamitati succurrere festinavit. Onustis itaque alimentorum copia navibus,[2] ipse cum universo apparatu et exercitu suo Ptolomaidam tendit.

De expugnatione Dromundæ.

Navigantibus autem illis, apparuit eis quædam navis permaxima, quam Dromundam vocant, ex civitate Baruth veniens, immensis divitiis referta, quæ obsessis infra urbem Achon opem[3] delatura erat, in qua septingenti strenuissimi juvenes continebantur. Quam undique rostratis navibus circumvallantes, vix perforari ac submergi potuit, captis ex ea vivis octoginta viris; sicque cum maximo gaudio apud Achon in Pentecoste[4] applicuerunt. Ex quorum adventu Christianorum exercitus valde lætus efficitur, nimirum de advenientium numerositate factus audacior, atque de alimentorum copia robustior.

De captione urbis Achon, id est, Acres.

Moxque ambo reges, militari ac populari caterva stipati, urbem cum petrariis ac diversis machinis die noctuque viriliter aggrediuntur. Sarraceni vero obsessi, assultum expugnantium diutius non ferentes, urbem regibus tradiderunt quarto idus Julii;[5] quibus sub hac conditione vita concessa est, si Saláádinus pro redemptione eorum septingenta millia bisantiorum dare vellet, necnon et septingentos captivos, quos eligere vellent, reddere, crucemque Dominicam, quam in bello ceperant restituere. Quod cum Saláádino perlatum esset, qui nonlonge a Christianorum exercitu castra sua multo jam

---

[1] *sexaginta*] Written upon an erasure in C.

[2] *navibus*] Above the line in C.

[3] *opem*] Om. V.

[4] *Pentecoste*] June 2, 1191.

[5] *quarto idus Julii*] July 12.

tempore posuerat, nimium ex eo quod acciderat animo consternatus, facturum quod petebatur se esse[1] spopondit. Sed cum dies inter utrosque constituta, qua hæc fieri deberent, advenisset, Saláádinus dolose machinans contra Christianos, alioque usus consilio, sicut prolocutus fuerat, facere dissimulavit.

De discordia inter reges exorta.

His itaque gestis, voluit rex Philippus urbem illam, et reliquas quas capturi erant urbes, marchisio de Monteferrato tradere, eumque in terra Hierosolymitana regem constituere, eo quod juniorem filiam regis Amalarii duxisset in uxorem, sorore ejus, regina scilicet,[2] jam defuncta. Cujus voluntati rex Ricardus prorsus ob- f. 54.
stitit; asserens justius fore regi Guidoni, regno jampridem spoliato, regnum suum restituere, quam alium, illo adhuc vivente, substituere, cum constaret hunc non per ignaviam vel socordiam regnum amisisse, sed in gravi belli certamine, ob inimicorum numerositatem ac sui exercitus paucitatem, simul cum cruce Dominica a Sarracenis fuisse captum. Quod nimirum inexorabilis discordiæ inter prædictos principes seminarium ibidem fuisse dinoscitur. Cum tamen hæc discordia primo apud Messanam Siciliæ civitatem inter eosdem pullulaverat,[3] cum rex Ricardus eamdem urbem armata manu cepit, plurimosque prostravit, rege Philippo in ea commorante, ob convitia et vexationes quæ exercitus regis Francorum exercitui suo inferebat.[4]

De regressione regis Philippi.

Cernens itaque rex Philippus diversæ nationis homines, qui ad loca sancta confluxerant, se sub principatu

[1] *se esse*] Om. V.

[2] *scilicet*] Om. V.

[3] *pullulaverat*] In C. pullulaverit. So also H. and V.

[4] *inferebat*] ferebat, V.

regis Ricardi tradere, famamque probitatis ejus de die in diem excrescere, eo quod esset in thesauris locupletior, in donativis erogandis profusior, in exercitu numerosior, in expugnatione hostium ferocior, reputans pro alterius excellentiori gloria famam probitatis ejus obfuscari, maturius repatriare disposuit. His autem omnibus illud accessit, quod comes Flandriæ jam obierat, cujus terram plurimum gestiebat. Igitur quod animo pertractaverat, celeriter, mense Augusto subsequenti, effectui mancipavit; juratoria tamen cautione prius præstita, ne terram regis vel principum qui cum eo ibidem remanebant, violenter interim invaderet.

De interfectione Ptolomensium, et de fuga eorum qui maritimas occupaverant urbes.

Rege autem Francorum sic discedente, continuo rex Ricardus, in vigilia Assumptionis[1] beatæ Mariæ, ad obsidendum et expugnandum reliquas maritimas civitates, de fossatis urbis Achon primus audacter progreditur, figique ibi tentoria jussit, spectante e vicino exercitu Saláádini, ubi tria millia Sarracenorum et septingentos et quinquaginta capitali sententia damnavit de his quos in Ptolomaida ceperant, suique juris esse videbantur. Quod ubi Sarracenis innotuit, qui urbes maritimas occupaverant, metuentes ne simili rabie, in eos, sicut in Ptolomenses debaccharetur,[2] diffiden-
f. 54 *b.* tesque de subventione Saláádini, qui pro redemptione cæterorum postulata negaverat, relictis urbibus vacuis, diffugerunt statim ut adventum regis audierunt. Hoc illi qui in Caipha et qui in Cæsarea, in Assur et in Joppen, in Gaza et qui in Ascalonia habitaverant, egerunt. Sicque, Deo volente, actum est ut[3] omnis illa maritima

[1] *vigilia Assumptionis*] August 14.
[2] *debaccharetur*] debacaret, C.H.V.
[3] *actum est ut*] In C. these three words are written in the margin; but they are carried into the text of H. V. reads, "actum est omnis," omitting the word "ut."

regio versus plagam illam a rege caperetur, et capta a Christianis inhabitaretur, nec tamen absque prælii certamine, cum exercitus Saláádini semper a latere exercitum Christianorum subsequeretur, atque extremas acies in angustioribus locis graviter infestaret, ubique insidias tendens; unde et de utroque exercitu plurimi sæpius corruerunt.

De interfectione marchisii, et de quadam secta.

Post Pascha,[1] anno sequenti,[2] dum marchisus de Monteferrato per plateam civitatis Tyri incautius equitaret, a duobus Sarracenis, quos Hautasis appellant, cum cultellis perimitur, a domino suo, qui Vetus de Monte vocatur, directi ut eumdem principem necarent, qui per longum tempus cum familia ejusdem marchisii manserant, Christianos se simulantes, donec aptum tempus perspexissent quo nefariam domini sui jussionem explerent. De quorum secta refertur, quod domino suo ita in omnibus quasi Deo obediant, ut cuilibet horrendæ mortis periculo pro domini sui jussione explenda ultro se exponant. Æmuli vero regis Ricardi ubique diffamaverunt prædictum principem per consilium et proditionem regis fuisse necatum; quod postea omnibus innotuit esse falsissimum, dum causa mortis prædicti principis evidentius esset discussa et agnita, rege etiam innocentiam suam super hoc defendere volente, cum tale scelus ab æmulis ei objiceretur.

Quomodo rex Ricardus dedit Henrico comiti Trecensi regnum Hierosolymitanum, et regi Guidoni Cyprum.

Uxorem vero marchisii dedit rex Ricardus Henrico nepoti suo, comiti Trecensium, cum regno Hierosolymitano, utpote hæredem totius regni, sorore ejus regina

[1] *Post Pascha*] In A.D. 1192 Easter day fell on 5 April.

[2] *anno sequenti*] An interlineation in C. In the text of H. and V.

jam defuncta, rege Guidone de Lezinan hoc ipsum pro pacis stabilitate libenter annuente. Insulam autem Cypri, quam ab imperatore obtinuerat, regi Guidonî concessit, accepto ejus homagio.

Quomodo ossa regis Arturi reperta sunt.

Hoc autem anno inventa sunt apud Glastingeberiam ossa famosissimi Arturi, quondam regis Britanniæ, in
f. 55. quodam vetustissimo sarcophago recondita, circa quod duæ antiquæ pyramides stabant erectæ, in quibus litteræ quædam exaratæ erant, sed ob nimiam barbariem et deformationem legi non poterant. Inventa sunt autem hac occasione. Dum enim ibidem terram effoderent ut quemdam monachum sepelirent, qui hunc locum sepulturæ vehementi desiderio in vita sua præoptaverat, reperiunt quoddam sarcophagum, cui crux plumbea superposita fuerat, in qua ita exaratum erat, " Hic jacet inclitus rex Arturius, in insula Avallonis " sepultus." Locus autem ille olim paludibus inclusus, insula Avallonis, (id est, insula Pomorum) vocitatus est.

De quodam mortuo per beatam Mariam resuscitato.

Ante istud sane septennium extitit quidam abbas ordinis Cisterciensis in quadam abbatia quæ dicitur Sor in Dacia, qui ante conversionem suam ex quadam ægritudine surripiente defunctus est, atque per beatam Dei genitricem Mariam vitæ pristinæ est redditus. Ea vero tempestate quidam alius abbas in Teutonica extitit, qui etiam postmodum extitit abbas de Morimundo, qui in juvenili ætate ante conversionem a diabolo seductus fuerat in quadam ægritudine, de qua et impœnitens obiit. Hic vero nocte sequenti per Matrem misericordiæ vitæ restitutus, mira et relatu dignissima [1]

[1] *Ea vero . . . dignissima*] In C. this passage is written partly upon an erasure, but chiefly in the margin, the narrative as originally written being resumed with the words, " in secreto narrare."

in secreto narrare consueverat; scilicet, qualiter ab antiquo adversario in ipsa ægritudine seductus fuerit ob Scripturarum notitiam adipiscendam, cum quali tormento anima separata sit a corpore, et de forma ejusdem animæ, qualiter dæmones cum anima ejusdem subsannando ludebant more puellarum cum pila ludentium, quomodo in uno puncto temporis omnia quæ ubique agebantur, sursum sive deorsum, a dextris vel a sinistris, cernere atque intelligere potuit; de tribus etiam distinctis ordinibus electorum, supremo, medio, et infimo, de qualitate locorum pœnalium, qualiter per misericordissimam cœli Reginam a dæmonum manibus ereptus sit et ad proprium corpus redire permissus, quid etiam a beata Maria in mandato acceperit: quæ omnia quia alibi literis plenius mandavimus, hic etiam replicare fastidiosum duximus.

De Darun capto.

Anno MCXCII. Rex Ricardus ante Pentecosten,[1] post interfectionem marchisii,[2] Darun adiit, ultimum castellum Christianitatis versus Babyloniam; quod quinque diebus obsidens, armata manu cepit, atque obsessos gravi pretio redemptos abire permisit.

De camelis onustis a rege direptis.

Post hanc victoriam convenit ad regem dux Brugundiæ cum exercitu Francorum, cui in Pascha præcedenti dederat triginta millia bisantiorum, ut esset cum eo ad expugnandos inimicos Christi; consilioque inter eos habito, statuerunt Hierosolymam adire. Cumque rex cum universo exercitu suo devenisset ad castellum Ernaldi et ad Betonoble juxta Emaus, ecce Beduwini, qui se regi obligaverant, nunciant maximam multitu- f. 55 *b*.

[1] *Pentecosten*] Whit Sunday fell on 24 May.

[2] *post interfectionem marchisii*] These three words occur in the margin of C., but in the text of H. and V.

dinem ex Babylonia versus Hierosolymam tendere, cum septem[1] millibus camelorum diversis opibus onustis. Hanc autem multitudinem strenuissimi quique de exercitu Saláádini conducebant. Quibus cum rex processisset cum paucis obviam juxta Rubeam Cisternam,[2] omnes prostravit, camelosque cum universis opibus diripiens, exercitui suo distribuit. Deinde ad præfatum castellum[3] regreditur, custodiam tamen militum singulis civitatibus collocans.

De proditione ducis Burgundiæ.[4]

f. 56. [5] Rex autem cum universâ præda sua ad castellum Ernaldi reversus, quod ab Hierusalem tribus distat millibus, singulos potentes diligenter adhortatur ut Hierosolymam adeant et obsideant, dum tanta copia omnium rerum, victualium et animalium, ad subvehenda onera eis suppetit, rememorans quanta beneficia eis ubique in sua peregrinatione divina clementia contulerit. Super hæc omnia regem animaverat quædam religiosa mulier Syra genere, in civitate Hierusalem degens, quæ regi omnia secreta civitatis mandaverat, et quomodo omnes Sarraceni timidi contra adventum ejus effecti sunt, et animo consternabantur, et quomodo omnes portæ civitatis contra eum terratæ erant, præter[6] portam Sancti

[1] *septem*] So altered from "tribus," which originally stood in C. V. and H. have the amended reading.

[2] *juxta Rubeam Cisternam*] In the margin of C., but in the text of H. In V. occurs a blank, which has not been filled in.

[3] *ad præfatum castellum*] Upon an erasure in C.

[4] *De . . . Burgundiæ*] This rubric is added from H.

[5] *Rex autem . . . . subtractus est*] This passage is an addition in C., where it is written upon a smaller leaf of parchment, and in a smaller hand, though by the original scribe. The narrative is continuous in H. In V. the scribe had passed on from "collocans" to the passage beginning, "Rege autem apud Ptolomaidem" (p. 41), before the addition mentioned above was noticed by him. He then cancelled the six lines which he had written, and proceeded with the transcription of the matter contained in the interfoliation.

[6] *præter*] Upon an erasure in C.

Stephani ad aquilonalem[1] partem urbis, contra quam exercitum suum collocare suadebat; mittens quoque quamdam clavem regi, ex qua portam reserare posset. Cumque jam omnes unanimiter Hierusalem obsidere decrevissent, dux Burgundiæ, cum fratribus Templi et cum Francigenis consilium iniens a proposito revocatus est; qui asserebant ducem cum omnibus Francis maximam offensam[2] domini sui regis Philippi incursurum, si per eorum subventionem de tanta et tam famosa civitate rex Ricardus triumphasset; sed nec aliqua laudis victoria ipsi duci vel Francigenis ascriberetur, si tanta urbs ab eis caperetur.

Interim nuncii a duce ad Saláádinum clanculo diriguntur. Quadam vero nocte, rege in castris commorante apud præfatum castellum, et duce cum suis apud Betonoble existente, explorator regis, Jumas nomine, audivit sonitum gradientium camelorum et hominum de monte descendentium; quos ille latenter subsecutus, comperit eos a Saláádino missos usque ad castra ducis cum quinque camelis auro et argento onustis, et cum sericis vestibus variaque supellectili. Explorator vero ad regem concito gradu regrediens, omnia hæc illi intimavit; accipiensque secum quosdam de familia regis, ad viam per quam nuncii illi reversuri erant, caute insidiando progreditur, ac revertentes comprehendit, comprehensos regi tradidit. Quorum unum[3] rex in arcto ponens et diutius torquens, omnia quæ Saláádinus duci transmiserat vel mandaverat, inviti confitentur. Amotis vero illis et aurora illucescente, fecit accersiri ducem et patriarcham atque priorem de Bethléém. Quibus in secreto loco adunatis, rex protinus in eorum præsentia super sanctas reliquias juravit se paratum existere cum exercitu suo adire et

[1] *aquilonalem*] aquilonem, V.

[2] *offensam*] Om. V.

[3] *Quorum unum*] In C. the original reading appears to have been "quos;" "unum" is added above the line, and the termination of the previous word is altered by erasure. The amended reading occurs in H. and V.

expugnare Hierosolymam, sive Babyloniam, aut civitatem Baruth, sine qua rex Hierosolymitanus coronari non potest, sicut inter eos jam decernerant[1] et jura-
f. 56 b. mento confirmatum fuerat. Cumque rex jurasset, præcepit ut dux simile juramentum præstaret; quo abnuente, statim rex nimio furore succensus traditorem eum vocat, exprobrando varia munera quæ a Saláádino susceperat, et de mandatis et de occultis nunciis quæ ad invicem miserant. Duce vero hæc omnia abnegante et defendente, præcepit rex ut nuncii illi, quos Juma explorator ceperat, in præsentia eorum introducerentur. Cumque introducti fuissent, et omnia illa secreta denudassent, præcepit rex servis suis, ut in conspectu totius exercitus sagittarent eos, utroque exercitu causam tantæ crudelitatis ignorante, aut quid egissent viri illi, vel unde venissent. Dux autem nimio pudore confusus, et furore succensus, cum exercitu Francorum iter quantocius versus[2] Achon arripuit. Quod rex cernens, celerrime custodibus civitatis mandavit ut neminem eorum intrare permitterent. At illi tentoria sua[3] extra urbem posuerunt. Cernens vero rex exercitum suum nimis ex eo quod acciderat fuisse turbatum, et ex discessu aliorum valde minoratum pavidumque effectum, castra ab eo loco die sequenti amovit, ac ducem subsecutus est, similiter extra urbem Achon fixis tentoriis.

Nocte vero præcedenti, quidam religiosus ad regem venerat, et mandatum cujusdam sancti eremitæ ad eum detulerat, qui regi ex parte Dei mandavit ut ad eum visendum properaret. Rex autem de nocte consurgens, assumptis secum quingentis sociis, ad sanctum virum pervenit. Hic vero per longum tempus apud Sanctum Samuelem in quodam monte manserat, ac spiritu prophetiæ pollebat; qui a die illa qua crux Dominica

[1] *inter . . . . decernerant*] Written in C. upon an erasure.

[2] *versus*] Written upon an erasure in C.

[3] *sua*] Om. V.

capta est et terra amissa, nihil nisi herbas et radices comederat, nec ullo tegmine utebatur, capillis tantummodo et barba prolixa operiebatur; quem rex diutius admirando intuens, sciscitabatur quid vellet. Ille vero ex adventu regis gavisus, regem in oratorium suum adduxit, eruensque lapidem de muro lapideo, crucem ligneam et cubitalem de muro extraxit et regi devote porrexit, asserens absque dubio hanc crucem de ligno Domini fuisse. Regi etiam[1] inter alia prædixit quod nequaquam hac vice terram illam obtineret, quamvis strenue ubique egisset; et ut certius dictis ejus rex fidem accommodaret, asserebat seipsum ab hoc sæculo die septimo migraturum. Quem rex secum ad castra adduxit,[2] ut dictorum ejus comprobaret veritatem, et,[3] sicut prædixerat, die septima ab hac luce subtractus est.[4]

De gravi bello apud Jopen habito, et de incredibili regis victoria.

Rege autem apud Ptolomaida cum fesso exercitu vix per triduum quiescente, atque de celeri ejus reditu providente, adsunt flebiles nuncii a Jope usque ad regem directi, nunciantes Saláádinum cum universo exercitu Jopen obsedisse; civitatemque celeriter fore capiendam, omnesque milites et servos, quos ob custodiam ibi collocaverat, trucidandos, nisi celeri subventione obsessis præsidium ferat. Quo audito, omnis Christianorum exercitus graviter ingemuit, valdeque perterritus est. Rex vero Ricardus, de tali rumore valde animo consternatus,[5] ducem Burgundiæ offensum, tum per se, tum per alios, ad pacem et concordiam revocare studuit, atque obnixius rogavit[6] ut tantæ calamitati

[1] *etiam*] autem, V.

[2] *aăduxit*] In C. the termination of this word is written upon an erasure.

[3] *et*] Om. V.

[4] *subtractus est*] Here ends the text derived from the added leaf in MS. C.

[5] *consternatus*] consternatus est, V.

[6] *rogavit*] Above the line in C.

aliquod subsidium ferat; quorum preces dux audire dedignans, eorumque importuna postulatione inquietari nolens, nocte iter cum suis versus Tyrum arripuit. Quo dum perveniret, confestim divino judicio terribiliter percussus, menteque alienatus, vitam miserabili morte terminavit.[1] Rex autem illico et quædam pars exercitus sui rostratas naves conscendunt, ac vela ventis committunt. Sed naves, vi ventorum ac sævitia fluctuum in contrarium retortæ, versus Cyprum diutius impelluntur; quod videntes qui in terra remanserant, nimio dolore ac timore perculsi, regem latenter repatriare suspicantur. Rex vero et qui cum eo erant, contra rabiem ventorum violento remigio æquora ex obliquo sulcantes, cum tribus tantum navibus tertia die, rutilante jam aurora, in portu Jopensi applicuerunt.

Saláádinus vero interim urbem crebris assultibus jam ceperat, atque omnes infirmos ac vulneratos, qui ibidem præ lassitudine substiterant, peremerat. Milites et audaciores quique, quos rex ibidem ob custodiam civitatis posuerat, urbem deserentes, in castellum sese receperunt, ac inter se de reddendo castello tractantes antequam per assultum violenter caperentur. Quod et celeriter fecissent, nisi a patriarcha, qui inter utrumque exercitum libere progrediebatur, præmunirentur exercitum Saláádini devovisse omnes fore occidendos, in ultionem amicorum et parentum suorum, quos rex Ricardus pluribus jam in locis immisericorditer detruncaf. 57. verat, etiamsi liberam abeundi licentiam a Saláádino accepissent. Ob hoc in magno mortis discrimine constituti, hæsitabant quid agerent, hostium numerositatem atque ferocitatem, suorumque paucitatem attendentes, necnon et de subventione regis jam diffidentes. Cumque ab hostibus ita undique obsiderentur, graviter-

[1] *Rex . . morte terminavit*] Written in the margin of C., but in the text of H. and V.

que expugnarentur, jamque omnis spes evadendi sublata fuisset, cernunt, illucescente aurora, ... naves[1] cum signo regis ad portum celeriter applicare; unde animæquiores facti et audaciores, virilius se tuentur. Rex autem ex gravi conflictu obsidentium pariter et obsessorum intelligens munitionem civitatis nondum fore captam, illico cum suis armatus de navi agili saltu prosiliit,[2] atque inter medias hostium catervas, quæ super ripam maris densata acie astabant et applicantes telis et sagittis infestabant,[3] velut leo furibundus, a dextris et a sinistris prosternens, audacter se ingessit. Cujus subitaneum impetum Turci non ferentes, reputantes etiam illum numerosiorem adduxisse exercitum, ab obsidione celeri gradu diffugiunt,—non tamen sine gravi pugna et maxima strage suorum,[4]—mutuoque se ad fugam cohortantur,[5] adventum regis inopinatum ad invicem nunciantes. Unde factum est ut a fuga cohiberi non poterant, donec Ramulam ingrederent civitatem, Saláádino in curru suo rapido cursu[6] præcurrente. Rex autem, hostibus fugatis, audacter tentoria sua extra urbem, in quadam planitie apud Sanctum Abacuc,[7] figi præcepit; in urbe siquidem pro fœtore cadaverum manere nequibant. Pagani enim Christianos ibidem trucidantes, juxta corpora occisorum cadavera porcorum ob dedecus nostrum collocaverant.[8]

At ubi, sequenti die, Saláádino nunciatum est re-

[1] . . . *naves*] Here in C. occurs a blank occasioned by an erasure, of which, however, no notice is taken in H. and V.

[2] *prosiliit*] prosilivit, C. H.; prosiluit, V.

[3] *quæ . . . infestabant*] Written in the margin of C., but in the text of H. and V.

[4] *non . . . . suorum*] In C. these words are a marginal addition, but in H. and V. they are carried into the text.

[5] *cohortantur*] The termination is altered by erasure in C., the original reading having apparently been "co-" hortantes."

[6] *curru suo rapido cursu*] cursu suo rapiendo cursu, V.

[7] *apud Sanctum Abacuc*] Added in the margin of C. In the text of H. and V.

[8] *in urbe . . . collocaverant*] In the margin of C., but carried into the text of H. and V.

gem cum parvissimo exercitu adventasse, nec amplius quam octoginta[1] milites, exceptis arbalistariis suis quadringentis,[2] in comitatu habere, nimio furore succenditur, multaque indignatione erga exercitum suum permovetur, quod tanta millia hominum a tam paucis fugari debuissent. Unde ad suorum confusionem ibidem dinumerans exercitum, scilicet sexaginta duo millia, imperiali edicto præcepit ut ad Jopen quantocius equester exercitus[3] rediret,[4] ipsumque regem vivum captum sibi in crastino præsentaret.[5] Rege vero in tentoriis nocte illa cum suis securius[6] quiescente, nihilque sinistrum suspicante, ecce summo diluculo[7] illa gens nefaria adveniens, castra regis in circuitu obsedit; et ne ullus subterfugiendi in civitatem pateret aditus, maxima multitudo sese intra urbem intrusit, fere ad tria millia.[8] Ex quorum strepitu et clamoribus Chris-
f. 57 b. tiani expergefacti simul et attoniti, immenso timore et horrore concutiuntur, cum se undique ab inimicis vallatos cernerent. Rex autem tam subitanea pericula cernens, confestim loricam induit, et velut pennigero volatu equum conscendit; omnique mortis horrore deposito, et quasi ex hostium numerositate factus audacior, suos ad pugnam verbis exhortatoriis animabat. Proponebat[9] eis mortem nullatenus fore metuendam, quæ pro tuenda Christianitate et ulciscenda Christi injuria a paganis inferebatur; magnificentius etiam fore pro Christi legibus honorifice occumbere, et occum-

[1] *octoginta*] lx^xx. in C.; lxxx. in H. and V.

[2] *quadringentis*] The numerals cccc^tis. are added in the margin of C. in a different hand, but in V. and H. are carried into the text.

[3] *equester exercitus*] Added from the margin of C., and in the text of V. and H.

[4] *rediret*] So altered in C. from "redirent." H. follows the correction.

[5] *præsentaret*] Originally "præsentarent" in C., and so in V.

[6] *securius*] securus, V.

[7] *diluculo*] An erasure occurs in C. after this word.

[8] *intrusit, fere ad tria millia*] Written upon an erasure in C.

[9] *Proponebat*] The passage which here commences, and ends with the words "prosternatos interficit," is written in C. in a different ink, and in a larger hand.

bendo hostes Christi viriliter prosternere, quam se hostibus enerviter tradere, vel fugæ subsidium cum opprobrio semper notabili expetere, maxime cum locus opportunus subterfugiendi omnino in præsenti non habeatur.

Hæc et his similia rege dicente, commilitones suos in procinctu belli stricte et conjunctim ordinando disposuit, ac unumquemque juxta latus alterius firmiter collocavit, ne quis aditus perforandi cuneum suum in ipsa congressione ex spatii vacuitate pateret hostibus. Pauca autem ligna, quæ ibidem reperta fuere ob tentoria construenda, ante pedes singulorum quasi pro antemurali jussit collocari. Cumque in hujusmodi, quantum hora sinebat, occuparentur, atque pagani e contra se armarent, sociosque adventantes simul colloquendo exspectarent; ecce quidam ex camerariis regis ab urbe ocius diffugiens, (sicut dominus Hugo de Nevilla, qui in eodem certamine erat, nobis retulit,)[1] Regem miserabili ac lamentabili voce alloquitur, dicens: "Heu! " domine mi rex, omnes in mortem absque ulla sub- " ventione traditi sumus. Nullum est nobis deinceps " refugium, cum innumerabilis paganorum multitudo jam " præoccupaverit urbem, et innumerabiles acies ante " nos armatas conspiciamus." Cui lamentanti rex cum magna animadversione silentium imperat, seque illico amputaturum ejus caput terribiliter jurat, si hoc alicui assistentium[2] intimare præsumat. Ipse vero mox exercitum alloquitur, et ne paganos expavescant adhortatur, dicitque se velle urbem adire, et quid intus geratur diligenter explorare; assumptisque secum sex strenuis militibus, cum regio vexillo urbem intrepidus, veluti mortis immemor, ingreditur, viamque gladio et lancea aperiens, hostes in plateis glomeratos, velut leo ferocissimus, invadit, invadendo prosternit, prostratos

[1] *sicut . . . retulit*] This clause is added in the margin of C., and is carried into the text of H.

[2] *assistentium*] existentium, V.

f. 59. interficit.[1] Milites vero regem prævium subsequentes,[2] in obsistentes quosque crudeliter irruunt, irruendo prosternunt. Prostratorum igitur casus socios etiam a longe in plateis astantes incurvare et ad terram corruere coegit, dum pars una lanceis impulsa ad terram ruens, partem aliam circumastantem violenter impelleret. Unde actum est, ut ex regis subita invasione multi corruentes causam suæ ruinæ ignorarent. Diffugiebant igitur hostes huc illucque per plateas regem infestantem, velut bestiolæ ferocem leonem, quem dira fames ad devorandum instimulat, quidquid casus in occursum ejus subvectat. Paganis tandem admirabili et incomparabili inclyti regis virtute prostratis atque fugatis, et ab urbe seclusis, equisque quampluribus turpiter amissis, accersiit rex de castelli custodibus, eosque ad custodiam portarum atque murorum, ubi conquassati erant, deputavit.

Habita denique incredibili ibidem victoria, rex confestim cum suis sex militibus ad exercitum regreditur; sed de equorum paucitate valde contristatur;[3] in toto siquidem illo exercitu non amplius quam sex equi cum una mula fuerant. Ut autem exercitum suum ad pugnam instantem animaret et audaciorem redderet, narravit quanta per eos Dominus in urbe fecerit, et quomodo de tot hostibus tam pauci triumphaverint. " Ideo, O milites Christi, invocemus," ait, " Omnipo-
" tentis Dei auxilium, ut sua potenti virtute conterat
" hodie inimicos nostros. Videte ut in prima decer-
" tatione eis unanimiter resistatis, et primum irrup-
" tionis suæ impetum viriliter toleretis, ne intra nos

[1] *prostratos interficit*] Half a line is here erased at the bottom of fol. 57 b. in C., and the original writing is resumed with the word " milites" at the top of fol. 59. Fol. 58 is an addition, as will be presently mentioned; see note

[2] *subsequentes*] In C. an erasure of half a line occurs after this word, of which no notice is taken in H.

[3] *contristatur*] Here in C. nearly half a line has been erased. No notice is taken of it in H.

" primo penetrantes, cuneum nostrum disgregare præ-
" valeant, atque nos intra se inclusos, quasi paucas
" oviculas infra caulam, ictibus dilanient. Si enim
" primum congressionis suæ assultum disgregati per-
" ferre poterimus, illorum postmodum audaciam parvi-
" pendemus, et cum Dei adjutorio de inimicis crucis
" Christi victores triumphabimus. Quod si aliquem
" vestrum præ timore nutantem, et inimicis locum
" intra nos præbentem, aut alicubi diffugientem per-
" spexero, juro Omnipotentem Deum, quod ei caput
" ictu celeri amputabo."

Postquam ergo rex inclytus, omni mortis horrore deposito, suos ad pugnam disposuerat, monuerat et instruxerat, omnesque lanceis erectis contra adversarios starent, ac supplici prece in tali mortis discrimine Dei Omnipotentis auxilium invocarent, nihilque aliud nonnulli eorum nisi mortem acerbam meditarentur; ecce ad tubarum clangorem et classicorum horribilem strepitum agmina paganorum cum magno impetu, lanceis erectis, in catervas Christianorum unanimiter vociferando irruunt, æstimantes se in prima irruptione Christianos a sua prima statione repulsuros et per campum dispersuros, vel acies illorum cum tali impetu penetrare, et penetratas disgregare. Sed agmen Christi firmum et integrum in sua statione immobiliter persistens, nec tanto terrori aliquatinus voluit cedere, nec congressionem diffugiendo devitare. Quod Turci aspicientes et f. 59 b.
tam paucorum inauditam audaciam admirantes, parumper ab eis semoti subsistunt, ita ut utraque pars cum lanceis summitates lancearum suarum ad invicem contingere posset. Nulla denique tela vel spicula intra se jaciebant, tantummodo nutibus, verbis, et truculentis vultibus ad invicem minitantes. Per dimidiam fere horam Turcis sic subsistentibus, ad primam suam stationem omnes regrediuntur, inter se mussitantibus et colloquentibus, a Christianis quasi dimidium stadii distantibus. Illis autem sic retrocedentibus, rex in risum

solvitur et cachinnando vociferatur: " Eia, strenui " milites Christi! numquid non dixi vobis illos no- " biscum non audere congredi, nisi prius a nobis ad " congrediendum [1] fuerint lacessiti? Jam enim totam " probitatis suæ audaciam in hac prima invasione erga " nos ostenderunt; jam quidquid potuerunt terroris et " formidinis, nobis incusserunt. Æstimabant quippe nos " ex sua numerositate deterrere, et eorum primæ irrup- " tioni non audere resistere. Æstimabant nos ex sola " formidine sui impetus muliebriter a statione nostra " secedere, et per planitiem huc illucque discurrendo " diffugere. Nunc ergo maledictus sit qui pro eorum " assultibus deinceps diffugiat, vel qui congressionem " illorum expavescat. Impetus eorum, ut cœpimus, " viriliter toleremus, donec triumphum, Deo auxiliante, " reportemus."

Ut cessavit autem loqui, gens illa nefaria simul glomerata uno impetu iterum vociferando, tubis perstrepentibus, concurrunt, et, ut prius fecerant, paulisper ab eis semoti subsistunt. Christianis autem cum majori audacia quam prius, in statione sua immobiliter subsistentibus, nihilque trepidantibus, denuo ad primam stationem pagani retrocedendo regrediuntur. Hujusmodi incursionem fecerunt quinquies sive sexies; scilicet ab hora diei prima [2] fere usque ad horam [3] nonam. Bellicosus ergo rex jam gravi tædio pro longa exspectatione affectus, majoremque audaciam ex sui ipsius aliorumque experta probitate concipiens, præcepit exercitui suo ut in proximo assultu inimicos Christi telis et lanceis appeterent, eosque ad pugnam unanimiter provocarent. Præcepit etiam arbalastariis ut caute ante milites incederent, et ut sagittas et spicula in hostes dirigerent. Quod et factum est. Nam dum Turci, secundum morem, densata caterva cum clangore horribili

[1] *ad congrediendum*] ad gredien- dum, H.

[2] *prima*] proxima, V.

[3] *horam*] Om. V.

incederent, et in Christianos solitum impetum facerent, confestim Christicolæ inimicos Dei lanceis et gladiis, et diverso armorum genere, invadunt, invadendo prosternunt, prostratos occidunt. Fit itaque inter paganos maxima cædes, horribilis clamor, ingens perturbatio, dum illi lanceis perforarentur, isti ab equis prosternerentur, quidam capite plecterentur, nonnulli sagittis confoderentur, alii atque alii diversis telis atque jaculis interficerentur. Nec mora, rex ille bellicosus armis decentibus decoratus, velut flamma præ nimio furore ignescens, et ad inferendas et perferendas plagas adhuc recens, quasi nihil ipsa die peregisset, in hostiles acies intrepidus prorupit, ensem ocius de vagina extrahit, lanceam ferociter vibrat, atque circa galeata capita ictuum collisione fulminat, et nunc hac, nunc illac discurrens inter hostes, nec ictus recipere diffugit, nec hostibus ictus mortiferos inferre quiescit. Circumdederunt eum aliquando centum paganorum, qui omnes in illum solum [1] irruebant, in quos ipse solus irruens, dum alii caput uno ictu truncaret, illi scapulas a corpore separaret, huic brachium cum manu amputaret, quosdam vero prosternendo debilitaret, reliqui omnes ab eo diffugiendo huc illucque dilapsi sunt. Tantusque timor omnes invasit, ut nullus eum in illa concertatione exspectare, nullus ei obviam venire, auderet, immo a conspectu ejus, quasi a facie ferocis leonis, concito cursu diffugiebant. Bellicosum itaque regem, prævium veluti signiferum, bellicosa agmina celeri gradu subsequuntur, quæ hostium catervas a dextris et a sinistris penetrando dissipant, ac sibi quosque obvios vel obsistentes immisericorditer trucidant. Pagani vero ruentes miserandis clamoribus mugiunt, terramque vertice et pedibus pulsantes, animas cum sanguine ructando ad Tartara remittunt. Et licet pagani Christianos acrius invaderent, et diversis telis appeterent, sagittarumque f. 60.

[1] *solum*] Above the line in V. by the first hand.

pluviam emitterent; tamen, Deo volente, ita divinitus procuratum est, ut nullum mortiferum ictum alicui inferrent, nec aliquem nostrorum perimerent in hac
f. 60 b. congressione, nisi unum solum militem, qui a sociis præ timore diffugiens, dum mortem fugit, mortem quam timebat incurrit.

Præibant semper arbalastarii, in hac congressione potissimum laudandi, quorum incomparabili virtute hostilis impetus præcipue repellebatur, audacia atque ferocitas paulatim deponebatur. Nam, dum eorum spicula sibi quisque cautius præcavebat, assilientis hostis congressionem incircumspectius evitare poterat.

In hoc autem belli certamine quantum virtus inclyti regis enituerit, quotque prostraverit ac debilitaverit, quotque interfecerit, vel quantum suorum probitas claruerit, quotque hostium millia dissipaverint, et quot millia de prælio fugaverint, incredibile relatu esse videtur, si non virtus divina attendatur. Quis enim absentium unquam crederet, regem cum sex militibus tantum potuisse primo urbem a tribus fere millibus evacuare; deinde ab urbe cum triumpho rediens, contra tot millia paganorum equestris ordinis cum octoginta militibus et quadringentis sagittariis fere per totum diei spatium ita insuperabiliter congredi, tot missilium ictibus impeti, tot jaculis lanceari, ut non solum illæsi omnes, (excepto illo, de quo supra diximus,) evaderent, sed nec a prima statione sua per unius pedis spatium retrocederent, quin etiam adversarios undique prosternerent, lætamque et inopinatam victoriam, debilitatis et effugatis hostibus, reportarent, nisi divina virtute credantur fuisse subnixi, cœlestique protectione suffulti?

Denique illi qui in urbe Jope ob custodiam remanserant, regis suorumque invincibilem fortitudinem admirando attendentes, de urbe unanimiter prorumpunt, hostesque cum reliquis atrocius invadunt. Quorum recenti invasione, regisque ac suorum indefessa congressione, hostes compulsi cum magna sui confusione

suorumque quamplurium amissione, fugiendo terga verterunt, et in antris et cavernis delituerunt.

Interea nunciatur exercitui quem apud Ptolomaidam rex reliquerat, apud[1] Jopen regem ab inimicis undique f. 61. conclusum, nec aliquo pacto posse evadere, nisi cœlitus ei subveniatur. Tunc mœror et luctus omnium, vox una plagentium ; timor ac tremor occupat omnes, fugam omnes meditantur. Conveniunt tamen undique strenui milites, simul colloquitur exercitus, si forte aliquod ereptionis subsidium regi conferre esset possibile. Cæsaream itaque unanimiter[2] proficiscuntur, sed ibidem præ timore hostium substiterunt, ulterius progredi non audentes. Eis autem ibidem subsistentibus, nunciata est inopinata regis victoria, ex qua relatione immensa lætitia perfusi, laudum præconia ereptori omnium persolvuntur. In diebus autem canicularibus, (scilicet, ad Vincula S. Petri)[3] hæc belli congressio facta est.

De quadam pestilentia.

Post hanc incredibilem regis Ricardi victoriam, cum idem rex apud Jopen moraretur[4] per sex hebdomadas,[5] quidam pestifer morbus ex aeris corruptione proveniens, ipsum regem omnesque fere suos perniciose invasit, et quotquot ex hac morbi contagione perculsi sunt, citius interierunt, excepto rege, Domino ei sospitatem tribuente.

De causa regressionis regis Ricardi, et de treugis.

Cernens itaque rex Ricardus thesaurum suum, quem larga manu nimis inconsulte[6] militibus distribuerat,

[1] *apud*] The smaller handwriting is here resumed at the top of fol. 61 in C.

[2] *unanimiter*] Om. V.

[3] *scilicet . . . Petri*] Aug. 1. An interlineation in C., but in the text of H. and V.

[4] *moraretur*] moraret, V.

[5] *per sex hebdomadas*] These words are added in C. between the lines, but in the text of H. They do not occur in V.

[6] *nimius inconsulte*] minus inconsulte, V.

paulatim deficere, exercitumque Francorum et alienigenarum, quem multis sumptibus datis jam per annum conduxerat secumque retinuerat, mortuo duce Burgundionum, velle repatriare, necnon et exercitum proprium partim hostili congressione, partimque pestifera ægritudine paulatim minorari, hostilem vero exercitum de die in diem augmentari ; fratrum Templi et Hospitalis, necnon et principum qui cum eo erant, usus consilio, ad horam repatriare disposuit, ut iterum multiplicato numero tam militum quam pecuniarum, fortius et instructius ad obsidendam Hierosolymam regrederetur, juratoria super hoc præstita cautione. His autem omnibus illud infortunium, secundum quosdam, potissimum accessit, quia nunciabatur ei quod comes Johannes frater ejus, quem in Anglia reliquerat, sibi Angliam subjugare moliebatur, quia cancellarium suum dejecerat ob nimiam ejus tyrannidem.[1] Et quia tanti principis tantique exercitus discessio non absque ibidem remanentium gravi periculo, terræque subjugatæ dispendio, fieri potuit, treugæ inter Christianos atque paganos, utriusque exercitus petitione et consilio, acceptæ sunt apud Jopen[2] a Pascha subsequenti usque ad trium annorum curriculum.

De infortuniis repatriantium.

Tempore igitur autumnali, præparatis navibus, om-
f. 61 *b.* nibusque rite dispositis, rex Ricardus atque regina dómna Berengaria, cum sorore regis, Johanna regina Siciliæ, necnon et proceres cum exercitu, mare Mediterraneum transfretaverunt. Quibus abeuntibus, justo Dei judicio, licet nobis occulto, illico subortæ sunt insolitæ tempestates in mari navigantibus, persecutiones illatæ in terra applicantibus. Nonnulli naufragium perpessi sunt; quidam in littore, navibus confractis

[1] *quia . . . . tyrannidem*] Written in C. upon an erasure.

[2] *apud Jopen*] Added between the lines in C.

amissisque opibus, nudi vix evaserunt; pauci vero ad destinatum salutis portum applicuerunt. Hi autem qui maris evasere pericula, hostiles acies ubique reperiunt contra eos in terra consurgere, a quibus immisericorditer capiuntur, despoliantur, et gravi redemptionis debito nonnulli affliguntur. Nullus subterfugiendi locus tutus relictus est, quasi tellus et mare contra fugitivos Dei conjurassent. Unde satis conjici potuit ipsorum reditum nequaquam Deo fore acceptum, peregrinatione nondum expleta, qui ipsos post modicum tempus in terra illa magnificare decreverat, omnes inimicos subjiciendo, et terram, pro qua tam laboriosam peregrinationem assumpserant, tradendo. Nam illis sic abeuntibus, in subsequenti Quadragesima hostis Christianitatis, terræque prædictæ invasor, Saláádinus, scilicet, vitam miserabilem miserabili morte terminavit; qui, si tunc præsentes affuissent, facillime totam terram illam obtinuissent, filiis ac propinquis ejusdem Saláádini inter se dissidentibus et pro regno certantibus.

De captione regis Ricardi apud Austriam.

Rex[1] vero Ricardus cum nonnullis suorum nimia maris tempestate vexatus per sex hebdomadas, (cum devenisset versus Barbariem, trium dierum velificatione a Marsilia distans,)[2] famaque crebrescente jam cognovisset comitem Sancti Ægidii,[3] necnon et cunctos principes per quos transiturus erat, contra eum unanimiter conspirasse, insidiasque ei ubique tetendisse, disposuit per Teutonicam latenter repatriare, retortisque velis, apud Cóvrefó insulam tandem applicuit;[4] conductisque ibi duabus piratarum rostratis navibus, qui piratæ regis

[1] *Rex*] V. here commences the year 1192.

[2] *per sex . . . distans*] This clause is an addition in C., partly upon an erasure and partly in the margin. It is carried into the text of H.

[3] *comitem S. Ægidii*] Written in C. upon an erasure.

[4] *retortisque . . . applicuit*] An addition in the margin of C., but in the text of H. It is omitted in the text of V.

navem audacter invaserant, sed a nauta regis recogniti et cum rege[1] confœderati,[2] ob eorum laudabilem fortitudinem et audaciam ascendit rex cum eis, paucis suorum secum retentis, in quibus erant Baldewinus de Betun et magister Philippus regis clericus, atque Anselmus capellanus, qui hæc omnia nobis, ut vidit et audivit, retulit,[3] et quidam fratres Templi, qui omnes in partes Sclavoniæ[4] ad quamdam villam nomine Gazaram applicuerunt; statimque nuncium ad proximum castellum dirigunt, pacem et conductum a domino provinciæ illius, qui nepos extitit marchisii, expetentes. Rex autem in reditu suo tres lapides pretiosos, scilicet, tres rubiz, a quodam Pisano Dcccc. bisantiis comparaverat; quorum unum, dum esset in navi, in annulo aureo includens, annulum illum domino castelli per prædictum nuncium transmisit. Percunctatus vero nuncius a domino loci illius, quinam essent qui conductum petebant, respondit, peregrinos esse a Hierusalem redeuntes. Deinde nomina eorum requisivit. At nuncius;
f. 62. " Unus," inquit, " eorum appellatur Baldewinus de " Betun, alter vero dicitur Hugo mercator, qui etiam[5] " vobis annulum transmisit." At dominus ille diutius annulum intuitus : " Non," inquit, " Hugo, sed rex Ri- " cardus appellatur ;" et subintulit ; " Licet ipse juravе- " rim me omnes peregrinos de partibus illis adven- " tantes comprehensurum, nec aliquod munus ab eis " accepturum, tamen pro dignitate muneris et mitten- " tis domini, qui me ignotum ita honoravit, et munus " missum remitto et liberam abeundi licentiam con- " cedo."

[1] *rege*] Originally " eo " in C., but altered by the first hand.

[2] *sed . . . confœderati*] Upon an erasure in C.

[3] *atque . . . retulit*] A marginal addition in C. In the text of H. and V.

[4] *Sclavoniæ*] The passage which here begins, and ends with the word " adhortatur," (see p. 55, note [1]), is written in C. upon an erasure. The hand here becomes smaller and more compressed in order to reduce the narrative within the limit prescribed by the space which was available. In H. and V. the text proceeds without interruption.

[5] *etiam*] et, V.

Reversus itaque nuncius omnia hæc regi intimavit. At illi valde trementes, media nocte, comparatis equis, de villa prædicta occulte exeunt, sicque per terram illam diutius libere proficiscuntur. Sed dominus ille prædictus latenter post eos exploratorem ad fratrem suum transmisit, ut regem in terra sua advenientem comprehenderet. Ubi cum rex advenisset, et urbem in qua frater prædicti domini morabatur fuisset ingressus, statim ille, accersito ad se quodam fidissimo homine suo, Roger nomine, Normannicus genere, de Argenton, (qui cum eo per viginti annos exstiterat, et neptem suam ei tradiderat,) præcepit ei ut domos ubi peregrini hospitabantur diligenter perscrutaretur, si forte regem per loquelam vel per aliquod signum explorare posset; promittens se ei medietatem urbis daturum si regem intercipere posset. At ille singulorum hospitia inquirens et discutiens, tandem regem reperit; quo diutius dissimulante quod erat, tandem importunitate precum et lacrymarum pii inquisitoris compulsus, confitetur quod erat. Qui statim cum lacrymis fugam latenter arripere adhortatur,[1] equum peroptimum regi tradens. Postea autem ad dominum suum revertens, dicit frivolum esse quod audierat de regis adventu, sed esse Baldewinum de Betun et comites ejus, qui de peregrinatione redibant. At ille furibundus jussit omnes comprehendi.

Rex vero latenter de urbe egrediens cum Willelmo de Stagno,[2] et quodam puero qui linguam Teutonicam intelligebat, per tres dies et noctes sine cibo profectus est. Deinde famis inedia urgente, ad quamdam villam nomine Ginanam in Austria prope Danubium divertit, ubi tunc temporis ad cumulum omnium malorum dux Austriæ morabatur. Puer[3] vero regis ad escambium

[1] *adhortatur*] The narrative from this point, as far as the word "morabatur," is now carried to the bottom margin of the MS. C., the previous blank being insufficient for its introduction into the body of the text.

[2] *Stagno*] Stangno, H.

[3] *Puer*] The narrative here returns to the text.

veniens, cum plures bisantios proferret, nimisque curialiter ac pompatice se haberet, a civibus[1] illico comprehensus est; ac requisitus quisnam esset, servientem cujusdam ditissimi mercatoris se esse respondit, qui post triduum ad urbem illam esset venturus; sicque tunc ab eis dimissus, ad secretum regis hospitium clanculo regreditur, fugamque quantocius cohortatur, denuncians regi quæ sibi acciderant. Sed rex, post nimiam maris vexationem, in prædicta urbe per aliquot dies requiescere cupiens, dum præfatus puer sæpius pro emendis necessariis ad forum publicum regreditur, accidit eum semel, (die scilicet Sancti Thomæ Apostoli,)[2] chirothecas domini regis sub zona secum incautius gestasse; quas magistratus urbis intuentes, puerumque iterum apprehendentes, dirissime torquent, variis pœnis et cruciatibus afficiunt, vulnera infligunt, linguam abstractam amputare minantur, nisi citius rei veritatem confiteatur. Puer autem intolerabili cruciatu compulsus, ut se res habuit eisdem[3] innotescit. At illi continuo hæc omnia duci annunciantes, hospitium regis[4] circumvallant, et ut se sponte reddat acriter insistunt.

Rex autem ad tumultuantium vocum barbariem veluti imperterritus manens, suamque defensionis probitatem non apud tot barbaros prævalere sentiens, jubet ducem adesse præsentem, ipsi soli se redditurum promittens. Duci autem illico adventanti rex aliquantulum obviam processit, seque ei cum gladio tradidit. Dux autem lætissimus effectus, secum regem honorifice deduxit, quem deinde strenuis militibus suis custodiendum tradidit, qui die noctuque strictis ensibus arctis-
f. 62 b. sime eum ubique custodierunt. Quod miserabile infortunium non absque Omnipotentis Dei judicio, licet

---

[1] *a civibus*] The original narrative, as it stood before the introduction of the additional matter, is resumed at this point.

[2] *die . . . Apostoli*] December 21. In the margin of C., but in the text of H. and V.

[3] *eisdem*] Om. V.

[4] *regis*] Om. V.

nobis occulto, evenisse arbitrandum est, sive pro regis ipsius lubricæ ætatis erratibus castigandis, sive pro subditorum suorum peccatis feriendis, vel ut detestabilis malitia regem in tali casu persequentium per universum orbem divulgata, fœda relinqueret posteris suis tanti facinoris cauteria, qui tantum regem, tanta virtute ac potentia prædítum, atque de tam laboriosa peregrinatione redeuntem, tanta oppressione et calamitate afflixerunt, et postmodum intolerabili redemptionis debito regnum ejus contriverunt. Nam quæ gens, rogo, nefaria et a Christianæ fidei legibus aliena, in tanto principe ac in tali casu comprehenso, graviora vel sæviora vellet unquam exercuisse judicia? Etiamsi in manibus ipsius Saláádini per simile infortunium decidisset, contra quem idem rex a finibus terræ, (relicto regno nuper adepto, relicta patria, parentibus et amicis,) dimicaturus ascendit, mitiori eum pœna forsitan afflixisset, regnumque ejus tolerabiliori redemptionis jugo aggravasset, nimirum deferre sciens ejus generositati ac probitati, pariter et regiæ majestati, quibus illa gens barbara deferre nescivit. O gens cervicosa! O barbara tellus, quæ viros gigantea mole porrectos educare consuevisti, sed animi virtute ignavos; statura proceros, sed probitate inertes! Nunquam ipsum regem bello lacessere[1] præsumpsisses, si bellicoso suo exercitu vallatus fuisset; et idcirco tanti principis dejectio non est imputanda tuæ virtuti, immo potius divinæ dispositioni, ad nutum cujus rota fortunæ volubilis celerius volvitur, hunc humilians et hunc exaltans, illum erigens et istum deprimens; quia calix in manu Domini, vini meri plenus mixto; qui balteum regum dissolvit, et præcingit fune renes eorum; qui potentes deponit de sublimi, et effundit despectionem super principes.

Reginaldus[2] Bathoniensis episcopus ad archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem electus, infra mensem electionis suæ,

---

[1] *lacessere*] lacessire, C. H. V.

[2] *Reginaldus*] This and the following paragraph occur in the margin of C., but are not found in H.

nocte Sancti Stephani [1] rebus valedicit humanis. Idus Octobris [2] audita sunt tonitrua, et ventus vehemens, ferens imbrem copiosum grandine mixtum. Naufragia multa fuere.

Quomodo imperator regem custodiri fecit.

Anno MCXCIII. Dux Austriæ regem Ricardum imperatori Henrico tradidit custodiendum, qui diligentissime custodi fecit eum, primo Treviris, deinde Warmatiæ, copiosam [3] militum et servorum turbam ex omnibus fortissimis Teutonicorum custodiæ suæ deputans, qui
f. 63. eum in omnibus locis die noctuque gladiis accincti comitarentur, et lectulum regis ambirent, neminem suorum cum eo pernoctare permittens. Hæc autem omnia nunquam serenissimi principis vultum obfuscare potuerunt, quin hilaris et jocundus in verbis, quin ferox et audacissimus in factis, prout tempus, locus, causa, persona, exigebat, semper appareret. Quoties autem custodes suos per improbos irrisionum jocos deturpaverit seu molestaverit; quoties eos inebriando ludificaverit; quoties tam immanium corporum vires quasi ludendo aggressus fuerit, aliis narrandum derelinquo.

Imperator vero iratum animum ac ferocem erga regem diutius conservans, nullatenus eum in præsentia sua convocare vel alloqui voluit, quia regem in pluribus contra eum et suos graviter deliquisse conquestus est, multas ei objiciens calumnias. Tandem hinc inde mediantibus amicis, et præcipue abbate Cluniacensi et cancellario regis, imperator, convocatis episcopis, ducibus, et comitibus suis, regem in præsentia sua accersiri jussit, eumque in pluribus causis coram omnibus accusavit. In primis, scilicet, quod per ejus consilium et auxilium regnum Siciliæ atque Apuliæ, quod ei jure hæreditario debebatur, defuncto rege Willelmo, amiserit,

[1] *S. Stephani*] December 26.
[2] *Idus Octobris*] October 15.
[3] *copiosam*] copiam, V.

pro quo adipiscendo exercitum permaximum, data infinita pecunia, conduxerat, cum idem rex sibi auxilium fore præstiturum fideliter spopondisset, ut regnum illud a Tancredo obtineret. Deinde causatur de imperatore Cypri, qui ei affinitate conjunctus fuerat, quod eum injuste ab imperio deposuerit, et eum carcerali custodiæ mancipaverit, et terram ejus cum thesauris violenter invaserit, et insulam cuidam alieno vendiderit. Postmodum vero regem accusat de morte marchisii de Monteferrato, hominis sui; quod scilicet, per ejus proditionem atque machinationem ab Hausasis peremptus sit, quos etiam miserat ad perimendum regem Galliæ, dominum suum, cui nullam fidelitatem in communi eorum peregrinatione, sicut juramenti sacramento inter utrosque confirmatum est, exhibuerat. Deinde conqueritur quod signum ducis Austriæ, consanguinei sui, ob ejus contemptum in cloacam apud Jopen præcipitaverit, et Teutonicos suos in terra illa Hierosolymitana verbis probrosis et factis ubique [1] dehonestaverit. f. 63 *b*.

Super his et hujusmodi calumniis rex ab imperatore conventus, confestim idem rex in medio stans cum duce Austriæ, qui pro eo tunc plurimum lacrymabatur, contra singulas objectiones ita luculenter et argumentose peroravit ut omnibus admirationi ac venerationi haberetur, ita ut nulla suspicio de his in quibus accusabatur in cordibus eorum ulterius resideret. Nam objectorum veritatem et ordinem quibusdam veridicis assertionibus et probabili argumentatione ita in lucem propalavit, ut omnes falsas suspiciones, quibus impetebatur omnimodis cassaret, et gestorum veritatem non reticeret. Proditionem tamen, vel alicujus principis necis machinationem constanter defendebat, asserens se semper fore paratum ad purgandam innocentiam suam super tali objectione, prout curia imperatoris adjudicaret. Cumque diutius coram imperatore et principibus diser-

[1] *ubique*] Om. V.

tissime, ut est facundissimus, allegasset, surrexit imperator, et rege ad se accersito, osculatus est eum, deinceps blande leniterque cum eo colloquens. Ab illo ergo die cœpit imperator regem vehementer honorare, et familiariter cum eo agere.

De redemptione regis.

Deinde, mediantibus hinc inde utrisque partibus, pro redemptione regis diutius tractatum est. Tandem ad hoc perventum est, ut pro redemptione sua daret centum quinquaginta millia marcas argenti ad pondus Coloniensium. Cumque super hoc imperatori et regi conveniret, præstitum est ab episcopis et ducibus et comitibus juramentum, die apostolorum Petri et Pauli,[1] ut quamcitius prænominatam pecuniam rex persolvisset, illico liber ad regnum proprium regrederetur.

Perlata autem in Anglia hujus concordiæ sententia a regis cancellario, qui literas domini regis et bullam auream imperatoris secum detulit, continuo exiit edictum a justitiariis regis, ut omnes episcopi, clerici, comites, et barones, quælibet etiam abbatia sive prioratus, quartam partem reddituum suorum ad redemptionem regis conferrent, quin etiam ad illud opus calices argenteos sus-
f. 64. tulerunt. Nulla denique ecclesia, nullus ordo, nullus gradus vel sexus prætermissus est, quin ad redimendum regem cogeretur. Hujus vero tantæ calamitatis præsagia exstiterant per totum illius anni circulum insolitæ tempestates, inundationes aquarum ter seu quater in quolibet mense, horrenda tonitrua hyemalia, fulgura et corruscationes, frugum et fructuum infertilitas.

[1] *Petri et Pauli*] June 29.

De morte Saláádini.

Eodem anno, circa Quadragesimam,[1] Saláádinus, qui tanta mala Christianis intulerat, divina animadversione percussus, apud Nazareth inter epulas subito exspiravit, cujus regnum Safadinus[2] frater ejus statim arripuit; fuerunt cum eo et sub eo filii Saláádini, contra quos filii Noradini, quos Saláádinus de regno patris eorum ex pellaverat, cum multitudine Persarum ascenderunt.

Rege autem Ricardo apud imperatorem detento, comes Johannes frater ejus, qui filiam comitis Gloecestriæ[3] duxerat in uxorem, audito fratris infortunio, atque de regressione regis diffidens, fœdus amicitiæ iniit cum rege Philippo.[4]

Savarinus ad episcopum Bathonicensem eligitur et consecratur.

Quomodo rex Philippus Normanniam aggressus sit.

Rex autem Philippus inimicitias contra regem Ricardum ubique exercens, Normanniam cum maximo exercitu aggreditur, non ordini, non sexui, non ætati parcens. Nam Gilibertus de Wascuil, accersito ad se prædicto rege, Gisortium ei per traditionem, sicut inter eos convenerat,[5] tradidit. Deinde idem rex totum Vilcassinum et comitatum Albemarliæ usque ad Diepe, et vallem de Ruil, et præcipua castella, partim proditione, partim

[1] *Quadragesimam*] In A.D. 1193, Ash Wednesday fell upon February 10, and Easter Sunday upon March 28. According to the authority of Ralph de Diceto, Saladin died on February 28. See Decem Scriptt. col. 668.

[2] *Safadinus*] Saphadinus, V.

[3] *Gloestriæ*] Gloustriæ, V.

[4] *Philippo*] Here two lines have been erased in C., and in the blank thus left a different, but coeval hand has inserted the entry respecting the bishop of Bath. And opposite to this entry, in the margin, occurs this note, written with a style: "Eodem anno H. in Cantuariensem "archiepiscopum consecratur." The former of these notices is carried into the text of H., but the latter is unnoticed.

[5] *convenerat*] Written upon an erasure in C.

expugnatione sibi subegit, necnon et terram Hugonis de Gurnai, qui se cum pluribus aliis regi subdiderat. Rothomagum etiam obsedit; sed laudabili virtute comitis Leircestriæ et probitate civium ejusdem urbis, cum suorum amissione et confusione ab obsidione repulsus est. Civitatem vero Ebroicensem[1] idem rex cepit, et multam tyrannidem exercuit.

Eodem anno, idem rex sororem regis Daciæ, nomine Ingelburgh,[2] puèllam mirabili decore præditam, accepit in uxorem, quam post nuptias repudians, inter sanctimoniales apud Suessiònem[3] collocavit; omnesque Dacos, qui cum illa advenerant, illico repatriare jussit. f. 64 b.

De regis regressione.

Anno MCXCIV. Rex Ricardus, maxima jam parte redemptionis suæ persoluta, datisque pluribus obsidibus pro reliqua parte quæ restabat persolvenda, die Purificationis[4] beatæ Mariæ ab omni custodia imperatoris liber effectus est, et ad proprium regnum redire permissus. Qui cum matre sua et cancellario per terram ducis Luvanæ ad mare Britannicum proficiscens, apud Andeworpe aptum tempus transfretandi diutius exspectavit; qui in die Dominica post festum Sancti Gregorii[5] in Angliam cum magno gaudio ad portum Sandwicensem applicuit. Hora autem qua rex cum suis applicuit, scilicet secunda hora diei, sole clarius rutilante, apparuit quidam serenissimus atque insolitus splendor, non longius a sole distans, quasi ad longitudinem et latitudinem humani corporis, candorem præfulgidum atque rubedinem quasi species iridis[6] in se continens; quem

[1] *Ebroicensem*] Written upon an erasure in C., as are also the words, "et multam tyrannidem exercuit."

[2] *Ingelburgh*] Ingelbuch, V.

[3] *Suessionem*] This word has been tampered with in C.; Suesionem, H.; Suessionem, V.

[4] *Purificationis*] February 2.

[5] *Dominica post festum S. Gregorii*] March 13.

[6] *iridis*] iris, MSS.

splendorem plures intuentes, pronunciabant regem in Anglia fore appulsum. Rex autem illico Cantuariam profectus, beatum Thomam devotus expetiit; deinde Londoniam proficiscens, a civibus Londoniæ cum maxima lætitiæ pompa exceptus est, universa civitate contra regis adventum innumerabilium opum varietate decorata atque multiformiter adornata. Audito autem regis adventu, nobiles pariter et ignobiles adventanti regi cum magna alacritate occurrunt, cernere plurimum cupientes a captivitate regressum, quem pertimuerant nunquam reversurum.[1]

Rege vero vix per unum diem apud Westmonasterium commorante, apud Sanctum Eadmundum oraturus progreditur; inde Notingheam tendit, obsessurus et expugnaturus eos qui contra eum conspiraverant et comiti Johanni se obligaverant. Robertus Brito a rege captus; jussit ut fame in carcere interiret.[2] Exercitus enim Angliæ omnia alia castella præfati comitis jam ceperat, isto solo[3] se adhuc viriliter tuente et defendente; sed rege prædictum castellum obsidente et semel assiliente, ut certius cognoverunt obsessi inopinatum regis adventum, castellum domino regi tradiderunt, seipsos cum suis in voluntate et miseratione regis ponentes. Quorum quosdam in carcere retrusit, quosdam digno pretio redemit, pecuniam singulorum f. 65. in tali necessitate avide sitiens. Nec mirum; qui enim thesauros proprios multis in locis jam expenderat, eosque partim in diutina peregrinatione, partim pro sua redemptione omnino evacuaverat, necesse erat ut aliorum pecunias avidius exquireret. Duæ siquidem præcipuæ causæ eum vehementer urgebant; ut scilicet obsides pro se datos erga imperatorem redimeret, et ut exercitum copiosum contra regem Galliæ, qui terram suam incendiis atque rapinis undique devastabat,

[1] *reversurum*] fore reversurum, V.

[2] *Robertus . . . interiret*] In the margin of C. and H.

[3] *solo*] Originally "sola" in V.

confestim conduceret. Quapropter, si avidius quam regiam majestatem decuit, pecuniam a subditis in tali casu exquirebat, ignoscendum potius erat et tantis angustiis afflicti regis pie compatiendum, quam aliquid regiæ necessitati derogandum.

Subactis igitur in Anglia omnibus in brevi adversariis, rex Ricardus in octavis Paschæ [1] apud Wintoniam consilio procerum suorum, licet aliquantulum renitens, coronatus est, archiepiscopo Cantuariensi Huberto Waltero missam celebrante, qui anno præterito a Hierosolyma regrediens in archiepiscopum est consecratus. Statim post hæc, rex in Normanniam transfretavit.

Cernens autem comes Johannes se nequaquam fratri suo posse resistere, laudabili usus consilio, regi in Normanniam applicanti supplex [2] occurrit, seque ad pedes ejus humiliter cum quibusdam militibus prostravit, miserationem fratris cum multis lacrymis implorans, seque in multis accusans et insipientiam confitens. At vero rex fraternæ calamitati misericorditer compassus, non se a lacrymis cohibere potuit, ejusque temerariæ præsumptioni condonavit, fratremque in terra prostratum erexit et in benignitatis gratiam recepit; sed tamen terras ejus [3] ablatas nequaquam ei continuo restituit. Mox ambo, militari caterva stipati, hostiles acies sæpius invadunt, obvios quosque adversarios prosternunt, castella ac terras a rege Galliæ occupatas paulatim capiunt, terramque adversariorum rapinis et incendiis devastant.

Rex Tancredus Siciliæ obiit: quo audito, imperator ad illas partes cum magno exercitu profectus est. Obiit comes Albericus de Ver.[4]

f. 65 *b*. In Nativitate beati Johannis [5] apparuerunt in aere

[1] *in octavis Paschæ*] April 17.
[2] *supplex*] Om. V.
[3] *ejus*] Om. V.
[4] *Obiit ... Ver*] This entry is upon an erasure and in a different ink in C.
[5] *Nativitate B. Johannis*] June 24.

duo magni circuli, loco, colore, et magnitudine a se invicem distantes. Nam minor circulus subrubeus et subobscurus ipsum solem æquis spatiis undique ambiebat; nubes vero subobscuræ et quasi fumosæ infra circulum et circa solem visebantur, sed solis fulgorem minime operiebant. Alius autem circulus permaximus erat, candidus et præfulgidus, nulla obscuritate vel rubedine suffusus,[1] qui medietatem prædicti circuli atque solis medietatem complectens, versus Angliam se latissimo circuitu extendebat. In circulo autem candido juxta minoris circuli conjunctionem apparuit quædam species iridis[2] ad longitudinem et latitudinem humani corporis; quod fatale prodigium ab hora tertia usque ad horam sextam perdurans, plurimorum oculos non sine admiratione ad se intuendum alliciebat. Hos autem circulos famem, tempestates, quæ ex aeris inæqualitate subsecutæ sunt, plurimi portendere arbitrabantur.[3]

Obiit domnus Petrus, abbas quartus de Cogeshale, cui successit domnus Thomas, monachus ejusdem loci.[4]

De morte ducis Austriæ.

Anno MCXCV. Terra ducis Austriæ a Cœlestino papa anathemate innodata ob injuriam quam regi repatrianti dux ipse intulerat et ob retentionem obsidum, cœlitus etiam percussa est anno præcedenti, sterilitate scilicet, fame et peste. Danubius etiam in quadam parte terræ ejus plus solito inundans, inopinato eventu decem millia hominum submersit. Sed quia in omnibus his plagis non est aversus furor ducis, immo adhuc plurimos obsides pro injusta redemptione regis accipiens, eosque in arcta custodia ponens, ad ultimum ipse

[1] *suffusus*] suffussus, V.

[2] *iridis*] iris, C.; yris, V.

[3] *Hos . . . arbitrabantur*] In C. this sentence is written in a different hand. V., without any break, passes on to "Terra ducis."

[4] *Obiit . . . loci*] This entry occurs in the margin of C.

divino judicio terribiliter percussus est, ipso cum proceribus suis Natale Domini cum maxima pompa et gloria celebrante. Die siquidem Sancti Stephani [1] cum lusum equitando pergeret, comitantibus sociis, equus, cui dux insidebat, mole nivis offensus corruit, sedentisque pedem cum tibia insanabiliter contrivit. Nam tibia cum pede protinus cum quadam nigredine intumescens, nullo medicorum cataplasmate sedari potuit, quin potius ignis, quem Infernalem vocant, tumori admixtus, intolerabiliter eum cruciabat; quem cruciatum dux diutius ferre non valens, pedem a crure detruncari
f. 66. fecit, ipso dolabrum interim tenente, cæteris omnibus præ nimio horrore et miserabilis domini sui miseratione hoc facere renuentibus. Sed nec sic doloris evasit cruciatus; nam statim femur cum reliquo corpore igne execrabili depascebatur. Tandem vero agnoscens impietatis culpam quam in regem et in obsides regis malitiose exercuerat, suadentibus episcopis qui aderant, obsides absolvit, et residuum pecuniæ de regis redemptione, quod nondum expenderat, se redditurum spopondit, atque ecclesiasticæ censuræ se deinceps pariturum promisit. Unde episcopi eum in tanta calamitate constitutum in communionem receperunt, atque ita vita decessit. Cujus corpus diutius inhumatum jacuit, eo quod filius ejus mandata patris exsequi nollet. Tandem ab amicis compulsus, obsides absolvit et repatriandi licentiam concessit; qui cum maximo labore atque inedia latenter ad propria sunt reversi. Talis igitur ultio in ducem suosque divinitus processit.

Imperator Henricus subjugavit sibi regnum Apuliæ atque Siciliæ, mortuo Tancredo rege, qui Willelmo regi injuste successerat. Idem enim imperator duxerat in uxorem sororem [2] regis Willelmi, cui regnum illud justius debebatur, mortuo fratre.

---

[1] *S. Stephani*] December 26.

[2] *sororem*] Added in the margin of C. in a different ink. A word has been erased from the text at this point.

De rege.

Rex de Maroch cum triginta regulis et cum innumerabili Sarracenorum exercitu ex Africa prorumpens, in Hispaniam applicuit, terramque regis Petit Hispaniæ, pluresque provincias incendiis et rapinis depopulans, non parcebat ætati nec ordini,[1] nisi eis qui se sponte ejus vesaniæ subdiderunt. Habeat enim in comitatu suo, sicut principes terræ illius capitulo Cisterciensi flebiliter intimaverunt, sexdecies[2] centum millia hominum, ex quorum inopinato adventu omnis Christianitas vehementer turbata est.

De abbate Joachim.

Hac[3] tempestate exstitit quidam abbas non longe ab urbe Roma, ordinis Cisterciensis, sed Cisterciensibus minime subjectus, qui quamdam expositionem super septem visiones Apocalypsis edidit, accepta divinitus, ut aiunt, sapientia, cum fere esset prius illiteratus. In hac autem expositione evidenter ostendit Vetus Testamentum Novo Testamento concordare, chronicis utriusque temporis adhibitis et diligenter supputatis; f. 66 *b.*
ubi etiam probare nititur quod quamdiu duravit lex circumcisionis, solo præcepto prius data et post scripto confirmata, tamdiu durabit gratia Evangelica. Loquitur vero ibi secundum differentiam septem visionum de mysterio septem visionum de mysterio septem[4] sigillorum, ostendens ea fore clausa in Veteri Testamento, reserata autem in Novo; assignans sex generales persecutiones Hæbreorum sex generalibus persecutioni-

[1] *ætati nec ordini*] ordini, nec ordini, V., which Martene has (conjecturally) corrected to "ordini nec "sexui."

[2] *sexdecies*] So C. above the line, but originally "xvi. centum." In V. "xvi. sexdecies," the first numeral having been altered by erasure.

[3] *Hac*] Here in C. the ink and the style of the writing change.

[4] *visionum de mysterio septem*] Om. V.

bus Christianorum. Quintam vero persecutionem, quam sub quinta visione et quinti sigilli apertione distinxit, dicit agi temporibus nostris a Saláádino et ejus successoribus, qui terram Hierosolymitanam invaserunt, et matrem Syon a civitate sua Hierusalem transmigrare compulerunt, orbata sancta Cruce, civitate et regno, et Christianorum cerimoniis et omni gloria sua illis in locis spoliata. Hanc autem persecutionem quintam quintæ persecutioni Veteris Testamenti non incongrue assignare videtur, in qua muri Hierusalem eversi sunt, et Templum concrematum est, et populus in Babylonem a Nabuchodonosor captivus adductus fuit. Dicit etiam quod anno Dominicæ Incarnationis MCXCIX. incipiet sexta visio[1] et sexti sigilli apertio, sub qua visione probat auctoritate Apocalypsis, quod complebitur omnis Antichristi persecutio, et ejusdem mors et perditio. Sed ante ejus persecutionem dicit Evangelium Christi ubique prædicandum, et ecclesiam fidelium per omnes gentes dilatandam. Post Antichristi vero interitum, quot annorum vel dierum fieret expletio sigilli sexti, id est, mortuorum resurrectio et septimi sigilli inchoatio, id est, sanctorum æterna glorificatio, soli Deo cognitum esse fatetur.

Hic[2] Romæ interrogatus a viro venerabili et in Dei Verbo facundissimo et æque religioso abbate Persennæ, quonam ausu talia prædiceret, an ex prophetia, an conjectura, seu revelatione? respondit se neque prophetiam, neque conjecturam, neque revelationem de his habere; "Sed Deus," inquit, "qui olim dedit prophetis " spiritum prophetiæ, mihi dedit spiritum intelligentiæ, " ut in Dei spiritu omnia mysteria sacræ Scripturæ " clarissime intelligam, sicut sancti prophetæ intellexe- " runt, qui eam olim in Dei spiritu ediderunt." Requisitus autem ab eodem abbate, quid sentiret de Anti-

[1] *visio*] This word is an addition in V.

[2] *Hic .... sexagenarius*] In C. this passage is written in the margin, apparently by the same hand.

christo? Respondit ipsum jam esse adolescentem in urbe Roma. Cui cum objiceret patrum præsagia, quod in Babylonia nasciturus prophetatus sit;[1] statim intulit, Romam mystice Babylonem vocari, juxta illud beati Petri apostoli in fine Epistolæ[2] suæ primæ: "Salutat vos ecclesia quæ est in Babylone electa;" unde expositor Romam Babyloniam vocat propter confusionem multiplicis[3] idolatriæ. Prædixit quoque Innocentium Tertium successorem non habiturum.[4] Requisitus autem quoto dehinc anno regnaturus foret Antichristus? Respondit, quod nisi morte præveniretur, ipsum ætatis permissu videre posset. Videbatur autem fere sexagenarius.

Quid[5] vero super hujus viri assertione, vel potius opinione, sentiendum sit, successores nostri certius dijudicare poterunt. Nos tamen jam videmus quod typicum Babylonis regnum maximum in orbe obtinet principatum, terras Christianorum de die in diem occupando, et erroris perniciem dilatando. Post mortem enim Heraclii imperatoris, languescente Romano imperio, Arabum atque Sarracenorum surrexit principatus, qui omnes impiissima secta Mahumeti hæresiarchæ infecti sunt, qui vi armata maximas Asiæ partes, et jam fere totam Asiam cum tota Africa, ac maximam partem Hispaniæ occupantes, in subjectos sicut imperium sic et errorem suum transfuderunt. Quæ hæresis diaboli quidem machinatione concepta, primo per Arrium seminata, deinde per Mahumet regem de Mecha longe lateque provecta et multo deformius adaucta, per Antichristum autem ex toto secundum diabolicam intentionem complebitur, et per totum orbem diffundetur. Sed ut malignitas diabolicæ adinventionis jam f. 67.

[1] *sit*] Originally "est" in V., but altered by the first hand.

[2] *Epistolæ*] See 1 Pet. v. 13.

[3] *multiplicis*] multiplicem, V.

[4] *Innocentium . . . habiturum*] In C. and V. incorrectly "Innocentius "... habiturus."

[5] *Quid*] The narrative is here resumed in the text of C.

propagata, facilius per Antichristi sævissimam persecutionem possit in Christicolas ubique dilatari, credibile est primitus Sarracenos Antichristi præcursores paulatim terras Christianorum invadere et suo dominio subjugare, sicut eos jam fecisse cernimus; ita ut nullus Christianus princeps, peccatis Christianorum exigentibus, adeo potens exsistat, qui Antichristi sævissimæ persecutioni et vesanæ tyrannidi audeat, vel possit, rebellando resistere.

MCXCVI. Willelmus cum Barba Londoniis occiditur.[1]

Anno MCXCVI. magna dissensio exorta est inter regem Ricardum et archiepiscopum Rotomagensem pro cujusdam castri constructione quod vocatur Andeli, ita ut archiepiscopus ab archiepiscopatu suo discederet atque Normanniam interdiceret, sedemque apostolicam adiret, pro violenta illius loci invasione, qui ad jus Rotomagensis ecclesiæ spectabat. Contra quem W.[2] Elyensis ecclesiæ episcopus et domini Regis cancellarius, Romam proficiscens, in ipsa statim progressione infirmitate correptus, Pictavis mortuus est, Domino arborem infructuosam succidente, ne diutius, vana et
f. 67 *b.* inutilia ac officio suo omnino incongrua perpetrando, terram occuparet.

Rex Ricardus dedit Othoni nepoti suo, filio ducis Saxoniæ, comitatum Aquitaniæ.

Ventus vehemens factus est mense Novembri, ita ut turres ac domos, arboresque everteret.

Soror regis Ricardi Johanna, quæ et regina exstiterat Siciliæ, desponsata est comiti Sancti Ægidii.

Rex Ricardus dedit magistro Philippo, clerico suo, episcopatum Dunhelmensis ecclesiæ; dedit etiam episcopatum Elyensis ecclesiæ magistro[3] Eustachio, cancellario suo, qui et ipse clericus exstiterat prioris cancellarii jam defuncti.

[1] MCXCVI.] *Willelmus . . . occiditur*] This entry occurs in the margin of V. in red ink, but is not found in C.

[2] *W.*] This letter is in the margin of C., but in the text of V.

[3] *magistro*] Upon an erasure in C.

Archiepiscopus Eboracensis, exigentibus culpis, archiepiscopatu suo satis juste spoliatus, Romam petiit; sed gratiam regis Ricardi et archiepiscopi Cantuariensis minime obtinere potuit, necnon et cæterorum quos vehementer offenderat; unde et quos per reconciliationis gratiam sibi placabiles reddere[1] non potuit, per veneficorum malitiam extinguere proposuit. Sed antequam eorum malitia prævaluisset, quidam ex veneficis deprehensus[2] est, qui rei hujus veritatem archiepiscopo et postmodum regi confessus est.

De visione cujusdam monachi.

Quidam monachus exstitit in Enigsamensi cœnobio, juvenis quidem ætate sed morum probitate senior, qui nuper postquam de sæculo ad religionem transierat, quodam languore correptus fuerat. Hoc itaque languore per quindecim menses contabescens, cœpit Dominum obnixius rogare quatenus ei dignaretur aliqua revelare de locis pœnalibus peccatorum et de mansionibus beatorum; nec prius destitit a precibus donec desiderium cordis ejus tribueret ei Dominus. Hoc itaque anno eductus a corpore per beatum Nicolaum, scilicet, nocte[3] illa quæ præcedit sextam feriam Dominicæ Passionis, quasi exanimis jacuit usque dum classicum pulsaretur in Sabbato[4] in vigilia Paschæ; qui rursum ad corpus reductus, sanum et incolumem se ab omni languore repperit. Postmodum autem visiones suas relatu dignas, quas veraciter conspexerat et memoriæ diligenter tradiderat, fratribus reverenter ac seriatim enarravit; quarum certitudinem ex signis evidentioribus perpendentes,

[1] *reddere*] Originally "reddidit" in C. and V. Altered by erasure to "reddere."

[2] *deprehensus*] In the margin of V., with a reference from this word, is written, "Rogerus clericus, ut dixit," in red ink, by a contemporary hand. It is not found in C.

[3] *nocte*] April 18.

[4] *Sabbato*] April 20.

et de relatione personæ referentis nihil hæsitantes præclaras illas visiones præclaro atque eleganti stylo illustrarunt.

f. 68. Conspicatus est siquidem frater ille tria loca pœnalia, magnitudine infinita, a se invicem pro criminum qualitate et pœnarum enormitate distincta atque remota. In singulis quibusque locis intuitus est infinitam hominum multitudinem utriusque sexus, diversæ ætatis, conditionis, et ordinis, qui culparum qualitate leviori sive acerbiori plectabantur supplicio. Intellexit ergo et memoriæ diligenter contradidit per qualitatem et modum suppliciorum modum et qualitatem culparum, pro quibus tam immanissimis afficiebantur tormentis. Illi autem qui in primo pœnali torquebantur loco, levi quodam atque mitiori afficiebantur tormento, respectu pœnarum quæ in secundo et tertio loco visebantur. Sed quisquis modum et ordinem visionum istarum, necnon et qualitatem tormentorum pro qualitate criminum, et personarum potentium cognitionem, gestum, et habitum, atque diversas mansiones beatorum plenius desiderat, legat[1] libellum in quo prædictæ visiones diligenter exaratæ sunt, et magnum divini timoris incitamentum ex inspectis profecto reperiet.

Anno MCXCVII. obiit Cœlestinus papa, cui successit Innocentius Tertius.[2]

Comes Henricus, quem rex Ricardus regno Hierosolymitano præfecerat, apud Ptolomaidam de quadam sublimi fenestra corruens, cui incautius innitebatur, totus contritus miserabili morte vitam finivit.

De morte Henrici imperatoris.

Imperator Henricus, postquam regnum Siciliæ suæ ditioni subjugaverat, omnemque illam pecuniam satis injuste de redemptione regis Ricardi acquisitam mili-

---

[1] *desiderat, legat*] Between these two words occurs an erasure in C.

[2] *Tertius*] Added in the margin of C., but omitted in V.

tibus stipendiariis distribuerat, obiit in Campania apud Tusculanam, satis anxius et gemens quod tantum scelus erga regem a peregrinatione repatriantem facere præsumpsisset, justum Dei judicium super se manifeste venisse sentiens. Recolebat nimirum transacti temporis quo imperaverat brevitatem, scelerum suorum numerositatem, bonorum actuum, quibus perenni vita simul et memoria beandus foret, paucitatem; maximeque illius impietatis horrore cruciabatur, quod regem a sanctorum locorum peregrinatione redeuntem tanto tempore in custodia sua detinuerat, ubi per detentionis suæ occasionem, magnam partem sui principatus, hostibus terram suam interim invadentibus, amiserat. Torquebatur etiam quod regnum regis tam indebita ac intolerabili exactione oppresserat; quod nihil adhuc in recompensationem persolutæ sibi indebitæ pecuniæ regi reverso persolverat, nec aliquod ereptionis auxilium contra invasores atrociter decertanti contulerat. Pro his et hujusmodi malis mente et corpore vehementer afflictus, in dolore et tristitia diem clausit extremum. f. 68 *b*.

Hic diligenter perpendat quisquis avaritiæ facibus[1] inardescit, quisquis aliorum facultates injuste diripit, quam brevi temporis transitu consumuntur, quam cito pereunt et defluunt. Attamen quædam amara imprimuntur memoriæ signacula, ac fœda relinquunt cauteriatæ conscientiæ perpetuo vestigia, nisi ante mortem ablata restituantur atque condigna satisfactione expientur. Ecce, quanta et qualis est severissima animadversio justi Judicis Dei, terribilis in consiliis super filios hominum! Ecce, quomodo Altissimus est patiens redditor, qui peccatorum mala et patitur et reddit! Ducem siquidem Austriæ, qui regem captivaverat, super nequitia perpetrata impœnitentem horribili atque insanabili plaga ultio divina primitus percussit; imperatorem vero, violenter extorta minime

[1] *facibus*] fascibus, MSS.

restituentem, exitiali morte postmodum[1] mulctavit. Hinc jam tertius hostis,[2] crudelior cæteris, infestior universis, quem Dei longanimitas diutius toleravit, sibi metuat, sibique prospiciat, ut ea quæ potius dolo quam viribus rapuit, exsolvere studeat, ne secundum duritiam[3] suam et cor impœnitens thesaurizet sibi iram divinæ animadversionis, nec diutius abutatur Dei patientia, ne severiori (quod absit!) feriatur vindicta. Sed in[4] omnibus his non est aversus furor ejus; sed adhuc manus ejus extenta ad diripiendum, ad prædandum et ad interficiendum.

Prædictus vero imperator, dum adhuc incolumis persisteret, sibi forte blandiebatur, cæteris sibi applaudentibus atque adulantibus, quod copiosam militum catervam in partes Hierosolymitanas, anno præcedenti,[5] cum archiepiscopo Magontino et cum ducibus et comi-
f. 69. tibus suis direxerat, quibus de thesauris suis maximam pecuniam distribuerat, quam tamen virus pestiferæ supradictæ rapacitatis omnino fermentaverat. Inde est, ut licet suspicari, quod copiosus ille exercitus, et longe numerosior quam pater ejus Frethericus secum prius adduxerat, in partibus transmarinis adveniens, magnam quidem stragem paganorum fecit, civitatesque maritimas et oppida a Sidone usque ad Antiochiam satis viriliter, ut dicunt, expugnavit atque expugnando cepit; sed captas, justo Dei judicio, qui odio habet rapinam in holocaustum, citius amisit, quatenus et pecunia illa imperatoris in capiendis urbibus incassum dispergeretur, atque exercitus ejus conductitius magis affligeretur; quem vehementius contristavit civitatum captarum amissio, quam prius lætificaverat[6] earumdem triumphalis adeptio. Audita denique morte

[1] *postmodum*] In C. the word "postmodum" is added between the lines, but occurs in the text of V.

[2] *tertius hostis*] An allusion, doubtless, to the king of France.

[3] *duritiam*] See Rom. ii. 5.

[4] *Sed in*] See Isai. v. 25.

[5] *anno præcedenti*] A.D. 1196.

[6] *lætificaverat*] lætificarat, C.

imperatoris, confestim exercitus ille regreditur, unusquisque in terram et patriam suam, terram Hierosolymitanam satis afflictam relinquentes; tribus tantum civitatibus viriliter contra insultum[1] paganorum se tuentibus, scilicet Ptolomaida, Tyro, et Tripoli.

De crudeli morte Andronici imperatoris.

Ante hoc tempus,[2] Andronicus imperator Constantinopolitanus, justo Dei judicio, a proceribus suis[3] et civibus urbis regiæ comprehensus, horribili atque crudelissima nece periit, ob nimiam factorum suorum protervitatem et cordis inhumani arrogantiam. Nam ab illo præclaro palatio urbis Constantinopolis violenta manu civium abstractus et concatenatus, ad colla indomitorum equorum judicio procerum ligatus est, atque eadem die patibulo suspensus spiritum gemebundus miserabiliter[4] exhalavit. Satis enim promeruerat tam horrendo mortis supplicio dilaniari, cujus vita fere in omnibus odiosa atque maligna exstiterat. Siquidem imperatorem adolescentulum, consanguineum suum, filium videlicet Emanuelis piissimi imperatoris, cui se velut tutorem atque patronum exhibuerat, dolo tenuit et dolose occidit, quem navi, ut dicunt, impositum in mare[5] submergi fecit. Cujus imperium atque thesauros confestim invadens, etiam imperatricem adolescentulam, f. 69 *b*.
filiam scilicet regis Ludovici, sororem regis Philippi, quam filius ejusdem Andronici pro execrabili facinore patris sui noluit maritali lege contingere, a patre jussus, nefandis complexibus violavit, atque intra numerum concubinarum suarum violenter retinuit, hancque dignitate imperiali penitus exspoliavit. Tantæ autem inhumanitatis et arrogantiæ exstiterat, quod

[1] *insultum*] assultum, V.

[2] *Ante hoc tempus*] Namely, in 1185.

[3] *suis*] Above the line in C.; in the text of V.

[4] *miserabiliter*] Om. V.

[5] *mare*] mari, V.

neminem suorum in[1] palatio in conspectu suo residere permittebat, sed omnes, (cujuslibet ordinis, vel gradus, aut dignitatis forent,) more servientium astantium, palliis depositis, famulari. Et quia injuste imperium sibi indebitum arripuerat, omnes suæ nationis homines suspectos habebat. Unde probos quosque diversæ gentis alienigenas ad se accersiri fecit, atque de hujusmodi familiarem exercitum circa se instituit.

Inexorabilis discordia jampridem inter regem Angliæ et regem Galliæ exorta, nequaquam potuit ullo pacis fœdere terminari, aut aliquo colloquio inter eos habito sedari; quin utriusque exercitus provincias ferro [et][2] flammis devastaret, rapinis indulgeret, urbes, castella, ecclesiasque solo tenus everteret; in tantum ut terra absque habitatore relicta, et cultoribus evacuata, solitudinis speciem multis in locis præferre videretur. Nec defuit tantæ impietati divinæ ultionis animadversio, quæ utriusque principis terras fame, peste, ex nimia aeris intemperie, per septem annos dirissime flagellaret. In Gallicanis tamen partibus major famis calamitas esse videbatur. Sed in[3] omnibus his non est aversus furor eorum, sed adhuc manus eorum extentæ ad rapiendum et interficiendum. Verumtamen in utriusque exercitus simili pugna, dissimilis pugnæ causa geri videbatur, cum terras, quas rex Francorum partim dolo et quorumdam proditione subjugaverat, partim subitanea invasione, nemine defendente, injuste præoccupaverat, rex Anglorum de captivitate regrediens nitebatur auferre, et de manibus violenti invasoris violenter extorquere; unde et in omni fere decertatione sua prosperior ei fortuna arridebat, et optatum decertationis trophæum lætus reportabat. Ex quo enim liber ab imperatore
f. 70. rediit, non solum ablata castella (absque Gisortio et quibusdam aliis,) recuperavit, verum etiam et multo

[1] *suorum in*] An erasure occurs between these two words in C.

[2] *et*] Added to supply an accidental omission in C.

[3] *Sed in*] See Isai. v. 25.

plura quam amiserat castella assultu et obsidione sibi subegit. Episcopum insuper Belvacensem, qui, relicta cœlestis Regis militia, terreni regis militiæ se omnimodis tradiderat, et infestior cæteris apparebat, necnon et dominum Willelmum de Merlo, incautius obequitantes, familia regis Ricardi comprehendit, quos custodiæ carcerali mancipavit.

De comite Baldewino, et quomodo rex Philippus incaute invasit Flandriam.

Comes Flandrensis Baldewinus, nepos Philippi comitis ex sorore, cum rege Ricardo fœdus pacis cum juramento iniit; cujus auxilio fretus, contra regem Galliarum rebellavit, jus suum de manibus regis, qui magnam partem Flandriæ invaserat, gestiens eripere. Alii etiam potentes viri, necnon et comes Sancti Ægidii et comes Boloniensis, cum rege Ricardo confœderati sunt. His amicitiarum confœderationibus rex Philippus mente consternatus, ignorabat super quos fidelitatis suæ desertores furoris sui malignitatem prius effundere posset. Accidit autem,[1] dum rex Anglorum in Bituricensi diœcesi plurima oppida expugnando caperet, terrasque regis Franciæ devastaret, quod comes Flandrensis, auxilio regis Ricardi fretus, urbes et castella quæ rex Philippus in Flandria possederat, interim fortiter expugnaret ac quædam ex eis caperet. Unde rex Philippus nimio furore succensus, cum omni exercitu suo in Flandriam perrexit, volens omnem Flandriam sibi subjugare, et comiti jus suum penitus eripere. Proceres autem sui ei dissuaserunt ne ulteriorem adiret Flandriam, eo quod nullus unquam regum præsumpsisset illam cum exercitu adire, pro platearum atque viarum angustia et crebra fossarum circumcinctione. Sed hanc procerum dissuasionem parvipendens, duxit exercitum suum per Flandriam, devenitque coram Ypres.

[1] *autem*] autem ut, MSS.

Quo comperto, comes Flandriensis statim adunavit exercitum, pontes post regis exercitum confringens et viarum exitus obstruens, ne victualia possent undecumque advehi. Exercitus autem regis huc illucque dispersus, fame cogente, ab exercitu comitis pluribus in locis prosternebatur, atque etiam a mulieribus impetebatur. Cernens vero rex Francorum se incircumspecte egisse, exercitumque suum famis inedia per triduum laborasse, comitemque cum suis ad belli procinctum paratum esse,
f. 70 *b.* tactus dolore cordis intrinsecus, sero pœnituit quod se tam temerarie in manus inimicorum ingesserat. Denique præsumptuosæ temeritatis suæ arguens imperitiam, se stulte egisse confitetur, sibique reatum imputat, qui consilia principum suorum audire detrectaverat ; pavidumque alloquens exercitum ne timeat exhortatur, dixitque hoc solum fore necessarium ut sapienter de partibus illis egrediantur, quas insipienter intraverant. Prudentique usus consilio, de proceribus suis ad comitem transmisit, qui ei de pace formanda suggererent, atque animum ejus ad pacem et concordiam inclinarent. Comes itaque, multis procerum allegationibus ad pietatem flexus, ad regem, armis depositis, progreditur. Cui adventanti rex ex equo desiliens, reverenter processit obviam, ac comitem benigna simulatione suscepit, omniaque jura sua quæ ei jure hæreditario debebantur, se redditurum[1] jurejurando spopondit, prout utriusque partis principes fideli consideratione decernerent. Multisque sermonibus de concordia et pace reformanda inter se habitis, respondit comes se nequaquam aliquam pacis reformationem absque consilio et assentatione domini regis Ricardi posse componere, maxime cum super hoc uterque fidei sacramento astrictus teneretur. Proinde dies præfigitur, locusque determinatur, ubi omnes simul ad colloquium convenirent, pacemque inter se reformarent. Sicque rex Philippus ab imminenti periculo sapienter evadens, inimicosque

[1] *redditurum*] Om. V.

deludens, cuncta quæ prius in angusto positus spoponderat, postmodum facere prorsus [1] abnuebat.

Hoc anno obiit magister Petrus Remensis, cantor Parisiacensis ecclesiæ, vir vitæ venerabilis, morum probitate conspicuus, doctrina, verbo, et actione clarus; qui in theologia his temporibus præcipuus inter doctores habebatur et summus. Hic inter plura opuscula, quæ potius religioso ac morali stylo digessit quam pompatico eloquio, utpote verborum phaleras devitans, novas quasdam Glossas super Psalterium et super Epistolas Pauli breves et dilucidas composuit, fastidiosis lectoribus atque labili memoriæ, necnon et paupertati scholarium, in omnibus consulens. In quibus Glossis non a sensu vel a tramite præcedentium patrum in aliquo f. 71. aberravit,[2] sed expositiones multiplices atque profusas in unam seriem compendiosius propriis verbis coarctavit. Hic post decessum domni Mauricii Parisiacensis episcopi, qui illud præclarum atque eximium opus basilicæ Beatæ Mariæ in eadem urbe inchoavit, ad pontificatus honorem ab universo clero et populo, rege annuente, electus, tam grave onus suscipere, ne ab altiori gradu gravior fieret casus, omnimodis recusavit. Postmodum vero a domno Willelmo Remensi archiepiscopo et ab universo clero et civibus ejusdem urbis rogatus, immo compulsus, ut decanatum ejusdem ecclesiæ [3] susciperet, non facile assensum præbuit; sed tandem devictus importunitate precantium civium, qui se ad pedes ejus in rogando [4] prostraverant, hac conditione consensit, si licentiam a capitulo Parisiensi [5] impetrare posset. Dumque a Remensium urbe Parisius proficisceretur, ut hanc licentiam impetraret, devenit in itinere ad quamdam abbatiam ordinis [6] Cisterciensis,[7] cui vocabulum Longus Pons, ut eorum orationibus se commendaret, ac

[1] *prorsus*] Om. V.
[2] *aberravit*] oberravit, C.
[3] *ejusdem ecclesiæ*] ejusdem urbis ecclesiæ, V.
[4] *in rogando*] Om. V.
[5] *Parisiensi*] Pariensi, V.
[6] *ordinis*] Om. V.
[7] *Cisterciensis*] Cisterciensium, V.

quemdam librum secum de armario asportaret; ubi mox gravi infirmitate correptus et ad extrema deductus, testamentum suum disposuit, atque habitum sanctæ religionis in magna spiritus alacritate suscepit; sicque omnibus hujus sæculi curis exoneratus, vitam laudabilem fine laudabili terminavit. Ex qua re satis conjici potest quia raptus est, ne malitia temporis hujus mutaret intellectum ejus, aut ne fictio humanæ laudis deciperet animam illius.[1]

O quam dissimilis exstitit vita hujus eximii doctoris a reproba vita Hugonis Cestrensis episcopi, qui circa hoc tempus[2] velut arbor infructuosa decessit, qui in sanctuarium Dei, in patrimonium Crucifixi, se indigne ingesserat; qui nihil de episcopatu nisi honorem terrenum, divitias, corporis voluptatem, quærebat, id est, quæ sua erant, non quæ Jesu Christi! Hic vero non pastor, sed mercenarius, monachos Coventrensis cœnobii expulit a sedibus suis, clericos seculares loco[3] monachorum substituens; sed tandem, dissipatis eorum substantiis, auctoritate summi pontificis et annuente domino rege, monachi ad pristinas sedes remearunt. Et quamvis vir iste in multis irreligiosam vitam duxerit, in fine tamen habitum monachi cum magna cordis contritione apud Sanctam Mariam Becci suscepit, dieque Parasceves, dum Passio legeretur, obiit.[4]

f. 71 b. Anno MCXCVIII.[5] Per idem tempus exstitit quidam sacerdos Fulcho[6] nomine, in quodam pago Parisiacensi cui vocabulum Nuili, verbo et vita clarus et sanctæ prædicationi ex toto deditus; qui ecclesiam sibi commissam sollicite regens, assiduis exhortationibus populum Dei circumquaque constitutum ad contemptum mundanorum et ad appetitum cœlestium provocabat.

---

[1] *illius*] ejus, V.

[2] *circa hoc tempus*] He died 27 March 1198, at Bec, and was there buried. See Hoved. f. 442 b.

[3] *loco*] in loco, V.

[4] *Et quamvis . . . obiit*] Added in C. on the bottom margin, but in the text of V.

[5] *MCXCVIII.*] Om. V.

[6] *Fulcho*] Fulco, V.

Peccata delinquentium nequaquam dissimulabat, sed severa voce et aperta increpatione arguebat; sed præcipue fœneratores, qui in provinciis illis super numerum multiplicati fuerant, necnon et fornicarias mulieres aspera invectione increpabat. Nemini delinquenti blandiebatur, neminem simulatoria adulatione palpabat, sed palam et nude nudam promebat omnibus veritatem. In hac spiritus libertate per duos annos sanctæ prædicationi insistens, paucissimos ab errore vitæ suæ convertere potuit, quin prædicationem ejus parvipenderent, quidam etiam audire contemnerent, nonnulli vero ei insultando convitiabantur; unde et a prædicatione cessandum decreverat. Sed pius Conditor, nolens prædicatoris sui semina ulterius deperire, (qui populum Dei tripliciter pascere satagebat, scilicet exemplo conversationis, verbo sanctæ prædicationis, necnon et fructu devotæ orationis,) contulit voci prædicatoris sui vocem virtutis, ut verba ejus, quasi sagittæ potentis acutæ, hominum corda prava consuetudine obdurata penetrarent, et ad lacrymas et pœnitentiam emollirent. Vox siquidem ejus magnificentiæ et virtutis, deserta a Domino corda concutiebat, abscondita tenebrarum discutiebat, torporem negligentium excutiebat, non solum revocans peccatores ab errore viæ suæ, sed et reducens et statuens eos contra faciem suam, ut cauteriatæ conscientiæ liber ante mentis oculos aperiretur, ac misera vitæ series ante singulos revolveretur. Contulit etiam suo prædicatori virtutum insignia, ut sermonem sanctæ prædicationis confirmaret sequentibus signis, ut quos non potuit verbis, ad viam salutis revocaret f. 72.
miraculorum prodigiis. Nam cæcis visum, surdis auditum præstabat, claudis gressum restituebat, mutis usum linguæ reformabat, cæteraque invaletudinum incommoda virtute divina depellebat, et hoc absque protensæ orationis suffragio, sola manus impositione et sanctæ Crucis signaculo.

His duobus charismatibus præfatus vir insignitus,

tertia adhuc virtute non mediocriter ditatus, singulariter his diebus effulsit. Habebat siquidem quoddam Sancti Spiritus munus privilegiatum, scilicet, discretionem spirituum, per quod intelligebat quibus infirmis et quo tempore curationis privilegia largiretur. Cum enim infirmi quique curationis opem ab eo importunius efflagitarent, quibusdam repente sanitatem contulit; quibusdam omnino denegavit, asserens saluti animæ non fore proficuum, sed nec coram Deo acceptum, si pristinæ sanitati restituerentur, ne forte deteriores per adeptæ sanitatis curationem efficerentur; quibusdam vero dixit nondum tempus curationis suæ advenisse, nec peccata sua per divinæ animadversionis flagellum adhuc expiasse.

Tot igitur virtutibus vir iste sublimatus, Verbum Dei per civitates, per castella, ab episcopis invitatus magnifice disseminavit, in omni loco tamquam Angelus Domini ab universo clero et populo summa cum veneratione susceptus. Atque in omnibus his (quod mirum quibusdam videtur,) nullam singularitatem austerioris conversationis, sive in vigiliis, sive in ciborum parcimonia, palam demonstravit, sed cum gratiarum actione quæ sibi apponebantur percipiens.

Postquam igitur Verbum Dei per Galliarum provincias disseminaverat, fœneratoresque ab insatiabili cupiditate retraxerat, quorum inexplebilem avaritiam nunquam comprimere potuit nec terror regiæ potestatis aut censura ecclesiasticæ animadversionis; postquam etiam fornicarias mulieres, cæterosque diversis criminibus irretitos ad viam salutis revocaverat, totamque provinciam signis et prodigiis illustraverat; tandem devenit ad generale capitulum Cistercii, multis eum comitantibus, ut abbatum qui convenerant et totius ordinis se com-
f. 72 b. mendaret orationibus. In quorum capitulo signaculum sanctæ Crucis in veste sua sumpsit una cum episcopo Lingonensi, qui abbas exstiterat Clarævallis. Rogavit obnixius supplicando, quatenus aliquos sanctæ peregri-

nationis suæ socios et Verbi Dei coadjutores ex illa numerositate abbatum largiri sibi dignarentur; sed minime impetrare potuit, quia incongruum sibi videbatur proprias oves et sollicitudini suæ creditas deserere, atque alienis et sibi non commissis pabulum sanctæ prædicationis præstare. Egressus itaque de capitulo abbatum, multaque secum ferens sanctæ Crucis signacula, adjunctis sibi fratrum catervis, sermonem fecit exhortatorium extra portam ad populum qui convenerat, exhortans eos de itinere Hierosolymitano conficiendo. Cumque populi conspicerent ipsum virum Dei fore Cruce signatum, atque audirent illum affore ducem ac rectorem hujus sacri itineris, certatim ad eum undique concurrunt, et ex omnibus locis catervatim ruunt divites et pauperes, nobiles pariter et ignobiles, senes cum junioribus, promiscui sexus innumera multitudo, signumque Crucis ab eo alacriter suscipiunt. Inde vero postmodum digressus, adiit iterum Gallicanas partes, exhortationem ubique faciens de peregrinatione illa in nomine Domini arripienda.

Circa hoc tempus,[1] comes Flandrensis illud præclarum castrum de Sancto Omero[2] obsedit. Obsessi vero regi Philippo mandant ut obsidioni succurrat infra terminum quemdam nominatum; quo non opem ferente, reddiderunt castrum comiti. Quo in tempore,[3] rex Anglorum intravit terram regis Franciæ apud Dangu, et cepit castrum de Curcellis, cum turri, ipsumque regem Galliæ, qui veniebat de Mantua cum exercitu suo in auxilium, fugavit[4] usque ad portas Gisortii, ubi ejus exercitus magna ex parte fusus est, et plures nobiles capti sunt. Quomodo autem et qualiter, et quo anni

[1] *Circa hoc tempus*] We learn from Ralph de Diceto, (col. 704,) that the earl arrived before the town on September 6, and that the siege continued for three weeks.

[2] *Sancto Omero*] These two words are written upon an erasure in C.

[3] *Quo in tempore*] Ralph de Diceto gives Sunday, 27 Sept., as the date, col. 704. See also Hoved. f. 444 b.

[4] *fugavit*] On Sept. 28. Ralph de Diceto. Ibid. and also Hoveden.

hujus tempore id factum fuerit, literæ quas rex Ricardus cancellario suo E. episcopo Elyensi, tunc in Anglia constituto, direxit, expressius indicant, quarum tenor hujuscemodi est:

" Ricardus,[1] rex Angliæ et dux Normanniæ, etc.,
" dilecto et fideli suo cancellario, salutem. Noveritis
f. 73. " quod, Deo volente, proxima Dominica ante festum
" Sancti Michaelis intravimus terram regis Franciæ,
" apud Dangu, et insultum fortem fecimus apud Cur-
" cellas, et castrum cum turri et dominum castri
" cepimus graviter usque ad mortem vulneratum, et
" omnes alios, et totum quod in castro erat. Eodem
" die insultavimus domum fortem de Burriz, quam
" cepimus cum omnibus quæ in ea erant, et sero redi-
" vimus cum exercitu nostro apud Dangu. Die autem
" crastina,[2] rex Franciæ, his auditis, venit de Mantua
" cum quadringentis[3] militibus et servientibus et com-
" munis suis, ad succurrendum castro de Curcellis, quod
" putavit nondum esse[4] captum. Nos autem, ex quo
" eum venire cognovimus, exivimus cum pauca gente,
" et gentem magnam arrestari fecimus super[5] ripam de
" Etta, quia credebamus eum venturum super gentem
" nostram ultra ripam de parte de Dangu. Ipse vero
" cum gente sua descendit versus Gisorz. Nos[6] hoc
" videntes, secuti sumus eum in fugam conversum et
" clamantem quod nemo tangeret eum et gentem suam.
" Itaque eos in tanta districtione posuimus in porta
" Gisortii, quod pons fractus est sub illis, et rex Franciæ,
" ut audivimus, bibit de riveria, et alii milites usque ad

---

[1] *Ricardus*] Another copy of this letter occurs in Hoveden, f. 444 b., where it is addressed to Philip, bishop of Durham.

[2] *Die autem crastina*] Monday, 28 Sept.

[3] *quadringentis*] trecentis, Hovd.; quatuor cccc., V.

[4] *esse*] fore, V.

[5] *et gentem . . . super*] et gentem nostram magnam dimisimus super, Hoved.

[6] *Nos*] Hoveden's text here reads, " Nos eum in fugam conversum et " gentem suam in tanta districtione " posuimus in portem Gysortii, quod " pons. . . ."

" viginti ceciderunt in aquam et submersi sunt. Nos " autem cum una lancea prostravimus Matthæum de " Montemorici et Alanum de Thusci[1] et Fulconem de " Gilervallis,[2] et captos tenuimus; et bene capti sunt " de gente sua usque ad centum milites, quorum majo- " rum nomina vobis mittimus, et aliorum vobis mit- " temus, cum eos viderimus. Marchadeus enim habuit " usque ad triginta milites, quos non videramus[3] in " recessu latoris præsentium, et alii quidem milites de " nostris ibi plures ceperunt, quos similiter nondum " vidimus. Servientes et pedites et milites capti sunt, " quorum non est numerus. Dextrarii capti sunt du- " centi, quorum septies viginti cooperti fuerunt ferro. " Ita devicimus regem Franciæ apud Gisortium; sed " nos id non fecimus, immo Deus et jus nostrum per " nos; et in hoc facto posuimus [in casu][4] caput nos- " trum et regnum, et supra consilium omnium nostro- " rum. Hoc vobis significamus, quia cor vestrum præ " gaudio[5] per hoc credimus dilatari, cum vos nostris " congaudeatis successibus. Teste meipso apud Dangu, " xxx. die Septembris."

Hoc anno[6] Incarnationis Dominicæ corpus sanctissimi *f. 73 b.* regis et martyris Edmundi post ccc. et xxx. annos incorruptum et flexibile, nervis solidum, cum omni compage membrorum et cum solita carnis teneritudine, a piis et religiosis exploratoribus, scilicet, a venerabili Samsone ejusdem loci abbate, et ab octodecim[7] monachis ejusdem congregationis, repertum est. Ex qua autem occasione id attentare præsumpserint, paucis dicendum, aliis copiosa scribendi materia reservata.

[1] *Thusci*] Rusci, Hoved.

[2] *Gilervallis*] Gilerwallis, C. V.

[3] *videramus*] vidimus, Hoved., which text omits the remainder of the sentence.

[4] *in casu*] These two words, omitted in the text, are supplied from Hoved., as they are necessary to complete the sense.

[5] *gaudio*] gaudio per hoc, V.

[6] *Hoc anno*] Above is written with a style, in C., "videlicet " MCXCVIII."

[7] *octodecim*] In C. the original reading was "xv.," which was afterwards altered to "xviii." The same correction occurs on the subsequent page.

Anterior siquidem pars preciosissimæ illius thecæ, quæ sanctissimam glebam regis continet, ex quodam nocturni incendii infortunio, quod circa altare ex corruscantibus cereis accidit, ab igne est[1] ustulata et aliquantulum dissoluta, preciosis lapidibus per vim caloris nimii confractis. Ex quo infortunio cuncta congregatio cum universis incolis animo consternati et nimium contristati, vehementer metuebant ne vis sævientis flammæ illa sanctissima membra eatenus incorrupta aliquatenus læsisset. Et quia nonnulli de patroni sui incorruptione dubitabant, animisque vacillabant, eo quod nullus superstes fuisset qui hujusce[2] rei notitiam haberet, placuit ut pie explorarent qualiter circa corpus sancti singula essent composita, obsecrationibus et jejuniis intente præmissis. Quadam igitur nocte, cæteris in lectis suis ex more quiescentibus et nil tale tunc suspicantibus, ascivit abbas octodecim[3] fratres, ad hoc opus ante præmonitos, quos religiosiores intellexerat; cantatisque septem Pœnitentialibus Psalmis, cereisque undique accensis, thecam sancti cum maxima formidine reserant, divinam ultionem super pia temeritate plurimum metuentes. In hoc igitur exteriori loculo thecam quercinam reperiunt, clavis ferreis undique concatenatam, ad mensuram sacri corporis. Circa pectus erat quoddam foramen in illo locello lamina opertum aurea, in qua cujusdam angeli figura decenter erat exsculpta,[4] atque hic versus exaratus

"Martyris ecce zoma Michaelis servat agalma."[5]

In foramine reperta est quædam schedula, quandam continens Anglicam orationem, quam sanctus dudum,
f. 74. (ut credimus,) frequentare consueverat, in qua innumerabiles Creatori exhibet salutationes.

---

[1] *est*] Above the line in V.
[2] *hujusce*] hujuscemodi, V.
[3] *octodecim*] See note [7], p. 85.
[4] *exsculpta*] asculpta, V.
[5] *agalma*] Here, in the margin of C., occurs this gloss, written by a nearly contemporary hand: "Agal- "mata, id est, sacra receptacula "Divinitatis."

Reserato ergo illo quercino locello, ablatisque duobus preciosis palliis superpositis, nulla adhuc vetustate aut corruptione consumptis, tandem reperiunt illud sanctissimum corpus resupinatum, in syndone munda et subtilissima involutum; quæ vestis nullis maculis respersa aut aliqua corruptione vetustatis seu tinearum demolita, immo candorem nivis cum sui integritate præferebat. Hanc autem syndonem penitus amovere formidabant, ne in illud sacrosanctum corpus irreverenter forte intenderent, quod etiam satis eorum viseri patebat, subtilissima syndone tantum interposita. Preciosum tamen caput sancti martyris et aures, frontem cum arcuatis superciliis, oculorum concavitatem cum narium eminentia, brachia etiam cum articulis tam manuum quam pedum singillatim cum pia cordis aviditate contrectantes, omnia solida et integra repererunt. Ex cujus præclaræ visionis certitudine et sacrosancta membrorum contrectatione cuncta congregatio supra modum exhilarata, cum lacrymis et intimo cordis gemitu multimoda laudum et gratiarum præconia Omnipotenti Deo retulerunt, qui facit mirabilia magna solus. Possunt nunc gaudenter et confidenter dicere, "Quanta audivimus "et patres nostri narraverunt nobis, nunc cognovimus "ea, quia sicut audivimus ita et vidimus in civitate "Domini virtutum."

Tua sunt hæc, Christe, opera, qui sanctos tuos etiam in præsenti ita glorificas, qui tantam tamque stupendam dignitatis prærogativam in eis ostendere usque in finem sæculi non cessas, ut cunctis fere mortalibus, secundum primariam tuæ animadversionis sententiam, in cinerem resolutis, quosdam tamen amicorum tuorum privilegiata dignitate incorruptos, tam potenter quam mirabiliter reserves, ut evidens argumentum futuræ resurrectionis et carnis glorificandæ incredulis ostendas, et nihilominus cunctis insinues, quanto honore sublimati sunt in cœlis quos tantæ excellentiæ privilegio glorificasti in terris. Vere juxta Psalmistæ vocem, "Nimis honorati sunt

" amici tui, Deus, vere nimis confortatus est principatus " eorum."

f. 74 b. Post decessum [1] Henrici imperatoris facta est dissensio inter episcopos et proceres imperii de imperatoria electione. Nonnulli siquidem elegerunt Philippum regem Galliæ, alii Ricardum [2] regem Angliæ, qui dudum captivus inter eos exstiterat, at aliqui ducem Suaviæ, atque alii ducem Saxoniæ, qui tunc temporis in expeditione Hierosolymitana habebatur cum archiepiscopo Maguntino, et cum duce Luvanæ. Sed rex Ricardus, divitiis et consiliis callens, tantum egit muneribus et xeniis suis erga archiepiscopum Coloniæ et erga proceres imperii, quod omnibus aliis omissis, Othonem nepotem suum ex sorore, filium Henrici ducis Saxoniæ, miræ strenuitatis et elegantis corporis adolescentem, eligerent atque hunc in solio regni Teutonici apud Aquisgrani sublimarent, expulso duce Suaviæ, qui se ibidem cum fautoribus suis violenter intruserat; pluribusque præliis inter se habitis, nequaquam [3] ditioni ejus se dederunt.

Cometa per quindecim dies mense Novembri per diem apparuit, interitum regis Ricardi prodigialiter, ut aiunt, præfigurans, sicut et hyemalia horrenda tonitrua, quæ in crastino Sancti Thomæ [4] apostoli audita sunt.

Capella beati Thomæ martyris ab archiepiscopo Baldewino apud Lameheie constructa, et a successore ejus domno Huberto preciosis donariis ditata, pluribusque præbendis ac redditibus dotata, jussu summi pontificis Innocentii, (qui nec prece nec pretio a sententia illata flecti poterat,) solotenus est eversa; monachis Cantuariensibus adversus archiepiscopum et regem, et adversus fere omne regnum, super hac controversia apud curiam Romanam disceptantibus, et in sua

[1] *Post decessum*] A.D. 1197, September 28.

[2] *Ricardum*] Om. V.

[3] *nequaquam*] In C. this word is written upon an erasure.

[4] *in crastino S. Thomæ*] December 22.

disceptatione tunc prævalentibus ; quippe qui domnum apostolicum in omni illa causa patronum et propitium habebant. Ipse nimirum advocatus monachorum exstiterat, antequam ad summi pontificatus apicem promotus fuisset. Timebant siquidem monachi ne per occasionem tam excellentis ac tam famosæ capellæ, in qua fere omnes episcopi et majoris sapientiæ et nobilitatis viri præbendas habebant, privilegiis et dignitatibus metropolitanæ ecclesiæ suæ per successiones temporum derogaretur. In hac autem disceptatione multum et diu laboratum est, morientibus hinc inde monachis et clericis, qui super hac controversia dirimenda Romam proficiscebantur. Afflicti sunt vehementer prædicti monachi tam ab archiepiscopis quam a regibus, qui partibus archiepiscoporum favebant, in tantum quod reditus eorum sæpius confiscarentur, maximamque indigentiam in alimentis cæterisque necessariis nonnunquam paterentur. f. 75.

Hoc anno[1] decessit Ricardus Londinensis episcopus, qui magna sollicitudine invigilaverat circa constructionem ecclesiæ beati Pauli apud Lundonias, qui etiam præclara ac sumptuosa ædificia in episcopatu construxit. Cui ex largitione regis Ricardi successit Willelmus de Sainte-Marie-Eglise, anno sequenti, Dominica ante Ascensionem ;[2] ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi Huberto apud Westmonasterium consecratus.

De morte regis Ricardi.

MCXCIX.[3] Plerosque mortales Omnipotens Deus in sublime erigit super gentes, et super regna constituit ; divitiarum affluentiam, honoris cumulos tribuit, ut dignitate et magnificentia præ cæteris polleant, auctoritate præmineant, populos subditos regant, quatinus ex bene-

[1] *Hoc anno*] A change in the writing of C. is here perceptible.
[2] *Dominica ante Ascensionem*] Sunday, 23 May 1199.
[3] MCXCIX.] Om. V.

ficiorum Dei numerositate quodammodo obruti, dignas gratiarum actiones persolvant Creatori, terrenas divitias sic dispensantes in terris ut perpetuas possint obtinere in cœlis, sicque transeant per bona temporalia ut non amittant æterna. Quod nimirum tunc recte agitur cum pro impensis beneficiis cuncta largiens Conditor obnixius amatur, et amando in omni actione veneretur et pie colatur. Quibus necesse est ut, juxta Pauli vocem, divites in operibus bonis existentes, studeant sibi facere amicos de Mammona iniquitatis, a quibus in æterna tabernacula recipiantur. Sed, heu proh dolor! filii hominum, graves corde, diligentes mundi vani-
f. 75 b. tatem et negligentes veritatem, donis Dei multipliciter abutuntur, quorum animus nec ab insatiabili compescitur mundi ambitione, nec corpus inexplebili satiari potest deliciarum voluptate. Unde plerumque fit ut quod divina largitas eisdem contulit ad propriæ salvationis subsidium, versa vice proveniat ad damnationis suæ cumulum, et quod debuit ministrare profectum virtutis, fit quandoque, ex suscipientium ingratitudine, detrimentum salutis. Sed ineffabilis Dei misericordia, quæ neminem vult perire, non statim punit peccantes, sed patienter per longum quandoque tempus exspectat delinquentes ut resipiscant; nunc istorum malitiam usque ad juventutem sústinendo, nunc illorum pravitatem usque in senectam et senium misericorditer dissimulando. Verumtamen istorum nonnulli ultionis divinæ judicium sibi accumulantes, ac divitias bonitatis ac longanimitatis Dei contemnentes, secundum duritiam suam et cor impœnitens thesaurizant sibi thesauros iræ pro prærogatis thesauris misericordiæ; et cum dixerint, Pax et securitas, tunc subitaneus eis superveniet interitus, nec effugient prolongatam Dei vindictam, quam cavere nolebant diu dilatam, ducentes in bonis dies suos, atque in puncto ad inferos descendentes, qui prolixiorem et graviorem sustinebunt pœnam, quo diutius exspectati sunt ad agendam pœniten-

tiam. De hujusmodi hominibus quanta de præteritis audivimus, et quanta de præsentibus cognovimus! quanta et patres nostri narraverunt nobis, non est hujus temporis revolvere aut singillatim commemorare, quomodo in operibus manuum suarum subito comprehensi sunt peccatores, quomodo in ipsa nefaria actione, absque remedio pœnitentiæ, spiritum exhalaverunt, qui dum prolongantes iniquitatem suam acceptum tempus pœnitentiæ dissimulaverunt, divinæ ultionis severitatem repentina animadversione experti sunt; quia nimirum, sicut Pater misericordiarum peccatores ut convertantur f. 76. patienter diutius exspectat, ita ipse Dominus ultionum non conversos acrius percutit et damnat.

Et hac igitur innumerosa multitudine regem Ricardum fuisse dolemus, quem in regni sui primordio, ob excellentis animi liberalitatem et præclaræ militiæ strenuitatem, omnium Normannici generis regum unicum fore speculum sperabamus. Nam cum in regni solio sublimatus esset, satis affabilem se omnibus præbuit; religiosorum negotiis modeste intendit; justis postulationibus libenter annuit; episcopatus vacantes, necnon et abbatias propriis pastoribus orbatas, continuo dedit; omnibus jura sua repromisit ac multis, accepta pecunia, reddidit; cartas etiam ac privilegiatas libertates renovavit, ab universis tamen pecunias, pro hujusmodi negotiis, captanter accipiens ad conficiendum illud iter Hierosolymitanum. Quod iter, relicto regno nuper adepto, cum summa devotione arripuit, arreptum cum magno divitiarum apparatu et cum infinitis pecuniarum expensis magnificentissime conficere studuit; quem Dominus in illa expeditione ubique custodiens et ab omni periculo eripiens, multa præclara et magnifica opera per eum illis in partibus operatus est, ita ut in omni hostili decertatione triumphum virtutis lætus reportaret, maximamque partem terræ illius de manu inimicorum Crucis Christi potenter eriperet. Denique cum repatriare disponeret, peregrinatione nondum ex-

plicita, sinistro usus consilio, multaque infortunia repatrianti, ut superius descripsimus, contigissent, ita ut ab hostibus caperetur et per annum in custodia detineretur, attamen in tali angustia non defuit ei miseratio divina, quæ eum sanum et incolumem, contra spem omnium, ad regnum proprium reduxit, regnumque magna ex parte contritum restituit, inimicos suos con-
f. 76 *b.* tra eum insurgentes ubique conterens et humilians, illum vero ubique extollens et exaltans. Sed, heu proh dolor! in honore positus et regno restitutus, ad victricem Dei manum non intellexit, ereptori suo dignas gratiarum actiones non rependit, vitiorum anfractus ex juvenili impetu contractos, per successionem maturioris ætatis minime corrigere studuit. Tantæ autem ferocitatis ac protervitatis processu temporis exstitit, ut omnes virtutes, quas in regni primordio ostentaverat, nimia severitate offuscaret, ita ut quoslibet de negotiis suis eum interpellantes[1] minaci oculo transfigeret, proterva ac feroci voce reverberaret, leoninam feritatem in vultu atque in gestu prætenderet, nisi, pro libitu suo, pecuniis et promissis tumidum animum delinire satagerent. In triclinio vero, cum privata familia positus, satis affabilis et blandus esse videbatur, jocis et ludicris cum eisdem animum resolvens efferatum. Tanta autem ac tam insatiabili pecuniarum cupiditate animus jamdudum tam liberalis præfocatus est, ut singulorum pecuniam cuperet exhaurire, ita ut vix aliquis prædives jus hæreditatis suæ obtinere posset, nisi illud emere et fere ex toto redimere voluisset. Qui etiam Anglicanos, captivitatis suæ redemptores, tantis indebitis et crebris exactionibus oppressit, quantis nunquam aliquis præcedentium regum afflixit, non parcens ulli gradui aut ordini tam potentiæ sæcularis quam ecclesiasticæ dignitatis. Attamen domnus Hubertus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, regis justitiarius, crudelia edicta,

[1] *de .... interpellantes*] Written in the margin of C. by the first hand upon revision. In the text of V.

in quantum potuit, repressit et delinivit, afflictorum miseratus calamitatem et exactoriam detestans servitutem.

Accessit autem ad totius mali cumulum, juxta vitæ ejus terminum,[1] prioris sigilli sui renovatio, quo exiit edictum per totum ejus regnum ut omnes cartæ, confirmationes, ac privilegiatæ libertates, quæ prioris sigilli impressione roboraverat, irrita forent, nec alicujus libertatis vigorem obtinerent, nisi posteriori sigillo roborarentur. In quibus renovandis et iterum comparandis innumerabilis pecunia congesta est. Nec sic tamen illa insatiabilis vorago cupiditatis aliquatenus ex congestis potuit exsaturari, quin quotidie excogitaret cum omni molimine doli, quomodo singulorum pecuniam emungeret, thesaurisque suis coacervando inferret. Nulla enim meminit ætas, nec aliqua historiarum tradit auctoritas, quemquam regum præcedentium, qui etiam longo tempore regnaverunt, tantam a regno suo exegisse et accepisse pecuniam sicuti rex iste exegit et sibi coacervavit infra illud quinquennium quo de captivitate rediit; quamvis et in hac parte aliquantulum excusari possit. Nam idcirco tantam pecuniam congessit ut potentes homines regis Galliæ sibi conciliaret, ut nepotem suum ad imperium proveheret, ut terram propriam tutaretur, aliorumque provincias suo imperio subjugaret. Sed ecce regem, jam minas in subditos et rebelles spirantem, ingentiaque animo parturientem, acceptumque tempus pœnitentiæ dissimulantem, ultio divina repentina animadversione atrociter prostravit, malisque suis actibus terminum jam olim præfixum misericorditer imposuit; ideo misericorditer, ne diutius male vivendo ac pessimis pejora addendo, graviorem damnationis sententiam a justo Judice exciperet. Qualiter autem et quo in loco præsenti vita decesserit, breviter posteris intimandum, nec huic descriptioni immoran- f. 77.

[1] *juxta vitæ ejus terminum*] In A.D. 1194, according to William of Newburgh, v. 1, ed. Hearne.

dum, cum locus in quo occubuit nullius excellentiæ fama clarus habeatur, nec a militari hostium caterva, ut tam bellicosum regem decuit, in belli certamine prostratus fuerit.

Igitur anno ab Incarnatione Domini MCXCIX., circa tempus quadragesimale,[1] habito inter utrumque regem colloquio de pacis reformatione, tandem treugæ inter
f. 77 b. eos usque ad quoddam tempus præfinitum captæ sunt. Ex hac autem occasione rex Ricardus nactus opportunitatem movit privatum exercitum suum in Quadragesima contra vicecomitem Lemovicensem, qui, tempore hostilitatis, contra regem dominum suum rebellaverat, et fœdus amicitiæ cum rege Philippo pepigerat. Nonnulli vero referunt quod quidam thesaurus inæstimabilis pretii in terra vicecomitis sit repertus, quem rex mandat et jubet sibi dari; quo a vicecomite negato, amplius regis animositatem erga eum exacuit. Cumque terram vicecomitis ferro et flammis devastaret, utpote ab armis infra illud sacrum tempus feriari nesciens, tandem devenit apud Chali Cheperol, turrimque obsedit et atrociter per tres dies expugnavit, præcipiens fossoriis suis ut turrim subfoderent atque subfossam subruerent; quod postmodum[2] factum est. In turri vero prædicta non erant alicujus militiæ[3] vel defensionis viri, nisi quidam ex famulis vicecomitis, qui frustra præstolabantur auxilium domini sui, non æstimantes regem fore præsentem qui eos obsederat, sed aliquem fore ex familia regis. Hos igitur rex ipse cum arcubalistis ita aggressus est, dum cæteri circumfoderent, ut vix aliquis auderet circa propugnacula turris apparere, aut eam quolibet modo defensare. Attamen aliquoties lapides prægrandes de summis propugnaculis præcipitabant, qui magno impetu deorsum ruentes, circumastantes terrificabant, sed fos-

[1] *tempus quadragesimale*] In A.D. 1199, Ash Wednesday fell on March 3.

[2] *postmodum*] postquam, V., but struck through with red ink.

[3] *militiæ*] In V. "malitiæ."

sorios minime poterant prosternere nec ab incœptis impedire, quippe qui consuetis ingeniis suis undique erant protecti. Jamque die tertia advesperascente, in crastino videlicet Annunciationis Beatæ Mariæ,[1] cum rex, post prandium, inermis, excepto capello ferreo, cum suis ad turrim confidenter accessisset atque obsessos telis et sagittis more solito impeteret, ecce quidam armatus, qui fere per totam diem illam ante prandium in quodam propugnaculo turris prædictæ astiterat, atque omnia tela ferrea sartagine opposita illæsus exceperat, omnesque obsidentes diligenter exploraverat, iterum subito adveniens tetendit arcubalistam atque quoddam quarellum violenter direxit ad f. 78. regem, ipso inspiciente et acclamante, percussitque regem super humerum sinistrum juxta colli[2] spondilia, sicque arcuato vulnere telum dilapsum est deorsum ac lateri sinistro immersum, dum rex se non satis incurvaret sub quadrato scuto quod ante eum præferebatur. Pro quo vulnere inflicto rex, audacitate semper prædicabilis, nulla cordis suspiria, nullam plangentis vocem emittebat, nullam tristitiam in vultu aut in gestu tunc ad præsens præferebat, ne suos tristes aut timidos redderet, atque inimicis de illato vulnere majorem audaciam præberet. Postea vero, quasi nil mali perpessus fuisset, pluribusque ignorantibus quid infortunii accidisset, hospitium suum, quod e vicino erat, ingreditur, lignumque ferro infixum de corpore extrahens confregit, sed ferrum, unius palmi longitudinem habens, in corpore remansit. Rege itaque in conclavi procumbente, quidam chirurgicus, ex nefanda illa familia impiissimi Marchadei, corpus regium secando, graviter, immo lætaliter, sauciavit, lucernis in domo accensis, nec potuit ferrum in corpore nimis obeso immersum leviter reperire, aut secando repertum sine magna violentia extrahere.

[1] *in crastino . . . . Mariæ*] March 26.

[2] *collis*] collis, V.

Appositis igitur diligenter medicaminibus et emplastris, postmodum cœperunt vulnera inflicta deteriorari et nigrescere, atque de die in diem amplius intumescere, tandemque mortem minari, rege incontinenter se habente et præcepta medicorum non curante.[1] Arcebantur omnes sui ab introitu cubiculi in quo decumbebat, exceptis quatuor de nobilioribus, qui ad eum visitandum libere introibant, ne fama ægritudinis ejus citius per publicum divulgaretur. Rex autem de sospitate consequenda[2] nimis incertus, matrem, quæ apud Fontem Ebraldi morabatur, literis accersivit; exitum suum vivifico sacramento Dominici corporis munivit, confessione præmissa a quodam suo capellano, a cujus sacra-
f. 78 b. menti perceptione, ob tanti mysterii reverentiam, fere per septennium, ut dicunt, abstinuerat, eo quod mortale odium erga regem Galliæ in corde gestaverat. Mortem etiam sibi illatam percussori suo libenter indulsit; sicque septimo idus Aprilis,[3] scilicet undecimo die a vulnere sibi illato, oleo sacro inunctus, cum jam dies clauderetur, diem clausit extremum. Cujus corpus exenteratum, et apud sanctimoniales Fontis Ebraldi delatum, Dominica in Palmis,[4] juxta patrem suum regio honore ab episcopo Lincolniensi[5] humatum est.

Regnavit autem satis laboriose novem annis, et septem mensibus ac viginti diebus, si recte computes a die coronationis suæ, scilicet a tertio nonas Septembris,[6] quo a domno Baldewino archiepiscopo coronatus est, anno ætatis suæ quadragesimo tertio;[7] qui

[1] *rege. . . curante*] An addition in C., written on the lower margin, but in the text of V.

[2] *consequenda*] An addition in the margin of V., but by the first hand.

[3] *septimo idus Aprilis*] Wednesday, April 7.

[4] *Dominica in Palmis*] Palm Sunday, April 11.

[5] *Lincolniensi*] Lincolliensi, V.

[6] *tertio nonas Septembris*] September 3.

[7] *anno . . . . quadragesimo tertio*] Written in the margin of C. in a different, but contemporaneous hand. In the text of V.

præclarum ac merito prædicabile cunctis principibus in hoc reliquit exemplum quod redditus vacantium episcopatuum, vel abbatiarum, sive ecclesiarum, donationem, in proprios usus, sicut prædecessores sui fecerant, diutius minime retinuerit, sed confestim liberaliter donavit. Circa divinum officium in præcipuis solemnitatibus plurimum delectabatur, vestibusque pretiosissimis capellam suam sollicite adornabat, clericosque sonora voce modulantes donis et precibus ad cantandum festivius instimulabat, atque per chorum huc illucque deambulando, voce ac manu, ut altius concreparent, excitabat. In Secreto Missæ usque Post Communionem silentium tenebat, orationibus vacans, etiam si de aliquo negotio fuisset interpellatus.

Unam abbatiam ordinis Cisterciensis construxit, quæ vocatur Bonus Portus, et quamdam domum canonicorum Præmonstratensium in Aquitania; abbatiam etiam de Pinu, fere adnihilatam, reparavit, ac magnis redditibus ampliavit.[1] Mox etiam ut coronatus fuerat, novi sigilli sui primaria impressione confirmavit et dedit generali capitulo Cisterciensi redditum centum viginti marcarum in ecclesia de Scardeburgh. Post coronationem etiam suam, Sanctum Edmundum orationis causa devotus expetiit, et, cum oblatione sua, obtulit sanctissimo regi et martyri redditum quindecim marcarum ad inveniendum duos cereos, qui jugiter ardeant f. 79. diebus ac noctibus circa corpus sanctissimi regis. Monasterium Pontiniacense, et plura monachorum ædificia, non sine magnis sumptibus, laminis plumbeis cooperire fecit.

Hæc ergo et hujusmodi pietatis opera, cum pravis actibus suis compugnantia, maximam pœnarum suarum allevationem, Deo misericorditer cum illo agente, ut speramus, præstabunt, præcipue cum in fine confessus

[1] *Unam . . . ampliavit*] In C. this passage is written, in a smaller and compressed hand, upon an erasure in the body of the text.

et pœnitens fuerit; quia, sicut aqua extinguit ignem, ita eleemosyna extinguit peccatum.

Domnum etiam Milonem, abbatem de Pinu, in curia sua, ex licentia capituli Cisterciensis, secum assidue retinuit, eleemosynarium suum illum constituens, ut de eleemosynis regiis et de pauperibus cum omni sollicitudine curam gereret. Cujus venerabilis viri affabilitatem ac munificam liberalitatem nonnulli religiosorum experti sunt, qui curiam domini regis pro diversis negotiis frequentabant. Hic autem abbas cum domino rege in expeditionem Hierosolymitanam profectus, milites instanter exhortabatur ut contra inimicos Crucis Christi viriliter decertarent, nec mortem pro Domino subire formidarent. Infirmanti regi in fine affuit, quem de confessione criminum pie admonuit, ipsumque ante exitum sacra unctione perungi fecit, os atque oculos morientis clausit, caputque regium cum manibus balsami liquore perfudit.[1]

Nonnulli Anglorum proceres cum quibusdam militibus, audita morte regis in vigilia Paschæ,[2] in crastino summo mane, post sacram Communionem (quam ad sui judicium indigni sumpserant,) rapinis et deprædationibus, velut lupi famelici, summo studio insistebant, ubique velut prædones debacchantes ac substantias aliorum partim violentia, partim[3] per latrocinia diripientes. Ex quo videlicet facto præclaram probitatis suæ famam plurimum obnubilaverunt, et nihilominus offensam Dei incurrerunt. Multa mala patriæ intulissent, nisi citius a superiori potestate coerciti fuissent. Nam domnus Hubertus, archiepiscopus Cantuariensis,
f. 79 b. illico de transmarinis repatriavit atque omnem rapacitatem in brevi compescuit, anathematis sententia omnes involvens qui ulterius rapinis indulgerent, aut qui rapta non redderent.

---

[1] *Domnum . . . perfudit*] In C. this passage is written by a hand somewhat smaller and more compressed than the rest of the page.

[2] *in vigilia Paschæ*] Saturday, 17 April.

[3] *partim*] Added in the margin of C. In the text of V.

De coronatione regis Johannis, et qualiter fratri suo successit.

Regi[1] Ricardo ab hac luce subtracto successit comes Johannes, frater ejus, in ducatum et in regnum. Nam, audita morte fratris sui, (cujus curiam paulo ante reliquerat propter expensarum penuriam et pro quibusdam simultatibus inter se subortis,) statim Chinun castellum adiit, ubi thesaurus regius servabatur, traditoque sibi castello et thesauro a Roberto de Turneham, mox alia castella et civitates Normanniæ, nullo sibi resistente, occupavit; sicque communi procerum electione et civium acclamatione, in octavis Paschæ[2] apud Rothomagum dux Normanniæ effectus est.

Britones autem necem Regis Ricardi audientes, consilio et auxilio freti regis Philippi, occupaverunt comitatum Andegaviæ et Cinomannicam civitatem, a civibus patriæ excepti; qui unanimiter contra ducem rebellantes, omnimodis conati sunt principem[3] terræ illius constituere Arturum puerum, dominum suum, filium scilicet Galfridi comitis Britonum, qui erat natu secundus post regem Ricardum. Dux vero Johannes Cinomannis postea combussit, atque exercitum contra Andegavenses misit. Sed rex Philippus a parte altera Normanniam invadens, non sinebat ducem contra Britones diutius congredi.

Exercitibus autem transmarinis ita ad invicem congredientibus, dux Johannes interim cum privatis suis latenter in Angliam applicuit,[4] atque a proceribus totius Angliæ pacifice susceptus, statim die Ascensionis Dominicæ a domno Huberto, Cantuariens archiepiscopo, apud Westmonasterium, cum maxima

[1] *Regi*] Rege, V.

[2] *in octavis Paschæ*] April 25.

[3] *principem*] Originally "ducem" in V., but altered by first hand to "principem."

[4] *applicuit*] He landed at Shoreham on Tuesday, 25 May. See Hoved. f. 451.

civium pompa coronatus est.[1] Dein rex Johannes Normanniam regressus,[2] maximum exercitum de Anglicanis partibus secum adduxit, qui per totam illam æstatem contra Gallicanum exercitum concertans, satis hostilis exercitus probitatem expertus est.

De forma pacis inter Regem Angliæ et regem Franciæ.

f. 80. Anno MCC. Verbi Incarnati, post tædiosam utriusque regis exercitus fatigationem, post plurima de formanda pace colloquia, tandem inter se duo reges de finali ad invicem concordia tractantes, hujusmodi pacis formulam composuerunt. Scilicet, quod rex Johannes quietum clamavit regi Franciæ et hæredibus suis in perpetuum totum Vilcassinum Normannicum cum Gisortio et cæteris castellis in Vilcassino existentibus, quam utique terram olim rex Henricus pater ejus dederat regi Ludovico pro collato sibi adjutorio contra regem Stephanum. Hanc etiam terram rursum rex Lodowicus dedit in maritagium cum filia sua Margarita, quam rex Henricus junior desponsavit. Excepta est autem tota terra archiepiscopi Rothomagensis ; exceptum est et bellum castellum de Fare, et insula Andeli, et Butavánt, quæ sita sunt in prædicta terra archiepiscopi, quæ rex Ricardus construxerat. Præterea dedit rex Johannes in maritagium cum nepte sua (filia scilicet Petit regis Hispaniæ,) quam Lodowicus bonæ indolis puer, filius regis Philippi, desponsavit, omnia castella quæ idem Philippus ceperat in Normannia, de quibus saisitus fuit die qua validissimus rex Ricardus decessit, scilicet, Vernonem, Pasci, et Yveri, et Nonancurt. Dedit etiam in maritagium civitatem Ebroicensem cum toto comitatu, et Alvernam, et Berri. Concessit etiam rex Johannes quod, si sine

[1] *coronatus est*] May 27.

[2] *regressus*] He was at Shoreham on Sunday, 20 June, and at Roche-Orival on the 29th.

hærede de prima uxore decesserit, filius[1] Regis Franciæ habeat homagium Hugonis de Gornai et comitatum Albemarliæ post decessum regis; quod si neptis regis Angliæ sine prole decesserit, prædicta homagia et totum prædictum maritagium reverteretur ad rectum hæredem regis Angliæ. Præterea rex Johannes dedit regi Philippo triginta millia marcarum. Rex vero Franciæ reddidit regi Anglorum Turonis, et omnia f. 80 *b*. castella quæ ceperat in Turonia, et recepit homagium regis Angliæ de omnibus terris et feodis et tenementis quæ unquam rex Ricardus, aut Henricus pater ejus, tenuit de eo, vel de prædecessoribus suis, exceptis quietis clamantiis et maritagiis. Et de Britannia homagium suum cepit, et hoc secundum judicium curiæ suæ; et rex Franciæ reddidit Arturum regi Angliæ, qui recepit homagium suum de Britannia et de Richemund. Dedit etiam rex Angliæ comiti Ebroicensi comitatum Gloecestriæ in escambium. Juravit uterque rex corporaliter se pacem scriptam et sigillis suis roboratam in perpetuum observaturos.

De exactione regis.

Postquam rex Johannes hanc pacis concordiam in transmarinis formaverat, utpote pacis amator et qui disponebat tranquillam a prœliis ducere vitam, perpendens quantos habuerit regni insidiatores, et quanta incommoda patri et fratribus suis et omni regno ex frequenti prœliorum congressione accidissent, ad Angliam regreditur, auxilium ab omni regno expostulans ad persolutionem xxx. millium marcarum prædictarum. Exiit ergo edictum a justitiariis regis per universam Angliam, ut quælibet carruca arans tres persolveret solidos: quæ nimirum gravis exactio valde populum terræ extenuavit, cum antea gravis exactio scutagii

[1] *filius*] Before this word "quod" is unnecessarily repeated.

præcessisset. Nam ad scutum duæ marcæ persolvebantur, cum nunquam amplius quam viginti solidi ad scutum exigerentur.

De discordia inter regem et Cisterciences exorta, ac de pacis reformatione.

Dominus autem rex in Eboracensem deveniens provinciam, a quibusdam abbatibus ordinis Cisterciensis sibi occurrentibus exegit pecuniam, sicut et a cæteris; volens ordinem exactionis servitute deprimere, qui hactenus liber ab hujusmodi consuetudinibus habebatur. Abbates vero illi, nondum communicato cæterorum coabbatum suorum consilio, et timentes, si regiæ favissent exactioni, ordinem postmodum in serviles consuetudines redigi, simpliciter responderunt regi se nullatenus aliquam exactoriam præstare pecuniam, nisi
f. 81. communi consilio et assensu generalis capituli. Ex quorum responsione rex nimium exasperatus, in ira et furore præcepit vicecomitibus suis, (cum præsentibus agens verbo, et cum absentibus scripto,) ut viros ordinis illius quibuscumque valerent modis gravarent, ac molestias inferrent, ut de depressoribus ac calumniatoribus eorum nullam justitiam exhiberent, nec in aliquo negotio eis assisterent, sed totum ad regem referrent. Ex hujusmodi igitur crudeli edicto viri illi virtutis, nimium tristes et ingemiscentes, mandatum domini regis domno Huberto, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, referunt, implorantes ut dominum regem super tam crudeli edicto conveniat, ejusque animositatem, quibus valeat modis, precibus et muneribus mitiget. Quorum pressuris et calamitatibus clementer compatiens, regem, libera voce, super tanta crudelitate increpavit, persecutorem eum sanctæ ecclesiæ fore pronuncians, qui tantas ac tales molestias præcipuis ecclesiæ filiis irrogare præsumpsit, quos omnis ecclesia, ob vitæ meritum et religionis austeritatem, collaudat ac veneratur; quos

reges ac principes terræ hactenus in tanta veneratione semper habuerunt, ut eis terras et amplas possessiones donarent, et omnia eorum scuto defensionis protegerent. Rex vero redargutionibus archiepiscopi ad tempus favens, novis epistolis priores in irritum revocavit, non tamen animositatem suam erga eos mens efferata deposuit. Cumque transfretaturus esset, archiepiscopus, ut animum regis placaret, spopondit ei, ex parte ordinis, mille marcas argenti, ea tamen pacti conditione ut omnes cartas ac libertates, quas rex Ricardus eis confirmaverat, et ipse sigilli sui munimine roboraret; quam utique oblationem, velut minimam, omnino sprevit. Transfretavit[1] itaque spirans minarum et cædis in discipulos Christi, abbatibus transmarinis conquerens de responsione abbatum in Anglia degentium. Persolutis igitur regi Franciæ illis xxx. millibus marcis, subactisque omnibus hostibus suis ac pacificatis, ad f. 81 b. Angliam regreditur[2] circa festum Sancti Michaelis, una cum uxore sua, filia scilicet comitis Engolismi, quam in transmarinis desponsaverat consilio regis Philippi; nam primam uxorem, filiam videlicet comitis Gloecestriæ, per mandatum domini Papæ dimiserat propter consanguinitatis lineam. Instante ergo die, proxima scilicet Dominica post festum Sancti Michaelis, qua apud Westmonasterium coronam[3] gestaturus erat, et uxor sua in reginam consecranda, quæ quasi duodennis videbatur, summo mane, antequam ad ecclesiam accederent, præcepit Hugoni de Nevilla, magistro forestario, et cuidam alii potenti viro, ut mandarent omnibus forestariis per Angliam constitutis, quatinus summonerent omnes ordinis Cisterciensis ut ab octavis Sancti Michaelis in xv. dies, amoverent de foresta domini regis omnes equos suos de haraz, et porcos et

[1] *Transfretavit*] King John was at Shoreham at Sunday, 20 June 1199, and had reached Roche-Orival, in Normandy, on the 29th.

[2] *regreditur*] He was at Valognes on 1 October, and at Freemantle on the 6th.

[3] *coronam*] At Westminster, Sunday, 8 Oct. 1200.

pecudes et cuncta sua animalia ; quod si post terminum præfixum intra forestam inventa fuissent, caperent illa et ad opus regis venderent.

Cum igitur tam crudele regis edictum ubique monachis esset promulgatum, unaquæque domus, prout melius potuit, sibi de pecudibus suis interim providit, ac patienter tantam domini regis indignationem sustinuit; in tribulatione sua clamantes ad Dominum propugnatorem suum, ut spiritum regis in mansuetudinem erga eos converteret et a tribulatione malorum et dolore gregem suum clementur liberaret. Qui nimirum exaudivit eos, qui non deserit sperantes in Se, et ab hujusmodi tribulatione citius liberavit. Archiepiscopus itaque, comperto regis mandato, omnibus illis abbatibus litteras suas direxit, monens et consulens quatenus apud Lincolniam in occursum regis in vigilia Sancti Edmundi convenirent,[1] ut simul adunati facilius efferatum regis animum una cum ipso ad misericordiam et ad reconciliationis gratiam inclinarent.
f. 82 At illi ejus exhortationi libenter annuentes, loco determinato die præfixa pari voto convenerunt, magis de Domini patrocinio quam de propriæ virtutis industria præsumentes. Ibi igitur adunati in crastino, die, scilicet, Sancti Eadmundi, archiepiscopo adventanti extra urbem reverenter occurrunt, ac descendentes de equis ejus genibus unanimiter provolvuntur, suppliciter postulantes ut negotiis eorum clementer intendat, et regis animum erga eos exasperatum ad benignitatis gratiam sua sollicitudine inclinet. Archiepiscopus autem de tantorum illustrium virorum humilitate vehementer obstupefactus, de equo suo descendit, et similiter se humilians lachrymatus est. Deinde promittit se fore in omnibus eorum auxiliatorem et consiliatorem, atque communicato eorum consilio, paci et utilitati ordinis pro posse suo velle intendere, ac de placando regis animo omnibus modis insistere.

[1] *vigilia S. Edmundi*] Nov. 19.

Suasit vero ut in crastino in occursum regis adventantis extra urbem exirent, et cum humilitate qua decebat illum exciperent, quo levius animum ejus ad pietatem et mansuetudinem inflecterent. Sed postea de hac re inter se tractantibus, dissuasum est ne extra urbem regi occurrerent; ne forte a regiis præcursoribus, qui animum regis erga eos commotum noverant, in aliquo dehonestarentur et cum ludibrio ab aulæ regiæ nugatoribus exciperentur.

De consilio abbatum.

Ingresso urbem archiepiscopo, abbates extra urbem in quadam planitie consistentes, diverso modo de instanti negotio tractabant, cum nonnulli eorum animum regis contra eos exacerbatum pecuniarum oblatione placare censerent; alii vero e contra pecuniam aliquam solvere dissuaderent, ne hujusmodi dationis occasione antiqua ordinis libertas deinceps exactionis servitute premeretur, atque in hunc modum sæculari potestati paulatim ordo subjiceretur. De quantitate etiam pecuniæ persolvendæ pro cartis et libertatibus suis tractatum est. Nam quidam arbitrabantur fore incongruum si regi minorem sponderent pecuniæ numerum f. 82 b.
quam domnus archiepiscopus prius pro eis spoponderat, immo prælibato numero aliquid plus adjiciendum, ne magis secunda quam prima pollicitatione rex erga eos exasperaretur; ne quod deberet provocare reconciliationis gratiam, majorem provocaret discordiæ et indignationis fomitem.

Dum sic sub ancipiti consilium pendet, atque aliqua pars alterius partis allegationem minus approbaret, ecce, domnus abbas de Mealse, (quondam domni archiepiscopi notarius, et idcirco ei semper valde familiaris,) quoddam protulit transcriptum quarumdam literarum quæ a generali capitulo Cisterciensi domno archiepiscopo directæ fuerant. In quarum tenore literarum

sub hoc sensu continebatur; quod domnum archiepiscopum ut fratrem suum carissimum salutabant, et quod multimodas ei gratiarum actiones referebant, eo quod sacrum ordinem ita effectuose diligeret, libertates ordinis ubique manuteneret, abbatibus Angliæ in omnibus negotiis sedulus assisteret, et bona eorum temporalia clementer protegeret. Obnixius ipsum precabantur ut quod benigne erga eos inchoaverat, perseveranti fine concludat. Inter cætera suppliciter expostulant ne unquam patiatur antiquam ordinis libertatem in detestandam servitutem redigi, aut pristina dignitate spoliari. Tutius fore atque tolerabilius ordinem in una parte terrarum pati naufragium, vel aliquod ad tempus sustinere dispendium, quam regiæ potestati in indebitis exactionibus fore obnoxium, qui hactenus omnium regum præcedentium temporibus ita ubique in orbe terrarum effloruit, et in tanta dignitatis libertate excellenter effulsit. Periculosum nimis fore talem pacis concordiam cum uno rege componere unde tota ordinis posteritas ingemesceret, et discordiæ atque exactionis indebitæ occasio apud alios principes orbis terrarum ubique adversus ordinem pullularet.

Auditis itaque hujusmodi literis, (quarum tenorem
f. 83. idcirco hic non posuimus, quia non habuimus, sed sensum qui ex literis subintelligi potuit,) omnes in unam convenere sententiam; nullam videlicet regi pecuniam aut dare aut polliceri, unde ordinis libertas per temporum successionem periclitari posset. Unde quidam eorum dicebant se multo libentius quaslibet sufferre irrogatas injurias pro tuenda ordinis libertate, aut a proprio solo eliminari, aut deposita pastorali sollicitudine in claustris transmarinis commorari, quam alicujus pacis incertitudinem, pecuniarum indebitarum largitione, erga regem componere. Confirmato igitur apud eos hujusmodi consilio, ad hospitia sua singuli revertuntur. In crastino autem iterum congregati, noluerunt regi adventanti pro causa prædicta occurrere,

mandantes postea domno archiepiscopo causam quare se absentaverint, et quod vel quale consilium unanimiter elegerint. Quorum salubre consilium et absentationis causam domnus archiepiscopus satis approbavit, dicens quod a Domino egressus est sermo.

Die vero sequenti, (scilicet, die Mercurii[1] prima post festum Sancti Eadmundi), rex Johannes colloquium suum habuit cum domno Willelmo rege Scotiæ, qui cum Rotlando principe de Galweie, et cum multis aliis proceribus, cum magno apparatu apud Lincolniam advenerat, homagium suum regi Angliæ facturus, quod usque ad illud tempus distulerat. Qua de causa negotium abbatum dilatum est. Die autem sequenti, (scilicet, die Jovis,) archiepiscopus regem pro abbatum negotio interpellare volens, a rege quasi ex iræ commotione audivit: "Domne archiepiscope, precor ne me "hodie iratum reddas, quia flebotomari proposui." Unde archiepiscopus mandare curavit abbatibus ne in conspectu regis se ingererent. Dilatum est itaque negotium istud usque ad subsequentem Dominicam;[2] quapropter interim abbates in magna afflictione et spiritus angustia extiterunt præ timore et expectatione superventura, cujus exitum minime prævidebant.

Sabbato vero sequenti mandat illis archiepiscopus ut f. 83 b.
simul omnes convenirent in præsentia regis in ecclesia ubi Missam auditurus erat Dominica subsequenti. Quod et factum est. Cumque dominus rex Missam cum archiepiscopo peraudisset, ac de ecclesia egressurus esset, rogavit regem archiepiscopus ut negotio abbatum, qui in præsentia sua assistebant, dignaretur clementer intendere. Mox autem abbates ad pedes domini regis humiliter provoluti, ut sui suorumque ac totius ordinis misereatur, cum gemitu et voce suspiriosa deprecantur. Qui mox unum de cubiculariis advocans, jubet ut abbates in cameram suam introducat. Ipse autem

[1] *die Mercurii*] Nov. 22.
[2] *subsequentem Dominicam*] Nov. 26.

cum archiepiscopis et episcopis et proceribus suis qui convenerant, in cameram illam præcessit, atque cum eis de ipsis abbatibus et pace ordinis tractavit. Cumque abbates ingrederentur surrexit, et in secretius cubiculum cum duobus aut tribus tantum proceribus secessit, ibique diutius de illo negotio et stabili pace ordinis tractavit, ac pietatis opera, quæ in sacro ordine indesinenter peraguntur, cum eisdem replicavit. Spiritus enim consilii et pietatis jam cor domini regis et corda principum qui cum eo erant, repleverat, qui eos ad mansuetudinem et ad devotionis gratiam erga viros ordinis converterat ac salubre consilium inspiraverat. Post aliquantulam temporis moram rex ad illos ingressus sonora voce sciscitatur: "Et ubi est dominus " et pater noster archiepiscopus?" Et accersito illo, mox cum eo et cum episcopis secretius colloquitur, abbatibus seorsim interim in camera illa astantibus. Deinde convocatis coram rege abbatibus, jubet rex archiepiscopum ut abbates alloquatur et consilium ejus atque voluntatem eis denunciet. Archiepiscopus vero dominum regem precatur ut ipse potius præsentes alloquatur; quo abnuente et se excusante, quod pro pietatis miseratione eosdem alloqui non possit, monet iterum rex ut verbum edicat, cui ex officio paternæ sollicitudinis filios alloqui incumbebat.

Archiepiscopus autem brevi utens eloquio sic exorsus
f. 84. est, omnibus astantibus: "O domni abbates et dilectis-
" simi in Domino fratres, dominus noster rex visus est
" severum animum per aliquantulum temporis spatium
" erga vos gessisse; visus est iracundiæ et indignationis
" signa in gestu et in verbis erga ordinem vestrum de-
" monstrasse; sed pro certo sciatis quia nunquam adeo
" erga vos malivolum gesserit animum quo magis vellet
" sacro ordini aliquod inferre dispendium, aut sacris col-
" legiis vestris alicujus malitiæ irrogare incommodum.
" In primis ergo paternitati vestræ notificamus quod
" dominus noster rex omnem iram ac indignationem,

" quam hactenus erga vos habuisse visus est, ex animo " vobis remittit." Ad quod verbum omnes prostrati in terram domino regi gratias egerunt. Deinde infert archiepiscopus: " Similiter dominus rex humiliter vos " deprecatur ut si quid vobis molestiæ aut detrimenti " a suis in hoc tempore illatum est ex occasione hujus " contentionis, ex corde integro ei remittatis." Cumque illi pariter conclamarent, " Omnia ex animo remit- " timus," mox rex ad pedes eorum se humiliter prostravit ac lachrymis faciem rigavit; ipsis e contra pro tanta regis humilitate et reverentia se prosternentibus. Erectisque omnibus intulit itidem archiepiscopus: " Supplicat " etiam rex quatenus apud Cisterciense capitulum pro " eo intercedatis ut in fraternitatem et societatem totius " ordinis recipi mereatur, et literis suis ei innotescant " quid pro eo in singulis domibus agere decernant. " Præterea statuit apud se dominus rex quoddam præ- " clarum cœnobium ordinis vestri secundum consilium " vestrum in Anglia construere, ubi ipse specialiter " quoad usque vixerit in memoria habeatur, et ubi post " mortem corpus ejus, Deo favente, honorifice sepul- " turæ tradatur. Unde promittit se deinceps fore pa- " tronum et defensorem ordinis vestri, atque tutorem " omnium rerum vestrarum."

Abbates vero illi hæc omnia audientes, immenso perfusi sunt gaudio, multimodas gratias agentes Omnipotenti Deo, qui ita regis animum ad mansuetudinem et ordinis reverentiam inclinavit, qui ita ex insperato eos f. 84 *b.* magnifice consolari voluit, ut dolorem subito commutaret in gaudium, tristitiam in hilaritatem, discordiæ nubilum in pacis et concordiæ verteret augmentum. Vere juxta Psalmistæ vocem, "voluntatem timentium se faciet, et " deprecationem eorum exaudiet et salvos faciet eos."

His ita rite compositis, omnibusque in osculo pacis a domino rege susceptis, suggesserunt regi ut literas

[1] *Psalmistæ*] See Psalm cxliv. 19, Vulg.

suas singulis vicecomitibus dirigeret, ne ulterius eis aliquod gravamen vel molestiam inferre præsumerent. Quorum suggestioni rex libenter annuens, hanc curam domno archiepiscopo commisit, ut pro singulorum libitu singularum provinciarum vicecomitibus literas ex regis nomine dirigeret. Quarum tenor iste fuit:

" Johannes Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dominus Hi-
" berniæ, dux Normanniæ, Aquitaniæ, et comes Ande-
" gaviæ, vicecomiti Essexiæ et Herfordiæ, salutem.
" Sciatis nos recepisse in plenariam gratiam abbates
" ordinis Cistercii, et omnes res et possessiones eorum
" in manum et custodiam et protectionem nostram.
" Et ideo tibi districte præcipimus quatenus protegas,
" manuteneas, et defendas eos, et homines et omnes res
" et possessiones eorum, sicut res nostras et proprias
" dominicas; et ne eis injuriam, molestiam, vel grava-
" men inferas, vel ad aliquo inferri permittas, in ballia
" tua. Et si quid damni vel gravaminis ab aliquo il-
" latum est eis occasione indignationis quam erga eos
" habuisse dicebamur, id eis sine dilatione emendari
" facias. Teste me ipso, apud Lincolniam, xxvi. die
" Novembris."

De episcopo Lincolniensi.

Per idem tempus domnus Hugo episcopus Lincolniensis, quondam prior cujusdam domus ordinis Carthusiensis in Anglia, cum a patriæ suæ revisitatione in Angliam regrederetur, apud Londoniam maxima ægritudine detentus est. Ex cujus ægritudinis molestia ex hac luce subtractus, ad indeficientem, ut credimus,
f. 85. transiit luminis claritatem. Cujus corpus exanime a Londoniis delatum, in civitatem Lincolniensem, episcopatus sui sedem, eodem tempore, Deo procurante, illatum est, quo rex Angliæ cum rege Scotiæ colloquium suum habuit; ubi tunc tres archiepiscopi et fere omnes nobiliores utriusque regni convenerant.

Nuntiato itaque quod corpus episcopi jam appropinquaret civitati, catervatim ruunt populi in occursum funeris sui pastoris. Ipsi reges cum archiepiscopis et cum omni clero et principibus devote occurrunt. Cujus loculum rex, deposito fastu regio, cum archiepiscopis, submissis cervicibus,[1] super humeros humiliter imponunt et per aliquam moram pium onus subvehunt, luteum platearum parvi pendentes pro tanti viri obsequio. Deinde ab archiepiscopis et episcopis et a clero civitatis cum psalmis et hymnis in basilicam sedis suæ bajulatur. Lectiones in nocturnis exsequiis vigiliarum nonnisi ab archiepiscopis et episcopis leguntur. Felices se arbitrabantur qui loculum ejus contingere, aut pedes deosculari, aut de vestimentis ejus aliquid apprehendere potuerunt. Copiosissima oblatio et magna donaria ei oblata sunt, quamdiu intumulatus super terram jacuit, pontificalibus insignitus,[2] more solito faciem habens discoopertam, caput mitra redimitum. Novam quandam ecclesiam in honore Dei Genitricis eleganti schemate, in urbe illa inchoavit, quæ omnes alias basilicas in Anglia quadam structuræ elegantia superexcellere videtur, quam se vivum sive mortuum consummandam esse prædixit. Quandam vero fraternitatem in episcopatu suo instituit, ex qua mille marcæ singulis annis ad illud opus construendum colligebantur. Fama volitans perhibet quod meritis ipsius sanitatem quibusdam ægrotis divina virtus contulit. Nec mirum si Dominus virtutum pro dilecto suo apud homines in terris magnificando aliquod miraculum ostenderit, cujus sanctitatis opinio tam celebris apud plurimos exstitit, f. 85 b. ut eum vitam virtutum duxisse incunctanter credant. Siquidem ante episcopatum præcipua religione præ-

[1] *deposito . . . cervicibus*] In C. this passage is written upon an erasure with a different ink, but by the same hand. The termination of the word "rex" has also been altered.

[2] *insignitus*] The termination of this word has been altered (apparently from "insignitum") in C.

pollens, opinatissimus inter religiosos habebatur; quam utique conversationis ac humilitatis formulam etiam post episcopatum, in quantum ei licuit pro cura pastorali, semper habere studuit. Simoniacam vero pestem in tantum exhorruit, ut nec pro ipsius regis aut alicujus potentis favorabili petitione alicui ecclesiastica beneficia largiretur, nisi quem morum probitas commendabilem redderet. Plura sunt quæ de ejus laudabili conversatione utiliter conscribi possunt, sed ea eloquentioribus et qui majorum actuum ejus notitiam habent, relinquimus.

Hoc anno, papa Innocentius omnem Christianitatis ritum in Gallia interdixit, excepto baptismo parvulorum, eo quod rex Philippus legitimam uxorem repudiaverat atque aliam superinduxerat. Ex qua nimirum interdictionis juste illata sententia maxima schismatis contentio inter episcopos et diversos ecclesiasticæ professionis gradus suborta est, dum quidam eorum, summo Pontifici parentes, illatæ sententiæ humiliter deferebant; alii vero, regiæ parti faventes, immo potius adulantes, atque nonnulli regio terrori cedentes, ecclesiastica sacramenta conficiebant. Quo tempore domnus Odo, episcopus Parisiensis, dum regiæ temeritati parere contemneret, a quibusdam ejusdem regis militibus ab episcopatu suo pedes ire compulsus est, equis et manticis ac cæteris rebus suis violenter spoliatus. Similiter episcopus Silvanectensis ab episcopatu recedere compulsus est; plures etiam canonicorum sæcularium, redditus suos relinquentes, ad alia loca interim transmigrarunt.

O quam horrificum, immo quam miserabile in singulis civitatibus per id temporis erat spectaculum valvas basilicarum obseratas cernere, et ab ingressu earum
f. 86. Christianos velut canes arcere, ab officiis divinis cessare, sacramenta corporis et sanguinis Domini non conficere, ad præclaras sanctorum solemnitates ex more plebem non confluere, defunctorum cadavera ritu christiano sepulturæ non tradere, quorum fœtor aerem inficiebat et

horribilis visio vivorum mentibus horrorem incutiebat. Plures legati ad curiam Romanam a domino rege destinati sunt, qui suis allegationibus dominum papam a sententia illata revocarent; sed dominus Apostolicus nec prece, nec pretio, nec minis aut promissis, a censura ecclesiasticæ animadversionis ullatenus revocari potuit, donec idem rex, necessitate suprema coactus, subintroductam uxorem dimitteret atque injuste repudiatam ad legitimum connubium revocaret. Quæ profecto regina omni illo tempore quo a viro suo erat dimissa, laudabilem vitam in omni castitate et profectu virtutum sub tutela religiosorum duxerat, atque orationum suffragia a religiosis quibusque devote expetierat. Sententia hæc a domino papa in Gallos illata, fere per novem menses perstitit.

De mandato domini papæ.

Per idem tempus papa Innocentius, de subventione terræ Hierosolymitanæ magnam gerens sollicitudinem, præhabito consilio, mandatum hujuscemodi per universam ecclesiam destinare curavit.

" Innocentius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, vene-
" rabilibus fratribus Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et
" suffraganeis ejus, et dilectis filiis abbatibus, prioribus
" et decanis, archidiaconis, et universis clericis tam
" subditis quam prælatis, salutem et apostolicam bene-
" dictionem.

" Omnes Orientalis ecclesiæ miserias et necessitates
" ingentes jam potius peccatis exigentibus deflere co-
" gimur, quam referre, cum ad eum statum, si tamen
" status dicendus est casus, quod dolentes dicimus,
" eadem terra devenerit, ut nisi citius ipsius fuerit ne- f. 86 *b*.
" cessitati succursum et occursum conatibus paganorum,
" pauci Christiani, qui se defensioni hæreditatis Domini
" et Crucifixi obsequiis devoverunt, hostiles sagittas sui
" sanguinis effusione inebriaturi credantur et paganorum gladios suis jugulis placaturi, reliquiis deso-

" lationis illius terræ, sine spe humani subsidii per-
" dendis, totaliter et ab hostibus occupandis, cum de
" partibus illis pene omnes jam redierint peregrini.
" Idem autem hactenus Dominus Jesus Christus, ut
" probaret adhuc fortius fidem nostram et plenius in-
" telligeret qui sunt ejus, misericorditer impedivit,
" manus eorum in ipsos convertens et eos inter se
" multiformiter discordantes permittens ad invicem
" desævire, ut Christianis interim ad ipsius terræ sub-
" sidium excitatis, facilior daretur facultas recuperandi
" perdita et de hostibus triumphandi.

" Recepimus enim literas venerabilium fratrum nos-
" trorum, Antiocheni et Hierosolymitani patriarcharum,
" archiepiscoporum etiam et episcoporum utriusque pro-
" vinciæ, similiter et carissimorum in Christo filiorum
" nostrorum Aimerici[1] Hierosolymorum et Leunin de
" Monte,[2] L. Armeniorum regum illustrium, et dilec-
" torum filiorum et magistrorum Hierosolymitanorum
" Hospitalium et militiæ Templi, aliorumque multorum,
" ipsius terræ miserias et necessitates plenius expo-
" nentes et postulantes subsidium diutius exspectatum,
" cum plus ibi sperent, dante Domino, paucos hoc
" tempore propter Sarracenorum discordiam profuturos,
" quam hactenus copiosus exercitus profuisset. Adjec-
" tum est etiam, quod cum jam inter Sarracenos de
" pace tractetur, si priusquam subveniatur Hierosoly-
" mitanæ provinciæ inter eos fuerit concordia refor-
" mata, nisi solus Deus resistat, cum sit viris et
" viribus pene destituta, non erit qui eorum possit
" violentiam cohibere.

" Nos ergo cum fratribus nostris, accitis etiam epi-
" scopis et aliis viris religiosis apud sedem apostolicam

---

[1] *Aimerici*] In C. the initial letter only has been given in the first instance, a blank being left for the remainder of the name, which has been subsequently added.

[2] *Leunin de Monte*] Written in the margin of C., but in the text of V.

" existentibus, de ipsius terræ subventione tractantes,
" ne videremur onera gravia humeris imponere subdi-
" torum quæ digito etiam movere nollemus, dicentes f. 87.
" tantum, et aut nihil vel modicum facientes: ut a
" nobis ad vos et a vobis ad laicos benefaciendi deri-
" vetur exemplum, exemplo qui cœpit facere et docere,
" decimam partem omnium reddituum et proventuum
" nostrorum curavimus subventioni Orientalis provinciæ
" deputare, et ut non solum in rebus, verum etiam in
" personis necessarium Terræ Sanctæ subsidium des-
" tinemus, dilectos filios nostros S. titulo Sanctæ Praxe-
" dis presbyterum, et P. Sanctæ Mariæ in Via-lata
" diaconum [1] cardinalem, quibus jam pridem imposui-
" mus signum Crucis, illuc proposuimus destinare, qui
" exercitum Domini vices nostras exercendo præcedant,
" et ad eos tamquam ad unum caput universi recurrant.
" Verum quia id quasi modicum, immo vere modicum
" ad tot necessitates ipsius provinciæ sufficere nulla-
" tenus reputamus, universitati vestræ per apostolica
" scripta mandamus, et ex parte Dei Omnipotentis in
" virtute Spiritus Sancti, sub interminatione divini
" judicii districte præcipimus, quatenus singuli vestrum
" saltem quadragesimam partem omnium ecclesiastico-
" rum reddituum et proventuum suorum, prius tamen
" deductis usuris, quarum solutio vitari non possit, in
" subsidium Terræ Sanctæ convertant. Omnibus cleri-
" cis tam subditis quam prælatis, qui quadragesimam
" ipsam sponte ac fideliter solverint, de Dei Omnipo-
" tentis misericordia, et beatorum apostolorum Petri
" et Pauli auctoritate confisi, quartam partem injunctæ
" sibi pœnitentiæ relaxantes, dummodo nulla fraus in-
" terveniat et pia devotio suffragetur. Sciat autem se
" culpabiliter durum et dure culpabilem, qui tantillum
" subsidium in tanta necessitate Creatori et Redemptori
" suo negaverit exhibere, a quo corpus et animam et

[1] *diaconum*] diaconem, C. V.

" universa bona quæ habet, accepit, et nos qui, licet
" indigni, vices Ejus exercemus in terris, hujus culpæ
" duritiam nullatenus dissimulare possemus. Nec ali-
" quo modo credatis quod per hoc in dispendium ves-
" trum legem vobis imponere intendamus, ut a vobis
" in posterum quadragesima quasi debita vel consue-
f. 87 b. " tudinaria exigatur. Immo nullum vobis ex hoc
" præjudicium volumus generari, qui tantæ necessitatis
" articulum nobis et vobis supervenisse dolemus, et
" quod simul de cetero non contingat optamus. Ab
" hac generalitate monachos Cistercienses, Præmon-
" stratenses canonicos, heremitas Grandimontis, Car-
" thusienses excepimus, quibus super hoc mandatum
" injungimus speciale."

Ad hæc præcepit dominus papa truncum concavum fieri in singulis ecclesiis, tribus clavibus consignatum, et ut fideles moneantur ibi deponere suas eleemosynas in remissionem peccatorum, et ut in omnibus ecclesiis semel[1] in hebdomada missa publice decantetur pro salute offerentium. Dedit etiam licentiam prælatis commutandi opus injunctæ pœnitentiæ in opus eleemosynæ faciendæ. Mandavit etiam de militibus et de aliis bellatoribus qui signum Crucis assumpserint, et in suis non potuerint sumptibus transfretare, ut congrua eis stipendia subministrent de illa pecuniarum summa, sufficienti ab eis cautione recepta, quod in defensione Orientalis terræ per annum vel per amplius commorabuntur secundum quantitatem subsidii, et si in via decesserint, susceptum subsidium reddent in stipendia bellatorum. Qui etiam cum redierint non absolventur de præstita cautione, nisi literas regis, vel patriarchæ, seu fratrum Templi, vel Hospitalis, secum detulerint, quæ de mora eorum testimonium perhibeant. Mandavit etiam ut fideles instanter admonerent, ut signum Crucis assumerent in nomine Domini ad præliandum bellum Domini, aliosque inducerent ad pias eleemosynas

[1] *tribus . . . semel*] Om. V.

faciendas juxta suarum sufficientiam facultatum. Omnibus etiam qui laborem hujus itineris in propriis personis et expensis subiissent, plenam suorum peccatorum veniam indulsit, de quibus cordis et oris egissent pœnitentiam. Eis autem qui non in personis propriis, sed in suis expensis viros idoneos destinarunt per annum illuc moraturos, et illis similiter qui in alienis expensis laborem itineris hujus implerent,[1] plenam suorum concessit veniam peccatorum. Præcepit etiam ut proficiscentes ab usurarum exactione quieti forent.

De quodam homine silvestri in mari capto. f. 88.

Temporibus[2] Henrici regis secundi cum Bartholomeus de Glanvilla custodiret castellum de Oreford, contigit ut piscatores ibidem in mari piscantes, hominem silvestrem intra retia sua comprehenderent; qui castellano prædicto traditus præ admiratione, ex omni parte nudus erat, ac speciem humanam in omnibus membris prætendebat. Capillos autem habebat, sed in superficie quasi divulsi et demoliti videbantur, barba vero prolixa erat et pineata, circa pectus nimium pilosus et hispidus. Prædictus vero miles fecit eum custodiri diutius diebus ac noctibus, ne mare posset adire. Quæ ei apponebantur avide comedebat. Pisces vero tam crudos quam coctos sumebat, sed crudos inter manus fortiter comprimebat donec omnis aquositas consumeretur, et sic eos edebat. Loquelam autem nullam edere voluit, vel potius non potuit, etiam per pedes suspensus et sæpe dirissime tortus.[3] Ad ecclesiam quanquam

[1] *implerent*] Written upon an erasure in C.

[2] *Temporibus*] A change in the handwriting of C. here exhibits itself.

[3] *tortus*] The narrative in V. here ends at the bottom of a leaf (fol. 29), and the end of a gathering, but it is struck through, and the word "vacat" is written. Immediately after the Chronicon Terræ Sanctæ in the same MS., and without any rubric, occurs a collection of detached portions of this work, of which the above forms a part.

adductus, nulla omnino venerationis vel alicujus credulitatis signa monstrabat, aut in genuum flexione, sive in capitis inclinatione, quotiens aliqua sacrata cerneret. Cubile suum semper in occasu solis festinanter petebat, usque ad exortum solis in eo recubans. Contigit quoque ut eum ad portum maris semel adducerent, atque eum in mari dimitterent, locatis ante eum fortissimis retibus triplici ordine. Qui mox maris ima petens, atque retia omnia pertransiens, iterum atque iterum de profundo maris se emergebat, et spectantes super ripam maris diutius spectabat, sæpius se mergens, et post pusillum emergens, et quasi spectantibus insultans quod eorum retia evasisset. Cumque diu in mari ita lusisset, et jam omnis spes reversionis ejus sublata fuisset, venit iterum sponte usque ad eos in maris fluctibus natans, mansitque cum eis iterum per duos menses. Sed cum postmodum negligentius custodiretur et jam fastidio haberetur, clam aufugit ad mare, et nusquam postea comparuit. Si autem hic mortalis
f. 88 *b.* homo exstiterit, sive aliquis piscis humanam prætendens speciem, sive aliquis malignus spiritus fuerit in aliquo corpore submersi hominis latitans, sicut de quodam legitur in vita beati Audoeni, non facile diffiniri potest, maxime quia tam multa miranda a tam multis de hujusmodi eventibus narrentur.

De quodam puero et puella de terra emergentibus.

Aliud quoque mirum priori non dissimile in Suthfolke contigit apud Sanctam Mariam de Wulpetes. Inventus est puer quidam cum sorore sua ab accolis loci illius juxta oram cujusdam foveæ quæ ibidem continetur, qui formam omnium membrorum cæteris hominibus similem habebant, sed in colore cutis ab omnibus mortalibus nostræ habitabilis discrepabant. Nam tota superficies cutis eorum viridi colore tingebatur. Loquelam eorum nullus intelligere potuit. Hi igitur ad

domum domini Ricardi de Calne cujusdam militis, adducti præ admiratione, apud Wikes, inconsolabiliter flebant. Panis ac cætera cibaria eis apposita sunt, sed nullis escis quæ eis apponebantur vesci volebant, cum utique maxima famis inedia diutius cruciarentur, quia omnia hujusmodi cibaria incomestibilia esse credebant, sicut puella postmodum confessa est. Tandem cum fabæ noviter cum stipitibus abscissæ in domo asportarentur, cum maxima aviditate innuerunt ut de fabis illis sibi daretur. Quæ coram eis allatæ, stipites aperiunt, non fabarum folliculos, putantes in concavitate stipitum fabas contineri. Sed fabis in stipitibus non inventis, iterum flere cœperunt. Quod ubi astantes animadverterunt, folliculos aperiunt, fabas nudas ostendunt, ostensis cum magna hilaritate vescuntur, nulla alia cibaria ex multo tempore penitus contingentes. Puer vero semper quasi languore depressus infra breve tempus moritur. Puella vero sospitate continua perfruens, ac cibariis quibuslibet assuefacta, illum prassinum colorem penitus amisit, atque sanguineam habitudinem totius corporis paulatim recuperavit. Quæ f. 89.
postmodum sacri baptismatis lavacro regenerata, ac per multos annos in ministerio prædicti militis, (sicut ab eodem milite et ejus familia frequenter audivimus,) commorata, nimium lasciva et petulans exstitit. Interrogata vero frequenter de hominibus suæ regionis, asserebat quod omnes habitatores et omnia quæ in regione illa habebantur viridi tingerentur colore, et quod nullum solem cernebant, sed quadam claritate fruebantur, sicut post solis occasum contingit. Interrogata autem quomodo in hanc terram devenisset cum puero prædicto, respondit, quia cum pecora sequerentur, devenerunt in quandam cavernam. Quam ingressi, audierunt quendam delectabilem sonum campanarum; cujus soni dulcedine capti per cavernam diutius errando incedebant, donec ad exitum illius devenirent. Qui inde emergentes, nimia claritate solis et insolita aeris temperie, quasi attoniti et exanimes effecti, diu super oram

speluncæ jacuerunt. Cumque a supervenientium inquietudine terrerentur, diffugere voluerunt, sed introitum speluncæ minime reperire potuerunt, donec ab eis comprehenderentur.

De giganteis dentibus.

Temporibus regis Ricardi apud Essexiam in littore maris, in villa quæ vocatur Edolfuesnesse,[1] inventi sunt duo dentes cujusdam gigantis, tantæ magnitudinis ut ducenti dentes quos[2] nunc habent homines ex his secari possent. Hos autem dentes apud Cogeshale et vidimus et satis admirando contrectavimus. Inventa est et costa ejusdem gigantis ibidem, incredibilis magnitudinis et latitudinis. Inventum est etiam in Eboracensi provincia caput giganteum in ripa maris, cujus testæ capacitas summam frumenti capiebat. Quæ omnia testantur esse vera, quæ in antiquis historiis de giganteis corporibus leguntur. Viderunt etiam quidam ex nostris apud Gualiam juvenem quendam immensæ proceritatis,
f. 89 *b.* cujus altitudo erat quinque cubitorum, digitorum nimia erat longitudo et grossitudo, sed viribus suis in adolescentia quodam casu privatus est. In eadem provincia eodem anno apparuerunt in quadam herbosa planitie vestigia humana insolitæ longitudinis; et ubicunque vestigia impressa fuerant, herba velut igne ustulata remanserat.

De quodam fantastico spiritu.

Tempore regis Ricardi apud Daghewurthe,[3] in Suthfolke, in domum domini Osberni de Bradewelle, quidam fantasticus spiritus multoties et multo tempore apparuit, loquens cum familia prædicti militis, vocem infantis unius anni in sono imitatus, ac se Malekin vocitabat.

---

[1] *Edolfuesnesse*] Edolfes nesse, V.

[2] *quos*] Altered in C. by erasure from "quas."

[3] *Daghewurthe*] Daghewrhte, V.

Matrem vero suam cum fratre in domo vicina manere asserebat, et se frequenter ab eisdem objurgari dicebat, eo quod ab eis discedens cum hominibus loqui præsumeret. Mira et risui digna et agebat et loquebatur, et aliquoties aliorum occultos actus detegens. Ex colloquiis ejus primo uxor militis et tota familia valde territa est, sed postmodum ejus verbis et ridiculosis actibus assuefacti, confidenter ac familiariter cum ea[1] loquebantur, plurima ab ea inquirentes. Loquebatur autem Anglice secundum idioma regionis illius, interdum etiam Latine, et de Scripturis sermocinabatur cum capellano ejusdem militis, sicut ipse nobis veraciter protestatus est. Audiri et sentiri potuit, sed minime videri, nisi semel[2] a quadam puella de thalamo visa est in specie parvissimi infantis, quæ induebatur quadam alba tunica, nimium prius a puella rogata et adjurata ut se visibilem ei exhiberet. Quæ nullo modo ejus petitioni consentire voluit donec puella per Dominum juraret, quod eam nec tangeret, nec teneret. Confessa est quoque quod nata erat apud Lanaham, et dum mater ejus secum eam deferret in campum, ubi cum aliis messuit, et solam eam relinqueret in parte agri, a quadam alia rapta est et transposita, et jam vij. annis cum eadem manserat; et dicebat quod post alios vij. annos reverteretur ad pristinam hominum cohabitationem. Ca- f. 90.
pello quodam se et alios uti dicebat, quod se invisibiles reddebat. Cibaria et potus ab assistentibus multoties exigebat, quæ super quandam archam reposita amplius non inveniebantur.

De superstitione Publicanorum.

Temporibus Ludovici regis Franciæ, qui genuit regem Philippum, cum error quorumdam hæreticorum

---

[1] *ea*] So altered here and in the next line from "eo" in C.

[2] *nisi semel*] The conclusion of the paragraph, from this point, is written in a smaller and more compressed hand.

qui vulgo appellantur Publicani, per plures provincias Galliæ proserperet, prodigiosum quiddam in urbe Remensium contigit, de quadam senili muliere hac peste infecta. Cum enim dominus Willelmus, ejusdem urbis archiepiscopus et avunculus regis Philippi, quadam die extra urbem cum clericis suis spatiandi gratia obequitaret, quidam ex clericis ejus, scilicet, magister Gervasius Tilleberiensis, videns quandam puellam in vinea solam deambulantem, lubricæ juventutis curiositate ductus, divertit ad eam, sicut ab ejus ore audivimus postea, cum canonicus esset. Quam salutans, et unde et cujus esset filia, et quidnam ibidem sola ageret, diligenter inquirens, cum ejus pulchritudinem diutius attendisset, hanc tandem de amore lascivo curialiter affatur. Cui illi simplici gestu et cum quadam verborum gravitate respondit, vix juvenem respicere volens: "Numquam velit Deus, O bone adoles-" cens, ut tua amica, sive alicujus umquam hominis " existam, quia si virginitatem amisissem et caro mea " semel corrupta esset, æternæ damnationi procul-" dubio absque omni remedio subjacerem." Quod audiens magister Gervasius intellexit protinus hanc esse de illa impiissima secta Publicanorum, qui illo in tempore ubique exquirebantur et perimebantur, sed maxime a Philippo comite Flandrensium, qui justa crudelitate eos immisericorditer puniebat. Nonnulli vero eorum in Angliam advenerant, qui apud Oxenefordiam deprehensi, jubente rege Henrico secundo clave candenti in frontibus deformiter sunt signati et effugati. Dum itaque prædictus clericus cum puella de
f. 90 b. tali responso confutando altercaretur, supervenit archiepiscopus cum suis, qui controversiæ subortæ causam agnoscens, jussit puellam comprehendi et secum in urbem adduci. Quam coram clericis suis alloquens et plures auctoritates et rationum argumenta pro confutando errore proponens, respondit illa se nequaquam adhuc plenius fore instructam ut tantas objectiones

posset refellere ; sed habere se quandam magistram in urbe confessa est, quæ omnium objectiones facillime suis rationibus refelleret. Cujus nomen et habitationis locum cum indicasset, confestim a ministris quæsita et inventa coram archiepiscopo assistitur. Quæ multis quæstionibus et auctoritatibus divinarum Scripturarum ab ipso archiepiscopo et a clericis undique pulsata, quæ tantum errorem convincerent, ita omnes auctoritates prolatas quadam sinistra interpretatione pervertebat ut satis patenter cunctis innotuerit spiritum totius erroris per os ejus fuisse locutum. Ad omnes siquidem auctoritates et historias tam Veteris quam Novi Testamenti, quæ ei objiciebantur, tam facile, tam memoriter respondebat, tamquam omnium Scripturarum notitiam esset adepta, et in hujusmodi responsionibus semper exercitata, veris falsa commiscens, et veram fidei nostræ explanationem quodam pernicioso intellectu deludens.

Cum autem utrarumque mentes obstinatæ, nec minis nec blanditiis, aut ullis allegationibus vel Scripturarum auctoritatibus, ab errore suarum propositionum revocari possent, reclusæ sunt in ergastulo carceris usque in crastinum. Quæ coram archiepiscopo et omni clero, ac in præsentia nobilium virorum, in aula archiepiscopali in crastino revocatæ, pluribus iterum allegationibus de abrenuntiando errore publice conveniuntur. Quæ cum salutaribus monitis nulla ratione adquievissent, sed in errore jam semel concepto immobiliter perstitissent, communi consilio decretum est ut flammis concremarentur. Et jam igne in civitate accenso, cum ad pœnam adjudicatam a ministris trahi deberent, ait illa malefici f. 91.
erroris magistra: "O insensati et judices injusti! "Putatisne quod me ignibus vestris nunc concrema- "bitis? Judicium vestrum non formido, et ignem "præparatum non perhorresco." Et hæc dicens, de sinu concite glomum fili extraxit, et extra quandam magnam fenestram projecit, capite fili in manibus

retento; cunctisque audientibus voce sonora dixit: "Recipe!" Ad quod verbum mox a terris elevata, glomum agili volatu cunctis aspicientibus extra fenestram subsecuta est, malignorum spirituum ministerio, ut credimus, subvecta, qui quondam Simonem Magum in aere sustulerunt. Quo autem illa malefica devenerit, vel ad quem locum transposita fuerit, ab aspicientibus omnino sciri non potuit. Puella vero, nondum ad tantam sectæ illius vesaniam deveniens, cum remansisset, et nec rationum persuasione, nec divitiarum sponsione, ab incepta obstinatione revocari potuisset, igne consumpta est, non sine admiratione multorum, cum nulla suspiria, nullos fletus, nullum planctum emitteret, sed omne conflagrantis incendii tormentum constanter et alacriter perferret, instar martyrum Christi, (sed disparili causa,) qui olim pro Christiana religione a paganis trucidabantur.

Homines hujus impiissimæ sectæ mori magis eligunt quam ab errore converti; sed nihil simile habent martyrum Christi constantia et istorum pertinacia, quia mortis contemptum in illis pietas, in istis cordis duritia operatur. Asserunt isti parvulos non baptizandos donec ad intelligibilem perveniant ætatem; astruunt non orandum pro mortuis, non sanctorum suffragia expetenda, nuptias damnant, virginitatem prædicant in operimentum suæ turpitudinis. Lac et quicquid ex eo conficitur abhorrent, et omne cibum qui ex coitu procreatur. Non credunt ignem purgatorium restare post mortem, sed statim animam a corpore solutam
f. 91 *b.* vel ad requiem transire, vel ad damnationem. Nullas sacras Scripturas recipiunt, nisi Evangelia et Epistolas canonicas. Rusticani homines sunt, et ideo nec rationibus convincuntur, nec auctoritatibus corriguntur, nec persuasionibus flectuntur. Mori magis eligunt quam ab impiissima secta converti. Aiunt etiam alii qui de secretis eorum investigaverunt, quod isti non credunt Deum res humanas curare, nec aliquam dispositionem

vel potentiam in terrenis creaturis exercere; sed apostatam angelum, quem et Luzabel nominant, universæ creaturæ corporali præsidere, et ad nutum ejus cuncta terrena disponi. Corpus a diabolo dicunt formari, animam vero a Deo creari et corporibus infundi; unde fit ut semper quædam pertinax pugna inter corpus et animam geratur. Dicunt etiam nonnulli quod in subterraneis suis quædam nefanda sacrificia Lucifero suo temporibus agant constitutis, et quasdam sacrilegas turpitudines ibidem operentur.

Fuit iisdem temporibus in Senonensi archiepiscopatu quædam sacratissima virgo, nomine Aupeis, quæ jam plus quam xxx.[1] annis nullum omnino sumpserat cibum aut potum, nisi sacram communionem, Dominicis tantum diebus. Coram lecto suo fabricata est ecclesia, et sacerdotes ac ministri deputati, qui divinum officium coram ea celebrarent. Altare vero ita erat ordinatum ut sacra virgo semper posset intendere qualiter sacerdos in celebratione divini officii se haberet.[2] Hæc f. 92.
pauperibus parentibus nata, et sub austera matris suæ disciplina nutrita, in villa quadam modernæ mansionis suæ nomine Eudov, dum olim adolescentula in pastu pecorum patris sui detineretur, jam tunc adeo justitiam zelabat ut nemini molesta in pascuis alienis clam depascendis fieret, sed secundum regulam charitatis omnibus pro modulo suo morem gerebat. Tandem autem ut divinus amor circa dilectam filiam fructuose claresceret, misit Dominus manum suam et tetigit os ejus et carnem, percussitque eam ulcere pes-

[1] *jam plus quam xxx.*] Written by a second hand in C. upon a blank left in the text, or upon an erasure. "Quæ jam xij. plusquam," V.; the numerals being upon an erasure, and by a later hand.

[2] *haberet*] The passage which begins with the words, "Hæc pauperibus," and ends, "et pace interrupta resarciri," is an addition to the narrative as it originally stood in C., and is written upon a leaf inserted in that copy for the purpose. The narrative proceeds continuously in V.

simo, ita quod a planta pedum usque ad verticem non erat in illa sanitas. Breve quoque temporis successu pestilens fœtor totius paralytici corporis ulcera pervasit, ut parentes ejus tantæ luis impatientes, ipsam in domo vili seorsum abjicerent, et singulis diebus eam invisentes, pauperrimum ei victum, occlusis ob fœtorem naribus, ab ostio porrexerunt.

Pater autem misericordiarum et Deus totius consolationis, placatus ejus patientia, et miseratus ejus ærumnam et parentum dolorem, in sabbato sancto vigiliarum Paschæ revisens solam Solus per gloriosum nuntium suum consolabatur. Siquidem eo die præcipuum luctum habuit, quod ad tantam (ut decuit) sollemnitatem cæteris hominibus vestium splendore decoratis et ecclesias sollemniter petentibus, ipsa singulariter miserabilis in infernali quodam squalore decumbens contabescebat, quo sibi erat dolori, parentibus oneri, Deo non honori. Hæc ea peranxie lamentanti subito misericordiæ Mater et Virgo cum immenso lumine simul et odore suavissimo astitit, et post consuetam sibi dulcissimam salutationem, consolatoria ei pro more suo verba proposuit, fidem itaque suadens ac patientiam tantam ei pollicitabatur ab illa hora et deinceps futuram gloriam, quantam eatenus experta fuit ignominiam, quantum fuerat ante mundo despicabilis, tantum foret cunctis desiderabilis. Extensaque sancta dextera singula paralyticæ membra contrectat, et mox ulcera quæque curantur, fœtor omnis abscedit. Itaque peracta legatione, inenarrabilem post se fragrantiam relinquens, in cœlum recipitur. Adventantes autem parentes cibum paralyticæ pro more offerunt; sed dum eorum cibis se jam non egere prædicat, etiam miraculo sublati fœtoris et insolitæ suavitatis experimento in stupores eos commutat.

f. 92 *b*. Ipsa vero deinceps nil comedente, fama celebris de miraculoso ejus jejunio ad archiepiscopi Senonensis bonæ recordationis, Willelmi avunculi Philippi regis

illustris Galliæ, aures pervenit. Qui cum hujusmodi quasi anilibus relationibus minime crederet, multitudinem honestarum mulierum et opulentarum eo ad veritatem insoliti rumoris probandam destinavit, quæ cum per mensem aut amplius insidiosas excubias ibidem fecissent, tandem recedere parantes, a paralytica cum leni risu redarguuntur, quod tanto tempore cum ea morantes, nec cibum nec potum ei obtulissent.

Igitur fide facta archiepiscopo de tam miraculoso jejunio, ipse, paucis se comitantibus, eo celeriter advehitur, paralyticam suaviter alloquitur, paternamque sibi consolationem, sese cuncta necessaria subministrante, pollicetur. Ecclesiam insuper ibi cum mansionibus canonicorum regularium, assignatis in eorum stipem sufficientem redditibus, se constructurum instanter promittit, quatinus ibidem coram ea divina celebrent, et ejus dispositionibus devotius obsecundent. Virgo autem sancta, Sancto Spiritu afflata, innatam sibi paupertatem amplectens et sæculi pompam cavens, dum religiose latebras quærit, archiepiscopi verbis humiliter contradicit. Allegat enim natalium suorum obscuritatem tantam non decere celebritatem, valetudinem tantam in tam vili valetudinaria non oportere tantam sustinere frequentiam, religionem denique, si quæ sibi videretur inesse, ne peremptorie temptaretur a xenodoxia populosam occupationem[1] non desiderare. Archiepiscopus tamen dum obstinate manet in sententia, recedens in sua, citissime destinat operarios, qui, singulorum ædificiorum fundamentis instanter positis, opus urgent. Quorum importunitatem dum sancta virgo fastidit, in tantam accidiam ex abundantia doloris cecidit, quod (ut erat iracundissima) per mensem vel amplius Dei gratiam sibi non inclamavit. Jacuit igitur sibi sic velut amens, nec sibi nec aliis in Deo consulens. Et ecce in hoc nimio ejus silentio subito visus est ei Deus et Homo, quasi pendens et sanguinem

[1] *occupationem*] Written in C. upon an erasure.

stagnans in crucis patibulo. Ad hanc igitur visionem in se reversa spiritum compunctionis recepit, et velut ab inferis rediviva sic deinceps exultavit in Dei gratia. Non fuit autem mirum si tanta eam commotio diu tenuit, quæ quanta sibi foret tribulatio futura ex hac structura, Sancto sibi Spiritu inspirante, præcognovit. Idem namque canonici dum enormiter viventes pacem sanctæ illius contemplativæ perturbant, in molestissimas eas curas violenter præcipitant, dum eam necesse est a desideratissimis amplexibus Sponsi cœlestis crebro avelli, quatinus eorum contentiones legitime valeant decidi, et pace interrupta resarciri.[2]

f. 91 *b.* Ad hujus colloquium reverenter accedebant archiepiscopi et episcopi, et maxime abbates Cistercienses, cum quibus speciali et familiari devotione devincta erat. Reges quoque ac principes, nobiles pariter et ignobiles, ejus præsentiam devote visitabant, et ejus orationibus se commendabant. Singulis noctibus sacra corporalia super pectus ejus reponebantur. Semper in lecto suo recumbebat, quia totum corpus, præter solum caput cum pectore,[2] præmortuum fuerat et insensibile effectum. Manum tamen dexteram cum brachio beatus Thomas in habitu pontificali apparens ei restituit, qua flabellum tenens in æstate muscas abigit, cum prius ei nullo tempore musca insederit.[3]

f. 93. Multotiens quasi in extasi jacens, divinis revelationibus et visionibus intererat, unde et multa futura multis revelabat; et præcipue prælatos de indisciplinato gestu subditorum certificabat, et quæ corrigenda in domibus eorum erant intimabat.

Anno MCCI., quidam ex proceribus Aquitaniæ, scilicet Hugo cognomento[4] Brun, rebellans contra regem

---

[1] *resarciri*] Here ends the matter introduced from the supplemental leaf.

[2] *præter . . . pectore*] In C. written upon an erasure.

[3] *Manum . . . . insederit*] An addition in the margin of C.; in the text in V.

[4] *cognomento*] An addition, by a different hand, in the margin of C., but in the text of V.

Johannem, plurimas partes provinciæ illius cum coadjutoribus suis invadere nitebatur, eo quod rex prædictus filiam comitis Engolismi desponsaverat, quam ipse prior affidaverat et in custodia sua habuerat. Quapropter rex transfretavit[1] et rebellantes sibi coercuit.

In crastino[2] post Nativitatem Sancti Johannis suborta est sæva tempestas tonitruorum, fulminum, et grandinum, cum pluvia vehementi; quæ magnam fecit stragem hominum, animalium, segetum, domorum incensionem, arborum evulsionem pluribus in locis. Aliaque tempestas iterum post xv. dies suborta est, priori non dissimilis, ut prata secari non possent, secata asportarentur a rapido aquarum inundantium cursu. Piscium non minima multitudo ex nimia aquæ corruptione quæ ex fœni putrefactione provenerat, mortua est. Tanta autem extitit nimborum inundatio quæ particulariter per diversas provincias contigebat, nec tamen sub una die, ut pontes effringeret, segetes, fœna dissiparet, aliquos etiam submergeret, ita ut nonnulli formidarent in illa pluviarum eruptione iterum instare Dei diluvium.[3]

De abbatibus Hierosolymam proficiscentibus.

Multi nobiles et potentes viri hoc anno per exhortationem domni papæ Innocentis et per prædicationem domni Fulchonis, crucem sumpserunt. Horum caput et dux militiæ susceptæ peregrinationis effectus est Bonefacius, marchisius de Monte-Ferrato, frater ejusdem marchisii qui ab Hauzasis peremptus est. Hic autem cum pluribus capitulum Cisterciense devote

[1] *transfretavit*] The Itinerary of king John shows that he was at Portsmouth on Monday, 14 May 1201, and he next appears on 2 June at Bonneville-sur-Touque.

[2] *crastino*] June 25.

[3] *diluvium*] Here the MS. V. ends, and in the margin of C. occurs the memorandum, (in a smaller hand, and with a different ink,) "hic de-"ficit."

adiens, eorum se orationibus commendavit, et quem-
f. 93 b. dam abbatem regionis suæ, ordinis Cisterciensis, scilicet abbatem de Lucelane, in comitatu assumptæ peregrinationis humiliter expetiit et obtinuit. Similiter domnus Fulcho, ad capitulum prædictum cum literis domni papæ adveniens, tres abbates a domno apostolico nominatos in comitatu suo suscepit; scilicet, abbatem de Sacra Cella,[1] abbatem etiam de Perseine, atque abbatem de Sarneia. Comes etiam Flandrensis Baldewinus cum comitissa sua cruce signati, in comitatu suo obtinuerunt abbatem de Los. Magna enim necessitas exigebat ut plures approbatæ religionis viri exercitum Domini in tam laboriosa peregrinatione comitarentur, qui possent pusillanimes confortare, ignorantes instruere, probos quosque ad certamen Dominicum animare, atque in omnibus animarum periculis assistere. Multa enim millia ex diversis mundi partibus illuc confluebant, qui consilio et auxilio justorum indigebant. Nam, exceptis innumeris aliis, dominus Fulcho coram illo generali capitulo non sine lachrymis confessus est, se per illud triennium quo prædicaverat ducenta millia crucis charactere manu propria signasse, qui omnes ob Christi obsequium parentes et patriam atque vitæ jocunditatem interim reliquerant.

Quomodo domnus papa Cistercienses in reconciliationis gratiam recepit.

Domnus papa Innocentius quasdam literas speciales capitulo Cisterciensi direxit, in quibus omnes exactiones remisit, et plenariam dilectionis suæ gratiam eis concessit, atque privilegiorum suorum renovationem, necnon et alias libertates gratanter repromisit. Ipse enim dom-

---

[1] *de Sacra Cella*] The original reading was "abbatem de Columba;" but the latter words are struck out, and "de Sacra Cella" introduced by a different, but coeval hand, in the margin of C.

nus apostolicus jam per biennium erga ordinem iratum ostentaverat animum, pro quadam pecuniaria exactione ad subventionem terræ Hierosolymitanæ, quam ordo Cisterciensis ei persolvere recusavit, nulli hujuscemodi exactioni subjacere volens, qui hactenus prædecessorum suorum temporibus omni libertate potiebatur. Ut autem a tali exactione domnus papa desisteret, missi sunt ad curiam Romanam plures abbates semel et iterum, qui reconciliationis gratiam minime reportare potuerunt; nec aliqui, etiam de ordine, aliquid negotium ibidem effectui mancipare interim potuerunt sine maximo gravamine. f. 94. Profectus est ad curiam pro hoc negotio domnus abbas Cisterciensis cum aliis, quem domnus papa retinuit et episcopum cardinalem Prænestinæ civitatis ordinavit. Tandem vero domnus apostolicus, ordinis Cisterciensis singularem perpendens eminentiam, necnon et ex quadam visione admonitus, plenariam reconciliationis gratiam eis indulsit, et ab hujusmodi exactione quievit, orationum suffragia ab eis expetens.

Extitit enim quidam monachus in quodam cœnobio juxta Romam, claris ortus natalibus, in Scripturis eruditissimus, sed quod his potissimum est, in sacra religione bonis præpollens moribus, qui omnium promotionum fastigia in quantum potuit declinabat, atque susceptæ paupertati firmiter adhærebat. Hic autem magister Reinerus vocabatur, qui ob laudabilem probitatem domno papæ nimis extitit familiaris, assistens ei sæpius in urgentioribus negotiis. Cumque postmodum omni negotiorum tumultu atque omni inquietudinum strepitu carere voluisset ut liberius Deo vacaret, proposuit arciorem vitam subire quam regularis institutionis consuetudo proponebat. Extorsit igitur ab abbate suo indulgentiam, atque se transtulit ad vitam heremiticam, uno comite quodam simplici viro contentus. Huic autem viro simplici beata Virgo Maria servorum suorum precibus pulsata in visione apparuit, præcipiens ei ut domnum apostolicum adiret, eique

ex parte sua præciperet quatinus ab afflictione et persecutione carissimorum filiorum suorum, fratrum scilicet Cisterciensium, absque mora desisteret; quia hujus ordinis viros in hac valle miseriarum quasi servos strenuos et filios carissimos habet, in quibus solis super omnes alios religiosos sibi bene complacet. Quod si ab illorum vexatione minime quiescere velit, sciat pro certo se in proximo indignationem Omnipotentis Dei ac suam incursurum. Hæc autem visio trina apparitione
f. 94 *b.* facta est. Cumque vir ille simplex hujusmodi comminatoriam visionem summo pontifici revelare formidaret, admonitus est in somnis ut prælibatam visionem magistro Reinero socio suo referret, atque ut ille ex parte Dei Genitricis domno papæ intimaret. At ille audita visione, et afflictionem ordinis cognoscens, ac simplicitatem socii perpendens, qui hujuscemodi visionem nec sciret nec auderet confingere, iter arripuit ad curiam, nesciens de adventu abbatum qui pro hoc negotio ad domnum papam directi fuerant, et ab eodem repulsi, infecto negotio. Et factum est dum iret, revelatum est ei in somnis quod tres abbates Romæ inveniret, hujus afflictionis causa directos, dictumque est ei qui essent, et quibus appellarentur vocabulis, et in quo loco hospitarentur.

Perveniens igitur magister Reinerus ad apostolicum, utriusque revelationis seriem eidem confidenter intimavit. Tunc domnus papa narrationi tanti viri fidem adhibens, confestim illos tres abbates in præsentia sua convocari fecit, domnum quoque Jordanem cardinalem, qui monachus extiterat Cisterciensis, necnon et episcopum Prænestinensem cardinalem, qui abbas extiterat Cistercii. Coram his solis domnus papa se humilians, ordini satisfecit atque omnes pecuniarias exactiones remisit. Abbates autem qui ad capitulum Cisterciense convenerant, his auditis et cognitis, magnifice lætati sunt et consolati, magnificas Deo gratias agentes, qui voluntatem timentium Se facit, et depreca-

tionem eorum exaudit; et quia exactoriam hominis servitutem per Dei misericordiam evaserant, ultroneam mera et spontanea voluntate communi consilio subire decreverunt, inter se statuentes ut ex ditioribus abbatiis aliqua pecuniarum collecta fieret ad subventionem et redemptionem pauperum et captivorum inter paganos miserabiliter degentium, ut eorum hilaris oblatio non fiat ex tristitia aut ex necessitate quasi coactitia, sed f. 95. impendatur cum hilaritate et cum gaudio Sancti Spiritus, sicut libens et spontanea, quia hilarem datorem diligit Deus.

Innocentius papa misit in legationem in Alemanniam episcopum Prænestinæ civitatis, qui extiterat abbas Cistercii, ut omnes episcopos et proceres totius imperii compelleret ad submissionem regis Othonis, ut in imperatorem promoveri posset, omnesque rebelles ejus anathematis vinculo innodaret. Prædictus autem episcopus per Galliam iter faciens, nimis severe redarguebat regem Philippum pro subintroducta illa adultera uxore, denuntiavitque ei ex parte Dei Omnipotentis, quod si illam non dimitteret, in proximo alterum illorum vitam finiturum. Cujus comminatoriæ denuntiationis veritatem rei probavit eventus; nam post mensem illa adultera præsentem vitam terminavit.

Quædam nobilis abbatia in Hispania, quæ vocatur Carazana, cum l. domibus sibi pertinentibus, reddidit se hoc anno ordini Cisterciensi, antiquas demutans consuetudines, atque Cistercienses observantias in omnibus assumens, sicut quondam domus Savigniensis fecerat. Simili modo duo alia præclara cœnobia diversarum consuetudinum in imperio existentia eodem anno ordini Cisterciensi se submiserunt.

Abbas de Flaviaco, comes domni Fulconis in prædicatione, in Angliam deveniens, disseminvait Verbum Dei per diversas provincias. Qui, inter cætera virtutum hortamenta, de observatione Dominicæ diei et de celebratione sanctarum sollemnitatum populos admonere

curavit, et ne aliquod forum mercandi gratia Dominicis diebus adirent omnimodis interdixit. Unde factum est ut per Cantuariensem provinciam et per plura loca Angliæ Dominicis diebus fora populi omitterent, et divinis obsequiis intenderent. Relata sunt plura stu-
f. 95 b. penda miracula, et in pluribus locis Angliæ sunt divulgata de divina ultione in eos illata qui ab opere servili vacare noluerunt, post ejus prædicationem, in sacris Dominicis et in sabbatis post nonam pulsatam.

Temporibus domni Petri abbatis quarti de Cogeshala contigit ut frater Robertus, ejusdem loci conversus, qui curam hospitum habebat, quadam die ante horam refectionis aulam hospitum more solito ingrederetur. Ingressus autem, invenit quasdam personas reverendi vultus et habitus in aula residentes, qui mantellis instar Templariorum utebantur, pilleola habentes singuli super capita. Erant autem numero quasi ix. vel eo amplius, quia frater ille non satis diligenter animadvertit quanti convenerant. Æstimans vero frater prædictus viros illos esse Templarios, benigne salutavit eos. Cui unus eorum, qui cæteris præesse videbatur, ait: "Ubi-"nam commessuri sumus?" At ille, "In camera," inquit, "cum domno abbate comedetis." Qui protinus respondit, "Non est nostræ consuetudinis in privatis "cameris comedere, sed in aula cum hospitibus." Post hæc frater de aula egrediens perrexit ad abbatem, talium hospitum denuntians adventum, qui continuo necessaria præparare ac mensam apponere jussit, seque cum eis pransurum in camera repromisit. Igitur abbate ad mensam jam accessuro, præcepit fratri prædicto ut hospites illos introduceret. Frater vero aulam ingrediens, hospites illos quos ibidem paulo ante dimiserat, minime repperit. Intrans autem in interiora cubicula et in alia diversoria, neminem eorum prorsus invenit. Moxque egressus et per curiam huc illucque discurrens, obvios quosque de talibus viris sciscitatur. At unus testatus est quod hujusmodi viros viderit ad ecclesiam

tendere, et ad cœmeteria fratrum properasse. Quo cum nuntium celeriter direxisset, nuntius neminem repperit. Janitores autem de hujusmodi hospitibus interrogati, f. 96. nullos tales viros vel ingressos vel egressos per januam illa die fore asserebant. Qui vero isti viri fuerint, vel quomodo advenerint, vel qua discesserint, usque hodie incognitum manet. De narratione autem prædicti fratris quod ita eos viderit et allocutus fuerit, non dubitamus qui ejus vitam et conscientiam novimus, cum hæc eadem frequenter nobis narraverit, atque etiam in extrema sua ægritudine, qua ex hac luce subtractus est, super his conventus simpliciter retulerit. Erat enim simplex rerum relator, paucis utens verbis, nullam ostentationem in dictis seu in factis prætendens.

Anno MCCII.,[1] cum quædam concordia composita esset inter Philippum regem Galliæ et inter Johannem regem Angliæ, absente comite Boloniæ, qui se regi Angliæ in amicitia obligaverat, sicut regi Ricardo jampridie fecerat, simul cum comite Flandrensi, confestim rex Johannes cœpit acriter expugnare comitem de Marchis, scilicet, Hugonem cognomento Brun, et fratrem ejus comitem de Eu, quia rebellaverant contra eum pro filia comitis Engolismi, quam Hugo prædictus prius affidaverat. Sed cum regis infestationem comites illi ferre diutius non possent, conquesti sunt regi Philippo, quasi capitali domino, de nimia infestatione regis Angliæ, domini sui. At rex Philippus multociens mandavit regi Angliæ quatinus ab eorum expugnatione quiesceret, et cum hominibus suis aliquam pacis concordiam componeret. Sed cum rex Angliæ nullatenus mandatis aut precibus regis Franciæ adquiescere voluisset, summonitus est per proceres regni Francorum, quasi comes Aquitaniæ et Andegaviæ, quatinus ad curiam domini sui regis Franciæ Parisius veniret, et judicium curiæ

[1] *MCCII.*] Here a decided change occurs in C. in the colour of the ink and the size of the writing.

suæ subiret, domino suo de illatis injuriis responsurus et juri quod pares sui decernebant pariturus. Rex autem Angliæ respondens se ducem esse Normannorum, allegabat se nequaquam debere ad ullum colloquium Parisius procedere, sed solummodo inter utrosque
f. 96 *b.* fines, regni scilicet et ducatus, ad colloquium regis occurrere; quia sic antiquitus inter ducem et regem decretum et scriptis authenticis confirmatum erat. Rex autem Philippus allegabat nequaquam justum esse ut jus suum, quod ad comitatum Aquitanicum spectabat, amitteret, si isdem esset dux Normanniæ qui et comes Aquitaniæ. Super hac autem controversia dirimenda et aliis quampluribus de die in diem emergentibus, diutius tractatum est, et animositates utriusque regis cum crudelibus minis crescere paulatim cœperunt. Tandem vero curia regis Franciæ adunata adjudicavit regem Angliæ tota terra sua privandum, quam hactenus de regibus Franciæ ipse et progenitores sui tenuerant, eo quod fere omnia servitia eisdem terris debita per longum jam tempus facere contempserant, nec domino suo fere in aliquibus obtemperare volebant. Hoc igitur curiæ suæ judicium rex Philippus gratanter acceptans et approbans, coadunato exercitu, confestim invasit castellum Butavant in Normannia, quod rex Ricardus construxerat, et solo tenus evertit. Deinde cepit totam terram Hugonis de Gurnai et omnia castella in circuitu. Invasit etiam castellum de Albemare cum comitatu, et comitatum de Eu, et totam terram illam usque ad Arcas, nullo ei resistente. Comes vero Boloniæ R.[1] ab amicitia regis Johannis omnino discedens, eo quod sine ipso jampridem pacem fecerat cum rege Franciæ, pacificatus est cum domino suo, signifer existens in omni decertatione et præclarus in omni probitate totius militiæ; cujus custodiæ deputavit Albemare et plura castella quæ capiebat.

[1] *R.*] Added in C. above the line, but by the same hand.

De captione Arturi et cæterorum apud Mirabel.

Arturus autem comes Britanniæ, militaribus armis a rege Philippo decoratus, cujus filiam parvulam affidaverat, ipse jam sexdecim annorum ætatem habens, ad quorumdam importunam suggestionem contra avunculum suum regem Johannem rebellavit, sinistroque et nimis concito usus consilio, profectus est cum Hugone Brun et Gaufrido de Lezinant, et cum ducentis mili- f. 97.
tibus et quinquaginta, atque castellum de Mirabel sinistro omine obsederunt, in quo regina Alienor, avia Arturi, cum suis hospitabatur. Regina vero, capi metuens, mandavit regi filio suo ut opem ferret quantocius obsessis. Rex autem illico cum parte exercitus sui ad castellum illud profectus est. Hostes autem castrum intraverant, et omnes portas terrari fecerant, excepta una sola, et secure regis adventum præstolabantur, in multitudine probissimorum militum et servorum confidentes. Rex vero adveniens cum gravi pugnæ conflictu urbem intravit, et omnes inimicos suos qui ibidem confluxerant, Deo volente, statim comprehendit. Cepit enim ibi Arturum nepotem suum, et comitem Hugonem, et Galfridum de Lezinant, et ducentos strenuos milites et quinquaginta-duos, exceptis aliis probissimis servientibus; sicque matrem suam cum sibi adhærentibus ab obsidentibus liberavit. Hunc autem virtutis triumphum illico baronibus Anglicanis mandare per literas curavit, quarum iste tenor est:

Johannes, Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dominus Hiberniæ . . . . . etc.,[1] omnibus baronibus suis, salutem. Sciatis nos gratia Dei sanos esse et incolumes, et gratiam Dei nobiscum mirabiliter operasse. Die enim Martis[2] ante ad Vincula Sancti Petri, cum fuissemus ante Cinomanas, accepimus dominam matrem nostram apud Mirabel fore obsessam, et quantum potuimus illuc

[1] *Hiberniæ . . . etc.*] An erasure here occurs in C.

[2] *Die Martis*] July 30.

properavimus, ita quod illuc venimus ad festum beati [1] Petri ad Vincula, et ibi cepimus Arturum nepotem nostrum, quem Willelmus de Braosa nobis reddidit, et Gaufridum de Lucinan, et Hugonem Brunum, et Andream de Caveni, et vicecomitem de Castro-Eraldi, et Reimundum Tuarz, et Savarium de Mauleun, et Hugonem Baugii, et omnes alios inimicos nostros Pictavenses qui illic erant, circa ducentos milites et plures, ita quod non unus solus pes evasit. Ideo Deo gratias referatis, et successibus nostris gaudeatis.

Rex autem Philippus obsederat diutius castellum de
f. 97 b. Archas; cumque in primo speraret se capturum esse castellum, lugubris rumor [2] de captione Arturi et cæterorum qui erant cum eo ad eum concite perveniens removit eum ab obsidione illa, repatriavitque in Franciam, nimis animo consternatus ex infortunio quod suis acciderat. Postea vero rex Johannes urbem Turonicam et castellum regis Philippi quod in ea erat, violenta manu cepit, et fere totam illam egregiam civitatem igne consumpsit, ex qua re maximum odium a Turonensibus et illius patriæ principibus incurrit. Civitatem etiam Cinomannis combussit, eo quod adversarios suos [3] excepisset. Adversarios autem quos apud Mirabel ceperat, per diversa loca transmittens, carcerali custodiæ mancipavit. Postmodum vero, ad suimet dejectionem, ad petitionem quorumdam nobilium dimisit comitem Hugonem Brunum et Galfridum de Lucinan de carcere suo, receptis obsidibus et castellis suis, ac quosdam alios quos apud Mirabel ceperat, data prius cautione juramenti ne deinceps contra eum rebellarent: quod tamen juramentum nequaquam diutius servaverunt, immo multo acrius regem infestare cœperunt, adjunctis sibi pluribus hostium catervis.

[1] *festum beati*] Between these two words occurs an erasure in C.

[2] *lugubris rumor*] An erasure between these two words in C.

[3] *suos*] Originally "regis" in C., but that word has been expuncted, and "suos" written above it.

Guillemus de Roches, quidam vir potens ex proceribus Andegaviæ, cum aliis nobilibus totius Britanniæ, deprecati sunt dominum regem quatinus eis traderet Arturum, quem in sua custodia diligenter detinebat. Quo nolente, mox unanimiter conspiraverunt contra regem et rebellare cœperunt, aggregantes sibi copiosum exercitum de diversis provinciis quæ regis ditioni subjacere debuerant, terram ejus rapinis et incendiis devastantes, atque plura castella invadentes. Ex quo eventu accidit ut plures potentes viri a rege discederent, atque eorum comitatui se conjungerent; ex quibus fuit Robertus comes de Alenzun, et vicecomes de Beamunt, et Willelmus de Fulgeriis, et cæteri Britones. Habuerunt autem castellum Andegaviæ cum tota ipsa civitate, et plura alia loca munita in brevi obtinuerunt.

Cernentes autem regis consiliarii quod multas strages et seditiones facerent ubique Britones pro Arturo domino suo, et quod nulla firma pacis concordia posset fieri, Arturo superstite, suggesserunt regi quatinus præciperet ut nobilis adolescens oculis et genitalibus privaretur, et sic deinceps ad principandum inutilis redderetur, ut vel sic pars adversa ab insania sedulæ expugnationis conquiesceret et regi se subderet. Exacerbatus itaque indefessa congressione adversariorum, et minis eorum et impropriis lacessitus, præcepit tandem in ira et in furore tribus suis servientibus quatinus ad Falesiam quantocius pergerent, atque hoc opus detestabile perpetrarent. Duo vero ex servientibus tam execrabile opus in tam nobili adolescente committere detestantes, a curia domini regis diffugerunt; tertius vero ad castellum pervenit in quo puer regius a domino Huberto de Burch, regis camerario, diligenter custodiebatur, triplices annulos circa pedes habens. Cumque mandatum domini regis Huberto detulisset, exortus est fletus et planctus nimius inter milites qui custodiebant illum, utpote nimia f. 98.

miseratione super nobili adolescente permoti. Arturus autem diram avunculi sui sententiam super se datam cognoscens, atque de salute propria omnino diffidens, totus effluxit in lacrymas et in lamentabiles querimonias. At cum astaret ille præsens qui a rege missus fuerat ad hoc opus exsequendum, et persona gementi et flenti puero innotuisset, inter lamenta subito concitus surrexit, et manus suæ dejectionis ultrices in personam illam violenter injecit, ad milites circumstantes voce lacrymabili vociferans : " O domini mei carissimi ! pro " Dei amore sinite paulisper, ut me de isto facinoroso " ulciscar antequam mihi oculos eripiat ; nam hic ulti- " mus omnium existet quem in præsenti sæculo con- " spiciam." Ad hunc vero tumultum sedandum ocius surrexere milites, et manus utriusque cohibuerunt, atque,
f. 98 *b.* ex præcepto domini Huberti, juvenis ille qui advenerat de thalamo illo ejectus est ; ex cujus expulsione atque ex assistentium consolatoria collocutione Arturus aliquantulam, sedata cordis mœstitia, recepit consolationem.

Hubertus autem regis camerarius, honestati et famæ regiæ deferre volens, et indemnitati regis prospiciens, puerum regium servavit illæsum, perpendens quod dominus rex super tali edicto statim pœniteret, ac semper postmodum haberet exosum qui ejus tam crudeli imperio obtemperare præsumpissset ; quod magis ex subitaneo furore quam ex perpendiculo æquitatis et justitiæ emanare credidit. Volens itaque et domini regis iram ad tempus mitigare ac Britonum sævitiam cohibere, fecit per castellum et per totam provinciam divulgari quod sententia regis effectui esset mancipata, et quod dominus Arturus præ cordis tristitia et vulnerum acerbo dolore diem clausisset extremum : quæ fama, per xv. dies, per utrumque regnum volitabat incessanter. Denique classicum per vicos et castella, quasi pro anima ejus, pulsatum est ; vestes ejus hospitali leprosorum distributæ. Divulgatum est etiam quod

corpus ejus ad abbatiam de Sancto Andrea,[1] ordinis Cisterciensis, delatum sit, ibique sepultum. Ad tales igitur rumores, Britones non animis sedati sed magis magisque exacerbati, ferocius quam prius, ubi poterant, debacchati sunt; jurantes quod nunquam deinceps ab expugnatione regis Angliæ conquiescerent, qui tam detestabile facinus in dominum suum et nepotem proprium exercere præsumpsisset. Sicque factum est quod necesse erat iterum prædicare Arturum adhuc viventem et incolumem, quem ubique diffamaverant mortuum, ut vel sic efferata Britonum ferocitas aliquantulum mitigaretur. Quod cum regi intimatum esset, nequaquam displicuit ei ad præsens quod mandatum ejus exsecutum non esset. Dicebant etiam quidam militum f. 99.
domino regi, nequaquam ulterius milites se inventurum qui castella sua custodirent, si tam infaustum judicium de domino Arturo nepote suo exercere præsumpsisset; nam, si contingeret aliquos deinceps capi milites a rege Franciæ, vel ab adversariis suis, similem statim absque miseratione sortirentur vindictam.

Hoc anno quædam mirabilis visio contigit cuidam monacho de Streflur in Gualiis, in die Pentecostes,[2] de tribus angelis qui thurificabant altare dum laudes matutinales canerentur; et quomodo unus eorum ignitum carbonem de thuribulo accipiens, jactavit subito in os aspicientis monachi, et in extasi mentis factus, raptus est ab angelo. Et inter alas ejus, ut sibi videbatur, in aera sublatus, ferebatur ab angelo versus orientem, una die et nocte in revelationibus variis sic permanens, corpore ejus in infirmatorium a monachis interim delato.

Hoc anno,[3] terræ motus magnus factus est in terra Hierosolymitana, qualis non contigit a Passione Domini usque ad tempus illud: nam fere tota illa egregia civi-

[1] *abbatiam de S. Andrea*] S. Andre de Gouffern. See Gallia Christ. xi. 743.

[2] *Pentecostes*] June 2.

[3] *Hoc anno*] In C. these words are written in the margin with a style.

tas Tyrus ex terræ motu subversa est cum habitatoribus plurimis; et tertia pars Tholomaide, id est, Achon, cum castello et turribus, et alia castella subversa sunt, tam apud Christianos, quam apud Sarracenos. Terræ motus etiam particularis in plerisque locis Angliæ contigit. Facta sunt horrenda tonitrua et fulgura et grandines crebrius in mense Augusto, et ventus vehemens.

Anno MCCIII. mense Aprili aquæ ultra solitum subito excreverunt, ac multa incommoda per diversa Angliæ loca intulerunt, quod mirabiliter contigit, eo quod nonnisi parva pluvia tantum præcesserit diluvium.

Quomodo urbs Constantinopolis a Latinis capta est.

Urbs Constantinopolis a duce Venetiæ et a comite Flandrensi Balduino, et a reliquis sociis eorum Hierusalem tendentibus, expugnata est, atque infra octo
f. 99 *b.* dies obsidionis eis reddita, imperatore falso fugiente, qui Kirisacum imperatorem fratrem suum inique excæcaverat et in carcerem cum imperatrice sua retruserat, cum isdem Kirisacus prius fratrem suum de captivitate[1] gentilium liberaverit; et Alexis filius Kirisaci, a Francis factus est imperator, qui eos in auxilium invitaverat, et a Corfaut usque Constantinopolim per portum Duceaviæ et per strictum mare et per brachium Sancti Georgii, navigio perduxerat. A Corfaut navibus ascensis, (scilicet, ducentis,) præter naviculas et bargas, octavo die applicuerunt ad portum Duceaviæ, a quo portu usque Constantinopolim centum leugæ numerantur. Alexis vero, effectus imperator, promisit quod toti exercitui quem secum adduxerat, per annum integrum victualia largiretur, et quod decem millia equitum ad annuum terræ Hierosolymitanæ succursum ad sumptus suos haberet. Promisit etiam,

[1] *captivitate*] Partly upon an erasure, and partly above the line in C.

quantum viveret, ad stipendia sua quingentos milites se in Terra Sancta habiturum. Dedit etiam duci Venetiæ centum millia marcarum argenti, et totidem toti exercitui erogavit, pro collato auxilio, sicut eisdem prius pollicitus erat. Patriarcha autem Constantinopolitanus et Alexis imperator, cum tota orientali ecclesia et cum toto imperio, Romano pontifici deinceps obtemperare promiserunt,[1] et Romanæ ecclesiæ sese esse filios recognoscent, præstita juramenti cautione, et quod a domino papa suæ dignitatis pallium patriarcha præfatæ civitatis sit recepturus. Hujus exercitus duces fuerunt comes Flandrensis Baldewinus, comes Lodouicus Blesensis, marchio de Monteferrato, dux Venetiæ, comes Sancti-Pauli, Matthæus de Monte Morenti, marescallus Campaniæ, Conus de Betunia, M. de Braban, Johannes Fussien, Johannes de Friase, Petrus de Brachol, Anselmus de Kaeu, episcopus de Alvestot, episcopus de Trohies, Johannes Faicete, et plures alii.

Arturus a Falesia usque Rothomagum perducitur, et in turri Rothomagensi retruditur, sub custodia Roberti de Veteri-ponte.[2] Rex autem Galliæ Philippus cum Britonibus instanter regi Angliæ mandaverunt quatinus traderet eis Arturum nepotem suum, acceptis pro eo obsidibus, mandatis minas feroces adjicientes. Quo abnuente, iterum rex Philippus invadit castella Normanniæ, atque inter alia cepit insulam de Andeli cum castello, et Vallem de Ruil, in quo positi fuerant plures nobiles ad custodiendum, scilicet Robertus filius Walteri cum militibus suis, et Seherus de Quinci cum suis, et cum multo apparatu bellicorum instrumentorum. Qui, præclaræ militiæ suæ solitam probitatem dissimulantes, eo quod de subventione regis sui diffidebant, sine aliqua defensionis congressione, quasi in- f. 100.

[1] *obtemperare promiserunt*] In C. these words are partly altered by erasure, and partly written above the line.

[2] *de Veteri-ponte*] Apparently upon an erasure in C.

ertes, se regi Francorum cum castello tradiderunt: quos ille gravi exactione pecuniæ redemit, scilicet, quinque millibus marcis sterlingorum. Ex qua re facti sunt in derisum et in opprobrium omni populo utriusque regni, canticum eorum tota die, ac generositatis suæ maculaverunt gloriam. Postea autem cepit rex Philippus rupem illam quæ videbatur esse inexpugnabilis,[1] juxta insulam Andeli super Sequanam; quæ castella rex Ricardus cum maximis sumptibus construxerat, contra voluntatem Rothomagensis archiepiscopi, eo quod illa terra ad jus suum spectabat. In Rupe erat constabularius Cestriæ, cum multis præclaris militibus et servientibus, qui diutius castrum illud strenue observaverant contra totius exercitus regis Franciæ virtutem; sed, victualium inedita urgente, ulterius contra hostes decertare non poterant. Rege vero Johanne nullum præsidium ferre obsessis volente, eo quod suorum proditionem semper timeret, infra hyemem, mense Decembri, in Angliam transfretavit,[2] omnes Normannos in magna timoris perturbatione derelinquens; qui terram Anglicanam multis pecuniarum exactionibus valde oppressit, sperans se copiosum exercitum ex diversis provinciis congregaturum, et violentiam regis Philippi exterminaturum.

Anno MCCIV., obiit regina Alienor, filia comitis Pictavensis, quæ primo nupserat regi Lodovico, deinde regi Anglorum Henrico secundo.

f. 100 *b*. Hoc anno, post mediam Quadragesimam,[3] rex Johannes, concilio habito, nuncios direxit ad regem Galliæ, Cantuariensem scilicet archiepiscopum, Norwicensem episcopum atque Elyensem, necnon et comitem Willelmum Marescallum, cum comite Leircestriæ, ut explorarent animum regis, ac de aliqua pacis formula cum eo

---

[1] *inexpugnabilis*] In the margin of C., but by the first hand.

[2] *transfretavit*] The king was at Barfleur on Friday, 5 Dec., and had reached Portsmouth, on Sunday, 7 Dec.

[3] *mediam Quadragesimam*] Midlent Sunday fell on April 4, in 1204.

tractarent. Sed rex Philippus nimis efferatus, quia omnia ei pro voto succedebant, nequaquam aliquam pacis concordiam componere volebat, nisi Arturus ei vivus traderetur. Quod si ille de medio jam sublatus esset, sororem ejus in matrimonium expetebat, cum tota terra transmarina. Cumque diversis modis de formula pacis tractaretur, rex Philippus pacem nolens, qui in brevi totam terram regis se adepturum confidebat, semper aliquod inconveniens, aut aliquod impossibile, in forma pacis componenda proponebat, quod et pudorem et principatus[1] minorationem regi Anglorum incuteret, et regiæ majestati derogaret. Sæviebat autem permaxime pro nece Arturi, quem in Sequana submersum fuisse audierat; unde et jurasse fertur quod nullo tempore totius vitæ suæ ab infestatione regis Johannis desisteret, donec eum toto regno suo privasset. Mox autem, Pascha[2] subsequenti, coadunato exercitu, rex Galliæ obsedit Falesiam et in brevi cepit, nullo ei resistente; deinde, Cadomis veniens, a Cadomensibus pacifice statim receptus est, cum neminem haberent qui eos defendere valeret. Post hæc cepit totam illam provinciam usque Barbefleot, et Chereburch, et Danfrunt.

Cives autem Rothomagenses et de Vernuil, necnon et illi qui castellum de Archas custodiebant, inducias quadraginta dierum, data pecunia, a rege Franciæ expetebant, ut interim voluntatem domini sui regis Angliæ per internuncios addiscerent; quod si dominus suus eis subventionis auxilium præbere nollet, aut non va- f. 101.
leret, sine pugnæ conflictu se dominio regis Franciæ ultro traderent. Legatos itaque suos in Angliam confestim miserunt cum flebili satis querimonia, qui statum miserabilis Normanniæ regi intimarent, et ab eo aliquod ereptionis præsidium exposcerent. Sed rege Johanne nullum præsidium eis ferente, eo quod quorumdam

[1] *principatus*] In C. the original reading was "principatus sui," but the latter word has been struck through.

[2] *Pascha*] April 25.

suorum proditionem suspectam haberet, legati satis dolentes et anxii reversi sunt ad propria ; sicque egregia civitas Rothomagensis, hactenus invicta, atque cives de Vernuil, tradiderunt se regi Philippo, deinde et illi qui in Archas erant constituti. Sicque cervicosa Normannia et Andegavia, totaque Britannia atque Cinomannis, cum Turonensi provincia, dominio regis Philippi infra breve tempus subacta fuere. Itaque hoc anno, juxta prophetiam Merlini, "Gladius a sceptro "separatus est," id est, ducatus Normanniæ a regno Angliæ. Siquidem a duce Willelmo, qui sibi regnum Anglorum subjugaverat, semper reges Anglorum exstiterant duces Normannorum usque ad regem Johannem, qui anno quinto regni sui ducatum amisit cum multis aliis terris[1] transmarinis, qui ducatum simul et regnum tenuerant per centum et triginta-novem annos.

Inter Pictavenses vero et Aquitanicos magnus conflictus per totum illud tempus exstiterat, cum una pars eorum exsequeretur præcepta regis Angliæ cum Roberto de Turnham, cui regio illa fuit commissa, qui in omni decertatione contra rebelles fortunatissimus et omni probitate conspicuus exstiterat ; cum Savarino de[2] Malleun, qui datis obsidibus, de custodia regis Angliæ exiens, viriliter ac fideliter contra hostes ejus decertabat. Alia vero pars, cum Willelmo de Roches, et cum Hugone comite, terram regis infestabat. Unde factum est ut rex Philippus, auxilio eorum fretus, totam fere sibi sub-
f. 101 *b*. jugaret Pictaviam, excepta Rochella, quæ se per totum illud anni spatium viriliter contra omnes tuebatur. Castellum similiter de Chinun non se tradidit adversariis per totum illud tempus, Huberto de Burch in eo existente. Castellum quoque de Luches custodiebat Girardus de Atie, qui ferociter contra hostes sæpius decertabat atque castellum illud viriliter tuebatur. Gascones autem partem regis Angliæ adhuc fovebant ;

[1] *terris*] Written in the margin of C., by the first hand.

[2] *de*] Added above the line in C.

unde et rex Johannes dedit Moreue cuidam Gascono xxviii. millia marcarum ad conducendum exercitum xxx. millium hominum, qui regi transfretanti occurrere in auxilium debuerant ad ejus edictum. Hujus pecuniæ obses fuit archiepiscopus Burdegalensis, frater prædicti Moreue, diu in Anglia perhendinans pro hoc infecto negotio.

Rex Johannes construxit quamdam abbatiam in Nova Foresta, quæ vocatur Bellus-locus, et conventum xxx. monachorum fecit adduci de domo Cisterciensi.

Similiter Willelmus de Brause construxit abbatiam in Walliis, quam domui Cisterciensi tradidit.

Rex Bavariæ in Alemannia dedit quemdam locum episcopo Prænestinensi ad abbatiam construendam ordinis Cisterciensis, cum legationis officio in Alemannia fungeretur.

Defuncto Willelmo, Remensi archiepiscopo, successit episcopus Prænestinensis, qui prius exstiterat abbas Cisterciencis.

Episcopus Londoniensis in legationem directus est a rege Johanne in Alemanniam ad regem Othonem, nepotem suum. Idem autem Otho, cum jam per septennium contra ducem Suaviæ multoties dimicasset, multasque provincias sibi subjugasset, tandem in quodam certamine quod habiturus erat contra prædictum ducem, a germano suo, scilicet duce Saxonum, per proditionem derelictus, et militibus undecumque conductis orbatus, fugæ præsidium quærere compulsus est; sicque, auxilio eorum in quos speravit ex insperato destitutus, multa de acquisitis amisit. Siquidem dux Suaviæ promiserat duci Saxoniæ quemdam comitatum, et ducatus Saxonici redintegrationem, qui a tempore illo quo pater suus f. 102.
contra Fredericum imperatorem rebellaverat, nunquam redintegrari cum suis pertinentiis potuit: quare imperator non aliter Henricum ducem Saxoniæ, nepotem suum, superare potuit, nisi prius maximam partem ducatus archiepiscopo Coloniensi et aliis potentibus viris

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES CENTRAL

largiretur, ut sibi in auxilium forent. Archiepiscopus Coloniensis, atque dux Luvanæ, cujus filiam parvulam rex Otho affidaverat, se ab auxilio Othonis subtraxerunt, et cum duce Suaviæ pacificati sunt. Unde factum est ut, eorum fretus auxilio, apud Aquisgrani dux Suaviæ ab archiepiscopo præfato coronaretur, pro qua coronatione postea a papa Innocentio suspensus est ab officio suo.

Dux Luvanæ hominium fecit Philippo regi Galliæ, et concordatus est cum comite Boloniæ; qui comes reddidit ei, ex præcepto regis, annuum redditum suum ex comitatu Boloniæ, quem diutius retinuerat, scilicet quingentas libras Parisiacensium; insuper et adjecit centum libras. Rex vero pro homagio suo contulit ei redditum cccc. librarum. Prædictæ vero quingentæ libræ ex hæreditate uxoris suæ, et jure ei[1] competebant, quæ exstiterat filia Matthæi comitis Boloniæ. Reginaldus vero comes Boloniæ aliam filiam duxerat cum comitatu prædicto. Mater autem istarum fuit filia regis Stephani et reginæ Mathildis. Pacificati igitur ad invicem dux et comes, simulque in amicitia sub jurejurando confœderati, in præsentia regis Philippi juramento se constrinxerunt quod uterque eorum ad alterius summonitionem, in manu valida et cum omni fortitudine sua in Angliam venirent, regemque Johannem expugnarent pro honoribus ablatis atque amplis possessionibus detentis, quæ eis ex jure uxorum suarum in Anglia provenire debuerant. Post quorum juramentum juravit rex Philippus quod infra mensem eos cum exercitu suo subsequeretur, postquam ad[2] fines Angliæ applicuissent. Ex his atque hujusmodi rumori-
f. 102 *b.* bus omnis Anglicana provincia perturbata est, verentes plurimarum gentium cum rege Philippo confœderationem, quæ ditioni ejus se subdiderant et maximos redditus in Anglia perdiderant; timentes etiam principum

[1] *ei*] Written above the line in C. | [2] *ad*] Above the line in C.

suorum cum dissensione perditionem, qui similiter feodos suos in partibus transmarinis amiserant.

De comite Flandrensi imperatore facto.

Alexis, filius Kirisaci imperatoris, a Latinorum exercitu, quem sibi in auxilium Constantinopolim adduxerat, imperator effectus, proditione cujusdam Morkulfi, consanguinei sui, qui ad imperium diu aspiraverat, interemptus est. Græci vero alium quemdam Nicolaum pro Alexi eligentes, mox ab eis interemptus est, persuasione prædicti proditoris, qui asserebat eum cum Latinis qui advenerant esse in amicitia confœderatum. Post hoc Morkulfus imperator a Græcis effectus, statim Latinis victualia et venalia civitatis interdixit, et in quantum potuit eos, in tentoriis et in navibus sub aspera degentes hyeme extra Constantinopolim, per Græcos infestavit. Denique cum Henrico fratre Baldewini comitis Flandrensis, qui ad civitatem Philippicam cum sociis perrexerat pro victualibus conquirendis, dimicavit : ubi a Latinis fugatus, etiam imperialia ibidem amisit, scilicet, scutum aureum et iconiam beatæ Mariæ auream, quæ communi consilio postmodum capitulo Cisterciensi directa est. Græcorum igitur fraudulentam malitiam Latini attendentes, civitatem iterum expugnaverunt, atque eam infra breve tempus obtinuerunt cum palatiis suis. Urbs vero Constantinopolis quasi triangula esse videtur, habens in latitudine sex millaria, ut dicunt ; circuitus autem civitatis est quasi xviii. milliariorum, scilicet, ab angulo in angulum sex milliaria continens. Altitudo murorum est quinquaginta pedum ; turres autem in circuitu super muros distant ab invicem spatio vicenorum pedum. Est in ea quoddam præclarum palatium imperiale quod dicitur Blakerna, et palatium Constantini, et palatium Boamundi. Infra hanc urbem continetur illa incomparabilis ecclesia, scilicet Agyos Sophyæ, quam Justinianus ædificavit: f. 103.

de cujus constructionis amplitudine et divitiarum nobilitate tam mira et incredibilia narrari solent. Hanc ecclesiam prædictus imperator amplis redditibus ditaverat, statuens in ea nongentos quinquaginta canonicos. Asserunt pro certo, qui hujus civitatis habitacula noverunt, quod plures habeat habitatores quam habitent ab Eboracensi civitate usque ad Tamisiæ fluvium.

Adepta igitur civitate, communi consilio factus est imperator Baldewinus, comes Flandrensis, fugiente Morkulfo;[1] qui statim tertiam partem imperialis thesauri inter principes et exercitum Latinorum magnifice distribuit, quæ tertia pars continebat xviii. centena millia marcarum argenti. Quæ infinita pecunia apud nos, sicut et cætera quæ de Græcorum divitiis et constructione prædictæ civitatis et Agyæ Sophyæ narrantur, incredibilia esse videntur. Denique dicunt redeuntes, quod quotidianus redditus imperatoris continet xxx. millia perpres; Perpre vero est nummus aureus, et valet tres solidos argenti. Dignitates autem et honores, et multa præclara xenia, principibus et aliis qui erant cum eo magnifice largitus est. Regi Philippo, quondam domino suo, transmisit quamdam carbunculam, lapidem pretiosissimum, qui rutilanti fulgore totum palatium potest illustrare, et duo indumenta regalia auro et lapidibus pretiosis mirabiliter intexta.

In Constantinopoli quædam columna antiquitus a quodam divino, arte mechanica, ut ferunt, erecta est, cujus basis semper est in motu; super capitellum vero columnæ tres imagines imperatorum locatæ sunt, una quarum respicit versus Asiam, alia ad Europam, tertia ad Africam. Super capita imaginum circulus apparet, in quo Græcis literis exaratum videtur, quod, postquam tres imperatores Alexis vocati in Græcia imperaverint, regnum Græcorum finem sortietur, atque ad alienigenam gentem imperium transferetur. Unde et super

[1] *fugiente Morkulfo*] These two words occur in the margin of C.

circulum illum stat quarta imago, scilicet, super capita cæterarum, cæteris imaginibus eminentior atque sublimior, quæ respicere videtur versus occidentalem orbis f. 103 b. plagam, manumque protendit ad occidentem. Si quis autem plenius nosse desiderat qualiter urbs Constantinopolis semel et iterum ab exercitu Latinorum Hierusalem tendentium capta sit, et quomodo comes Flandrensis imperator sit effectus, et de adeptione reliquarum civitatum, et de dissensione quæ suborta est inter prædictum imperatorem et marchionem de Monteferrato, legat epistolas quas idem imperator et H. comes de Sancto-Paulo direxerunt ad amicos suos in occiduas mundi partes commanentes.

Obiit comitissa Flandrensis apud Achon, ex qua comes Baldewinus, postea imperator, unicam habuit filiam, quæ nata est eodem anno quo pater ejus iter Hierosolymitanum arripuerat. Hæc comitissa exstitit filia Henrici comitis Trecensis, soror illius Henrici, qui corruit de solario apud Achon, cui rex Ricardus concesserat regnum Hierosolymitanum post interfectionem marchionis.

Obiit Godefridus Wintoniensis episcopus, filius Ricardi de Luci.

Anno MCCV., facta est hyems aspera, et congelata sunt flumina, ita ut Tamisia pede transiri posset. Terra vero ita gelu constricta est, ut a Circumcisione Domini usque ad Annunciationem Dominicam exarari non potuit. Hyemalia vero semina in terris mobilibus ex vi algoris fere extincta sunt; olera etiam virentia citius exaruerunt. Unde et maxima fames suborta est, in tantum ut summa frumenti pro marca in plerisque locis Angliæ venundaretur, quæ multoties, temporibus Henrici regis secundi, xii. denariis emebatur. Summa fabarum vel pisarum pro dimidia marca dabatur; summa avenæ pro xl. denariis, quæ quatuor denariis quondam comparari solebat. Moneta etiam publica per incisionis diminutionem ita corrupta fuerat, ut necessario renovari hoc anno oportuerit.

Captus est Robertus de Turneham ab exercitu regis Franciæ, qui tam strenue rebelles Pictavos debellaverat. Captus est et Girardus de Atie, et castellum de Luches, quod viriliter diutius custodierat.

f. 104. Rex Johannes animo valde consternatus, quamvis dolorem dissimulare videretur, prò principatu egregiarum provinciarum quem amiserat in transmarinis, circa æstatem cum exercitu valido transfretare disponebat, Pictavensium atque Guasconicorum procerum illectus crebris persuasionibus. Nonnulli etiam Normannorum id ipsum obnixe flatigabant, qui de tyrannide regis Philippi nimium querebantur. Unde rex Johannes, post Pascha, habito concilio apud Norhamtun,[1] cum maximo et nobili exercitu profectus est ad mare apud Porcestriam,[2] copiosa navium multitudine ex diversis portubus ibidem adunata. Cumque naves in portu applicatæ singulis proceribus ex præcepto regis essent distributæ, ac victualium copia atque diverso armorum genere onustæ, diesque instaret quo navigia peterent, ecce domnus H. archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, atque comes Willelmus Marescallus, qui nuper de transmarinis redierat, regem adeunt, transitum omnimodis dissuadent, proponentes plurima incommoda quæ ex ejus transfretatione contingere possent; scilicet, quod nimis periculosum foret se inter tot hostium cuneos subito ingerere, cum nullum in transmarinis tutum haberet receptaculum; quod rex Gallicanus multo copiosiorem posset contra eum producere exercitum, utpote qui totam terram fere invaserat; quod dolositati ac levitati Pictavorum sese committere tutum non esset; qui semper erga principes suos aliquid doli machinari consueverant; quod comes Boloniæ, cum suis complicibus, fines Angliæ citius invaderet, audito quod terra principibus atque præclara militia destituta esset;

---

[1] *Norhamtun*] The king resided at Northampton from May 21 to 25, both inclusive.

[2] *Porcestriam*] He was at Porchester from 31 May to 9 June, both days included.

nimisque fore timendum ne, dum terram amissam repeteret, habitam amitteret, præcipue cum nullum certum regni hæredem post se relinqueret, qui regni gubernacula posset suscipere, si aliquod infortunium in transmarinis partibus propriæ personæ contigisset. Cumque his et hujusmodi allegationibus rex a proposito transfretandi nequaquam flecti posset, illi, genibus ejus advoluti, tenuerunt eum ne discederet ab eis, asserentes f. 104 *b*. pro certo quia, si eorum precibus nollet adquiescere, ipsum violenter detinerent, ne omne regnum ex ipsius discessu confunderetur.

Rex itaque undique angustiatus, hinc pudore a proposito desistendi,[1] illinc precum instantia remanendi, flens et ejulans adjuravit archiepiscopum quatinus ei tale donaret consilium quod utilius et salubrius esset regno et honestius famæ regiæ, necnon et quod principibus transmarinis adventum ejus præstolantibus magis expediret. Concilio itaque habito, decreverunt quosdam ex proceribus Angliæ fore mittendos cum strenuis militibus in auxilium præstolantium regis adventum. Rex tandem, persuadentium instantia devictus, eorum persuasioni invitus assensum præbuit, denuncians principibus atque militibus quatinus ad propria remearent, et pro transfretatione remissa pecuniam his qui transfretaturi erant adnumerarent. At illi, de multis damnis illatis et gravibus expensis quæ ex occasione hujus transfretationis incurrerant nimis ad invicem conquerentes, cum maxima indignatione, et victualium distractatione quæ aggregaverant, reversi sunt, archiepiscopo et cæteris consiliariis domini regis multa mala imprecantes, qui tam detestandum consilium, ut multis videbatur, regi dederant, et præcipue nautæ, qui xiv. millia esse dicebantur, qui de remotis partibus naves suas ad portum illum adduxerant, et tamdiu illorum

[1] *desistendi*] In C. the first syllable of this word is written upon an erasure.

transfretationem cum magna fatigatione et mercium venalium dispendio frustra exspectaverant. Dicunt enim quod nunquam tot naves fuerint applicatæ in aliquo portu maris Anglici ad transfretandum, et quod nunquam copiosior exercitus de strenuis militibus in Anglia adunatus esset, qui omnes promptis animis cum rege transfretare cupiebant. Jam fama adventus eorum in transmarinis Gallicanos milites in Normannia degentes ita perterruerat, ut urbes atque castella quæ
f. 105. mari erant viciniora nonnulli eorum relinquerent, et de fugæ solatio sibi tutamen quærerent.

Rex autem, a mari usque Wincestriam[1] cum magna tristitia profectus, tanta pœnitudine et tanto dolore cordis tactus est, ut in crastino confestim ad mare regrederetur, navesque cum suis intraret; et sic remigans ad Vectam insulam per duos dies[2] in mari velificabat huc illucque, dissuadentibus amicis ne sine exercitu suo, quem remiserat, transfretare præsumeret. Porro illi qui in terra remanserant, æstimabant procul dubio regem transfretaturum: unde et fama continuo per totam terram divulgavit regem transfretasse. Comes autem Saresberiensis, frater regis, cum multis militibus tunc temporis transfretavit et applicuit apud Rokellam. Præcesserat eum paulo ante Galfridus filius regis Johannis ex concubina, cum pluribus militibus. Quam ingens pecunia, quam multa supellex, quam infiniti sumptus in præparatione et conductione navium, in aggregatione victualium et instrumentorum bellicorum expensa sint, non facile sub computationis numero cadunt.

In vigilia Sancti Johannis-Baptistæ,[3] captus est Hubertus de Burgh camerarius, apud Chinun, ab exercitu

[1] *Wincestriam*] He left Porchester on Thursday, 9 June, and reached Winchester on Saturday, 11 June, which he left on the following day, and proceeded to Portsmouth.

[2] *duos dies*] Namely, 14 and 15 of June, on which two days no writs were tested by the king.

[3] *vigilia S. Johannis*] June 23.

regis Franciæ : qui prædictum castellum per annum probissime tutaverat post captam Normanniam et Andegaviam. Cum autem castellum illud, quod semper inexpugnabile visum est, magna ex parte ab obsidentibus Francis fere dirutum esset, transiit in campum cum suis, contra hostes viriliter dimicans, graviterque vulneratus est antequam capi potuisset.

In nocte[1] Sancti Johannis-Baptistæ, audita sunt per totam noctem horrenda tonitrua, et fulgura terrifica, ex nubibus indesinenter prodeuntia, per totam Angliam visa sunt. Quoddam monstrum fulmine percussum in Cantia, juxta Meidenestan, ubi maxime horrendus fragor insonuerat, repertum est, quod caput asininum, ventrem humanum, et cætera portentuosa membra ab f. 105 *b*. uno animalis genere valde dissimilia habere videbatur ; ad quod nigerrimum cadaver, fulmine exustulatum, vix aliquis propter intolerabilem fœtorem propius acceder valebat.

Item, in nocte Sancti-Felicis[2] post festum Sancti Jacobi, tantus fragor horrendorum tonitruorum, et crepitantium fulminum indesinens choruscatio per totam noctem ex nubium collisione per totam Angliam uno eodemque tempore apparuerunt, ut dies Judicii instare crederetur, exanimatis fere hominibus et animalibus præ timore et expectationis horrore qui supervenerat universo regno. Nam plures homines utriusque sexus per diversa loca fulmine percussi interierunt. Animalia quoque similiter percussa sunt, domus eversæ et combustæ, segetes grandinum lapidibus attritæ, qui adeo magni esse ferebantur in quibusdam locis quasi ova anserina, undique aculeati. Arbores quædam radicitus evulsæ, et transpositæ, quædam quasi funes sunt contortæ, nonnullæ per medium conscissæ apparebant. In crastino quoque quædam monstruosa vestigia in plerisque locis visebantur, qualia nusquam visa

[1] *nocte*] June 24.

[2] *nocte S. Felicis*] July 29.

sunt, quæ homines dicebant fuisse vestigia demoniorum, quæ a terrifica percussione bonorum Angelorum huc illucque diffugere exoptabant, secundum illud Hieronimi ex Ethico. In antiquum hostem angeli boni sæviunt diversibus ictibus et jaculis, arcendo vias aerum, nubiumque, tonitruorum et fulminum crepitantium volutiones in persecutionem Angelicam, donec in ictu sagittarum et fulgurum hiatu terræ et voragine abyssi compulsi trucidentur et retrudantur. Tantam enim vim Angelorum manus igneæ habent, ut petræ minutatim scindantur, arborum evulsio desecetur. Si hominum rebellium furor ingruerit, unius angeli ictu innumerabilium millia populorum cæsi corruant. Philosophus hic, plusquam alii alta disputavit.

f. 106. Venerabilis Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus cum frequenti comitatu de Cantuaria egressus, ut die statuta apud Boxeleiam monachos Rofenses cum episcopo suo dissidentes pacificaret, in ipso itinere gemina pernicie febris et anthracis ita graviter vexabatur ut ad quoddam manerium suum, quod Tenham dicitur, diverteret, ibique vitam post quatuor dies, id est, tertio idus Julii[1] terminavit. In suburbio, (scilicet,) sub zona[2] siquidem naturæ, videlicet in antepenultimo spondili dorsi ejus eruperat anthrax, quem eatenus cubiculariis suis erubuerat ostendere, eo quod pudendis ipsis videbatur imminere. De hujusmodi anthracis violenti periculo tale sumitur experimentum. Si æger inter mamillas punctiones sentiat, vel sudorem emittat, mortem sibi imminere cognoscat. Solet tamen istiusmodi anthraci remederi, per mixturam paris quantitatis vitelli ovorum crudi et salis, si super morbum cataplasmetur et frequenter innovetur. Dietetur etiam æger pane tantum et aqua, donec mortificata sit materia. Caveatur autem flebotomia, ne materia trahatur inter vasa. Hanc vero pestem si citius archiepiscopus prodidisset, infal-

[1] *tertio idus Julii*] July 13.

[2] *scilicet, sub zona*] Between the lines in C.

libile remedium, ut physici asserebant, accepisset. Admonitus a magistro Gilleberto del Egle, ut pro timore venenosæ materiei et febrilis incendii, suo reconciliaretur primo per confessionem Creatori, adquievit gratulanti animo sibi consulenti de salute animæ, licet proxima septimana tribus confessus sit peccata sua, scilicet, priori Sancti Gregorii, et Magistro Aaron, confessori Sanctæ Trinitatis, et Magistro Firmino, secretario Beati Thomæ. Confessione igitur cum contriti cordis amaritudine expleta, missaque celebrata, in perceptione eucharistiæ totus dissolutus est in lacrimas, more nivis liquefactæ. Prelo enim compunctionis et igne caritatis perfectæ succensus, liquefacta est cerebri humiditas, de se gignens torrentem lacrimarum. His factis, prove- f. 106 *b*.
nitur ad mensam, et cum parcissimo edulio et haustu aquæ tepidæ deficientem debilitati corporis aliquatenus confortasset naturam, admonitus a supradicto G., ut testamentum conderet, respondit, "Jam septima volvitur "æstas ex quo in plenitudine sanitatis meæ consistens, "annuatim thesauri mei scrutans scrutinia[1] et revol- "vens clinodia, et computationum mearum percurrens "dispendia, ac si statim migraturus essem e sæculo, "testamentum proprii notulas dictavi, litteris commen- "davi, et sigilli mei appensione corroboravi, et singulis "annis innovavi." Tunc ergo convocatis viris venerabilibus testamentum suum prius ab eo conditum, in præsentia eorum recitari præcepit, rogans et obsecrans multum, et obtestans per Deum, ut si quid in testamento suo corrigendum esset, cum nihil in humanis consiliis omnino perfectum esset, legatarii sui juxta æquilibritatem conscientiæ suæ potestatem haberent corrigendi, minuendi, vel supplendi.

Inde feria tertia, scilicet, iiij. Idus Julii,[2] prædictus G. diluculo secretiori mentis oculo intuens ipsum, invitavit ad extremam unctionem. Adquievit libenter,

[1] *scrutinia*] scrinia ?

[2] *quarto idus Julii*] July 12.

petens tamen indutias usque ad adventum venerabilis Rofensis episcopi. Qui veniens circa horam tertiam voluit eum inungere, sed archiepiscopus jam confortatus a quodam medico, scilicet, Henrico le Afaitie, voluit differre usque in crastinum. Proponebat enim quod honestius esset eum inungi ante prandium quam post. Circa vero nonam rapta est materia venenosa ad cerebrum, et aliquandiu passus est alienationem. Sed repercussa est morbi malitia per remedia physicalia, infuso, scilicet, capite illius aceto calefacto, et pedibus aceto simul et sale perfricatis, et rediit ad mentem, devotissime petens inunctionem. Circa horam igitur vespertinam inunctus est, eo ipso cum aliis psalmo-
f. 107. dizante,[1] sedente, et levatis manibus jugiter orante, et astantibus voce elata, hilari et pulcro vultu ter benedictionem dante, et eo per cibum aliquatenus confortato, quietius se habuit usque ad noctis medium, et secum vigilantes plurimum confortans, de testamento suo et aliis negotiis plenius taxabat. Tandem invasit eum pernicies inimica, languoris intensio, et fornace febrium anhelum corpus exurens, miserandi corporis robur continue absumebat edax incendium. Jacebat visceribus anhelis exæstuans, jugibus suspiriis ab alto venientibus crebrisque singultibus corpus excussum, migraturam de domo corporis animam promittebat; et cum jam vitæ honestæ percurrisset stadium, et sanitatis ultimam emersus esse lineam, rimam parietis humani morbi subintravit vulpecula, et ad modum tineæ tunicam suæ mortalitatis incepit demoliri, et sua fluctibus morbi agitabatur navicula, syntomatum sævientium catervatim incumbunt agmina. Non amici, non pigmenta medicinæ provisa succurrunt. Languor etenim iste non aliquo remedio, sed sola morte finiendus fuit. Vicit tandem succum corporis ægritudo, et cami-

[1] *psalmodizante*] Here, at the beginning of a new leaf, there is a marked difference in the colour of the ink, and a new scribe has been employed.

nus febrium extremo divortio de sede corporis animam compulit emigrare.

Hæc autem de obitu venerabilis viri hic diligenter apposuimus propter quosdam qui asserebant archipræsulem intestatum decessisse, et ejus famam, qui tam in militia transmarina, quam in regimine sanctæ sedis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ floruerat, machinabantur denigrare. Sed absit, absit procul hoc, et in orbe remoto abscondat fortuna malum, ut qui testamentorum ab aliis conditorum fidelis extitit executor, intestatus decessisset. Certe decuit ut cujus vita probata extitit fine feliciori clauderetur. Sæpius se murum pro domo Domini torrenti malignantium objecit, ut quod extremis f. 107 *b*.
vocibus morituri dictitarunt, inviolabiliter observaretur, et de conniventia regia resistentes, vinculo anathematis innodavit. Quod a coepiscopis confirmatum est, cum dominum Regem Johannem injungeret, et ab eodem approbatum.

Archipræsule ergo in basilica sedis suæ honorifice tumulato, rex Johannes sub omni celeritate Cantuariam advenit,[2] atque de rebus archiepiscopi more paterno, prout libuit, disposuit. Præfatus autem archiepiscopus archiepiscopatum super omnes prædecessores suos in redditum variis proventibus, prædiis, ac largis possessionibus multipliciter ampliaverat, sumptuosis ædificiis decoraverat, nihil omittens quod ad honorem et excellentiam, sive ad gloriæ augmentationem, spectare videbatur. Et cum erga omnes adventantes affabilis esset et favorabilis, præcipue tamen viris religiosis se affabilem et benignum exhibuit, eosque gratanter in hospitalitatis gratiam suscipiens, in camera propria undique circa lectum suum cubare fecit, ac multotiens de stramine proprii lecti, quibus forte stramenta deerant, dispertiens, imitabile exemplum ac prædicabile omnibus

[1] *advenit*] The archbishop died on 13 July 1205 (see above), and king John arrived at Canterbury on the 15 of the same month. He remained until the 20th.

pastoribus præbuit, ne cubicula eorum sint nimis secreta ac religiosis inaccessibilia. Augent enim secreta furores. Domum quandam canonicorum Præmonstratensium, qui dicitur Derham, devote construxit. Abbatiam etiam ordinis Cisterciensis construere disposuerat, apud Wulfrunnehamtune, quem locum cum redditibus sibi pertinentibus a rege Johanne obtinuerat, et cartis regiis confirmaverat, atque privilegiis sedis apostolicæ roboraverat, atque prædictum locum abbati de Boxleia resignaverat, ut abbatia ibidem cum ejus consilio et auxilio construeretur. Sed inopinatæ mortis articulo ejus laudabilem sollicitudinem interrumpente, eo vivente effectui mancipari non potuit, quod religiosa liberalitate inchoaverat. Fuerant in eodem loco canonici sæculares ab olim constituti, qui nimiis sæcularibus
f. 108. actionibus incubantes, nullum gratum Deo obsequium præbuerunt. Si quæ[1] ergo tormentorum genera archiepiscopus post mortem perpessus est, ut quorundam visiones vel potius somnia protestantur, hoc præcipue videtur esse in causa, absque eo quod intrinsecus latet, quod ita inexplebili aviditate terras, redditus, pecuniam, honores usque ad terminum vitæ ambiebat, quæ immensis expensis suis sufficere valerent. Nullus enim antecessorum suorum, nullus principum, nec etiam aliquis regum ei contemporaneus, in expensis nimiis illi æquiparari valuit; scilicet, in apparatu vario, in mensæ splendidæ affluentia, in clericorum, militum, clientum nobili caterva, in donativis erogandis, in sumptuosis ædificiis ædificandis. Quapropter non sufficiebat ad tanta negotia peragenda archiepiscopatus, sine domini regis cancellaria, quin immo nobilium filios qui decesserant in tutelam ex concessione regis suscipiens, cum paternis possessionibus, eosdem a libera administratione paternæ hæreditatis diutius suspendebat. Pro his igitur et hujusmodi piaculis expiandis, non immerito

[1] *quæ*] qua, C.

acriori justi Judicis sententiæ forte addictus est. Hujus ergo edoctus exemplo, quid, homo, lambis ambitu labella rerum singula, quem plena fallunt oscula, brevi delusum transitu temporis aprici? Quicquid allegaveris rerum, formæ, generis, prudentiæ, laudis et victoriæ, vel indolis, nihil est, si recolis nobilium virorum cineres, qui in præsentis libelli paginis memorantur.

Civitate Parisius obiit Petrus Pictavinus, doctor egregius in theologia, qui diversos tractatus edidit. Obiit Haimericus, frater Guidonis regis, cui terra Hierosolymitana cum Cypro insula commissa fuerat.

Captus est Baldewinus imperator Constantinopolitanus apud Andrianopolim civitatem Thraciæ, a quodam Johanne Blaco, potenti Græco, per insidias, et in carcerem retrusus. Occisus est in illo certamine comes Lodovicus, filius Theobaldi comitis Blesensis, et Stephanus frater Roberti comitis de Percha, et plures alii de exercitu eorum occisi sunt. Henricus autem, frater imperatoris, interim gubernabat imperium, ac viriliter f. 108 *b.* contra hostes decertans bullam auream regibus atque principibus direxit, supplicans quatinus ei in auxilium strenuos quosque transmitterent.

Marchio de Monte ferrato, adeptus quoddam regnum in quo Nicæa civitas sita est ex donatione imperatoris prædicti, transmisit nuncios ad capitulum Cisterciense, quatinus ei transmitterent septem collegia monachorum ad construendas novas abbatias in regno ejus: sed petitioni ejus assensum præbere nondum tutum esse credebant. Dicunt nonnulli quod imperium Græcorum majus sit et latius quam tota Gallia, Hispania, Hibernia, cum tota Anglia.

In septimana Paschæ, feria quinta,[1] captus fuit prædictus imperator, dum ab exercitu suo semotus incaute obequitaret ad prandium cum sexaginta militibus. Filius prædicti Johannis Blaki erat interim cum papa

[1] *feria quinta*] April 14.

Innocentio, coronandus ab eo, ex petitione patris, de regno quod dicitur Blakia.

Frater ducis Venetiæ consecratus est in patriarcham Constantinopoleos a papa Innocentio, cum magna solemnitate; quod multis retroactis temporibus non contigerat.

Obiit domnus Radulfus, abbas secundus de Sancta-Osytha, qui locum illum magnifice in sumptuosis ædificiis, in redditibus et sacræ religionis cultu decoravit.

Johannes Norwicensis episcopus, ad instantiam regis Johannis, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem electus est, cum antea supprior ecclesiæ Christi Cantuariæ a conventu electus fuisset et ad Romam directus. Ex istorum itaque utriusque partis electione magnæ dissensionis altercationisque, infinitarumque expensarum, sumpta est occasio.

Petrus de Roches, clericus regis, a papa Innocentio consecratus est in episcopum Wintoniensem. Obiit Savarinus, Batoniensis episcopus, qui cum eodem Petro Romam perrexerat, et ejus consecrationem tam apud senatores quam apud cardinales multipliciter procuraverat: sed mox in ejus reditu a curia vitam illaudabiliter terminavit; cujus epitaphium ita se habet:

Notus eras mundo, per mundum semper eundo,
Et necis ista dies est tibi prima quies.

Hic etiam sedem episcopalem Bathoniæ, ex concessione regis Ricardi, transtulit apud Glastingheberi.

f. 109. Anno MCCVI.,[1] obiit magister Wilhelmus,[2] episcopus Lincolniæ.

Obiit regina Franciæ, mater regis Philippi, filia comitis Theobaldi, qui fuit frater regis Stephani.

Anno MCCVII., obiit domnus Thomas, abbas quintus de Cogeshal, cui successit domnus Radulfus, monachus

[1] *MCCVI.*] The narrative of the Cotton MS. is apparently defective, or incomplete, at this point; the contents of the leaf which is here inserted being an insertion by a different hand.

[2] *Wilhelmus*] An erasure occurs after this word in C.

ejusdem loci, qui hanc chronicam[1] a captione Sanctæ Crucis usque ad annum undecimum[2] Henrici regis III., filii regis Johannis, descripsit, ac quasdam visiones quas a venerabilibus viris audivit, fideliter annotare ob multorum ædificationem curavit.

Magister Stephanus de Langhetune a domino papa Innocentio in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem consecratur. Conventus Cantuariensis a rege Johanne expellitur, et omnia bona ejusdem ecclesiæ confiscantur.

Henricus primogenitus regis Johannis de regina sua, filia comitis Engolismi, nascitur.

Anno MCVIII., tota Anglia et Wallia sub interdicto generali ponuntur. Pridie Annunciationis[3] Beatæ Mariæ, prædia, redditus, ac mobilia cleri ac religiosorum confiscantur. Rex Anglorum misit Romam, et se satisfacturum per omnia Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ ac domino papæ spopondit; sed minime tenuit.

Anno MCCIX., Ricardus, secundus filius regis, nascitur.

Dux Saxoniæ Henricus, frater Otonis imperatoris, in Angliam venit.

In capite jejunii,[4] summo mane, sole oriente, prodigialis pugna nubium cum sole apparuit, et ultra horam diei primam duravit.

Regina apud Divisas includitur. Rex[5] Johannes domos episcoporum executorum interdicti præcepit subverti, nemora succidi, vivaria destrui. f. 109 *b*.

Otho in imperatorem consecratur ab Innocentio papa.

Anno MCCX., rex Johannes gravissimam imponit mulctam generaliter super omnes domos religiosorum totius Angliæ; sed maxime Cistercienses oppressit, nec ad annuum capitulum Cistercii abbates ire permisit.

---

[1] *hanc chronicam*] Written upon an erasure in C.

[2] *annum undecimum*] In C. the former of these words is written in the margin, the second upon an erasure.

[3] *Pridie Annunciationis*] March 24.

[4] *In capite jejunii*] Feb. 11.

[5] *Rex*] The hand here changes once more in C.

Inexorabilis discordia inter dominum papam et Othonem imperatorem exoritur.

Rex in Hiberniam exercitum duxit; Hugonem de Laci de Hibernia expulit, et omnem Hiberniam in deditionem accepit.

Iterum archiepiscopus Cantuariæ vocatur; sed minime venit, quia sufficientem conductum, ut rex ei spoponderat, non acceperat.

Iterum pugna nubium circa solem mane apparuit.

Willelmus de Brausia de Anglia fugatur; uxor ejus et filii apud Windleshores castrum occiduntur.

Anno MCCXI., Otho imperator et rex Angliæ excommunicantur. Vocantur omnes episcopi et clerici qui in transmarinis agebant, per edictum publicum in vicecomitatibus.

Johannes comes Brenensis apud Tyrum in regem Hierosolymitanum coronatur.

Anno MCCXII., filius regis Scotorum Londoniis miles efficitur.

Rex iterum Cistercienses incusat, quod eorum consensu et auxilio comes Tolosanus destruitur, qui sororem[1] suam Johannam duxerat: ad cujus damni compensationem rex xxii. millia libras exegit.

Frethericus rex Siciliæ in Romanum imperatorem eligitur, Othone reprobato.

Ferrandus nepos comitissæ Flandriæ, natione Portugalensis, filiam imperatoris Baldewini cum tota Flandria suscepit.

Rex a Cisterciensibus quadrigas petiit et accepit.

f. 110. Comes[2] Tolosanus, subactis ab exercitu Domini omnibus civitatibus ejus et castris, in sola Tolosa vix delituit.

Walenses irruptionem versus Angliam faciunt, quicquid possunt ferro et flamma consumunt. Rex contra eos copiosissimum exercitum colligit; sed audito quod

[1] *sororem*] Written in C. upon a blank previously left in the text.

[2] *Comes*] A new and smaller hand begins here in C.

barones Angliæ in se vellent unanimiter insurgere, apud Nothingheham castrum se contutans, totum exercitum in sua redire permittit. Super hoc casu Londoniensibus scripsit; sed baronibus sese apud regem ab infamia proditionis purgantibus, Eustachium de Vesci et Robertum filium Walteri, qui ad hanc sui excusationem non venerant, perpetuo exilio condemnavit.

Rex Gaufridum de Norwico, clericum, apud se de[1] præfatæ conspirationis assentatione delatum, in carcere diutius afflictum, occidit.

Rex chartas ab omni clero Angliæ extorsit, quibus mendaciter testantur quod, quicquid ei rex violenter abstulerat, gratuita ei voluntate contulerant.

Viaticum in extremis agentibus, et id cum vera pœnitentia devote flagitantibus, ab episcopis Londoniensi et Elyensi conceditur; conventualibus etiam ecclesiis semel in hebdomada missam celebrari[2] permittitur.

Fredericus rex Siciliæ in Alemanniam contra Othonem jam reprobum imperatorem per Alpes cum paucis transivit, et ab archiepiscopis et episcopis principibusque Alemanniæ cum solemni tripudio susceptus est. Alemanni in Othonem unanimiter insurgunt.

Anno MCCXIII.,[3] dux Lovaniæ Leodium vastat, et dominus papa eum excommunicat.

Rex Eustachium de Vesci et Robertum filium Walteri, in comitatibus tertio requisitos, cum eorum fautoribus utlaghiari fecit, castra eorum subvertit, prædia occupavit.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis cum coexulibus suis contra nuncios regis Romam petierunt, et a domino papa et cardinalibus debito cum honore suscepti sunt et in agendis suis efficaciter exauditi. Magistrum Pandulfum in causæ suæ advocatum acceperunt, et sic in Franciam redierunt.

---

[1] *de*] Written between the lines in C.

[2] *celebrari*] celebrare, C.

[3] *MCCXIII.*] Here the text of Martene is resumed.

Rex Francorum in Angliam navalem expeditionem præparavit, ut regem Anglorum debellaret, et consensu
f. 110 b. procerum regni totam sibi Angliam subigeret. Pandulfus regi Francorum prohibuit ne Angliam intraret, antequam regem Anglorum de satisfactione convenisset, et de pœnitentia cognovisset.

Rex Franciæ interim totam Flandriam occupavit, quia comes Flandriæ cum eo transfretare in Angliam recusavit.

Rex Angliæ naves regis Franciæ incendit; de satisfaciendo ecclesiæ, et recipiendo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, cum omnibus coexulibus episcopis, clericis et laicis, cautionem juratoriam præstitit, et xii. tam comites quam barones cum eo, et ideo publice absolvi meruit.

Rex Angliæ totum regnum Angliæ et totum regnum Hiberniæ Deo et beatis apostolis Ejus Petro et Paulo, et domino papæ Innocentio ejusque catholicis successoribus, perpetua donatione concessit, et charta sua confirmavit, ut tamquam feodarius tam ipse quam hæredes sui homagium ligium domino papæ et ejus catholicis successoribus, si eos adire potuerint, faciant; et præterea mille marcas sterlingorum, scilicet, Dcc. pro Anglia et ccc. pro Hibernia, salvo beati Petri denario, annuatim ad Pascha et festum Sancti Michaelis domino papæ et ejus catholicis successoribus appendant. Et si rex Johannes, vel aliquis successorum suorum, contra hoc venire attentaverit, nisi rite commonitus resipiscat, cadat a jure regni.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, cum coexulibus suis episcopis, monachis, clericis et laicis, in Angliam venit, et possessionem terrarum suarum cum administratione libera[1] recepit.

Rex Arragonensis, dum imprudenter comiti Tolosano contra catholicos auxiliatur, conserto prœlio, miraculose quidem, sed miserabiliter, cum toto exercitu suo absorbetur.

---

[1] *libera*] Added above the line in C.

Dominus papa archiepiscopos et episcopos, abbates, priores, archidiaconos et decanos totius Christianitatis anno gratiæ MCCXV.,[1] kalendis Novembris, Romam venire præcepit, ubi generale concilium celebrare disponit. Dominus papa per singula regna Christianitatis singulos cardinales et legatos destinat, ut ad succursum Terræ Sanctæ personas, arma, et pecuniam colligant.

Rex Angliæ, parato navigio in Pictaviam, barones Northanhumbrenses invitavit ut secum transfretarent; f. 111. at illi pari animo eademque sententia contradixerunt, asserentes non in hoc ei obnoxios esse secundum munia terrarum suarum, sed et in expeditionibus Anglicanis se nimis exhaustos et vehementer attenuatos. Rex igitur indignatus, collectis militum copiis, ipsos atterere voluit; sed Cantuariensis[2] archiepiscopus, eum rationabiliter arguens, impetum ipsius compescuit.

Petrus de Pontefracto, qui regem ulterius non regnaturum ab olim vaticinabatur, ipso rege mandante, suspensus est.

Nicolaus episcopus Tusculanus, legatus[3] apostolicæ sedis, venit in Angliam, qui, ut pluribus videbatur, nimis favorabilis erat regi in disponendis causis et rebus ecclesiasticis. Northanhumbrenses regi concordantur, mediantibus legato, archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, et aliis episcopis et baronibus; ea conditione, ut liceat eis gaudere atavis libertatibus, sicut rex ante absolutionem suam publico sacramento juraverat.

Omnes fere barones Angliæ confœderantur sibi ad tuendam libertatem ecclesiæ et totius regni.

Præcipiente domino papa, episcopus Norwicensis et plures ecclesiasticæ personæ, qui regi excommunicato communicaverant, et excommunicati vel ab excommunicatis beneficia ecclesiastica susceperant, Romam ire compelluntur.

---

[1] *MCCXV.*] XV., C.

[2] *Cantuariensis*] Cantuariens, C.

[3] *legatus*] Written above the line in C.

Obiit Gaufridus filius Petri, justitiarius Angliæ, et episcopus Wintoniensis ei in officio illo successit, submurmurantibus totius regni proceribus, quod homo alienigena eis præficeretur.

Gilo de Brahusa, filius Willelmi de Brausa, omnem possessionem paternam in custodiam recepit cum nepote suo, donec puer ad ætatem legitimam veniret; et episcopus idem regem absolvit, et quietum clamavit ab omni restitutione ablatorum quæ sibi competebat.

Comes Tolosanus, omnium possessionum extorris præter solam Tolosam, venit in Angliam, et homagium regi fecit, et Tolosam reddidit, et, ut dicebatur, decem millia marcarum reportavit.

f. 111 *b.* Anno MCCXIV., Ferrandus[1] comes Flandriæ venit in Angliam, et occurrit ei rex apud Cantuariam,[2] et recepit ibi rex homagium ejus de tota Flandria, et tam ipsi quam his qui cum eo venerant effudit munificentiam regiam in donariis largifluis auri, argenti et lapidum pretiosorum.

Rex, classe copiosa collecta, circa Purificationem[3] beatæ Mariæ, cum paucis comitibus, sed infinita multitudine militum inferioris fortunæ, vela ventis expandit et ad Rupellam applicuit, ducens secum reginam suam, et Ricardum filium suum, et Alienor sororem Arturi, cum thesauro inæstimabili auri, argenti et lapidum pretiosorum.

Rex comitem Saresberiæ cum multa pecunia in Flandriam ad succursum comitis Flandriæ transmittit.

Tres prædicatores tribus Angliæ partibus attribuuntur ad colligendum arma, pecuniam, naves, et crucesignandum homines ad subventionem Hierosolymitanam.

Nuncii regis, a Roma venientes, talem restitutionis

---

[1] *Ferrandus . . . lapidum pretiosorum*] In C. this passage is written partly upon an erasure, partly on the side margin. It occurs in the text of V.

[2] *Cantuariam*] In 1214, king John spent January 8, 9, and 10 at Canterbury.

[3] *circa Purificationem*] He embarked at Yarmouth on 9th Feb. 1214, and had reached La Rochelle on 15th.

taxationem reportaverunt, ut rex primum quadraginta millia marcarum archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et coepiscopis olim spoliatis persolveret; et deinde, præstito sacramento, per chartam suam ad solvendum annuatim xii. millia marcarum se obligaret, donec tota spoliationis summa compensaretur; datis insuper vadibus, episcopis, comitibus, baronibus, eorumque successoribus, qui pro rege per sacramenta chartasque publicas sponderent. Et sic demum interdictum Angliæ solveretur.

Rex Angliæ totam Aquitaniam, excepta civitate Pictavis et paucis castellis, in deditionem accepit; fratrem comitis Britonum cum xxv. militibus, in obsidione Nannetis civitatis, cepit; cum Gaufrido de Lizinniaco et comite Augensi et comite Marchiæ, qui dicitur Hugo le Brun, necnon Savarico de Malleun, concordiam fecit.

Obiit Gillebertus Rofensis episcopus. Solutum est interdictum totius Angliæ in die Sanctorum Processi et Martiniani [1] Londoniæ.

Commissum [2] est prælium inter regem Francorum et comitem Flandriæ prædictum cum complicibus suis, et cæsa sunt castra Flandrensium a Francis, et capti sunt f. 112. comes Flandriæ, et comes Boloniæ, et comes Salesberiæ, frater regis Angliæ nothus, et maxima multitudo militum gradus inferioris. Actum est autem hoc prælium xiii. kalendas Augusti,[3] die Dominica, juxta Duay.

Obiit domnus Symon, abbas quartus de Tileto,[4] qui, gratia Dei sibi cooperante, quasi de pauperrima grangia pulcherrimam et opulentam instituit abbatiam, in qua zelus religionis cum prudentia seculari contendebat.

Obiit Albericus de Ver, comes Oxoniensis.

Rex autem Angliæ in expeditione sua parum proficie-

---

[1] *die S.S. Processi et Martiniani*] July 2.

[2] *Commissum est . . . parum proficiebat*] This passage in C. is written by a different hand, and with ink of a different colour.

[3] *xiii. kalendas Augusti*] Sunday, 20 July.

[4] *Tileto*] Tilet', C.; Tillet', V.

bat; sed et[1] vicecomes de Tuarz ab eo recessit, et adhæsit regi Franciæ. Rex Franciæ movit expeditionem pervalidam contra regem Angliæ. Treugæ formatæ sunt inter duos reges a proximo Pascha in quinque annos, ex mandato domini papæ, secundum quosdam; secundum alios, interventu sexaginta millium marcarum quas rex Angliæ, verens multitudinem occursantis sibi hostilis exercitus, regi Franciæ numeravit.

Magister Robertus de Curchun,[2] dum insolentius se gereret in Francia, corripitur acriter per literas a domino papa. Sed et domnus Nicholaus, legatus Angliæ, dum innotesceret domino papæ quod insolentiis regiis nimis faveret, et reparandæ libertati ecclesiasticæ minus intenderet, et consanguineos suos in ecclesiasticis beneficiis avare institueret, per literas domini papæ correptus, timens valde tunicæ suæ, Romam reverti festinavit.

Rex a Pictavia in Angliam rediit.[3]

Obiit Johannes de Gray, episcopus Norwicensis, in transmarinis.

Barones Northanhumbriæ, in unam coeuntes sententiam ut regem compellerent ad reformandam ecclesiæ et regni libertatem, et ad abolendas pravas consuetudines quas ad depressionem ecclesiæ et regni, tam pater quam frater regis, cum his abusionibus quas idem rex adjecerat, olim suscitaverant, secundum quod rex anno præterito juraverat, regem super his pluribus diebus et locis ad hoc inter eos præfixis, alloquuntur, orant et adhortantur; insuper et chartam regis Henrici primi proferunt, quæ libertates exprimit quas proceres, olim abolitas, nunc resuscitare contendunt. Sed, rege pertinaciter renuente, discordes ab invicem discedunt.

Obiit piæ memoriæ dominus Willelmus rex Scotiæ, cum regnasset plus quam quinquaginta annis; cui successit in regnum filius ejus Alexander.

---

[1] *sed et*] Here in C. the earlier hand is resumed.

[2] *Curchun*] Curzan, V.

[3] *rediit*] He was at La Rochelle on 2 Oct. 1214, and had reached Dartmouth on the 15th.

Anno MCCXV.,[1] obiit magister Eustachius, Elyensis episcopus. Rex Johannes ad iter Hierosolymitanum cruce signatur. f. 112 *b*.

Barones Angliæ regem suum diffidant et ei homagia sua resignant; occupata Norhantona, quædam castella regis invadunt, prædas ex prædiis ejus viriliter diripiunt. Inde, pactis confœderationibus per internuncios cum civibus Londoniæ, et comite[2] Saresberiæ adveniente Londoni, xvi. kalendas Junii,[3] die Dominica mane, dispositis agminibus ad civitatem accedunt, et civibus ad officium divinum occupatis, sine contradictione irruptionem faciunt. Ingressi vero, regios fautores quos invenerunt, ceperunt et eorum bona diripuerunt; Judæorum domos invaserunt; apothecas et scrinia confregerunt, et exhaustas multo tempore in hac expeditione religiosa crumenas abunde refarcierunt. Inde Robertus filius Walteri, marescallus exercitus Domini et sanctæ ecclesiæ, et Gaufridus de Mandaville, comes Estsexiæ et Glowecestriæ, instaurandis muris civitatis ex lapideis domibus Judæorum quotidie vigilanter intendunt; turrem[4] tamen Londoniæ non acceperunt, paucis licet intus viriliter resistentibus. Cumque per regnum longe lateque percrebuisset quod barones regiam metropolim occupassent, omnes, (exceptis comitibus Warennæ, Arundelli, Cestriæ, Penbroc, Ferrariis, et Saresberiæ, et baronibus Willelmo Briwere aliisque paucis, quorum tamen, tam comitum quam baronum, milites omnes in partem baronum transierant,)—cæteri, inquam omnes, de die in diem catervatim in exercitum Dei transierunt, donec ordinarentur per Angliam quatuor fortissimi exercitus, tantusque terror

[1] *Anno* MCCXV.] This date is nearly erased in C.

[2] *et comite . . . Londini*] An addition in margin of C., but by the same hand. It does not occur in V.

[3] *xvi. kalendas Junii*] Sunday, 17 May.

[4] *turrem . . . resistentibus*] A marginal addition, but by the first hand, in C. It is found in the text of V.

regem obsideret, ut jam extra Windleshoram[1] nusquam progredi auderet.

His ita se habentibus, rex Francorum barones per literas de constantia hortatur et unanimi concordia et virili instantia, promittens eis suppetias quantum, salvis treugis quæ inter ipsum et regem Johannem erant, eis subministrare poterat. Spondet quoque quod neminem de omni potestate sua permittet venire in auxilium regis contra barones. Machinas etiam suas bellicas per Eustachium Monachum eis transmisit, et, si opus haberent, multam copiam thesaurorum suorum eis commodare disposuit, sed et de strenuis bellatoribus suis in succursum baronum libens transfretare dissimularet.[2] Quibus cognitis, et regem timiditas et barones obtinuit animositas.

Die igitur colloquii constituto barones inter Windlesore et Stanes, in prato qui vocatur Runemad, cum multitudine præclarissimæ militiæ et per omnia bene
f. 113. armatæ conveniunt, et in eodem loco fixis tentoriis remanserunt. Sed et rex cum suis seorsum in eodem prato in papillionibus mansit. Intervenientibus itaque archiepiscopo Cantuariensi cum pluribus coepiscopis et baronibus nonnullis, quasi pax inter regem et barones formata est, et tactis sacrosanctis, ab omnibus inviolabiliter tenenda juratur, etiam a rege. Mox igitur forma pacis in charta est comprehensa, ita quod singuli comitatus totius Angliæ singulas unius tenoris haberent chartas regio sigillo communitas. Ibi quoque jura sua baronibus, et aliis de quibus indubitanter constabat quod eis competebant, rex restituit. Præfixo igitur alio die ad jura restituenda de quibus controversia fuit, barones reversi sunt Londonias. Inde tiro-

[1] *Windleshoram*] He spent the greater part of June at Windsor, a lengthened visit when compared with his usual wandering habits.

[2] *dissimularet*] In C. the termination of this word is underlined, as if for alteration.

cinia diversis in locis Angliæ barones exercuerunt. Fit generalis juratio a singulis tam militibus quam liberis hominibus per singulos comitatus totius regni, ex præcepto regio in literis patentibus proposito, quod in fide et virtute prædictam chartam tenerent, et tenere nolentes, etiam regem ipsum, totis viribus infestarent.

Rex ad præfixum diem colloquii [1] venire noluit, sed solitas inducias dolose repetivit. Tandem, cum apud Stanes in Cantia diem colloquii accepisset, non venit; immo de die in maritimis,[2] de nocte in mari se contutans, undecumque potuit navigium sibi multiplicavit; alienigenas accersivit; thesaurum, quem secum in navibus collocaverat,[3] in donativa effudit; Angligenas omnes a curia sua fugavit. Sed et maris portus in Cantia et Suthreia [4] et Hamtonascira districtis custodiis obsedit, ne quis, eo nolente, etiam ad concilium Romanum transiret. Inde in [5] archiepiscopum Cantuariensem calumniam evomuit, incusans eum fraudulosæ proditionis, expetens ab eo castellum Roffense, et Turrem Londoniæ, quæ tanquam mediator ac sequester conservanda susceperat, donec in cujus dominium jure cederent judicio discerneretur. Archiepiscopus autem post arctas respondendi inducias regi respondit se non posse resignare ei prædictas munitiones, nisi per judicium. Sed et episcopus Roffensis dominum papam audacter appellavit contra archiepiscopum et regem ne quid fieret de castello Roffensi quod in præjudicium juris archiepiscopalis quod ecclesiæ Cantuariensi in prædicto castro competebat, innovaretur. Asserebat autem sua interesse pro jure Cantuariensis ecclesiæ appellare, utpote

[1] *colloquii*] In C. the original reading was "colloqui."

[2] *maritimis*] After leaving Windsor on Thursday, 25 June, the king spent a few days at Winchester, and then travelled between Marlborough, Devizes, Bradenstoke, Calne, Ludgershall, Clarendon, and Corfe. On Wednesday, 15 July, he left Clarendon, and reached Abingdon.

[3] *collocaverat*] Originally "collo- "cavit" in C. The correct reading occurs in V.

[4] *Suthreia*] Sudreia, V.

[5] *in*] Above the line in C., in the text of V.

capellanum archiepiscopi. Inde, post modicum tempus,
f. 113 *b.* Robertus filius Walteri, verens ne regis instantia compelleret archiepiscopum ad deditionem castri Roffensis, assensu Reginaldi de Cornhulla, qui castellum illud custodiebat, ipsum clam ingreditur cum plurima manu militari, et ibidem per aliquot dies manebat, rege circa Cantuariam et Doveram inequitante.[1]

Interim rex[2] misso Hugone de Bova, quondam exule regis Franciæ, cum literis domini papæ, (vel fictis vel veris incertum,) prædicari fecit in Braibantia et adjacentibus provinciis, quatinus omnes armis bellicis instructi in remissionem peccaminum in Angliam venirent, et eam sine omni delectu ordinis, dignitatis, sexus et ætatis, exterminio darent, eo quod, secundum falsidicam illam stropham, omnes a fide catholica defecissent.

Interea Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, rege invito et ei minas intentante, transfretavit; sed Wintoniensis episcopus, et Pandulfus Norwicensis electus, cum abbate Redingiæ, jam per literas domini papæ (vel veras vel fictas, vel per falsi suggestionem impetratas) præmuniti ad excommunicandum omnes regis infestatores, ipsum archiepiscopum ab officio suspenderunt, acclamantes in mari jam velificanti, eo quod sententiam excommunicationis in quosdam sibi nominatos, qui regem infestabant, denunciare noluisset, et quia sic ad concilium transiret: quorum tamen sententiam, licet iniquam, ob reverentiam domini papæ non contempsit, sed humiliter ac devote tenuit.

Igitur dum præparatis omnibus copiis, alienigenæ in Angliam vela darent, suscitavit[3] Dominus tempestates et turbines præter solitum horrendas, et multitudinem

[1] *inequitante*] John, after passing a few days at Sandwich, arrived at Dover on Tuesday, 1 Aug. 1215, and spent the whole of that month and the beginning of September in that town and at Canterbury.

[2] *rex*] Above the line in **V.**

[3] *præparatis . . . suscitavit*] Om. **V.**, apparently by the accidental passing over of a line. .

copiosam navium contrivit in corde maris, cum prædicto H., duce ipsarum, qui cum navi regis propria et milite copioso, ac thesauro plurimo, submersus est quasi plumbum in aquis vehementibus. Evaserunt tamen nonnullæ naufragium, quarum plures ab Anglis interceptæ luctuosum subierunt ergastulum. Rex igitur hanc jacturum graviter dolens, collectis plurimis copiis, Roffecestriam[1] ex parte fluminis intercurrentis adiit, cupiens[2] pontem incendere, ne quod subsidium Roffensibus ea parte a Londonia posset accedere. Sed Robertus filius W., cum sexaginta militibus et servientibus ac balistariis strenuis, pontem defendit, et accensum extinxit, regemque, inanem consilii sui, aufugere compulit, pluribus ex parte regis submersis, vel vulneratis, aut occisis. Capti sunt ibi ex militibus baronum Oliverius de Argentan, et David Giffard, qui,[3] dum nimis supra vires niterentur milites regis capere, ipsi, dum a[4] sociis alias occupatis succursum non haberent, victores a victis violenter abducti sunt. Hujus captionis occasione, cum rex prædictum Oliverium strenuum crudeliter fame necare proposuisset, frater ejusdem O. primogenitus, qui fuit in causa baronum alleganda acerrimus, compassione fraterna permotus, cum ad ejus f. 114.
redemptionem multam regi pecuniam obtulisset, nec exaudiri potuisset, tandem post triduanam fratris famem, de licentia baronum, in partes regis corpore, non mente, se transtulit, et, datis de perseverantia obsidibus, fratrem tanto discrimini exemit.

Rex iterum refectis copiis armatorum, v. idus Octobris,[5] die Dominica, Roffensem civitatem improvisus occupavit et ingressus castellum obsedit, machinis multimodis obsessos infestans. Erant autem in castello

[1] *Roffecestriam*] He reached Rochester on Tuesday, 13 October, 1215, and continued in that city until Sunday, 6 December.

[2] *cupiens*] A change in the colour of the ink is here perceptible in C.

[3] *qui*] Added to the text of C. to complete the sense. Om. V.

[4] *a*] An addition to C. Om. V.

[5] *v. idus Octobris*] Sunday, 11 Oct. 1215.

præcipui Willelmus de Albegni, et Reginaldus de Cornhulle, Willelmus de Amesforde, et alii plures nobiles cum plus quam centum militibus et servientibus, ac balistariis strenuis quamplurimis, tractaque est obsidio fere per duos menses. In qua obsidione rex expendit in stipendariis plus quam lx. millia marcarum, totamque Cantiam crudeliter populatus est, ipsamque sedem episcopalem Roffensem, ecclesiam et claustra ac officinas monachorum, etiam juxta sanctum altare et thecas sanctorum Paulini Eboracensis archiepiscopi primi, et beati Ythamar Roffensis quondam antistitis, stabiliverunt equos suos, et commessationes et ebrietates, necnon cubilia et impudicitias, nullo respectu habito loci sancti et sanctorum, inibi exercuerunt. Qui vero intra castellum erant, industrie satis et disciplinatissime se defenderunt, infinitos forinsecus occidentes. Tandem vero muribus conquassatis et suffossis, cum jam victualia defecissent obsessis, manus regi dederunt, se et sua regiæ misericordiæ committentes.

Dum hæc obsidio traheretur, applicuerunt apud Erwelle, et in vicinis portubus, ferme septem millia armatorum quos Ludovicus filius Philippi regis Francorum, quem barones Angliæ in regem sibi elegerant, abjudicato et abjurato rege Johanne cum omnibus suis, in succursum baronum transmiserat, internuncio Sahero de Quinci, comite Wintoniensi. Rex quoque Johannes, fraudulosam pro more suo stropham commentatus, literas jam direxerat Philippo regi Franciæ, sub nomine omnium baronum Angliæ sibi adversantium, quas, et transformatis singulorum sigillis, falso sigillari fecit, cum multa gratiarum actione flagitantium non oportere dominum Lodovicum filium ejus in Angliam vexari, eo quod inter se et dominum suum regem Angliæ pacifice convenisset super omnibus quæ a se mutuo petebant; se quoque plenarie satisfacturos domino L. super impensis quas fecerat ad eorum succursum. Hujusmodi literis relectis in audientia regis Franciæ, comitem Wintoniensem, tunc sibi præsentem, minaciter prodi-

tionis accusavit. At comes, dolum præsentiens, caput suum in obsidatum regi obtulit, quod literæ illæ mendosæ erant. Similis formæ literas destinavit rex J[ohannes] ex parte R. filii Walteri et aliorum baronum Angliæ, ad barones Northanhumbrenses, quibus eorum adventum ad Londoniam retardavit. Rex quoque Francorum obsides petiit a baronibus Angliæ pro indubitata securitate, et transfretantibus G. de Mandaville et H. de Buhun comitibus Glowecestriæ et Herevordiæ, ipsos obsides accepit.[1] f. 114 *b.*

Anno MCCXVI., Rex Johannes, capto castello Rofecensi, exercitum suum divisit, cujus medietatem sub manu Savarici de Malo-leone, Pictavini, et Falconis Normanni, et comitis Saresberiæ, fratris sui nothi, et Girardi de Sotengaine, Flandrensis, et Walteri cognomine Buc de Braibantia, commendavit. Ipse vero cum residuo exercitu contra Norenses pertendit. At Savaricus prædictus et socii ejus, ipsa nocte Dominicæ Nativitatis, castellum de Plesseto, quod est Gaufridi de Mandaville, obsederunt; plures quoque militum et servientium eorum patriam circumquaque vastare intenderunt, adeo ut ipsa die Dominicæ Nativitatis ecclesiam et officinas abbatiæ de Tilleto violenter, dum solemnis missa post tertiam celebraretur, intrarent, et omnem eorum supellectilem everterent, et apothecas plures confrigentes, plurima institorum deposita rapiebant et asportabant. In die quoque Circumcisionis Domini, apud Cogeshale, dum hora tertia diceretur, in ecclesia violenter ingressi, xxii. equos, qui erant episcopi Londoniensis et thesaurarii fratris et aliorum, abduxerunt. Deinde ad Sanctum-Edmundum convolantes, inde insulam Elyensem obsidione cinxerunt propter plurimos milites et nobiles feminas, qui illuc loci munimine confisi a Sancto-Edmundo ante facies

[1] *accepit*] In the margin of C. occur these words, written by the first hand, but without any indication as to their place in the text, "... de Brause ... fordensis post- "quam ... a baronibus ... it regi."

prædonum confugerant. Tandem vero insulam ingressi, gravem fecerunt exterminationem in ea, sicut ubique quocumque devenerant, nec ætati parcentes, nec sexui, nec conditioni, nec religioni; ecclesias quoque confregerunt, et quæ in eis deposita fuerant abstulerunt; homines etiam, ut[1] pecunias eorum emungerent, horrendis pœnarum cruciatibus adegerunt; maxime satellites prædicti Buc.

Sabbato[2] proximo post Epiphaniam, redierunt Londonias a transmarinis comes Wintoniensis et cæteri comites, ducentes secum xli. naves militibus et servientibus onustas. Die Veneris[3] ante Purificationem Beatæ Mariæ, Savaricus supradictus, cum sociis suis, obsederunt castellum Colecestriæ; sed, audito quod barones Londoniæ festinarent ad succursum castelli, die Mercurii[4]
f. 115. post Purificationem Beatæ Mariæ, versus Sanctum-Edmundum recesserunt.

Nocte[5] præcedente diem Dominicam quæ evenit pridie kalendas Februarii, paulum ante crepusculum matutinum, visæ sunt a pluribus duæ stellarum cohortes ab oriente et occidente sibi occurrentes in portentuosam concertationem sibi commisceri; una grandi stella sese in medio earum immobilem continente. Cumque diutius hæc pugna moraretur, tandem orientalibus stellis in sua cedentibus, certamen finitum est.

Rex[6] itaque cum exercitu suo usque ad mare Scotticum[7] pertransivit, terras baronum depopulando, rapinis et incendiis incessanter invigilans; castella quoque eorum, quæ vel per deditionem vel per obsidionem cepit, funditus diruit: barones vero Norenses fugerunt a facie ejus, præter paucos qui se misericordiæ ejus immiseri-

[1] *ut*] Written between the lines in C.

[2] *Sabbato*] January 9, 1216.

[3] *Die Veneris*] January 29.

[4] *die Mercurii*] February 3.

[5] *Nocte*] During the night between January 30 and 31.

[6] *Rex*] A change in the ink here occurs in C.

[7] *mare Scoticum*] King John advanced no further north than Berwick-on-Tweed, where he resided from 14 to 22 January 1216, both days inclusive.

cordi subdiderunt. Tantam autem moram fecit rex in expeditione illa, et tam longe processit, ut vix quo devenisset sciri posset, adeo ut fallax fama divulgaret quod mortuus esset et apud Redingam clanculo sepultus.

Obiit[1] Gaufridus de Mandaville Londoniis, ex vulnere quod suscepit dum, more Francorum, eques cum hastis vel contis sese cursim equitantes vicissim impeterent, uno die[2] ante caput Quadragesimæ; sepultus est apud prioratum Sanctæ-Trinitatis Londoniæ.

His diebus facta fuit denunciatio excommunicationis quam dominus papa in concilio Lateranensi publice fecit in omnes infestantes Johannem regem Angliæ. Canonici tamen Sancti-Pauli Londoniæ et plures aliæ ecclesiasticæ personæ, sed et barones Londoniis commorantes, contra sententiam appellaverunt; excipientes contra sententiam illam quod lata fuit per falsi suggestionem.

Circa medium Quadragesimæ,[3] rex cum exercitu multo obsedit castellum Colecestriæ,[4] et post paucos dies in deditionem accepit a Francis qui illud custodiebant, ea conditione ut iidem Franci ad suos cum omnibus quæ ad se pertinebant liberi redirent; Angli vero qui inibi reperti fuerant, sub libera redemptione taxati dimitterentur. Hanc conventionem cum comes Saresberiæ sacramento firmasset vice regia inviolabiliter tenendam, rex Francos quidem omnes abire dimisit; Anglos autem sub arcta custodia vinculis mancipavit, nusquam veritus Dei justitiam et fidei violationem. Franci vero illi, Londonias venientes, statim capti sunt, et ab indigenis baronibus instanter accusati quod commilitones suos Anglos nequitia et infidelitate prodidis-

[1] *Obiit . . . Lateranensi*] Written upon an erasure in C.

[2] *uno die*] Namely, on Shrove Tuesday, 22 Feb. 1216.

[3] *medium Quadragesimæ*] Midlent Sunday fell on March 20.

[4] *Colcestriæ*] The king's residence at Colchester extended from March 14 to 25, (both inclusive,) 1216.

sent, dum alia quam se conditione obligassent. Jam de suspendio ipsorum sententialiter interlocutum fuit; sed, ad suggestionem et consilium cujusdam sapientis, sententia cum executione ad præsentiam domini Ludovici suspensa est; ipsi vero interim in vinculis tenebantur.

Rex igitur cum cepisset castellum comitis Roberti
f. 115 *b.* de Ver apud Hidingheham,[1] festinavit stipendiariis suis donativa distribuere, ut instanter Londonias obsideret. Quod cum innotuisset Londoniensibus, aperuerunt omnes portas civitatis, parati ad congressum cum rege, si ad spatium decem leugarum ad civitatem proximaret. Rex autem, cognita illorum animositate et multitudine ac bellandi strenuitate, experiendi periculo se subtraxit.[2] Savaricus tamen de Malo-leone, ex improviso a Londoniensibus bello exceptus, pluribus suorum amissis, graviter ad mortem usque fere attritus et vulneratus est. Norenses quoque, resumptis viribus, Eboracum obsederunt, et eam acriter oppugnantes, tandem acceptis plus quam mille marcis, treugas usque ad octavas Pentecostes[3] civibus concesserunt. Sed et Londonienses lxv. piratas qui Tamensem fluvium obsederunt, innumeris aliis occisis vel submersis, captivos duxerunt. Fiebant tunc per Angliam a regiis complicibus prædationes et incendia, sed et barones de terris adversariorum rapinas agebant.

Rex interim, per certos exploratores præsentiens quod dominus Ludovicus fixe statuisset venire in Angliam, transmisit in Franciam, ad regem Philippum, episcopum Wintoniensem, Willelmum Marescallum seniorem, et quosdam alios; tentans si quo modo per eos induceret eum ut cohiberet filium suum a tali proposito; sed

[1] *Hidingheham*] That is, Hedingham, which the king reached, on his way from Colchester, on Friday, 25 March 1216, and at which he resided until the following Monday.

[2] *subtraxit*] Suddenly turning off at Enfield on Friday, 1 April, the king proceeded to Berkhampstead, where we find him on the following day.

[3] *octavas Pentecostes*] June 5.

inexauditi sunt reversi. Rex igitur, maritima[1] perambulans loca, castra munivit; quinque Portuenses, sacramentis et obsidibus ab eis extortis, sibi obligavit; navium copiosam multitudinem de Ghernemuthe, Lenna Dunewico et cæteris portubus Angliæ, collegit, instruxit, et pugnatorum copiis implevit; statuens navali prælio Francos adventantes excipere. Sed ecce ventus pervalidus et tempestuosus ab aquilone consurgens, classem illam ex maxima parte, tum collisione attrivit, tum subversione demersit, tum in partes australes longius abegit. Plures insuper earum quas, ut Francorum navigia infestarent et incenderent, rex transmiserat, contraria sorte delusus amisit.

Dominus autem Lodowicus, paratis omnibus copiis apud Caleis, Gravelinges et Witsand, flante vento qui euro-aquilo dicitur, (eo quod inter orientem et aquilonem medius cum utroque participat,) navigare cœpit versus Angliam, laboriose tamen, eo quod oblique, non directe, ventus vela distenderet, et applicuit apud Stanore, die Sabbati post Ascensionem Domini, scilicet xiiii. kalendas Junii.[2] Cujus appulsione visa, statim Johannes rex perterritus fugit, flens et lamentans, et omnis exercitus ejus cum eo. Et quidem cum sola navis domini Lodovici, aliis a longe remigantibus, applicuisset. f. 116.
nisi fata regem urgerent, facillime illum cum omnibus suis cepisset, utpote per biduum in mari procelloso valde fatigatos.

Rege sic ignaviter fugiente a facie eorum, Lodovicus cum exercitu suo processit audacter, ac primum civitatem Cantuariam cum castello in deditionem accepit; postea alia castella Cantiæ, præter solam Doveram munitissimam. Inde Londonias veniens, honorifice a proceribus et civibus susceptus est, et in fide-

[1] *maritima*] The king proceeded to Dover, which he reached on Tuesday, 26 April; at which place, and at Sandwich, Folkstone, and Canterbury, he spent several weeks.

[2] *xiii. kalendas Junii*] Ascension Day fell on 19 May, the following Saturday was May 21.

litatem ejus et homagium omnes pariter juraverunt, Deinde, captis quibusdam castellis, properavit occupare regem Johannem, quem audierat apud Wintoniam[1] insigne bellicum draconem erexisse, quasi Lodovicum bello excepturus, si adveniret. Sed Johannes, cognito ejus adventu, draconem suum deposuit et aufugit, inflammata prius urbe per quatuor partes; sed cives ocius et ignem extinxerunt, et adventanti Lodovico cum favore occurrerunt, et tradita sibi civitate, in ejus fidelitatem juraverunt. Ille vero castella civitatis obsedit et ad deditionem compulit. Ibi venerunt ad eum fere omnes comites et barones regni, qui eatenus Johanni adhæserant. Comes quoque Saresberiæ se cum castello Saresberiæ Lodovico contradidit; pauci vero adhuc Johanni pertinaciter adhæserunt.

His itaque peractis, circa festum Beatæ Mariæ Magdalenæ,[2] obsedit castellum Doveræ, et protraxit obsidionem usque ad festum Beati Calixti papæ. Tunc Hubertus de Burgo et Gerardus de Sotengi, qui principes erant in castro, ultra ferre non valentes assultus et machinas Lodovici, treugas ab eo impetraverunt, ut, missis nunciis ad Johannem, vel succursum ab eo peterent, vel castellum suum ei redderent.

Johannes autem, dum prædicta protraheretur obsidio, perambulabat terram, et incendiis ac rapinis quæcumque potuit consumpsit. Comes quoque Nivernensis, qui cum Lodovico venerat, cum exercitu multo Anglorum castellum de Windleshore per duos ferme menses obsedit. Cumque Johannes approximaret cum exercitu, quasi obsidionem dissipaturus, illi paraverunt excipere eum in bello: quo cognito, refugit ab eis, et concite pertendit visitare castella quæ jam treugas acceperant deditionis a baronibus et acceperant, datis obsidibus, in
f. 116 *b.* Norfolchia scilicet et Sudfolchia et Estexia; et dum iter

[1] *Wintoniam*] He arrived at Winchester on Saturday, May 28, and left it on Sunday, 5 June.

[2] *B. M. Magdalenæ . . . , B. Calixti*] July 22, . . . Oct. 14.

ageret ubique incendia et rapinas multiplicavit, nec etiam ecclesiis parcens. Quo cognito, barones qui obsidebant Windleshore, recesserunt omnes simul a castello, incendentes machinas suas, et regem insequi contenderunt: quo ille audito, citius aufugit.

Obiit Innocentius Tertius, xvii. kalendas Augusti,[1] apud Perusium, cui successit Honorius.

Alexander rex Scotorum et barones Norenses venerunt Cantuariam ad dominum Ludovicum.

De morte regis Johannes.

Rex, comperto quod barones cessassent ab ejus insecutione, conversis habenis, reversus est ad Len, et præfecto ibidem Savarico de Malo-leone, Pictavino, cœpit firmare Len.[2] Sed ibidem, ut dicitur, ex nimia voracitate qua semper insatiabilis erat venter ejus, ingurgitatus usque ad crapulam, ex ventris indigerie solutus est in dysenteriam. Postea vero cum paululum cessasset fluxus, phlebotomatus est apud villam in Lindessi, quæ dicitur Lacford.[3] Huc ergo cum venissent nuncii inclusorum castri Doveræ, et intimassent causam adventus sui, morbus ex dolore concepto recruduit.[4] Præterea[5] maximus dolor eum angebat, quod capellam suam cum suis reliquiis, et quosdam summarios suos cum varia supellectili, in itinere illo amiserat apud

[1] *xvii. kalendas Augusti*] July 16.

[2] *Len*] On Sunday, 9 Oct. 1216, the king arrived at King's Lynn from Spalding, and remained until the following Wednesday, when, having passed through Wisbeach, he reached Swineshead. He spent Thursday in the same place, and Friday and Saturday at Sleaford. On Sunday, 16th, we find him at Newark, where he spent the following two days, and there died on S. Luke's day, Oct. 18.

[3] *Lacford*] In the margin of C., the original reading of the text, "Laghtune" (or "Slaghtune") having been struck through with the pen.

[4] *recruduit*] Opposite this word in the margin of C. is written with a style, "*Hactenus.*" Here ends the text of Martene.

[5] *Præterea*] A new hand here commences in C.

Wellestrem, et multi de familia ejus submersi sunt in aquis marinis, et in vivo sabulone ibidem absorpti, quia incaute et præcipitanter se ingesserant, æstu maris nondum recedente. Ægritudo autem ejus per dies paucos invalescens, apud castellum de Neuwerc intestatus decessit, in festo Sancti Lucæ [1] evangelistæ, cujus corpus exenteratum delatum est Wigorniam, ibique in ecclesia sepultum. Familia autem ejus, omnia quæ secum habuerat, diripuerunt, et concito cursu ab eo diffugerunt, nihil cum corpore relinquentes unde cadaver honeste operiri posset; sed castellanus ejusdem, in quantum potuit, de corpore exenterato et nudo procuravit.

Circa vero mediam noctem, hora scilicet qua decessit, tantus fragor venti et turbinis in urbe sola insonuit, quod cives timerent de subversione domorum suarum, sicut domnus Johannes Saviniensis a civibus se audisse nobis narravit: qui, ad urbem in aurora illius noctis progrediens, obviam habuit regis defuncti familiam, qui nihil de ejus morte ei referre voluerunt; qui a constabulario rogatus, circa corpus extenteratum per aliquam f. 117. horam moratus, missam pro anima ejus ibidem celebravit. Multæ autem horribiles et phantasticæ visiones a multis de eo postmodum narratæ sunt, quarum tenorem hic describere supersedimus. Regnavit autem satis laboriose, ut ex præmissis patet, decem ac septem annis ac quinque mensibus, cui successit Henricus filius ejus, decennis puer; et consecratus est in regem apud Gloecestriam, in die apostolorum Simonis et Judæ,[2] præsente G. legato, qui eodem anno in Angliam applicuerat. Qui postmodum magistrum Gervasium, decanum Londoniæ, ac presbyteros ejusdem urbis ac cæteros clericos, beneficiis suis immisericorditer spoliavit, et cæteros qui Lodowico consenserunt et in interdicto celebraverant; atque eorum beneficia ecclesiastica aliis personis pro voluntate distribuit.

---

[1] *S. Lucæ*] Oct. 18. | [2] *Simonis et Judæ*] Oct. 28.

Eodem anno obiit Herebertus, episcopus Saresberiensis, cognomento Pauper.

De captione baronum apud Lincolniam.

Anno gratiæ MCCXVII., Lodowicus transfretavit ab Anglia pro majori succursu; et interim multi nobiles qui ei adhæserant, conversi sunt ad fidelitatem regis per suggestionem legati et episcoporum.

Reversus autem Lodowicus, iterum obsedit Dovere, sed frustra. Nam barones et milites qui ei favebant, cum magno exercitu Lincolniam adeuntes, et in itinere multa rapientes, capti sunt apud Lincolniam in vigilia Sanctæ Trinitatis, quæ tunc temporis evenit xiii. kalendas Junii,[1] et ducti sunt captivi a regalibus qui firmiter Johanni adhæserant, ac graviter redempti. Comes etiam de Pertico ibidem cum pluribus interfectus est. Huic captioni præfuit Guale legatus, cum comitibus et Falcone. Quod infortunium audiens Lodowicus, recessit ab obsidione de Dovere, et venit Londoniam, succursum transmarinum frustra exspectans. Tandem majores Franciæ barones, cum quodam Eustachio quondam monacho, patrato maximo navigio, scilicet lx. navibus, iter aggrediuntur veniendi in Angliam in succursum Lodowici, cum multitudine armatorum. Sed dominus Hubertus de Burch, constabularius Dovere et justitiarius regis, cum multitudine armatorum et navium de Quinque-portubus, processit eis obviam in mari, et interfectus est Eustachius ductor cæterorum, qui primus cum sua navi congressus est, atque omnes capti sunt qui in navi illa fuerunt, partim submersi. Atque ita Dominus percussit capita inimicorum suorum venientium ad dispergendum gentem Anglicanam, et capti sunt plures 117 *b.*
cum cæteris navibus, et captivi adducti; et reduxit Dominus super quosdam eorum diffugientes aquas maris, et submersi sunt quasi plumbum in aquis vehementibus.

[1] *xiii. kalendas Junii*] May 20, the Saturday before Trinity Sunday.

Et sic Deus Omnipotens, non in multitudine dimicans, hostium contrivit fortitudinem, et dextera sua glorificata est in populo suo.

Auditis[1] igitur talibus, dictus Ludowicus quo se diverteret ignoravit, quia non erat ei locus tutus in diversorio; unde, necessitate compulsus, rogavit ea quæ pacis sunt. Convenientibus tandem in unum dicto domno L. et G. legato, et episcopis et aliis prælatis et majoribus Angliæ, in insula quadam vicina villæ de Kingestune, de pace et concordia tractatum habuerunt; ubi memoratus Lodovicus in præsentia omnium, a pœna excommunicationis absolutus qua tenebatur, regno Angliæ renunciavit, et sic pax ecclesiæ et regni Angliæ facta est et formata in vigilia Exaltationis[1] Sanctæ Crucis; quo facto, Lodovicus cum suis in Franciam redierunt. Legatus etiam postea misit per Angliam abbates et monachos, qui absolverent omnes qui cum Lodovico et suis communicaverant.

Anno ab incarnatione Domini MCCXVIII., ecclesia Sanctæ-Mariæ Vigorniæ dedicata est, et corpus Sancti Wlstani translatum est uno eodem die, videlicet, vii. idus Junii,[3] die Jovis in septimana Pentecostes, præsidente eidem ecclesiæ Silvestro episcopo, ejusdem ecclesiæ priore et monacho. Et paulo post apud Rameseyam obiit memoratus episcopus, cui successit Willelmus de Bleis, archidiaconus de Buckingeham, et consecratus est apud Westmonasterium Dominica in crastino Sanctæ Fidis,[4] virginis.

Domnus G. legatus recessit ab Anglia circa festum Beati Andreæ, et domnus Pandulfus successit ei in legationem, et die Lunæ[5] proxima post festum Sancti Andreæ, venit ipse Londoniam et apud Sanctum-Paulum receptus est.

---

[1] *Auditis*] A change in the style of the writing is here perceptible in C.

[2] *vigilia Exaltationis*] Sept. 13.

[3] *vii. idus Junii*] June 7.

[4] *crastino S. Fidis*] Oct. 7.

[5] *die Lunæ*] Nov. 2.

Eodem anno facta est obsidio Damiatæ civitatis a Christianis; et dominus Henricus rex Angliæ primo proprium sigillum obtinuit per consilium regni sui.

Eodem[1] anno, domnus Radulfus abbas sextus de Coges- f. 118.
hale, cum jam per annos xi. et mensibus duobus administrasset, circa festum Sancti Joannis Baptistæ,[2] contra voluntatem conventus sui, curæ pastorali sponte sua renunciavit, frequenti ægritudine laborans. Cui statim successit, per electionem ejusdem abbatis et conventus, domnus Benedictus de Straford, vir venerabilis et strenuus in agendis, qui eidem abbatiæ de Straforde, olim[3] per annos xix. strenue præfuerat, et magnis eam redditibus et possessionibus, tam in ecclesiasticis quam in terris et mariscis, multiformiter ampliaverat.

Anno ab incarnatione Domini MCCXIX., capta est civitas Damiata a Christianis circa festum Sancti Leonardi.[4]

Obiit Willelmus Marescallus senior, comes de Penbrock, qui maximum habuit dominium tam in Anglia quam in Hibernia; et in crastino Ascensionis[5] sepultus est apud Novum Templum de Londoniis.

Anno ab incarnatione Domini MCCXX., captæ sunt treugæ inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Henricum regem Angliæ, pro pace Pictaviæ, usque in quatuor annos a festo Sancti Petri in cathedra.[6]

Consecratus est in episcopum Elyensem Johannes abbas de Fontibus, apud Westmonasterium, in crastino Sanctarum Perpetuæ et Felicitatis.[7]

Eodem[8] anno, die Pentecosten, videlicet xvi. kalendarum Junii,[9] coronatur Henricus rex Angliæ, filius regis Johannis, apud Westmonasterium, a domno Stephano de Langetune, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, præsentibus

---

[1] *Eodem*] Here again the hand changes in C.

[2] *S. Johannis Baptistæ*] June 24.

[3] *de Stratforde olim*] Added in the margin of C.

[4] *S. Leonardi*] Nov. 6.

[5] *crastino Ascensionis*] May 17.

[6] *S. Petri in cathedra*] Feb. 22.

[7] *SS. Perpetuæ et Felicitatis*] March 8.

[8] *Eodem*] A change in the writing here is perceptible in C.

[9] *xvi. kal. Junii*] May 17, Whitsunday.

domno Pandulfo legato, et episcopis et aliis prælatis et comitibus et majoribus Angliæ ; a quo archiepiscopo prædicatur ibidem crucis signatio, et Sancti Hugonis episcopi canonizatio celebranda, xv. kalendas Decembris.[1]

Eodem anno, incipitur novum opus Westmonasterii, et a rege Henrico jacitur primus lapis fundamenti, in vigilia[2] præfatæ solemnitatis.

Obiit Henricus de Boum, comes Herefordensis, et Saerus de Quenci, comes Wintoniensis, in itinere peregrinationis suæ Hierusalem.

Nonas Julii,[3] scilicet die Martis in crastino octavarum Petri et Pauli, tempore regis Henrici filii regis Johannis, facta est translatio Beati Thomæ martyris, auctoritate domini papæ Honorii III., anno pontificatus
f. 118 *b.* ejusdem quarto, præsente memorato rege Henrico, consensum autem præbente Pandulfo ejusdem domini papæ legato, præsidente ecclesiæ Cantuariensi viro venerabili domino S. de Langetune, archiepiscopo, et huic operi cum archiepiscopis et episcopis, et clero et populo, curam et operam accuratissime procurante, et opus feliciter consummante.

Anno ab incarnatione Domini MCCXXI., Willelmus de Sanctæ-Mariæ ecclesia, episcopus Londoniensis, resignavit baculum cum jurisdictione episcopali, in crastino Conversionis[4] Sancti Pauli.

Circa idem tempus, Willelmus de Fortibus, comes de Albamarla, occupans quædam castra injuste, nec volens ad pacem regis accedere, excitavit hostilitatem in Lincolnesire contra regem ; unde, ipso et singulis fautoribus ejus a legato P., episcopis et clero Angliæ excommunicatis, idem comes irreverenter coactus est ad deditionem, quibusdam ex suis carceribus mancipatis, aliis exilium perpetuum subeuntibus.

Eustachius de Falcobergio, domini regis thesaurarius, assumitur et eligitur in episcopum Londoniensem, v.

[1] *xv. kal. Decembris*] Nov. 17.
[2] *vigilia*] May 16.
[3] *Nonas Julii*] July 7.
[4] *crastino Conversionis*] Jan. 26.

kalendas Martii,[1] et a legato Pandulfo apud Norwicum ejus electio confirmatur.

Anno[2] Dominicæ incarnationis MCCXXI., exercitus Christianorum, post captam Damiatam longo tempore ibidem otio torpentes, de progrediendo versus Babyloniam et Kahere tractabant. Tandem admonitione ducis Bavariæ, qui in loco imperatoris cum multo exercitu et cum literis ejusdem advenerat, cum episcopo Bathanensi et cum aliis magnatibus, qui spoponderunt xl. galeas imperatoris cito in succursum adventuras, iter arripuerunt, postquam per v. septimanas prædictas galeas frustra exspectaverant. Dominus vero legatus præcepit regi Hierosolymitano et regi Cypri, et comiti Tripolitano, et Templariis et Hospitalariis, et aliis magnatibus Syriæ, quatinus ad prædictam expeditionem festinanter se accingerent. Et cum apud Thaneos per fluvium devenissent et ibidem hospitarentur, maxima pars nobilium atque mediocrium reversi sunt Damiatam, infirmitatem prætendentes. Cumque flumen plus solito cresceret, Saraceni quemdam rivulum effoderunt inter exercitum Christianorum et Damiatam, per quem galeas et alia vasa sua in fluvium traduxerunt, ne victualia ad Christianos venirent. Soldanus Babyloniæ cum vii. potentibus regibus et cum infinita multitudine pugnatorum advenit; et cum nusquam pateret aditus progrediendi et regrediendi exercitui Christiano propter aquas in insula ubique diffusas, et omnibus communiter victualia defecissent, pactiones quasdam cum incredulis inviti fecerunt; scilicet ut civitatem Damiatam incredulis redderent cum captivis qui erant in ea, et in Achon et Tyro; et illi redderent eis Sanctam Crucem cum captivis Christianis qui erant in Babylonia et Hierusalem et Damasco, et hinc ad viii. annos treugas observarent; f. 119. et super hoc sacramentum præstaverunt et obsides tam Christiani quam Sarraceni. Soldanus autem famelico

[1] *v. kal. Martii*] Feb. 25.

[2] *A.D.* MCCXXI.] A change in the hand of C. is here visible.

exercitui Christianorum per xv. dies contulit panem et præbendam; et sic reddita civitate, reversi sunt Achon.

Alexander rex Scotorum desponsavit filiam regis Johannis, sororem regis Henrici, apud Eboracum, in Pentecosten.[1]

Rex Henricus cepit Petrum de Maullei, qui diutius retinuerat castellum de Corph post mortem regis Johannis, in quo copiosum invenit thesaurum, et de exeniis patris sui, et sororem Arturii. Cepit etiam Ingelardum, qui similiter retinuerat castellum de Windleshores.

Archiepiscopus de Roma rediit.

Episcopus[2] Wintoniensis frustra electus est in archiepiscopum de Damiata.

Obiit Robertus de Ver, comes Oxoniensis. Obiit et Rogerus de Ver, nepos ejus, filius nothus Alberici comitis, apud Damiatam.

Rumores per totam Christianitatem circumquaque dispersi sunt,[3] quod rex David, cognomento Joannes presbyter, de India cum magno exercitu adveniens, Persidem et Mediam,[4] et multas alias terras et provincias Saracenorum, sibi subjugaverat; et quod mandaverat caliphæ de Baldac, summo papæ Sarracenorum, quod eum debellaturus esset atque totum paganismum, nisi se ad fidem Christi convertissent; atque exercitui Christianorum apud Damiatam et in terra Hierosolymitana celerem subventionis succursum esset præstiturus.

Anno Dominicæ incarnationis MCCXXII.,[5] dominus Stephanus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, tenuit[6] consilium suum apud Oxoniam post Pascha;[7] ubi inter cætera exordinavit quemdam diaconum apostatam, qui pro

[1] *Pentecosten*] May 30.

[2] *Episcopus*] Before this word occurs an erasure in C.

[3] *dispersi sunt*] After these words C. originally read, "ex quorumdam "falsiloquorum commentis," but the clause has been struck through with red ink.

[4] *Persidem et Mediam*] Persidam et Medam, C.

[5] *A.D. MCCXXII.*] Another change in the handwriting occurs in C.

[6] *tenuit*] An erasure occurs before this word in C.

[7] *Pascha*] April 3.

amore cujusdam mulieris Judaicæ se circumciderat: qui exordinatus, a ministris domini Falconis combustus est. Adductus est ibidem quidam juvenis incredulus[1] cum duabus mulieribus in concilio, quos archidiaconus ejusdem provinciæ accusavit crimine pessimo incredulitatis; juvenem scilicet, quod nollet ecclesiam intrare, nec divinis interesse sacramentis, nec patris catholici adquiescere monitis, et quod se crucifigere permiserit, quinque vulnera in corpore adhuc apparentia gestans, Jesumque se vocari a mulieribus illis gaudebat. Accusabatur una mulierum veterana, quod maleficis incantationibus ex longo tempore esset dedita, et quod juvenem prædictum suis magicis artibus ad tantam dementiam ac talem convertisset. Unde ambo, de tali crimine convicti, jussi sunt inter duos muros incarcerari quousque deficerent. Alia vero mulier, soror prædicti juvenis, libera dimissa est, quia impietatem illorum revelavit.[2] f. 119 *b*.

Eodem anno, quidam Judæus nigromanticus puerum quemdam pretio conduxit, quem in cute recenti cujusdam mortui collocavit, ut sic, per quasdam incantationes nigromantiæ, futura posset prospicere; puero ad interrogata respondente de quibusdam futuris quæ ei quasi præsentialiter apparebant.

De comite Sancti-Ægidii.

Comes[3] Sancti-Egidii, filius Johannæ quondam reginæ Siciliæ, quæ exstitit filia regis Henrici secundi, soror regum Ricardi et Johannis, recuperavit fere omnes civitates et terras quas comes Simon de Mumford sibi subjugaverat per manum validam Christianorum, qui ad ejus auxilium convenerant de pluribus provinciis,

[1] *incredulus*] Again a change in the writing of C., and the whole paragraph, as far as "revelavit," is written upon an erasure.

[2] *revelavit*] Four lines and a half are here erased, and the writing changes.

[3] *Comes . . . in terra illa*] Written by a new hand, and with a darker ink.

ex mandato papæ Innocentii, ad expugnandos Albigenses [1] hæreticos, qui in terra comitis jam multiplicati fuerant super numerum. Sed prædictus comes, strenuus juvenis et catholicus, post occisionem Simonis de Monte-forti in obsidione Tolosæ, et post mortem patris, qui eosdem Albigenses hæreticos semper foverat et tutaverat, paulatim hæreditatem suam in manu valida viriliter recuperavit; inimicis suis de civitatibus et de terris suis expulsis et debellatis. Unde domino papæ Honorio, qui Innocentio successerat, multis precibus mandare curavit quatinus ab expugnatione terræ suæ desisteret, atque sapientes et discretos ac religiosos
f. 120. viros in terram suam dirigeret; et quoscumque illi hæreticos atque in sua hæresi obstinatos invenirent, ipse eos immisericorditer trucidaret, et a provincia sua funditus eliminaret. Ex hujus occasione mandati, pax sperata [2] est in terra illa.

Nulla [3] meminit ætas tot fuisse quartanarios ubique terrarum et regionum sicut in hoc anno exstiterunt, ex nimia æstatis distemperantia in calore et siccitate.

Anno Dominicæ incarnationis MCCXXIII., obiit domnus Benedictus, abbas de Cogeshale, cui successit domnus Gaufridus, prior ejusdem loci.

Apud Parisius exorta est magna discordia inter cives prædictæ civitatis et scholares, et trucidati sunt tam de nobilibus quam de mediocribus clericis, et projecti [4] in Sequana fere usque ad trecentos viginti. Quidam magistrorum dominum papam adierunt, de tam crudeli persecutione conquerentes; quidam vero cum clericis suis ad alias civitates transmigraverunt. Civitas autem interdicta est et a scholaribus et doctoribus evacuata, quæ hactenus præ omnibus aliis civitatibus eximiis diversarum [5] scholarum magistris insignita et ditata fuit.

[1] *Albigenses*] Abigenses, C., here and below.

[2] *sperata*] On an erasure in C.

[3] *Nulla*] Here a change in the ink is visible in C.

[4] *projecti*] projectis, C.

[5] *eximiis diversarum*] On an erasure in C.

Cum domnus Heliensis episcopus, quondam abbas de Fontibus, sacros ordines faceret apud Bernewelle in prima hebdomada Quadragesimæ,[1] repente exorta est quædam sæva tempestas nimborum, ac quidam ictus[2] fulminantis tonitrui ita violenter et horrifice insonuit, ut omnes solo tenus timore perterriti prosternerentur, et tam ignitum fulmen cum tonitruo in ecclesia apparuit, quod omnes arbitrarentur ecclesiam fuisse ex nimio fulgure jam accensam. Tantumque[3] fœtorem ex illo fulmine nonnulli senserunt, quod multi eorum diutius infirmati vix mortem evadere potuerunt.

Similiter domnus episcopus Londoniensis sacros ordines apud Chielmaresford in hebdomada qua cantatur: "Sitientes faciens," maxima tempestas ventorum atque pluviarum exorta est, ita quod omnes illuc advenientes ex nimia aeris intemperie perterriti graviter afflicti sunt. Hinc perpendi potest quantum displiceat Omnipotenti Deo quod nonnulli idcirco ad sacros ordines accedunt, ut liberius de stipendiis ecclesiæ et oblationibus fidelium incontinenter vivant, commessationibus et ebrietatibus atque impudicitiis semper studentes, qui impuro et immundo corpore puritatis Auctori ministrare præsumunt, et sacrificium cœleste pollutis manibus ausu temerario audent contrectare. f. 120 *b*.

Rex Hierosolymitanus Johannes, post redditam Damiatam, cum multis nobilibus summum adiit pontificem pro consilio et auxilio ejus expetendo. Deinde in Galliam transiit, cum rege Philippo locuturus, a quo honorifice susceptus multaque pecunia ad subventionem Terræ Sanctæ ditatus est. Dicunt enim quod rex Philippus in extremis, cum[4] testamentum suum faceret, de thesauro suo delegaverit regi quinquaginta[5] millia

[1] *Quadragesimæ*] Ash Wednesday fell on March 8.

[2] *ictus*] actus, C.

[3] *Tantumque*] This sentence appears to be an addition by a different, but coeval hand.

[4] *in extremis, cum*] On an erasure in C.

[5] *testamentum . . . . quinquaginta*] In the margin of C.

marcarum, et Templariis quinquaginta[1] millia, et Hospitalariis totidem. Post hæc autem applicuit in Angliam, cum rege Henrico et proceribus regni de subventione locuturus. Rex vero, accepto consilio, edictum generale per totam Angliam proposuit, quantum quisque comitum ac baronum et militum et cæterorum omnium dare deberent.

Terræ motus factus est magnus in Italia, ita quod quædam civitates, (id est Brixa), cum aliis quibusdam tribus,[2] subversæ sint et absorptæ cum habitoribus suis; sicut et anno præcedenti factum est in Cypro insula, præsertim in Papho, in tantum ut civitas illa
f. 121. subversa sit, et habitatores ejus exstincti. Per diem integrum in Italia, in plerisque locis, sabulum minutum e nubibus pluendo cecidit, quod collectum et in aqua missum speciem sanguinis prætendebat, atque in pluribus locis pro admiratione deportatum est, quod effusionem humani sanguinis portendere dicunt.[3]

Mense Junio horrenda tempestas tonitruorum ac grandinum exorta est, adeo quod in pluribus locis Angliæ segetes solotenus corruerunt, et tanta densitas nivium quod superficiem terræ quasi in hyeme cooperirent, atque arborum ramos ex sua ponderositate confringerent.

Maxima guerra hoc anno exorta est inter Liuelinum Gualensem et inter juniorem Marescallum, comitem scilicet de Penbroc; qui comes, adunato exercitu, cœpit devastare terras quæ dominatui Liuelini subjacebant, ferro et flammis[4] ac rapinis, nulli ætati aut sexui parcens.[5]

---

[1] *quinquaginta*] On a blank space in C., left for the purpose by the first transcriber.

[2] *Brixa . . . tribus*] On a blank space in C., and by a different hand.

[3] *quod . . . dicunt*] In the margin of C.

[4] *et flammis*] Added in a darker ink.

[5] *et flammis . . . . parcens*] An addition in C., but by the first scribe.

De quodam hæresiarcha.

Apud[1] provinciam Burgariorum et Dalmatiæ, juxta Hungariam, surrexit quidam hæresiarcha, vere Antichristi præambulus, qui nitebatur ponere sedem suam in lateribus Aquilonis, et deprimere sedem apostolicam in urbe Romana. Ad hunc confluebant Albigenses[2] hæretici, quasi ad papam suum, ut ad eorum consulta respondeat, ejus inhiantes doctrinis: qui misit ad eos quemdam suæ perversitatis sectatorem, nomine Bartholomæum, de Carcasa civitate natum, qui creavit episcopos, et ecclesias perfidiæ ordinatis contradidit. Hic in literis suis ubique discurrentibus se in hunc modum intitulaverat: "Bartholomæus, servus servorum hos-"pitalis sanctæ fidei, salutem." Quidam Albigensium hæreticorum episcopus, funestam ei exhibens reverentiam, sedem et locum suum concessit in villa quæ dicitur Poios, et seipsum in partes transtulit Tolosanas. Ex f. 121 *b.*
occasione tantæ conculcationis et desolationis catholicæ ecclesiæ, domnus C. Portuensis episcopus et Sanctæ-Rufinæ, et legatus domini papæ, mandavit archiepiscopis et episcopis et abbatibus regni Francorum quatinus apud Senonas, in octabas[3] apostolorum Petri et Pauli, unanimiter convenirent, et quid facto opus esset diligenter discernerent super tam periculosa apostasia.

Eodem autem tempore quo concilium illud ab episcopis celebratum est, rex Philippus, apud castellum de Pasci,[4] cum multis nobilibus principibus suis habuit colloquium de quibusdam baronibus qui contra eum conspiraverant. Cumque esset ibi, subito invasit eum quædam lethalis ægritudo, ex qua ab hac luce subtractus est. Nam, cum sentiret hanc ægritudinem, consilio

[1] *Apud*] A new hand here begins in C.

[2] *Albigenses*] Abigenses here and throughout the rest of this paragraph in C.

[3] *octabas*] July 6.

[4] *castellum de Pasci*] Written, in a different ink, on an erasure in C.

medicorum suorum phlebotomatus est, die scilicet Martis in crastino Septem Fratrum[1] martyrum; sed diætam competentem[2] non observavit, eo quod se melioratum asserebat. Sequenti vero die, cum morbus invalesceret, confessus sacram communionem devote accepit, et filios suos, Lodovicum scilicet atque Philippum, paterno affectu admonere curavit ut pacem inter se et erga sanctam ecclesiam conservarent. Tertia autem die, cum Parisius adiret, morbo invalescente, ad Mantuam castellum[3] divertit, et post testamentum magnifice factum feliciter obdormivit in Domino, anno[4] ætatis suæ lix., ii. idus Julii;[5] et Sabbato sequenti apud Sanctum-Dionysium honorifice tumulatus est. Nec sine divino nutu id actum esse credendum est, quod ad exequias tanti regis tot archiepiscopi atque episcopi, abbates et principes, subito advenerint, cum mors ejus necdum diutius divulgata erat, quia eum adhuc sanum et incolumem esse putabant, quem jam mortuum repererunt. Hinc perpendi potest quantum laudis et gloriæ regi defuncto
f. 122. divina Providentia contulerit, cum tot principes ecclesiarum regni sui in loco tam celebri non præmonitos[6] adunaverit, qui tam devote ac ita honorifice missas pro animæ ejus absolutione celebrarunt, atque corpus defuncti sepulturæ tradiderunt. Sanctam enim ecclesiam ac ministros dilexerat, honoraverat et cum ministris ejusdem ecclesiæ tutaverat; nullas ab eis exactiones indebitas exigens, immo de thesauro suo, singulis annis, quibusdam abbatiis liberaliter tribuens; paci semper ecclesiæ et ministrorum ejus studens, ac tyrannorum rapacitatem, in quantum potuit, reprimens; filios quoque suos ad talia gerenda devote exhortans.

---

[1] *Septem Fratrum*] July 11.

[2] *competentem*] On an erasure in C.

[3] *Mantuam castellum*] The latter word, and the last four letters of the former, are written upon an erasure in C.

[4] *anno . . . Julii*] Written in red ink in the margin of C.

[5] *ii. idus Julii*] July 14.

[6] *præmonitos*] præminutos, C.

Coronatus est autem filius ejus primogenitus Lodovicus eodem mense in urbe Remensi, atque ducatum cum dominio Normanniæ, nullo contradicente, suscepit. Missi sunt tamen archiepiscopus Cantuariensis atque episcopus Londoniensis cum quibusdam magnatibus Angliæ ad Ludovicum, ut peterent ab eo ducatum Normanniæ et cæteras terras transmarinas, quas jure hæreditario rex Henricus, filius regis Johannis, expetebat; sicut ipse Lodovicus promiserat atque juraverat, cum ab Anglia recederat, se regi Angliæ traditurum. Rex autem Lodovicus jam coronatus, antequam nuncii prædicti ad eum pervenirent, de tali petitione responsum dare distulit, inducias postulans de responso usque ad octabas Omnium Sanctorum.[1] Postmodum,[2] ad terminum a rege Franciæ constitutum, missi sunt duo episcopi a rege Angliæ ad Lodowicum regem Galliæ, (scilicet Pandulfus episcopus Norwicensis atque Johannes episcopus Elyensis), ut responsum supradicti regis in Angliam referrent de petitione supradicta. Qui, ad regem Franciæ pervenientes, ab eo vehementer super tali et tanta petitione objurgati sunt, asserente firmiter regem Johannem, patrem regis Henrici, de tota terra sua transmarina a baronibus Franciæ juste fuisse multis ex causis abjudicatum; multaque insuper verba comminatoria addidit quæ regi et suis consiliariis ex parte sua deferrent.

De quodam judicio regis Philippi.

Tempore[3] regis Philippi, filii regis Lodovici, exstitit f. 122 *b*.
quidam famosus præpositus et dives in Gallicanis partibus, qui vehementer cupiebat acquirere quamdam vineam cujusdam vicini sui, aut pretio sive dolo, quia uberes fructus et vinum peroptimum ferebat. Nec tamen

[1] *octabas Omnium Sanctorum*] Nov. 8.

[2] *Postmodum*] A change in the colour of the ink is here perceptible in C.

[3] *Tempore*] Again a change occurs in the writing of C.

eam aliquo modo obtinere potuit quamdiu ille vicinus vixit, qui eam toto tempore vitæ suæ strenue excoluit. Factum est autem quod vir ille postmodum moreretur; sed cupiditas præpositi[1] nullatenus mori potuit, qui omnimodis instabat ut vineam diu concupitam obtinere posset, sicut legimus[1] de rege Achab, qui vineas Naboth concupierat. Tandem ad dolosa falsitatis commenta se præpositus vertens, muneribus datis duos viros corrupit, quatinus suæ assertionis ubique testimonium perhiberent coram vicinis et amicis suis, aut etiam coram rege, si necesse esset. Inde fidem et juramentum ab eis accipiens, revelavit eis suæ dolositatis propositum; cujus dolositati viri illi consentientes et propositum laudantes, perrexerunt secreto ad tumulum defuncti, et effosata terra, cadaver defuncti discooperuerunt, atque ibidem vinum biberunt quasi in arrham emptionis vineæ, prolatisque centum libris illius monetæ in corrigia ligatis, inter manus defuncti posuerunt; dicente præposito ad defunctum: "Hanc pecuniam tibi trado pro "vinea tua." Sed statim resumpta pecunia, corpus illud cooperuerunt, atque tumulum sicut erat prius composuerunt, sicque cachinnando recesserunt. Dixitque ille fraudulentus viris illis: "Nunc confidenter dicere "et jurare potestis et testimonium perhibere, quod "coram vobis tantam pecuniam pro vinea viri illius "eidem tradidi." Statimque post hoc præpositus ille violenter vineam occupavit, atque ut propriam excoluit.

At vero uxor defuncti de vinea ablata frequenter est conquesta coram judicibus, asserens pro certo quod
f. 123. nunquam vir ejus vineam suam alicui venderet, ipsa nesciente, ac filiis suis et amicis hoc ignorantibus. Sed mulier de jure suo a judicibus nequaquam exaudiri potuit, cum ille dolosus testes supradictos cum complicibus suis in medium deduxisset. Unde mulier ad regem Philippum perrexit, suamque querimoniam ac præpositi violentiam coram rege flebiliter exposuit.

[1] *legimus*] 1 Kings xxi. 1.

Cumque rex talem viduæ querimoniam audisset, misericordia motus præcepit ut quantocius præpositus ille cum testibus suis in præsentia sua convocaretur. Quod ut factum est, et lis ab utraque parte esset contestata, convocat rex unum de supradictis testibus, secretoque consiliatus est cum eo, dixitque ei sub silentio: "Scisne "dicere mihi Dominicam orationem, scilicet, 'Pater "'noster?'" Respondit ille: "Scio, domine mi, sicut "laici dicunt." Dixit ergo rex: "Dic igitur sub si-"lentio, ita ut nullus audiat, nisi ego." Quo dicto, præcepit ut discederet et seorsum staret, nullumque verbum alicui sub interminatione mortis ediceret. Illoque amoto, alium advocat, cui et dixit: "Socius "tuus, per brachium Sancti Jacobi, omnem veritatem, "sicut est 'Pater noster,' mihi dixit. Tu ergo simi-"liter omnem rei veritatem hujus litis festinanter mihi "enarra, sicut diligis vitam tuam; nec præpositum aut "aliquem alium verearis." At ille, pro certo æstimans socium suum rei seriem ex toto regi narrasse, ac timens mortis suæ regiam sub juramento comminationem, confessus est omnem præpositi fraudulentiam et transactæ rei seriem; scilicet, de pecunia inter manus defuncti tradita et post resumpta. Quibus auditis, rex jubet curiam cum litigantibus adesse, et in conspectu omnium jubet eum omnia seriatim quæ ei confessus est palam enarrare. Deinde jubet ut pecunia cum vinea viduæ conquerenti sine dilatione tradatur, et præpositus ille falsidicus in patibulo suspendatur.

De converso a milite suspenso.

Tempore[1] prædicti regis, fuit quidam miles castellanus qui degebat juxta abbatiam de Priulli in Gallia, f. 123 *b.* qui quemdam conversum de Priulli, qui forestam[2] mo-

[1] *Tempore*] Another change of the handwriting of C. here presents itself.
[2] *forestam*] furestam, C.

nachorum custodiebat, violenter cepit et sine curiæ regis judicio suspendit. Unde abbas prædictæ domus et monachi, valde animo de tam horribili et insolita crudelitate consternati, conquesti sunt domino regi Philippo, qui tunc forte in illis partibus aderat, de facinoroso castellano. Quo audito, præcepit rex in ira et in furore quatinus castellanus statim comprehenderetur et incarceraretur,[1] et castellum cum domibus dirueretur, et vineæ ejus eradicarentur. Sed nobiles quique viri, cum ipso abbate, intercesserunt pro milite ne occideretur, nec castellum dirueretur; sed aliquam aliam vindictam de milite caperet pro satisfactione. Tunc rex ait: "Inqui-
" rite ab eo utrum velit suscipere pœnitentiam quam
" illi imposuero pro tanta transgressione." Quo respondente se velle complere quicquid ille jusserit, statim rex talem ei injunxit pœnitentiam: " Concite igitur
" nudus pergat ad patibulum et deponat suspensum,
" spectante universo populo, et conversum super dor-
" sum suum ad abbatiam deferat sine alicujus auxilio;
" ac postea nudis pedibus ad curiam Romanam incedat,
" ac domino papæ crimen suum confiteatur, cum literis
" abbatis ejus crimen attestantibus; et sic demum cum
" literis domini papæ de ejus absolutione et satisfac-
" tione testantibus secum deferens, ad nos et ad propria
" in pace redeat." Hanc autem pœnitentiam, volens sive nolens, miles peregit.

Similem fere pœnitentiam donnus Carnotensis episcopus quibusdam nobilibus laicis imposuit, qui clericum quemdam suspenderant et postea ibidem sepelierant: qui diu ab introitu ecclesiæ suspensi et tandem excommunicati, a communione omnium suorum alienati, inviti nolentesque ad episcopum accesserunt et misericordiam atque absolutionem petierunt de commisso facinore. Qui præcepit eis ut ad tumulum defuncti et suspensi clerici quantocius coram populo pergerent, et unguibus suis, sine rastro vel aliquo alio ingenio vel instrumento,

[1] *incarceraretur*] incarcereretur, C.

corpus effoderent, et in cœmiterio allatum honorifice sepelirent; et sic cum literis suis ad domnum papam nudis pedibus festinarent. Hæc retulit magister W. de Argent', qui tunc in illis partibus moratus est.

De Sancta Cruce apud Bromholm.

In tempore illo cum comes Balduinus Flandrensis cum duce Venetiæ et sociis eorum urbem Constantinopoli f. 124. expugnassent et cepissent, et comes Balduinus imperator effectus est, contigit ut quidam presbyter natione Anglicus rediret a terra Hierosolimitana in Constantinopolim, peregrinatione sua peracta, eo quod audisset quod Franci terram imperatoris Kirisaci Græci jam obtinuissent, et comitem Balduinum imperatorem fecissent. Cumque prædictus presbyter capellam imperatoris frequentasset et libenter cantaret ac more patrio sedule ministrasset, retinuit eum imperator in capella sua et in obsequio suo, nimisque ei familiaris effectus est, ita ut traderet ei aliquotiens claves reliquiarum et secretorum suorum. Erat autem quædam sancta crux ab antiquo tempore de ligno Dominicæ crucis secta in quadam theca preciosa recondita, quam imperatores secum asportare consueverant in bello cum inimicos suos expugnabant, ut per virtutem sanctæ crucis de hostibus possent triumphare. Factum est postmodum quod imperator Balduinus duxit exercitum suum contra regem Johannem Blakum apud Adrianopolim civitatem Thraciæ, in septimana Pascæ, oblitusque est secum ferre prædictam sanctam crucem, sicut moris erat. Quapropter festinanter misit pro prædicta cruce prædictum capellanum, sibi familiarem, usque Constantinopolim; et cum interim imperator ab exercitu suo semotus, incaute obequitaret ad prædandum cum sexaginta militibus, per insidias captus est et incarceratus[1] a Johanne Blaco.

[1] *incarceratus*] On an erasure in C.

Occisus est etiam in illo certamine comes Lodowicus filius Theobaldi comitis Blesensis, et plures alii de exercitu eorum.

Cumque presbyter ille, qui pro cruce perrexerat, hos rumores audisset, clam cum cruce sancta de terra illa aufugit, venitque prospere in Angliam, et in Norfolkia patria sua diutius celebravit, nulli de thesauro suo, quem secum portaverat, confiteri voluit, nisi in extremis. Confessus est priori et canonicis de Wabrune se talem crucem habere, quam eis largiretur, si duobus filiis vitæ necessaria vellent providere. Quibus dissimulantibus, nec fidem ejus assertioni habentibus, (quia vicinus eorum diutius extiterat, et nil tale eis retulerat,) perrexit presbyter ad quandam domum ordinis
f. 124 *b.* Cluniacensis satis pauperculam[1] omnibusque bonis temporalibus indigentem, quæ vocatur Bromholm, et obtulit eis prædictam crucem, hac conditione, ut filiis suis in necessariis providerent; narravitque eis totam seriem allatæ crucis. Qui cum magno gaudio et reverentia crucem sanctam susceperunt, et pueros suscipiendo nutrierunt. Post hæc tot et tanta signa atque miracula per virtutem sanctæ crucis in loco prædicto ostensa sunt, quod de omnibus Britanniæ finibus ad adorandam illam sanctam crucem homines cum oblationibus devote advenirent, et infirmos diverse ægritudinibus vexatos secum adducerent. Quorum plurimi secundum fidem et devotionem suam ab ægritudinibus ex toto liberabantur, alii aliqua ex parte remedium aliquod sentiebant. Itaque tantus excursus et occursus factus est diversarum gentium ad locum illum quantus jam pridem apud Sanctum-Thomam vel apud Sanctum-Edmundum fieri consueverat, videntes signa et prodigia, et audientes ab aliis quæ ibi Dominus operabatur per virtutem sanctæ crucis. Defunctus est itaque prædictus presbyter antequam ista miracula crebrescerent, et sepultus

[1] *pauperculam*] The termination of this word has been written on an erasure in C.

est apud canonicos de Wabrune, quibus contulerat quandam portiunculam ejusdem crucis; in quo etiam loco similiter miracula fiunt, et peregrinorum frequentia. Ex paupercula igitur domo de Bromholm, vix ab aliquo nisi a patriotis cognita, fit nobilis et famosissima, præcipue in expensis et hospitalitate præclara, et ex ædificiorum dirutorum nova et nobilis structura. Non est igitur mirandum aut diffidendum si ex præsentia ligni Dominicæ crucis et contactu multotiens fiant diversa miracula inter recte et indubitanter credentes de virtute sanctæ crucis, cum fere cuncta ecclesiæ sacramenta, et miracula quæ a justis hominibus fiunt, per sanctæ crucis signaculum fiant, quamvis illud preciosum lignum præsens non existat. Istud enim sacrosanctum signaculum multotiens nobis f. 125. imprimimus ad tutionem nostram, validum certe contra hostes invisibiles propugnaculum, per quod eorum virtus enervatur, potestas infirmatur, præsentia fugatur, atque imminens periculum sæpe devitatur.

De discordia inter regem et barones.

Discordia magna exorta est inter regem Henricum et inter quosdam barones pro Huberto de Burc, justitiario Angliæ, eo quod rex nimis exaltaret eum, et partem ejus ubique foveret. Diligebat eum, quia tam fideliter patri suo in omnibus adhæserat, et castellum de Dovere in tempore guerræ contra Lodovicum probissime custodierat, et alienigenas cum Eustachio monacho, in mari versus Angliam applicantes, per auxilium Quinque-portuum, submerserat et jugulaverat. Justitiarius autem pro tanta regis familiaritate nimis imperiose sese in actibus et judiciis suis erga nobiles gerebat: unde illi indignati instabant, quantum poterant, ut a tanta dominatione a rege dejiceretur; sed exaudiri minime poterant. Attamen dominus rex, prudenti usus consilio, ne nil de eorum petitione agere videretur, et

ut ferocitatem et improbitatem aliorum mitigaret, exegit a justitiario omnes custodias quas a rege susceperat, sicut castellum de Dovere, et de Turre Londoniensi; hac tamen conditione, ut cæteri barones et castellani suas similiter custodias regi redderent. Quibus redditis, dominus rex reddit iterum Huberto de Burc suas custodias, aliis de suis custodiis orbatis; unde barones valde erga regem commoti sunt, et ab ejus præsentia se subtraxerunt.[1]

De Falcone et de castello de Bedeford.

Rex Johannes habebat quendam servum, probum et audacem, (qui Falco cognominatus est a falce qua occiderat militem in prato patris sui in Normannia,)[2] cui primo commiserat quamdam custodiam in confinio Gualliæ inter marchisos, ubi strenue cum sociis sibi associatis rapinas et cædes in marchisos exercuerat; f. 125 *b.* unde ex infimo cito est inclitus effectus et nominatissimus inter servientes regis. Tandem, in illa discordia quæ facta est inter regem Johannem et barones suos, accitus est Falco cum familia sua plurima et pessima, quæ rapinis atque incendiis, et cædibus et cruciatibus hominum quos capiebant, die noctuque sine miseratione invigilabant; nulli ætati aut sexui, aut clericali, sive religiosorum dignitati, parcentes, quin omnia, ubi poterant, caperent et crudeliter diripirent. Acciti sunt etiam alienigenæ transmarini potentes et immisericordes a rege, qui fere per totam Angliam discurrentes, contra Lodovicum et barones, in quantum poterant, debacchati sunt. Hæc autem guerra contra barones per tres annos duravit, et anterior guerra contra clerum et religiosos fere per alios tres annos, pro archiepiscopo Cantuariensi Stephano.

[1] *et ab . . . . subtraxerunt*] Added in C. by another hand.

[2] *qui . . . Normannia*] An addition by another hand in C.

Qualiter rex Johannes dedit Falconi castellum de Bedeford.

Rex Johannes dedit prædicto Falconi, propter suam et suorum severam probitatem, plures custodias castellorum et comitatuum. Contulit etiam ei terram Willelmi de Bello-campo, qui cum aliis baronibus contra regem conspiraverant. Dedit insuper ei castellum de Bedeford pro servitio suo, et charta sua confirmavit: quod castellum Falco multis expensis roboravit et ampliavit, turribus scilicet ac propugnaculis, atque diversis machinis munivit. Ecclesiam quoque Sancti-Pauli permaximam, quæ juxta castellum ab antiquo tempore sita erat, et ecclesiam Sancti-Cuthberti, funditus evertit, atque de lapidibus ecclesiarum turres et muros et antemuralia ædificavit,[1] ac profundis fossatis pavimentatis f. 126. undique cinxit, armorum diversorum atque victualium copia munivit, ita ut nullum assultum aut obsidionem electi et strenui servientes formidare deberent; fratremque suum Willelmum de Braute in castello constabularium constituit, nimis arrogantem, tradens ei undecim milites cum plurimis strenuis servientibus.

Uxorem nobilem prædictus Falco duxit et desponsavit, filiam scilicet Guarini filii Giroldi, quæ primo desponsata erat Balduino filio Balduini comitis de Vecta insula, ex qua prædictus B. unum genuerat filium, ex qua re accidit ut custodiam insulæ postea obtineret. Sic et prosperis successibus undique elevatus, parem in regno habere dedignabatur. Ferunt nonnulli quod octies viginti carrucas haberet in dominico suo, absque auxiliis quæ ei debebantur, et absque custodia septem comitatuum et castellorum quæ in sua habebat custodia et dispositione. Cumque cæteri barones custodias suas regi,

[1] *ædificavit*] From this point to the end the narrative in C. is continued by the hand of John Bale, bishop of Ossory.

ut dictum est, tradidissent, Falco etiam custodias suas regi similiter tradidit; sed castellum de Bedeford nullo
f. 126 b. modo regi aut Willelmo de Bello-campo tradere voluit; asserens illud suum esse proprium, et a rege Johanne sibi fuisse donatum, et charta sua fore confirmatum pro tam laborioso et diutino servitio suo.

Accidit autem quod Henricus de Braibroche, unus de errantibus justitiis, improbe exigeret a Falcone et a suis quasdam exactiones et reragia quæ debebant; ex qua exactionum improbitate commoti, violenter ceperunt prædictum Henricum et in castello de Bedford incarceraverunt. Quod rex audiens apud Norhamtune, confestim cum exercitu suo ad Bedefordiam perrexit, atque castellum obsedit. Ad quam obsidionem confestim advenit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis cum potenti virtute; venerunt et alii episcopi, abbates nigri, comites et barones fere totius Angliæ, præparantes diversas machinas, petrarias, mangonillos, berefridum cum balistis. Convocati sunt etiam per generale edictum duo homines de qualibet carruca, ex diversis Angliæ comitatibus, ad trahendas machinarum cordas, ad jaciendos lapides de
f. 127. petrariis, et ad cariendos ponderosos lapides de lapidicinis. Itaque nec per diem, neque per noctem obsessis ulla dabatur requies; sed incessanter impellebantur, impetebantur, et ex terrifico lapidum sonitu, ac murorum conquassatione et impulsu, terrebantur quidam; sed ad deditionem et castelli redditionem non flectebantur, dum super auxilium Falconis frustra præstolarentur. Unde obessi, stulta audacia et obstinata probitate præstantissimi, viriliter se defensabant et tuebantur diutius contra totum exercitum regis per octo hebdomadas multos exterius vulnerantes et interficientes cum sagittis et arcubalistis. Ibidem graviter vulneratus est dominus Richardus de Argent' in ventre sub umbilico, quamvis armatus, atque alii sex strenui milites sunt occisi, et de servientibus et laborantibus circa machinas plusquam ducenti, ut quidam asserunt.

Tandem primum exterius antemurale ex assiduo[1] lapidum ponderosorum jactu, et murorum ac turrium[2] conquassatione, cum magno pugnæ conflictu obsidentes obtinuerunt, atque obsessos in alium murum usque ad turrim effugarunt; sed antemuralia cum turribus ita in summitatibus erant munita maximis et dolatis et f. 127 *b.* armatis trabibus et lignis, quod obsessi sub eis securiter delitescerent, jactusque lapidum ponderosorum ac cætera missilia parumper[3] formidarent, donec fossarii minitores fundamenta turris et murorum suffoderent, et ligna supposita in cuniculis igne apposito concremarent; quibus combustis, corruit maxima pars turris et murorum. Sicque postmodum obsessi, dum in quibusdam latebris ejusdem turris epularentur et minus caute se custodirent, subito invaduntur et capiuntur, atque in patibulis suspenduntur, tam milites quam servientes, die Assumptionis[4] beatæ Mariæ virginis, numero octoginta-tres. In hac autem die de obsidione specialiter claruit consilium et auxilium domni Cantuariensis et aliorum episcoporum et abbatum, qui nimis fideliter regi cum toto conamine adhæserunt, qui pecuniis ac laboribus nihil hominibus suis in aliquo pepercerunt. Monachi autem de Wardona magnum et irrecuperabile damnum ex hac obsidione perpessi sunt, quia nemora eorum excelsa, et præcipue arbores circa abbatiam, succisæ sunt ad machinas illas præparandas.

Falco autem, qui hujus seditionis et obsidionis exstiterat auctor et incentor, dum per comitatum Cestriæ iterum cum quibusdam sibi sociatis obequitaret, putans per quorumdam auxilium obsidionem regis a castello f. 128. prædicto removere, tandem per salvum conductum archiepiscopi Cantuariensis et sanctæ ecclesiæ adductus est ad curiam, salva vita et membris suis, de Norhamtune, suis jam suspensis, quibus promiserat validum succursum intra quadraginta dies obsidionis eorum.

[1] *assiduo*] assidua, C.
[2] *ac turrium*] acturium, C.
[3] *parumper*] parumque, C.
[4] *die Assumptionis*] Aug. 15.

Post hoc vero traditus in custodia Londoniensis episcopi, quousque audiret judicium domni papæ et voluntatem regis.

Ludovicus, rex Francorum, cum magno exercitu Pictaviam intravit ac totam suæ ditioni subegit, atque Rokellam obsedit, quæ a civibus, consilio baronum Pictavensium, conditionaliter reddita est, quia de succursu regis Henrici diffidebant, qui interim castellum de Bedeford obsidebat. Reversus est Galfridus de Nevilla, cubicularius regis, de Rokella cum militibus sibi traditis, qui frustra missi fuerant in auxilium Savarici de Malo-leone.

Falco, qui ita contra regem rebellaverat, sicut supra dictum est, et per conductum Cantuariensis archiepiscopi in pace et salva vita adductus, et episcopo Londoniensi in custodia traditus, postea venit ad quoddam colloquium regis et baronum, ubi in optione sua concessum est [ut] eligeret de duobus quid mallet; aut judicium baronum subire, aut regis terram velut exul relinquere. Ille vero, de misericordia et amore baro-
f. 128 *b*. num, quorum plures graviter sæpius offenderat, diffidens, elegit uti terram relinqueret et trans mare pergat.

DE EXPUGNATIONE TERRÆ SANCTÆ PER SALADINUM, LIBELLUS.

De comitissa Jopensi inuncta in reginam, et de dissensione procerum.

f. 1. Death of Baldwin V. king of Jerusalem, and accession of Guy de Lusignan, A.D. 1186.

QUANTIS pressuris et calamitatibus oppressa sit et contrita Orientalis ecclesia a paganis, sine dolore et effusione lacrymarum vestræ excellentiæ quis intimare potest? Ingresso itaque viam universæ carnis rege Baldewino puero, Latinorum rege septimo immo octavo,[1] convenerunt seniores Jerusalem simul, sed non in unum. Princeps[2] scilicet sacerdotum et magister militiæ Templi cum suis militibus, et Reginaldus princeps Montis-regalis, cum amicis comitis et comitissæ Jopensis, portas civitatis Jerusalem clauserunt, neminem exire vel intrare permittentes, absentibus principibus et baronibus terræ, comitissam Jopensem, Sibillam nomine, filiam regis Almarici,[3] in reginam unxerunt, et dominum suum Guidonem de Lizenan, comitem Jopensem, regem fecerunt,[4] aliis clamantibus, "Voluntas Dei est;" aliis e contra dicentibus Sepulchrum Domini et Jerusalem cum pertinentiis suis propter hoc destruendum. Orta est denique dissensio in terra tam magna, ut vix duo consentirent in unum. Pauci cum rege, multi vel pene omnes cum comite Tripolitano et cum sociis suis, parati erant invicem inter se inire certamen. Sedatis tandem

[1] *immo octavo*] In the margin of C.

[2] *Princeps*] Principes, V.

[3] *Sibillam . . . Almarici*] In the margin of C.

[4] *et dominum . . . fecerunt*] In the margin of C.

A.D. 1186. controversiis sed non peractis, malitia in cordibus utrorumque perdurante, parumper siluerunt. His igitur tempestatibus irruentibus, bitumine caritatis deficiente, arca Domini disjuncta et dissoluta est, atque aquis irrumpentibus contradictionis, illi qui hereditatem Crucifixi male tractabant, illam et suam et seipsos perdiderunt.

De invasione terræ Galileæ.

Saladin invades the territory of the Christians.

His ita[1] male gestis, Saladinus cum suis satellitibus gavisus est valde, sciens quod omne regnum divisum desolabitur, exercitum copiosum congregavit, atque in omnibus terris ejus dominatui subjacentibus misit legatos dicens, ut omnis quicumque aurum, argentum, possessiones, domos, captivos et captivas habere vellet, ad eum properaret. Convenerunt[2] autem ex omni parte Turci, Cordini, Syri, Arabes, Alani, Cumanni, Caffechaki, Idumæi, Turcemanni, Beduini, Sarraceni, Ægyptii, et illi
f. 1 *b.* qui habitabant in terra Lieman; et castrametati sunt in loco qui dicitur Rasseleme, quod interpretatur Caput aquæ. Considerans autem Saladinus debilitatem Christianorum, misit septem millia virorum fortium, ut terram Galilææ deprædarent, cogitans, quod si isti pauci terram illam despoliassent, et sine damno revertissent, ceteri animosiores essent ad pugnam, et isti acriores. Igitur ministri iniquitatis, sanguinem sanctorum sitientes, sicut canes rabidi[3] ad cadaver currentes, rapidissimo cursu in loco qui dicitur Cavan pervenerunt, ibique usque ad vesperum quieverunt. Sole denique recedente transierunt flumen, et velut filii noctis et tenebrarum, intempestæ noctis silentio terram Galilææ

[1] *ita*] itaque, V.

[2] *Convenerunt*] In C. and V. a marginal note, "Anno MCLXXXVII." is written in a hand of the 14th century.

[3] *rabidi*] rapidi, C. H. V., in the last of which it has been corrected.

usque[1] Cafram percurrentes, pauperes Christi perimentes, homines et mulieres cum copiosa multitudine jumentorum secum in captivitatem trahentes, patrem illorum, (scilicet diabolum,) imitantes, qui quos in stratu carnis reperit quiescentes et in peccatis suis dormientes, jugulat, et secum in foveam damnationis trahit. Et quia aurora veritatis et sol justitiæ non luxit eis, præmissis captivis cum præda non minima in ipso crepusculo, insidias suas usque ad quatuor millia virorum in valle Saforiæ posuerunt, ceteri vero per planitiem campi Cana Galilææ substitere. Mane autem facto, speculatores civitatis Nazareht levantes oculos et videntes inimicos Crucis Christi per concava vallium huc illucque discurrentes, timore percussi, clamantes et vociferantes: "Ecce assunt Turci, ecce assunt,"[2] venerunt in civitatem. His auditis, conclamabant per civitatem sub voce præconia: "Viri Nazareni, arripite arma, et "pro loco veri Nazaræi fortiter dimicate." A.D. 1187.

De magistro militiæ Templi, et magistro Hospitalis.

Contigit autem eadem nocte magistrum militiæ Templi et magistrum Hospitalis illuc advenisse, missos a[3] rege et patriarcha cum duobus episcopis, quatinus pacem et concordiam inter regem et Reimundum[4] comitem Tripolitanum honorifice tractarent, qui comes tunc temporis apud Tyberiadem[5] morabatur. Tumultuante autem civitate, isti sunt expergefacti, et interrogaverunt quid hoc esset; dictumque est eis a narrantibus, quod Turci viam per quam ituri essent Tyberiade præoccupaverant. Tunc magister militiæ Templi socios suos ita effatus est: "Fratres dilectissimi, et commili- The Christians are attacked by Afdhal, Saladin's son, 1 May 1187. f. 2.

[1] *usque*] usque ad, V.

[2] *Turci, ecce assunt*] Added above the line in H., but in the text of C. and V.

[3] *a*] ad, H.

[4] *Reimundum*] Originally R. in the text, but Reimundum by an early hand in the margin.

[5] *Tyberiadem*] Tiberaidis, H.

A.D. 1187. " tones mei, vos semper istis vanis et caducis restitistis,
" vindictam ex eis exegistis, de ipsis semper victo-
" riam [1] habuistis. Accingite ergo vos, et state in prælio
" Domini, et memores estote patrum vestrorum Macha-
" bæorum, quorum vicem bellandi pro ecclesia, pro lege,
" pro hereditate Crucifixi, jam dudum subistis. Scitote
" vero patres vestros non tam multitudine, apparatu
" armato, quam fide et justitia, et observatione manda-
" torum Dei, victores ubique fuisse, quia non est diffi-
" cile vel in multis vel in paucis vincere, quando
" victoria e cœlo est." Qui omnes uno ore dixerunt:
" Nos quidem prompti et parati sumus pro Christo
" mortem subire, Qui morte sua pretiosa nos redemit.
" Hoc scientes, sive vivimus sive morimur, in nomine
" Jesu semper esse victores."

Interim magister Hospitalis, vir bonus et pius, fratres et populum benigne alloquitur: " Fratres carissimi et
" semper amici, ne terreamini ab his canibus rugien-
" tibus, qui hodie florent, cras quoque in stagnum ignis
" et sulphuris mittentur. Vos autem estis genus elec-
" tum, gens sancta, populus adquisitionis. Vos estis
" æterni, quia cum Æterno regnaturi. Ergo ne timeatis,
" neque paveatis, sed mementote Abraham, qui cum [2]
" ccc. vernaculis quatuor reges persecutus est atque
" percussit, et prædam excussit; cui revertenti a cæde
" quatuor regum occurrit rex Salem Melchisedech, offe-
" rens panem et vinum, atque benedictionem dedit.
" Ecce et vobis, quatuor vitiis capitalibus in virtute
" Trinitatis superatis, occurret rex Salem, id est, Rex
" justitiæ, verus sacerdos Jesus Christus, offerens pa-
" nem satietatis æternæ, et vinum redemptionis per-
" petuæ. Insuper et benedictionem infundet, ut amodo
" voluptatibus carnis non serviatis."

[1] *victoriam*] Omitted in V., in which a hand of the 14th century has written " satis " between the lines.

[2] *cum*] An erasure here occurs in V.

De pugna inter Christianos et Sarracenos habita.

Hoc dicto, omnes alacri corde arma arripuerunt, direxerunt acies, licet parvas, et cum omni hilaritate contra hostes processerunt. Cum vero planitiem campi nostri Christiani attigerunt, barbari quasi timore perculsi[1] fugam simulantes, milites nostros ultro persequentes longe a servientibus protraxerunt, quatinus milites a peditibus separatos sine timore sagittarum sagittis interficerent, et pedites absque pavore lancearum et gladii, sagittis et gladiis et maceis ferreis occiderent. Cum autem per longa spatia campi essent divisi, insidiæ Sarracenorum de latibulis proruperunt, milites et pedites in duas partes diviserunt, ut nec isti illis, nec illi istis mutuo adjutorio adjuvarent. Igitur commissum est prælium satis durum et inæquale, quia nostri non erant amplius quam milites cxxx. et quadringenti[2] vel trecenti pedites, et invicem miserabiliter separati. Tamen multitudo paganorum, nec copiosæ pharetræ sagittarum terrebant nostros, quin fortiter latera Sarracenorum lanceis perfodiendo fulgurantibus gladiis verberando dimicassent.[3] Igitur cadebant percussi, plangebant vulnerati, sanguinem fundebant semivivi, ad inferos descendebant mortui, stupebant corde et labiis incircumcisi, tam paucos milites contra tam magnam turbam posse certamen subire. Et quia congressus et concursus militum Turci non potuerunt sufferre, servientibus interfectis, conglobati sunt in unum cuneum; dantes fremitum et ululatum, undique nostros circumsederunt, uno animo super Christianos impetum fecerunt. Milites denique[4] Christi turba barbarorum constipati, ita sunt in unum collecti, ut nec cursibus equorum, nec ictibus lancearum, aditum exeundi vel

A.D. 1187. f. 2 *b*. Battle of Tiberias, in which the Christians are defeated, 1 May 1187.

[1] *perculsi*] percussi, V.

[2] *quadringenti*] Altered by erasure in H.

[3] *dimicassent*] So also V. originally, but altered to "dimicarent."

[4] *denique*] vero, V.

A D. 1187. evadendi poterant aperire. Crudele spectaculum, et omnibus Christianis cum fletu plangendum! Stabant sancti quasi agni sine balatu inter rabidissimos[1] lupos, jam Deo oblaturi, quatinus sole calescente ignis divinus hostias pacificorum consumeret. Enimvero tempore veris erat, æstate jam appropinquante: flores vineæ, (id est ecclesiæ,) odorem dederunt, et hortus conclusus de fonte signato irrigatus rubicundas et suavissimas
f. 3. sponso jamdudum inter candorem liliorum quiescenti obtulit rosas. Adversarii autem sanctorum et Deo odibiles undique sanctos expugnantes, alios sagittis perforabant, et vulnera vulneribus imprimebant, alios gladiis cædebant, alios maceis ferreis quassabant. Inter hæc magister militiæ Templi, videns quod traditi essent ad mortem, et nulla spes salutis superesset, quassatus maceis fugiendo vivus evasit.

De necè magistri Hospitalis.

Death of Garnier, Grand Master of the Knights Hospitalers.

Magister vero sanctæ domus Hospitalis, vir pius et bonæ misericordiæ visceribus semper affluens, ne coronam præsentem[2] perderet, nec aliquid de mercede æternæ retributionis minueret, instabat intrepidus; et quoniam perfecta caritas foris[3] timorem[4][5] mittit, athleta[6] victoriosus millia populi se circumdantis non timuit, quia laboris sui remuneratorem mente et spiritu in cœlo vidit. Perforatus igitur undique ictibus sagittarum acutissimis, et proprio cruore perfusus, insuper data lancea per medium pectoris, martyr et victor capitis abscisione Deum glorificavit. Proh dolor! patrem orphanorum, susceptorem et visitatorem infir-

[1] *rabidissimos*] rapidissimos. So all the MS., but altered by a late hand in V.

[2] *præsentem*] Om. V.

[3] *foris*] foris omnem, H.

[4] *timorem*] In the margin of C. and V.

[5] *omnem timorem*] Added in the margin of H.

[6] *athleta*] alhleta, C.

morum, eleemosynarum largitorem, suæ carnis et vitio- A.D. 1187.
rum victorem, præcursoris Domini dispensatorem, Dei et sanctorum amicum, occiderunt. O pauperes et membra Christi super hoc plangite: quid facietis capite ablato? Filiæ Galilææ et Nazareth, (id est transmigrationis et munditiæ,) assumite planctum, quia amator castitatis et munditiæ, ut vos,[1] Jerusalem, (id est Visioni pacis,) pacificaret, in Cana Galilææ (id est, in cœlo transmigrationis) migravit. Væ tibi Tyberias, væ tibi Bethsaida, quia inter montes superbiæ tuæ humilis rector humilium occisus est. Interim flete, quoniam vos estis causa fletus et materia. Heu, heu! quis potest dicere vel cogitare quantæ tristitiæ et anxietates[2] tenuerint corda sanctorum, cum hinc alios vidissent stantes sanguine proprio perfusos, illinc alios mole morientium fratrum oppressos; hinc alios cruorem suum bibentes et sitis ariditate morientes, illinc alios de corporibus suis tela et vitam cum sagittis extrahentes?

De mirabili pugna duorum militum.

Omnibus jam pene morte crudelissima consumptis, inter ceteros restabant duo, quorum auxilio ceteri stabant. Stabant isti et instabant, hostes viriliter impugnando, quorum alter nomine Jakelin de Mayli, marescallus militiæ Templi, vir armis strenuus; alter vero Henricus frater Hospitalis, miles et præliator fortissimus. Horum primus bellator nobilissimus, quasi leæna sæviens, raptis catulis, unguibus scindens[3] et fodiens, atque quidquid objectum fuerit ore crudeli dilacerans, sic signifier noster frendens spiritu quemcumque potest attingere, in ruinam mortis et præcipitium damnationis

Incidents during the battle.

f. 3 b.

[1] *assumite . . . ut vos*] Om. V.

[2] *anxietates*] anxietatis, H. V., but in the latter MS., altered to "anxie-"tates."

[3] *scindens*] cindens, C.

A.D. 1187. ruit. Et sicut aper crudelis circumdatus canibus, dentibus suis quodcumque obvium habuerit discerpens atque dilanians, ita sequens gladiator noster ferocissimus scindendo[1] et occidendo homicidas impiissimos mittit ad inferos. Stupent autem[2] tonsi in[3] fronte, progenies scilicet Ismael, et sine periculo mortis ad eos non credebant esse accessus. Igitur stabant procul filii Babylonis et Sodomorum, lanceas, tela, sagittas in martyribus Christi, ut eos morti traderent, undique mittentes : at illi gaudenter susceperunt ictus, ut mererentur accipere coronam vitæ. Bellatores igitur incliti et amici Dei pondere tanti laboris fatigati, atque multitudine armorum oppressi, martyrio Christum glorificantes, glorioso fine quieverunt. Demum heredes Canaam more canum[4] latrantes, et per totum campum polluto ore perstrepentes [clamabant];[5] " Victi sunt, " victi sunt qui vicerunt." Et quoniam viventes non audebant attendere, ad corpora in solo sine anima et spiritu jacentia accedebant, et minutatim in frusta scindentes[6] dispergebant per campum.

Omnibus itaque morte vel captivitate consumptis, reversi sunt filii Edom[7] per locum qui vocatur Til, ubi Jordanis influit in mare per ripam maris Galilææ, in medio itinere Tyberiadis et Japhep, juxta mensam de qua non erant pransuri ubi scilicet Dominus Jesus de quinque panibus et duobus piscibus satiavit quinque millia hominum ; ibique pernoctantes, spolia sanctorum cruentis manibus diviserunt. Et quia

---

[1] *scindendo*] cindendo, C.

[2] *autem*] etiam, H.

[3] *in*] In the margin of C.

[4] *more canum*] latratibus canum, H., the word canum being written upon an erasure. In C. the reading is the same, but no erasure. In V. " more " is written upon an erasure.

[5] *clamabant*] Om. C., but added from V. (where it is a later interlineation) as necessary for the completion of the sense.

[6] *scindentes*] cindentes, C.

[7] *Edom*] edem, H., where it is altered by erasure.

prima dies Maii erat, qua flores et rosæ colligi sole- A.D. 1187.
bant, viri Nazareni colligebant corpora Christianorum, f. 4.
et sepelierunt ea in cimiterio Beatæ Mariæ in Nazareth, et fecerunt planctum magnum super interfectos, dicentes, "Heu, heu! quid contigit nobis? "Ergo filiæ Nazareth et Galilææ, multiplicate planc- "tum, augete fletum, quia insanabilis est dolor vester. "O Sion, specula summi Regis, annuntia in Jerusa- "lem et in Judæa quæ vidisti, ut et ipsi sumant "planctum, quoniam vastitas et desolatio imminet eis."

His itaque gestis comes Reimundus Tripolitanus super hoc contristatus est usque ad mortem, dicens: "Ne "aliquis putet propter me vel per me hoc factum esse, "vadam et subjiciam me regi et reginæ et senioribus "Jerusalem; insuper et quidquid jusserint faciam." Igitur qui relicti fuerant, archiepiscopus scilicet Tyrensis, et archiepiscopus Nazarensis,[1] et magister Templi, miserunt nuntios in Jerusalem ad regem, dicentes: "Con- "doluit comes satis super interfectione magistri Hospi- "talis et ceterorum; ideoque venturus est nobiscum in "Jerusalem, tibi subjiciendus, omnibus querelis sopitis; "et tu bene fac, ad ipsius honorem nobis occurrendo." Hoc audito, surrexit rex Guido Lisinensis cum multitudine militum et Turcopolorum, et occurrit comiti. Obviaverunt autem sibi rex et comes in campo magno Dotaym juxta Cisternam Joseph. Ibi vero uterque descendens in terram, astantibus episcopis et militibus Templi, et militibus Hospitalis, et baronibus terræ cum universis populis et gaudentibus, amplexati sunt et deosculati; atque junctis lateribus perrexerunt ambo pariter in Jerusalem, et illic fecit homagium regi et reginæ, condonantibus invicem querelis. Omnibus ergo bene compositis, adorata vivifica Cruce, reversus est comes Tyberiadem; rex vero permansit in Jerusalem causa congregandi exercitum.

Raimond, count of Tripoli, submits to king Guy of Lusignan.

[1] *Nazarensis*] In V. altered by erasure to Nazarenus.

De adunatione duorum exercituum.

A.D. 1187. Preparations for another battle.

Anno millesimo centesimo octogesimo septimo ab Incarnatione Domini, congregavit rex Syriæ exercitum copiosum sicut arenam quæ est in littore maris, ut debellaret terram Juda, et venit usque Jaulan trans flumen, ibique fixit tentorium. Rex autem terræ Jerusalem coadunavit et ipse exercitum ab omni Judæa et Samaria. Et convenerunt omnes et castra metati sunt circa fontem[1] Safforiæ. Templarii vero et Hospitalarii de omnibus castellis suis populum multum congregaverunt, veneruntque in castra. Surrexit autem et comes Tripolis cum omni populo, quem de Tripoli et Galilæa congregaverat, et venit in castris. Sed et princeps Reginaldus Montis-regalis cum gente sua; Balisanus Neapolensis cum sua; Reginaldus Sidoniensis cum sua; dominus Cæsariæ Palæstinæ cum sua. Non remansit homo in civitatibus vel vicis vel castellis, qui ad bella posset procedere, quin jussu regis urgeretur exire. Nec hoc quidem sufficiebat eis, sed aperuerunt ærarium regis[2] Angliæ, et dederunt stipendium omnibus qui arcum vel lanceam poterant ad pugnam gestare. Habebant autem exercitum copiosum, milites mille cc., Turcopulos innumerabiles; pedites decem et octo millia, vel eo amplius. Et gloriati sunt in multitudine hominum et equorum hinnientium, in loricis quoque et galeis et lanceis et clypeis aureis, et non crediderunt in Deo, nec speraverunt in salutari Ejus, qui est protector et salvator Israel, sed evanuerunt in cogitationibus suis et vani facti sunt.

f. 4 *b*.

[1] *fontem*] Om. V., where a hand of the 14th century has written "vallem" between the lines.

[2] *regis*] domini regis, V.

De ligno Domini ad bellum allato.

Miserunt etiam in Jerusalem ad patriarcham, quatinus cum ligno Dominico pretioso ipsemet ad castra venire properasset: et quoniam lumen oculorum cordis jamdudum amiserat, sicut Ely Silonites, Ofhni et Finees, filios suos, scilicet episcopum Liddensis ecclesiæ et episcopum Accon [constituit],[1] ut essent portitores Dominicæ Crucis et custodes, sperans omnibus captis vel interfectis sibi aditum patere evadendi: sed voluntate Dei cecidit retro de sella, quam fortasse[2] indignus possederat. A.D. 1187. The cross brought from Jerusalem.

Interea Syri transierunt Jordanem percurrentes et devastantes omnem regionem circa torrentem Cyson, a Tyberiade ad Betthaniam,[3] et montes Gelboe et Jesrael et usque Nazareth, et per circuitum montis Tabor. Et quoniam terram invenerunt ab hominibus destitutam, quia fugerant timore eorum, incenderunt areas, et quidquid invenire poterant flammis tradiderunt. Ardebat autem tota terra sicut globus unus ante faciem eorum. Nec tamen his satiati, insuper et montem sanctum ascenderunt, et locum sanctissimum,—in quo Salvator noster assumptis discipulis Petro et Jacobo et Johanne, apparentibus Moyse et Elia, gloriam futuræ resurrectionis transfiguratione sua ostendit,—fœdaverunt. Quem locum princeps apostolorum, visa gloria æternæ claritatis, laudans, ibique cupiens habitare, dixit:[4] "Domine, "bonum est nos hic esse," etc., futurum nesciens quod præsens cernebat. March of the Saracens. f. 5.

[1] *constituit*] Omitted in all the MS., but added above the line in V. by a hand of the 14th century.

[2] *fortasse*] forte, V.

[3] *Betthaniam*] The word stands thus in C., "Betthañ." V. reads (apparently) "Belthaven," but it has been tampered with.

[4] *dixit*] Matt. xvii. 4.

De expugnatione Tyberiadis.

Siege of Tiberias, July 1187.

Istis ita[1] percurrentibus ac devastantibus, transivit Saladinus flumen cum omni exercitu suo, et jussit applicari exercitum ad civitatem Tyberiadem, ut debellaret eam. Secunda die mensis Julii, feria quinta, circumdata est civitas a sagittariis, et cœperunt pugnare. Et quoniam civitas non erat munita, comitissa et viri Galilæi miserunt nuntios ad comitem et ad regem dicentes; "Circumdederunt Turci civitatem, et jam "prope expugnaverunt, muris perforatis, ad nos intran-"tes. Succurrite ergo cras, vel capti et captivi erimus." Pugnaverunt igitur Syri et prævaluerunt. Ut autem cognoverunt viri Galilei non posse sustinere, relictis propugnaculis et civitate, fugerunt in castellum a facie paganorum. Capta est autem civitas atque succensa. Et quoniam audierat rex Ægypti quod exercitus Christianorum veniret adversum se, noluit oppugnare castellum; sed ait: "Sinite, captivi mei[2] sunt."

Mention of Tiberias in the Gospels.

Hæc est civitas tam frequenter in Evangeliis nominata, corporali frequentatione et illustratione miraculorum Domini nostri gloriosa. Hic autem ut verum hominem Se ostenderet in navicula Petri dormivit, et ut verus Deus ventis et mari imperavit. Hic denique ut verum Deum Se demonstraret, quarta vigilia noctis, (scilicet, circa finem Mosaicæ legis, aurora Evangelii et gratiæ jam albescente,) super liquidas undas maris, operante divinitate, ambulavit. Hic vero Petrum fide titubantem et mergentem extensa manu erexit; scilicet, ecclesiam inter fluctus sæculi periclitantem gloria Resurrectionis et operatione miraculorum confirmavit. Hic
f. 5 *b.* autem ut verum corpus et veram carnem post resurrectionem Se habere insinuaret, coram discipulis suis partem piscis assi et favum mellis manducavit; et post

[1] *ita*] itaque, V.

[2] *mei*] Above the line in C.

trinam interrogationem an Petrus Illum diligeret, et trinam responsionem Petri : Domine,[1] tu scis quia amo te, oves et agnos Petro conservandos commendavit, atque celebrato glorioso convivio, et jam abire incipiente, Petro se sequi, (scilicet passione crucis,) præcepit. A.D. 1187.

De consilio procerum et de consilio comitis Tripolitani.

Secunda die mensis Julii, feria v. advesperascente, auditis litteris Galilæorum, convocavit rex terræ Jerusalem omnes duces exercitus, ut darent consilium, quid essent acturi. Qui omnes tale dedere[2] consilium, quatinus cruce Dominica comitante, omnes armati et per acies distincti, contra hostes dimicaturi mane procederent, atque civitati Tyberiadis succurrerent. Quod audiens comes Tripolitanus, ait ; " Mea est civitas Ty- " beriadis, uxor mea ibi est; nullus vestrum tantum " amisit quantum ego, nec aliquis vestrum tam diligenti " studio, salva Christianitate, succurreret vel adjuvaret, " quam ego. Tamen absit hoc a rege et a nobis, aquam " et victum, et ea quæ necessaria sunt, relinquere, et " tantam multitudinem populorum et jumentorum in " solitudine, fame et siti, et fervida æstate interficiendam " deducere. Et quoniam populus multus est, et fervida " æstas, sine abundantia aquæ, vos ipsi scitis, per " dimidiam horam diei populum non posse subsistere, " nec inimici nostri sine magna penuria aquæ et in- " teritu hominum et jumentorum ad nos possunt per- " tingere. State ergo super aquas vestras et alimenta " vestra in medio terræ, quoniam certum est in tan- " tam superbiam Sarracenos se erexisse, capta civitate, " ut nec ad dexteram nec ad sinistram declinare,[3] sed " per vastam solitudinem recto itinere ad nos prope-

Deliberations of the Christians as to the relief of the garrison of Tiberias; 2 July 1187.

[1] *Domine*] Joh. xxi. 15.

[2] *dedere*] dederunt, V.

[3] *declinare*] Here in V. the second hand has added " velint " above the line

A.D. 1187. " rare et ad bella provocare. Populus autem noster
" refectus et satiatus pane et aqua contra hostes pug-
" naturus de castris exibit hilariter. Et nos quidem
" et equi nostri recentes, adjuvante nos et protegente
" cruce Dominica, gentem incredulam et in siccitate
" fatigatam, et refugium refocillationis non habentem,
" fortiter expugnabimus. Sciatis vero inimicos crucis
f. 6. " Christi antequam ad mare veniant, vel ad flumen
" possint [1] redire, interfectos [2] gladio, vel lancea, vel siti,
" vel captos manu, gratia nobiscum Jesu Christi per-
" durante. Nobis autem si aliquid contigerit mali,
" quod absit, habemus per circuitum munitiones si opus
" fuerit fugiendi, quod Deus avertat." Et quoniam tradituri erant in manibus luporum, de lupo iniquo problema contra comitem vera dicentem protenderunt dicentes: "Adhuc latet in pelle lupi." Impletum est ergo in eis quod per Sapientem dicitur. "Væ terræ [3]
" cujus rex juvenis est, et cives mane comedunt!" Rex autem noster juvenis juvenile secutus consilium, et cives invidia et odio carnem proximorum comedentes, consilium suæ salutis et ceterorum reliquerunt, et in insipientia et fatuitate sua terram et populum et seipsos perdiderunt.

De aciebus dispositis.

They march to Tiberias, 3 July 1187. Igitur feria sexta, die tertia mensis Julii, relictis necessariis, per turmas suas processerunt. Comes Tripolis in prima fronte secundum dignitatem suam, ceteri autem dextra lævaque secundum institutionem terræ perrexerunt. Acies autem sanctæ crucis et acies regis simul subsequentes; postremo Templarii causa exercitum custodiendi, secundum situm terræ. Profecti sunt autem de Safforia, ut irent Tyberiadem, sicut dictum est,

[1] *possint*] possunt, H.
[2] *interfectos*] V. here adds "fore" in the second hand.
[3] *Væ terræ*] Eccl. x. 16.

et pervenerunt usque casale quod dicitur Marescalciæ, A.D. 1187.
in tertio milliario a civitate. Ibi vero ita coangustati sunt incursione hostium et siti, ut ultra nequirent procedere. Et quoniam transituri erant per loca scopulosa et angusta ut ad mare Galilææ pertingerent, quod uno milliario distabat ab eis, mandavit comes ad regem dicens: " Festina et transeamus locum istum, quatinus " et nos et populus possimus nos ad aquas salvare; sin " autem, periclitabimur sicca mansione." Qui respondit: " Cito transibimus."

They are attacked at Hittin by the Saracens.

Interea Turci invaserunt extremos exercitus, ita ut Templarii et ceteri qui in extrema parte erant minime possent sustinere. Neci denique tradituris[1] jussit rex ex improviso, exigentibus peccatis, figere tentoria. Cumque comes respexisset et vidisset figere tentoria, ait, " Heu! heu! Domine Deus, finita est guerra, traditi " sumus ad mortem, et terra destructa est." Castra f. 6 b.
metati sunt ergo cum dolore et angustia et siti in sicca mansione, ubi magis[2] effusus sanguis nocte illa quam aqua. Sic nox illa solitaria nec laude digna, in qua Christiani ariditate sitis amiserunt fortitudinem, nec computetur in noctibus anni, nec numeretur in mensibus, in qua lux Christianorum obcæcata est. O quam amara habitatio in qua non erat mortis declinatio. Hæc est mansio declinationis et sitis, ubi duces Israel pro desiderio aquæ declinaverunt.

Igitur filii Esau circumdantes populum Dei, et incendentes desertum circa eum, atque tota nocte calore ignis, fumo, sagittis, vexatos fame et siti vexabant. O quam miserabilis requies per tam longam viam solitudinis. Forte non sunt recordati manus Dei qua redemit Israel de potestate tribulantis. Certe stabat redemptio captivorum in medio populi; arbor scilicet salutifera, in qua suspensus est serpens æneus, ut a morsibus venenati ser-

[1] *tradituris*] tradituri, C.
[2] *magis*] V. after this word adds "est" above the line in the second hand.

A.D. 1187. pentis respicientes liberaret. Forsitan non respiciebant, sed neque considerabant, quoniam obscura nox infidelitatis eorum captivaverat fidem, et cæcitas invidæ obduraverat mentem. Dissipati sunt nec compuncti; clamaverunt, nec erat qui salvos faceret, quoniam filii alieni mentiti sunt Domino, et claudicaverunt a semitis Ejus; ideo clamantes non exaudivit, quia non est speciosa laus in ore peccatoris. Enimvero cibavit eos[1] Deus nocte illa pane lacrymarum, et vino compunctionis sine mensura potavit: pallio quoque mœroris et angustiæ cooperuit, atque castigatione dura flagellavit, et renuerunt[2] disciplinam.

De peditibus occisis.

Progress of the battle. Humiliatis tandem in loco afflictionis, et opertis umbra mortis, illuxit dies, dies tribulationis et miseriæ, dies captivitatis et angustiæ, dies planctus et perditionis. Mane autem facto, ascendit rex Syriæ, relinquens civitatem Tyberiadem cum omni exercitu suo ad planiciem campi, ut præliaretur[3] adversum Christianos, atque præparavit se ut occurreret nostris. Nostri igitur direxerunt acies suas, et festinaverunt ut transf. 7. irent supradictum locum, quatinus aquis recuperatis refrigerati, hostes impugnando acrius invaderent. Processit denique comes ut obtineret locum quem Turci jam incœperant appropinquare. Cum autem ordinati essent, et per acies distincti, præceperunt peditibus ut sagittando munirent exercitum, quatinus milites levius hostibus obstarent, ut milites muniti per pedites a sagittariis hostibus, et pedites per lanceas militum ab incursu hostium essent adjuti; et ita utrique mutuo adjutorio defensi salutem obtinerent. Sed jam appropinquantibus

[1] *eos*] Above the line in C.

[2] *renuerunt*] Here V. adds, above the line, "accipere."

[3] *præliaretur*] præliaret, MSS., but altered by the second hand in V.

Sarracenis, conglobati sunt pedites in unum cuneum, A.D. 1187.
atque veloci cursu cacumen excelsi montis, relinquentes exercitum, malo suo ascenderunt. Rex igitur et episcopi et ceteri miserunt ad eos rogantes ut venirent, lignum Dominicum, et hereditatem Crucifixi, et seipsos, et exercitum Domini defendere. At illi respondentes dixerunt: "Non venimus, quoniam siti extincti sumus, "et nequimus prælіare." Mandaverunt iterum; at illi omnino reditum negantes perstiterunt. Pugnaverunt interim Templarii et Hospitalarii fortiter et Turcopoli in extrema parte exercitus, et non potuerunt prævalere, quoniam undique absque numero inimici creverunt, sagittando et vulnerando Christianos. Cum autem paululum processissent, clamaverunt ad regem postulando auxilium, dicentes se tanti ponderis bellum non posse sustinere. Rex autem et ceteri, ut viderunt quod pedites renuerunt redire, et quod ipsi sine servientibus contra sagittas Turcorum non possent subsistere, gratia Dominicæ crucis jusserunt interim figere tentoria, quatenus cursus Sarracenorum impedirent et levius ferrent. Igitur diffusæ sunt acies, et descenderunt circa sanctam crucem confusi et intermixti huc atque illuc. Hi denique qui fuerunt cum comite Tripolis in prima fronte, videntes quod rex et Hospitalarii et Templarii et universi ita essent simul confusi, atque cum Turcis commixti, et multitudinem barbarorum inter eos et regem; ipsis autem non patere aditum ad lignum Dominicum revertendi, exclamaverunt, "Qui potest transire "transeat, quoniam non est nobis prælium. Sed et "fuga quidem jam periit a nobis." Inter hæc Syri irruerunt per millenos et millenos super Christianos, sagittando et interficiendo eos.

De occisione episcopi Achonensis.

Interim episcopus Accon, bajulator crucis Dominicæ, Two bishops slain.
vulneratus est ad mortem, atque episcopo Liddensi crucem

A.D. 1187. gestaro reliquit. Irruerunt autem multitudo paganorum super pedites atque per præcipitium prærupti montis, in cujus cacumine jamdudum fugerant,[1] præcipitaverunt, et[2] alios occidendo, alias captivando vastaverunt. Et hi quidem digne talem mortem sustinuerunt, qui relicta cruce humilitatis Christi, in superbia mentis excelsa petierunt. Comes denique et sui, et Balisanus Neapolitanus et Reginaldus Sidoniensis et ceteri Pullani, qui adhuc erant equitantes, videntes hoc dedere terga, atque supradictum locum angustum vi[3] equorum conculcando Christianos et pontem faciendo, quasi per planum iter: ita per angusta loca et scopulosa super suos et Turcos et crucem fugiendo transierunt. Atque sic quoquomodo cum vita tantum evaserunt.

De captione Sanctæ Crucis, et regis Guidonis, et ceterorum.

The Christians are defeated, and the king taken prisoner.

Igitur Sarraceni congregati sunt circa lignum Dominicum, et regem, et ceteros, devastantes ecclesiam. Quid multa? Prævaluerunt Sarraceni contra Christianos, et fecerunt in eos quæcumque voluerunt. Heu mihi! quid dicam? Libet magis plorare et plangere, quam aliquid dicere. Heu mihi! dicam pollutis labiis, qualiter pretiosum lignum Dominicum nostræ redemptionis tactum sit damnatis manibus damnatorum? Væ mihi misero, quod in diebus miseræ vitæ meæ talia cogor videre. Væ autem et genti peccatrici, populo gravi iniquitate, per quem omnium Christianorum fides blasphematur, et pro quibus Christus iterum cogitur flagellari et crucifigi. O dulce lignum et suave, sanguine Filii Dei[4] roratum atque lavatum! O crux alma, in qua salus nostra pependit, per quam et

[1] *fugerant*] V. here reads "eos," above the line.
[2] *et*] Above the line in C.
[3] *ve*] V. here reads "in."
[4] *Dei*] Omitted in C.

chyrographum mortis deletum est, et vita in proto- A.D. 1187.
plasto perdita recuperata est! Quo mihi adhuc est[1]
vivere, ligno vitæ sublato? Et vere credo sublatum
esse, quoniam fides Filii crucis evanuit, quia impossi-
bile est sine fide placere Deo. Væ nobis miseris, qui
armaturam nostram, peccatis exigentibus, amisimus!
Sublatum igitur lignum est nostræ salutis, dignum f. 8.
ab indignis, indigne heu! heu! asportatum. Nec mi-
rum si corporalem sanctæ crucis substantiam fortitu-
dine visibilium inimicorum amiserunt, quam jamdudum
spiritualiter bonis operibus justitiæ deficientibus, mente
et spiritu perdiderant. Plangite super hoc omnes
adoratores crucis, et plorate, atque veram crucem in
cordibus vestris recta fide et inconcussa pingite, et
confortamini in spe, quoniam crux non deserit spe-
rantes in se, nisi prius ipsa deseratur. Quid plura?
Capta est crux, et rex, et magister militiæ Templi, et
episcopus Liddensis, et frater regis, et Templarii, et
Hospitalarii, et marchio de Monte Ferrat, atque omnes
vel mortui vel capti sunt. Contritus[2] est autem exer-
citus Christianorum occisione, captivitate, fuga[3] mise-
rabili, inimicis vero suis spolia eorum detrahentibus
et dividentibus. Humiliavit ergo Deus populum suum,
inclinando calicem de manu sua, et propinando vinum
amaritudinis usque ad fæcem. Verumtamen fæx ejus
non est exinanita. Bibunt adhuc Sarraceni ex eodem
calice fæcem damnationis usque ad fundum. Super
hoc condoluit propheta David dicens:[4] "Populum tuum,
" Domine, humiliaverunt, et hereditatem tuam vexave-
" runt, viduam et advenam interfecerunt, et pupillos oc-
" ciderunt." Usquequo, Domine, hæc facient? "Donec
" fodiatur peccatori fovea, et justitia convertatur in
" judicium." Tunc quidem "reddet illis iniquitatem

[1] *esi*] Om. C.
[2] *Contritus*] Originally Contristatus in C.
[3] *fuga*] Altered to fugaque in V.
[4] *dicens*] Ps. xciii. 5, 13.

A.D. 1187. " ipsorum, et in malitia eorum disperdet eos," scilicet Sarracenos. O propheta, nobis quid dicis? Vos qui plantati estis in domo Domini et in atriis Ejus floretis, "Venite[1] exultemus Domino, etc., quoniam Deus " magnus Dominus, quia non repellet plebem suam, et " hereditatem suam non derelinquet."

Progress of Saladin. Altera autem die occiso principe Reginaldo Montis regalis, Templariis quoque et Hospitalariis sub pretio emptionis ab aliis Turcis comparatis atque occisis, mandavit Saladinus ad comitissam et ad viros qui erant in arce Tyberiadis, ut castellum relinquerent, atque accepta securitate vitæ quo vellent irent in pace. Qui et ita fecerunt, relicta civitate. Inde transiens Saladinus, munito castello, profectus est Saphorie, atque in loco quo exercitus Christianorum solebat habitare, jussit rex Syriæ figere tentoria sua, et sicut campum, f. 8 *b.* debellatis Christianis, obtinuerat, sic quoque et locum tabernaculorum. Ibi autem per aliquos dies demoratus est, celebrans gaudium victoriæ et dividens non heredibus hereditatem Crucifixi, sed ducibus et amiralibus suis nefandis, unicuique propriam partem designans. Interim de Saladino et factis ejus taceamus, qualiter scilicet perambulavit regionem Fenicis usque ad flumen Canis, et debellavit eam; atque quomodo frater ejus Sephidin et cæteri regionem Geraris et Philistinorum invaserunt dicamus.

De invasione Saphadini.

Saphadin, the brother of Saladin, overruns another portion of Palestine. Audiens autem Sephidin frater Saladini, quod Christiani essent devicti, (qui Sephidin jamdudum cum exercitu suo, quem de Ægypto conduxerat, ab reliquiis Jerusalem et habitatoribus regionis Geraris et Philistiim fugatus fuerat,) reversus est, et ascendit cum multitudine gravi, quam de Alexandria et Babylone et

[1] *Venite*] Ps. xciv. 1.

Campo Tafneos collegerat, super omnem regionem a Darone et Gazaris usque Jerusalem, et per circuitum usque Cæsaream Palestinam, omnes civitates et castella omnia confringendo, et interficiendo habitatores et captivando, et loca omnium possidendo, atque suis amiralibus partes terrarum largiter tribuendo. Et quoniam Ascalonem civitatem Palæstinæ regionis nobilissimam, muris fortissimis et altis turribus munitam, non poterat expugnare, sed neque castellum Gazaris militiæ Templi, transivit per castellum Ybelim, et debellavit, atque flammis tradidit. A.D. 1187.

De captione Joppen.

Inde applicuit ad civitatem Jopen; sed quia non erat munita, nec hominibus nec muris, præsertim cum fortes et valentes per mare ad civitatem Tyrum confugerant, debellavit eam et cepit cum multitudine hominum et feminaruam a quibus fuga perierat, et pretium nauli defecerat. Fit igitur strages magna et miserabilis per totam regionem, fœtorque intolerabilis cadaverum Christianorum, quoniam non erat locus in tota terra, in quo non jacerent corpora putrida et tumida, quia non erat qui sepeliret. Cæteri autem qui gladium et arma prophanorum non senserunt, relictis omnibus, ut corpora ad tempus salvarent, fugerunt in Jerusalem. Et isti quidem fugientes arma ferrea Babyloniorum, irruerunt in arcum æreum peccatorum suorum, secum scilicet portantes, quæ utinam in campestribus cum Babyloniis reliquissent. Joppa taken.

Percurrens denique Sephidin totam regionem illam, pervenit ad castellum quod vocatur Mirabel, atque obsidionem posuit, direxit machinas, et per aliquot dies sibi resistentes acerrime debellavit. Cumque viri qui erant in munitione viderunt se non posse resistere, pietate parvulorum et uxorum commoti, dextras postulabant. Data autem securitate, ejecit eos f. 9. Surrender of Mirabel,

A.D. 1187. inde, et ne ab aliis Sarracenis interficerentur in itinere, dedit duces usque[1] cccc. Turcos fortissimos, quatinus usque ad cœnobium S. Samuelis, quod situm est in monte Sylo, milliario secundo ab Jerusalem, deducerent salvos. Deduxerunt autem illos usque ad Montem Gaudii Jerusalem, sed fugati sunt et percussi a Templariis et a viris Jerusalem, ceciderunt que vulnerati multi per descensum montis Modin, et ita confusi redierunt.

The author's narrative of his own observations.

Perseverans autem Sephidin in maligna elatione mentis suæ contra ecclesiam Christi, omnia montana Belleem a meridie et occidente Jerusalem nefandissimis ministris in desolationem vastationis mittere præcepit. Et quoniam per diversas partes terram Jerusalem Sarraceni, qui cum Saladino erant, invaserunt, dignum quidem nobis videtur sicut vidimus et audivimus brevi et impolito sermone summatim perstringere, atque illis qui nesciunt vel non viderunt, sicut gestum est ostendere.

Progress of the Saracens.

Debellatis ergo Christianis, dimisit Saladinus exercitum suum, quatinus unusquisque cum suis proficisceretur, atque partem illam, quam datam[2] sibi cognoverat, expugnando habitatores obtineret. Profecti sunt autem veloci cursu, atque totam terram ita subito præoccupaverunt, ut nullus sibi vel alii posset adjutorium impendere. Dispersi igitur sunt cooperiendo superficiem terræ sicut locustæ. Ante omnes tamen et præ omnibus avari Turcomanni et Beduini bona Christianorum cupientes, campestria Saronis invaserunt, et ubi omnia animalia terræ simul collecta confugerant, ibi quoque avidius cupiditate rapiendi cucurrerent, atque habitatores impugnando acrius et perimentes eos ut bona eorum diriperent. Et isti quidem castellis et domibus non utuntur, sed tantum rapinam diligentes, de rapinis inter cæteros vivunt. Istis itaque

[1] *usque*] usque ad, V. | [2] *datam*] dadam, C.

percurrentibus et omnia campestria castella devastanti- A.D. 1187.
bus, a monte Carmeli, qui et Caifas vocatur, in cujus f. 9. *b.*
cacumine sita est ecclesia S. Elyæ prophetæ super alta rupe quæ respicit Tholomaidam contra mare, signum scilicet opportunum navigantibus, usque Assur transeuntes, et Joppe et Lidda et civitatem Rama, occidendo servos Christi et bona eorum diripiendo.

De captione Nazareth.

Alii quidem per civitatem Nazaret, (quæ interpreta- Nazareth taken.
qui tur flos sive munditia,) ascenderunt, et ecclesiam B. Virginis Mariæ effundendo sanguinem Christianorum, qui inibi confugerant causa munitionis, cruentaverunt,— ecclesiam, inquam, sanctam, et ob dulcedinem divini Verbi incarnati per totum mundum nominatam et a fidelibus honoratam. Hic vero Verbum Patris, sicut Evangelium testatur, incarnatum est, assumens quod non erat, manens quod erat. Hunc locum cœpit inhabitare quem locus non comprehendit; et Nazarenus vocari, cujus Nomen ineffabile ab omnibus creaturis in cœlo et in terra medicina salutis nominatur. O Domina, cujus nomen suave, lucem et securitatem et spem veniæ infundens peccatoribus, locum in quo illud Ave Gabrielis ab ore suscepisti, per quod Eva mutatur in melius, per quod et redemptus est mundus, et in quo loco tantum beneficium accepisti, ut mater Dei vocareris et esses, quare[1] dimisisti, et ab incredulis coinquinari et explanari[2] permisisti? Certe non dimisit, sed lavit atque purgavit, et mundavit a malis cultoribus per infideles ministros, donec cultores idonei eligantur, et secundum voluntatem et dispositionem gloriosæ Virginis introducantur.

[1] *quare*] Above the line in C.; cur, V.

[2] *explanari*] explanare, V.; C.

A.D. 1187. Destructa civitate, locisque sacris fœdatis, arripuerunt filii Sodomorum iter suum per abrupta montis, qui vocatur Saltus Domini, sicut in Evangelio legitur, quod indignati Pharisæi de verbis Jesu, ejecerunt Illum extra civitatem, et duxerunt Illum ad supercilium montis, super quem civitas illorum erat ædificata, ut præcipitarent illum. Inde transeuntes per latissimum campum, qui est inter montem Tabor et Legionem, dispersi sunt per campestria, omnia deprædantes, et percurrentes a monte Caim et castello militiæ Templi, quod vocatur Faba, usque [1] Legionem et Gesrael. Nemine autem eis resistente, transierunt per angusta itinera montium, et per ecclesiam Beati Job, (qui interpretatur Dolens,) verum Job nescientes, qui peccata nostra dolens portavit; qui etiam testa humanitatis suæ saniem peccatorum nostrorum radebat, atque vermes vitiorum, quos [2] Adam per inobedientiam comparaverat, per suæ carnis hostiam vivam Patri obediens offerendo extersit. Inde ascenderunt campum magnum Dotaym, cisternam quoque Joseph admirantes, venditionemque tractantes, et qualiter Ægyptum fame irruente providentia liberaverit, nostrum Joseph de supernis montibus a patre ad fratres, (scilicet, ad Judæos,) in campestria nostræ mortalitatis missum non attendentes, cujus venditio, emptio, mors, et resurrectio mundum a fame divini Verbi periclitantem sanavit.

De Samaria et Neapoli.

Terram autem ita devastando pervenerunt usque ad montem Someron, quondam Samaria, civitas regalis in Israel, a quo monte omnis illa regio nomen accepit

[1] *usque*] usque ad, V.

[2] *Vermes . . . quos*] In C. Vermes is in the margin and quos an interlineation; both by a contemporary hand.

Sorecd. Unde Dominus per prophetam, Plantavi,[1] in- A.D. 1187.
quit, vineam Sorecd. Et ne ab aliquo dubitaretur de qua vinea diceret, exponit dicens: Vinea enim Domini Sabaoth domus Israel est. Nunc quoque Sebasten vocatur, ubi conditæ sunt reliquiæ S. Johannis Baptistæ, Zachariæ et Elizabeht parentum ejus, sed et aliorum prophetarum multorum. Episcopum autem loci illius reperientes, hominem satis humanum et honestum, quem, ut thesauros ecclesiæ et margaritas porcis ostenderet, contumeliis multis afficientes, ad ultimum optata adipiscentes, nudum et diris verberibus flagellatum, data securitate vitæ, miserunt Accaron. Properabant autem filii Babylonis, ut Neapolim destruerent; sed quoniam viri Neapolitani omnes confugerant in Jerusalem, relinquentes omnia sua in civitate, neminem invenerunt, nisi paucos in castello, qui causa custodiendi suppellectilem burgensium, quam inibi comportaverant, reliquerant; illis quidem ejectis, possederunt castellum cum civitate.

Nec quidem tantis malis perpetratis satiati, sed prædam sitientes et montana Jerusalem videre cupientes, celeri cursu transierunt per ecclesiam in nomine Salvatoris ad radicem montis Garizim supra puteum Jacob ædificatam, juxta prædiolum quod dedit Jacob Joseph filio suo, super quo Dominus fatigatus ex itinere sedens cum muliere Samaritana loquebatur, f. 10, b.
dicens ei omnia quæcumque fecit. Inde ascenderunt montana, omniaque castella et villulas Francorum ex illa parte confringentes, et usque Jerusalem diu noctuque quicquid vivum inveniri poterat interficiendo, vel deprædando,[3] percurrentes vastaverunt. Alii autem ex altera parte montis Tabor, per Endor et Naun, et per medium magni campi, qui est

[1] *Plantavi*] See Jud. xvi. 4.
[2] *Vinea*] Isai. v. 7.
[3] *percurrentes deprædando*] The terminations of these two words have been altered in V.

A.D. 1187. inter montem Tabor et Belver, usque Betsan iter suum arripuerunt, atque per crepidinem Jordanis alvei usque Jerico properantes, et locum in quo Salvator noster xl. diebus et xl. noctibus, ut nos tentamenta diaboli et vitia carnis per jejunium vincere benigne doceret, jejunavit, debellatis habitatoribus atque ejectis, destruxerunt. Inde ascenderunt montana et castellum militum Templi, quod situm est in loco qui vocatur[1] Maledoim, (Latine autem Ascensus ruforum sive rubentium, propter sanguinem qui illic crebro a latronibus funditur, appellari potest,) vel sicut nos dicimus, Rubra Cisterna, nemine invento, possederunt. Istis igitur ita inter se montana Jerusalem per circuitum devastantibus, neminem sine mortis periculo sinebant exire vel intrare civitatem. Sic sicque Jerosolymitæ undique coangustati, et sine obsidione obsessi, longa exspectatione belli et timore venturæ famis in seipsos lacrimabiliter[2] tabescebant.

De captione urbis Achon.

Acre taken, 8 July. His ita prælibatis, ad caput tantæ iniquitatis stilum vertamus. Peracta denique tanta Christianorum cæde, cor Saladini elevatum est, credens se siderum altitudinem damnata vertice, præ nimia superbia elationis, tangere, duces et satrapas exercitus sui ad se jussit convocare. Quos ita ore superbo alloquitur: "Fortitudinem et spem Christianorum, scilicet Crucem, "regem, duces et equites, sagittarios et pedites, Deus "magnus et Maumeht, cui servio, et legem observo, "meis tradidit manibus. Et ecce tota terra plena "divitiis absque principe et defensore in conspectu
f. 11. "vestro est. Surgite ergo viri fortes, bellatores mei, "atque terram cum munitionibus meo subjicite im-"perio." In illa igitur hora præcepit rex Damasci

[1] *vocatur*] dicitur, V. | [2] *lacrimabliter*] lamentalibiter, V.

movere castra sua contra Accaron, ut si quid de populo Christianæ religionis reliquum fuisset, aut cervicem Maumeth numini nefando inclinasset, aut gladio feriretur. A.D. 1187.

Interim audito regali præcepto, ululantibus præ gaudio Persis, commotus est exercitus barbarorum, atque contra Accaron cœpit proficisci. Cum autem exercitus civitati appropinquasset, Accaronitæ qui relicti fuerant pauci de multis exierunt obviam Saladino de civitate, vociferantes et dextras sibi dare postulantes. Demum perpendens rex Syriæ simplicitatem illorum, animasque in manibus portantes, homines scilicet inermes, fidem et securitatem vitæ tuitionemque promisit, dicens: "Sciant omnes ad quos dominatio mea pro-
" tendit, Accaronitas clementiam pietatis meæ invenisse,
" ita scilicet ut quicumque Sarracenorum alicui Chris-
" tianorum de persona aut de rebus ad ipsos perti-
" nentibus injuriam aut damnum intulerit, periculum
" diræ mortis sciat se, meo imperio despecto, incur-
" risse."

Capta igitur civitate talem Christianis dedit libertatem, ut quicumque in terra marique cum suis vellet abscedere, abscederet; qui autem sub præsidium ejus remanere, tuti et secure remanerent; qui vero Filium Dei et Crucem victoriæ Ejus, diabolo instigante, vellet, proh dolor! polluto ore negare, cabanum sericum et sarbuissinum auro ornatum, equum et arma, amputato pelliculo membri verendi, ab ipso Saladino acciperet. Madens autem cæde et adhuc sitiens sanguinem Christianorum Saladinus[1] rex Babylonis unum de filiis suis causa custodiendi civitatis reliquit. Ipse vero in elatione pessimæ mentis suæ profectus est terram Fœnicis regionis cum suis civitatibus suo subjugare dominio, sperans sibi et errori suo magnum commodum

[1] *Saladinus*] In the margin of C. by a second hand.

A.D. 1187. acquisisse, si nomen Crucifixi cum habitatoribus terræ posset delere.

De Tyro et Sidone.

f. 11, *b.* Tyre invested. Profectus est ergo cum magna festinatione in partes Tyri civitatis, muris fortissimis et altis turribus, atque maris procinctu satis munitæ, quam quia ira et dolor Christianitatis consilio et virtute armaverat, virum quoque nobilem, armis fortem et bellicosum marchisium, animo et dicto et facto virilem, quem nec prece, nec pretio, nec minis, nec blandis sermonibus poterat seducere, sed omnibus modis probatum et paratum invenit, transivit, quatinus finitimas civitates, Sareptam scilicet, ubi Elias quondam officio viduæ tempore famis quantitate parvæ farinulæ et modici olei sustentatus est. Sidonem quoque et Brito atque Biblem sua ferocitate debellavit, atque ejectis habitatoribus et in captivitate redactis, suis hominibus munivit et concito gradu reversus est. Residente igitur per aliquot dies Accaron, exercitum suum, qui dispersus fuerat per terram Galilææ et Samariæ, præcepit coadunare, quatinus fratri suo Sephidino, qui erat in campestria Geraris circa Ascalonem adjuvaret. Profectique sunt de Accaron et cooperuerunt[1] superficiem terræ sicut locustæ a mari magno usque Jerusalem, quia tanta erat multitudo Sarracenorum quasi arena quæ est in littore maris, quam nemo dinumerare potest.

Expugnatio Ascalonis.

Ascalon besieged. Denique rex Ægypti obsidionem civitati Ascalonæ posuit, erexitque machinas, et cœperunt acerrimo animo pugnare. At vero Ascalonitæ licet pauci, tamen prompti animo, fortitudine quoque murorum confisi, per

[1] *cooperuerunt*] Originally in V. cooperunt.

quindecim dies viriliter defendentes se defendebant. A.D. 1187.
Considerans autem Saladinus animositatem Christianorum, erexit decem balistas ad lapides jaciendos, quatinus de longe et sine damno suorum murum civitatis die noctuque conquassaret, et ad terram præcipitaret. Lapidabant igitur muros et turres civitatis sine cessatione, atque usque ad fundamenta se præcipitaverunt. Interea misit rex Babylonis legatos ad Templarios, qui erant in castello Gazaris, ubi quondam Sanson fortissimus, ut de inimicis suis simul congregatis moriendo trumpharet, palatium Gazaris resumptis viribus præcipitans, atque f. 12.
mole ipsius ruinæ oppressus cum ipsis hostibus victor occubuit; dicens: "Videte et diligenter considerate "quid acturi sitis, atque de vita et salute vestra "diligenti animo tractate. Nam oculis vestris pro-"spicitis quod Deus tradidit terram in manibus meis: "tamen faciam vobiscum misericordiam quatinus sani "et incolumes, accepta vitæ vestræ et vestrorum se-"curitate, exeuntes relinquatis castellum." At illi fiduciam in fortitudine Ascalonis habentes, responderunt: Tali exibimus conditione, quali et Ascalonitæ.

Interim muri civitatis conquassati et jam pene usque Ascalon surrenders, 4 Sept. 1187.
ad fundamenta præcipitati sunt,[1] ita ut Sarraceni si vellent vel auderent per planum poterant ad Christianos intrare. Timens igitur Saladinus, ne mora generaret sibi divortium, cœpit per regem quem ibi tenebat in vinculis, et per fratrem regis, et per alios, aures Christianorum appellare, quatinus conditione facta, illi qui auxilium vel adjutorium aliorum Christianorum terra marique minime poterant habere, relicta civitate cum omnibus suis in pace abscederent. Congregati sunt ergo Ascalonitæ, consilium suæ salutis et aliorum qui erant in vinculis, invicem tractantes, perpendentesque civitatem suis viribus non posse defendere, tale dedere consilium.

[1] *sunt*] Above the line in C.

A.D. 1187. " Nos quidem fortitudinem et potentiam tuam, Deo
" permittente, in terra scimus esse permaximam ; nobis
" vero Christianis morte vel tribulatione pro Christi
" nomine occupatis aditum regni cœlestis aperire.
" Tamen placet infirmis adhuc in fide, et aliis non
" paucis, quorum compassioni propter fraternæ dilecti-
" onis amorem compati oportet, ita dexteram fœdera-
" tionis a vobis accipere, quatinus regem et episcopum
" S. Georgii, et fratrem regis, xii quoque de melioribus
" captivis, quos catenæ tuæ ferocitatis sub dira custodia
" tenent, nobis solutos restituas. Nobis vero xl. dies,
" in quibus nostra vendere et providere indulgeas, at-
" que centum familias, quibus sub tua defensione in
" civitate placet remanere, ad tempus dimittas, cæte-
" rosque cum suis omnibus salvos usque Tripolim
" deducere facias." Placuit ergo sermo iste in oculis Saladini, atque petitioni Ascalonitarum libenter jussit annuere.

f. 12 *b*. Anno MCLXXXVII., mense Septembri, iiii. die mensis, feria vi., hora nonâ, obscuratus est sol, atque sub ipsa obscuritate exeuntes majores natu Ascalonitarum venerunt [1] in castra Ægyptiorum, atque ibi coram Sarracenis super hanc conventionem Christiani et principes Damascenorum sacramentum stabilitatis hujus rei fecerunt. Mane autem facto, tradiderunt Ascalonitæ claves civitatis Sarracenis, atque in introitu portarum residentibus Turcis, ordinavit Saladinus sicut placuit illi de civitate. Et quoniam civitas ista quasi munimen et firmamentum erat terræ Jerusalem, audita fama captionis Ascalonis Jerosolymitæ, tam munitæ civitatis, elanguit omnis virtus eorum, atque lamentabili dolore, viribusque destituti, lamentabantur, scientes quod sicut fecerat Ascaloni, faceret vel pejus et Jerusalem.

[1] *venerunt*] veneruntque, C. V.

De destructione Bethleem et de obsidione Jerusalem.

Collectis denique Saladinus in unum viribus, ordinata civitate, præcepit ducibus et amiralibus suis ordinare exercitum, atque cum fortitudine et magni terroris impetu montana Jerusalem ascendere. Motus est ergo exercitus, atque per campestria profectus usque Besigebelim, id est Bersabe, puteus scilicet septimus propter septem agnas ab Abraham ibi immolatas sic appellatus ; vel puteus juramenti, eo quod Abraham et Abimelec rex Geraris ibi inierunt fœdus jurationis. Figuraturque in hoc fœdus quod inierunt fideles supra fontem septimum, id est baptismi, qui in virtute septiformis Spiritus Sancti conjuratur, benedicitur et consecratur. Misit autem Saladinus nuntios ad Hospitales qui erant in munitione [1] Bellehem,[2] ut seipsos et castellum voluntati ejus traderent, atque cum cæteris transmigratis in pace migrarent. At illi respondentes dixerunt : " Talem sortem exspectamus, qualem et Jerusalem." Arripientes demum iter suum filii Babylonis per montana usque Jerusalem, nomen Christi et Crucem nostræ redemptionis inter se polluto ore garriendo blasphemantes. A.D. 1187. Saladin advances towards Jerusalem.

Denique ista sunt loca sancta territorii sanctæ civitatis Jerusalem, quæ a prophanis desolata atque destructa sunt ; Belleem scilicet, civitas David, nobile triclinium, ubi mater gloriosa, Virgo in partu, Virgo post partum, sine dolore et corruptione suum et omnium Creatorem, Filium Dei, operante Spiritu Sancto, exsultantibus angelis cum gaudio genuit, atque pannis involutum in illud præsepe, sedem scilicet Dei, secundam post cœlum, pabulum vitæ bovi et asino, scilicet Judæo et Gentili, castis manibus Virgo porrigendo collocavit. Alii quidem ad montem sanctum Sylo properantes, ubi Bethlehem and other towns captured by the Saracens. f. 13.

[1] *munitione*] In marg. in V.

[2] *Bellehem*] In the margin of C. by a second hand.

A.D. 1187. quondam filii Israel illud mirabile tabernaculum cum utensilibus suis tetenderunt. In quo loco S. Samuel, mitissimus et sanctissimus omnium prophetarum, Deo de cœlo clamante, "Samuel, Samuel," ore innocente mundo ab omni labe contagionis respondit, "Lo- "quere, Domine, quia audit servus tuus;" ubi nunc constructum est cœnobium canonicorum Præmonstratensium in honore S. Samuelis, cujus preces cum precibus Moysi et Aaron apud Deum fusæ nostrorum veniam impetrent peccatorum. De hac quidem destructione propheta David gemens in Psalmo [1] aiebat: "Repulit Deus tabernaculum Sylo, etc." Hic est denique verax propheta, cujus verba non ceciderunt in terra, quia quicquid prophetabat, rebus gestis demonstrabatur. Hic quoque filios Israel judicavit in Masphat. Et ut sciamus quali judicio eos judicasset, tradunt Hebræi quod aqua erat in Masphat, in qua coram Domino maledicta congesta sunt, ita scilicet ut quicumque idolatra hausisset, et coram Domino et propheta Samuele gustasset, labia ejus ita sibi adhærerent, ut nequaquam ea ab invicem separare posset. Sic quoque idolatra comprehensus ab omni populo jussu prophetæ secundum Legem lapidatus est, ne alii exemplo illius seducti, pro Deo idola vana coluissent.

Bethany destroyed.

Alii vero Bethaniam, quæ domus obedientiæ interpretatur, destruentes, ubi Dominus Lazarum quatriduanum mortuum precibus Mariæ et Marthæ sororum ejus humiliter deprecatus, fremensque in seipso mortalitatem nostram et miseriam deplorans, magna voce vocavit de monumento; ubi Dominus [a] Phariseo [2] ad convivium [3] invitatus, a Maria nardi pistici unguento, osculando pedes et lacrymis rigando, humiliter est perunctus. In quo castello aliis describitur Dominum

[1] *Psalmo*] Ps. lxxvii. 60.

[2] *Pharisæo*] Simone leproso, on an erasure in V.

[3] *convivium*] Upon an erasure in C.

intrasse, atque Martham circa multa in ministrando occupatam Eum in domo suscepisse ; Mariam vero sororem ejus ad pedes Domini verba oris Ejus audiendos edisse atque unum quod necessarium est, Domino attestante elegisse. Alii quidem montem sanctissimum Oliveti devastantes, ubi Dominus, sicut in Evangelio legitur, sæpe orare, opera misericordiæ docere, sedereque cum discipulis suis consuevit. In quo fabricata est ecclesia ubi Dominus noster Jesus Christus xl. die resurrectionis suæ, videntibus apostolis, assumptus est in cœlum. In cujus medio opus miræ rotunditatis et decoris erectum est, ubi steterunt pedes Domini ; quem locum fideles Christiani vestigio Salvatoris pressum recognoscentes, cum magna veneratione deosculantur. Inter hæc autem ecclesiam Assumptionis B. Mariæ Virginis Josaphat prophani profanatis manibus contaminaverunt, atque locum gloriosum, omnibus Christianis debita laude venerandum, sepulturæ gloriosæ Virginis et matris Christi multis spurcitiis fœdantes destruxerunt. Supra cujus sepulchrum constructum erat opus quadratum, auro, argento et cælaturis, uti decebat, mira pulchritudinis varietate decoratum. Hic est ille locus qui vocatur Gessemani, trans torrentem Cedron, ubi erat hortus, in quem introivit Jesus cum discipulis suis, cœna novi sacramenti jam celebrata. Ibi vero discipulis suis orare ne inciderent in tentationem admonuit. In quo loco constructa est ecclesia in nomine Salvatoris, eo quod Salvator et Redemptor mundi pro salute generis humani Deum Patrem ibi supplicavit.

A.D. 1187.

f. 13.

De ineffabili angustia Hierosolymitanorum.

Vicesima igitur die mensis Septembris sancta civitas Jerusalem obsessa est, atque undique ab incredulis cum magno clangore tubarum, terrore armorum, strepitu et ululatu vociferantium, "Hai, Hai," undique

Commencement of the siege of Jerusalem, 21 Sept. 1187.

A.D. 1187. vexillis ventilantibus circumdata. Commota est ergo civitas a fremitu et tumultu barbarorum, atque per horarum momenta conclamabant: "Vera Crux sancta et "Sepulchrum Resurrectionis Jesu Christi, protege civi- "tatem Jerusalem cum habitatoribus suis." Commissum est ergo bellum, et cœperunt ex utraque parte audacter pugnare. Et quoniam dolore et mœrore tantæ miseriæ confecti, omnes congressus et concursus Turcorum, quibus Christianos per xv. dies fatigabant, nequimus numerare, sicut cætera quæ gesta sunt, quæ tædium absque utilitate scribenti et audienti generant, omittamus. Quis vero pro tam magni doloris pietate omnibus prætermissis non erumpat in fletibus, cum
f. 14. monachos hinc et canonicos, sacerdotes et levitas, eremitas et anachoritas senio affectos, pro sanctis sanctorum et hereditate Crucifixi armatos incedere, armaque videret gestare? illinc viduas, orphanos, puerosque brachiis ad Dominum extensis per ecclesias et plateas catervatim et squalenti vulti incedere, oreque iunocenti lacrymabiliter conclamare, divinamque clementiam, sanctorumque patrocinia incessanter implorare? Quæ lingua autem valet narrare quanti Sarraceni lanceis et sagittis perforati vitalem flatum amiserunt, et mortem [1] perpetuam invenerunt? Quis vero potest dicere qualiter ille nepos Saladini, fastu superbiæ deceptus, sericis vestibus nobiliter usque ad ungulam equi indutus, atque speculis mulierum auro insertus, præ nimia animi sui superbia phaleratus, a quodam serviente ante portam S. Stephani percussus, miserabili morte interiit interfectus? Vel quis potest narrare quanti Christiani telis adversariorum vulnerati temporalem vitam pro Christo amittentes, vitam meruerunt æternam? In illis itaque diebus in quibus Deus videbatur regere civitatem, quis valet dicere qualiter ille percussus obiit, ille vulneratus evasit? Cadebant autem sagittæ sicut

[1] *mortem*] originally partem in C., but altered by the first hand.

stillæ pluviarum, ita ut nemo digitum ad propugna- A.D. 1187.
cula sine læsione poterat ostendere. Erat vero tanta multitudo vulneratorum, ut vix omnes medici civitatis vel hospitalis tela corporibus infixa valebant extrahere. Nam et facies hæc referentis sagitta per medium nasum infixa vulnerata est, atque extracto ligno ferrum usque hodie permansit. Certabant autem Jerosolymitæ per unam hebdomadam satis viriliter, sedente exercitu contra turrim David.

Videns denique Saladinus quod nihil proficeret, nec sic quidem posse damnare civitatem, cœpit cum suis circuire et infirma civitatis perscrutari,[1] quærendo locum ubi machinas suas sine timore Christianorum posset erigere, et civitatem levius oppugnare. Et quoniam filius illius erat, qui in execrabili mentis suæ superbia solium suum in latere aquilonis disponebat ponere, ut non sub Deo, sed contra Deum regnaret, et sic quoque similis esset Altissimo, angulum civitatis versus aquilonem infirmum et aptum ad sua scelera perficienda invenit. Quadam autem die aurora apparente jussit rex (id est, Saladinus)[2] Ægypti sine strepitu et tumultu movere castra, atque in valle Josaphat et per montem Oliveti et per montem Gaudii, et per omnia montana ex illa parte figere tentoria. Mane autem facto, viri Jerusalem levantes oculos, et videntes, recedente nebularum caligine, quod Sarraceni levabant tentoria, tamquam incipientes abire, gavisi sunt gaudio magno, et dicebant: "Fugit quidem rex Syriæ, eo quod "non potest sicut cogitaverat destruere civitatem." Sed hæc lætitia citius in luctum et lamentationem conversa est, cognita rei veritate. Nam tyrannus jussit ibidem statim[3] construere machinas et erigere balistas, ramos olivarum et aliarum arborum simul contrahere,

The walls battered.

f. 14 *b*.

[1] *perscrutari*] perscrutare MSS.
[2] *id est, Saladinus*] in the margin of C.
[3] *statim*] in the margin of C.

A.D. 1187. et inter civitatem et machinas fortiter collocare; atque in ipso[1] crepusculo jussit exercitum arma arripere, ruptores murorum cum ferramentis procedere, quatinus antequam Christiani operam darent de hoc, usque ad fundamenta murorum omnes essent parati. Constituit autem crudelissimus tyrannus usque ad decem millia equites armatos in equis cum lanceis et arcubus, ut si viri civitatis vellent exire, obstarent eis. Alia vero decem millia, vel eo amplius, bene armatos usque ad talum constituit, sub scutis et tarciis cum arcubus ad sagittandum; cæteros quoque cum seipso et cum ducibus circa machinas retinuit. Sic itaque ordinati, summo mane cœperunt rumpere turrim angularem, et muros per circuitum incidere, sagittarii sagittare, illi qui circa machinas vehementer lapidare. At vero viri civitatis nihil tale æstimantes, civitatem et muros sine custodia dimittentes, fatigati et tædio affecti, dormierunt usque mane, quia nisi Dominus custodierit civitatem, frustra vigilit qui custodit eam.

Orto denique jam sole, illi qui in turribus dormierant strepitu barbarorum expergefacti, videntes hæc, præ timore exterriti et exstupefacti velut amentes conclamabant per civitatem; "Viri Jerosolimitæ accurrite, "succurrite, adjuvate; jam jamque muris perforatis alieni "intrant." Commoti autem per civitatem accurrerunt fortitudine qua poterant, nec valuerunt ultra Damas-
f. 15. cenos neque telis, neque lanceis, neque sagittis, neque lapidibus, nec ære[2] et plumbo liquefactis a muris amovere. Lapidabant vero Turci sine cessatione vehementer ad propugnacula, et inter murum et antemurale, jaciendo lapides et ignem quem Græcum vocant, ligna et lapides et quidquid attigerit consumentem.[3] Sagittarii autem sine cessatione et mensura ex omni parte mittebant sa-

[1] *ipso*] an interlineation in C.
[2] *nec ære*] V. Originally in C. ne ignere; altered to ne here.
[3] *consumentem*] V. consumantem C.

gittas; cæteri vero audacter fregere muros. Interim viri Jerusalem iniere consilium, ut omnes quotquot habere equos et arma possent, de civitate egredientes, constanter per portam quæ ducit Josaphat exirent, quatinus sic, Deo concedente, adversarios a muris aliquantulum expellerent. Sed vetiti [1] sunt a Turcis qui in equis erant, et lacrymabiliter repulsi, cunctis per murum conclamantibus, "Sancta Maria, sancta Maria, adjuva nos:" nec ultra quidem aditus exeundi patebat Christianis. Fit igitur planctus, fletus et tumultus flentium, et vestimenta præ angustia et dolore per ecclesias et plateas scindentium. Nam alii quidem plangebant sanctam civitatem et sepulchrum Domini, montemque sanctissimum Calvariæ, ubi sanguis propitiationis pro salute generis humani effusus est: alii autem plangebant fratres et amicos jam interfectos, vel morti proximos: alii filios jam jamque telis barbarorum ablaturos: cæteri omnes communem dolorem mortis vel captivitatis sibi et cæteris jam imminere. A.D. 1187.

Pugnabant igitur Chaldæi crudeli certamine per aliquot dies, et prævaluerunt. Jam vero Christiani ita defecti erant, ut vix viginti vel triginta ad defensiones murorum civitatis apparebant: nec inveniebatur homo tam audax in omni civitate, qui pro pretio centum bisantiorum auderet una nocte ad defensionem vigilare. Ego siquidem auribus meis audivi sub voce præconia ex parte domini patriarchæ et cæterorum magnorum civitatis inter murum magnum et antemurale conclamare, ut si quinquaginta servientes fortes et audaces inventi fuissent, qui angulum jam dirutum armis ad eorum voluntatem acceptis illa nocte tantum custodirent, quinque millia bisantiorum accepissent; nec fuerunt inventi. Erat autem jam pene [2] una voluntas, scilicet in simplicitate sua, et in sancta civitate in confessione Christi mori, atque sic unusquisque portionem suam Details of the siege. f. 15 *b*.

[1] *vetiti*] veriti, C. V. | [2] *pene*] pene omnibus, V.

A.D. 1187. Terræ Promissionis, in quantum cadaver suum a gentibus pro Christo conculcatum jacuisset, obtineret. Væ mihi misero, omnibusque peccatoribus deteriori, quod portionem meam Terræ Sanctæ tali funiculo mensurationis non accepi! Inter hæc homines Jerusalem inhabitantes, humum suam peccatis plenam plus quam Christum diligentes, pulchrarum mulierum, filiorum et filiarum, mammonæ quoque cui serviebant recordatione commoti, consiliati sunt quatinus cum his omnibus, sancta civitate locisque sacris relictis, evaderent.

De tributo Jerososilimitanis imposito.

The garrison wishes to treat with Saladin.

Interim miserunt legatos ad regem[1] Syriæ, supplicantes quatinus indignationem animi sui circa eos tempareret, atque sicut cæteras gentes eos etiam haberet fœderatos.[2] At illo renuente, tale fertur dedisse responsum: "Ego vero a sapientibus nostris "Alphachinis frequenter audivi Jerusalem non posse "mundari nisi sanguine Christianorum lavetur, atque "super hoc eorum volo habere consilium." Et sic incerti redierunt. Miserunt et alios, Balisanum et Rainerium Neapolenses et Thomam Patricium, centum millia bisantiorum offerentes; nec voluit eos recipere, et spe frustati reversi sunt. Remiserunt itaque eos iterum cum aliis flagitantes quatinus ipse Saladinus conventionem quam vellet diceret; et si fieri posset, fieret; sin autem, ad interitum sui remanerent. Accepto itaque consilio, tale tributum Jerosolymitis instituit, quatinus unusquisque masculus decem annorum et supra pro sui liberatione decem bisantios persolveret, femina quinque, puer septem annorum et infra unum; et sic a servitute liberati, quo vellent, cum suorum securitate securi abirent. Si vero talis fœde-

[1] *regem*] Saladinum, added in the margin of C.

[2] *fœderatos*] confœderatos, V.

ratio Jerosolymitis non placeret, vel qui decem bisantia non haberent, præda[1] hostibus in ore gladii devorantis existerent. Placuit ergo sermo iste domino patriarchæ et cæteris qui pecunias habebant. Mirabile factum! Quis unquam audivit talia? heres dedit pretium ut ab hereditate fieret alienus. Quis unquam dato pretio reliquit hereditatem? Alii quidem pugnando morti se opponunt, ne ignavia suæ pigritiæ degeneres parentum fiant, hereditatemque cum sui confusione et opprobrio improbitatis amittant. Isti vero ne heredes fiant, hereditatemque amittant, pretio cum opprobrio perversitatis comparant. Plangit autem inter istos Jeremias propheta, lamentando et revocando ab errore, si possibile esset, dicens:[2] "Quomodo sedet sola civi- "tas plena populo?" etc. Quinque hic commemorantur, scilicet sessio, sola, plena, vidua, domina. Sedet autem civitas judicans judicia injusta. Sedet in cinere, et in sui sceleris pollutione. Nam si staret in virtute æquitatis,[3] pugnaret utique contra hostes iniquitatis. Sola autem dicitur sine auxilio et protectione Dei, sine veris Christi cultoribus. Sola a dilectione Dei et proximi, unde Salomon: "Væ soli,[4] quia si ceciderit, non "habet sublevantem." Plena populo, populo iniquo et tumultuante et non pœnitente, populo gravi iniquitate, de quo Isaias: "Populus[5] hic labiis me honorat, cor "autem eorum longe est a me." Vidua vero commemoratur a pontificali dignitate et regali potestate; vidua, annulo fidei amisso; vidua, quoniam chyrographum sponsi sui Christi intrantibus Sarracenis amisit. Et tamen domina dicitur, quia omnes tribus terræ sub ejus parte redigentur. A.D. 1187. f. 16.

Feria igitur vi., die secundo Octobris, recitata est hæc conventio per plateas Jerusalem, quatinus unus- Jerusalem surrenders, 2 Oct. 1187.

[1] *præda*] prada, C.
[2] *dicens*] Thren. i. 1.
[3] *æquitatis*] V.; æqualitatis, C.
[4] *Væ soli*] Eccle. iv. 10.
[5] *Populus*] Isai. xxix. 13.

A.D. 1187. quisque per spatia xl. dierum sibi provideret, taleque tributum quale prædictum est pro sui liberatione Saladino persolvisset. His autem auditis, vulgus per civitatem lamentabili voce lugebat dicens: "Væ, væ, no-"bis miseris, quid faciemus qui aureos non habemus? "Maluimus et melius esset nobis mori pro Christo in "sancta civitate, quam sub dira servitute Turcis et Sar-"racenis pollutis et immundis, relicta sancta terra pro-"missionis, servire." Quis unquam poterat cogitare tale nefas a Christianis perpetrari? Sepulchrum resurrectionis Christi et nobile Templum et sanctissimum montem Syon, et cætera loca sanctæ civitatis, sponte in manibus gentium tradere? Proh dolor! non est dolor similis dolori isti. Nusquam legimus Judæos sancta
f. 16 *b.* sanctorum absque effusione sanguinis et duro certamine deseruisse, nec tamen sponte tradidisse. Pereant isti mercatores pessimi, qui secundo Christum et sanctam civitatem vendiderunt, sicut ille mercator malignus, qui suspensus crepuit medius, et quod pejus est, diffusa sunt omnia viscera malignitatis ejus in istis, scilicet et in illis, qui pro impositione manuum et ecclesiasticis sacramentis munera exigunt. De istis iterum Jeremias:[1] "Sed et lamiæ nudaverunt mammas," id est, quales intus extiterant in mente, foras demonstraverunt in opere. "Et lactaverunt catulos suos," malam scilicet conscientiam et concupiscentiam avaritiæ suæ, ita scilicet in aliena regione, sicut in illa, falsis ponderibus et variis sacramentis decipere proximos meditantes. Lamia siquidem effigiem hominis ostendit in vultu, sed corpus et sensum bellinum trahit. "Fiant[2] "ergo filii eorum orphani, et uxóres eorum viduæ in "terra aliena," qui hereditatem Crucifixi et suam moribus et vita honesta et exemplo præcedentium noluerunt vendicare.

[1] *Jeremias*] Thren. iv. 3.

[2] *Fiant*] Ps. cviii. 9.

Quomodo urbs Hierusalem tradita est Saladino.

Anno igitur MCLXXXVII. ab Incarnatione Domini nostri Jesu Christi, mense Octobris, tertia die mensis, unde quidam:— A.D. 1187. Conduct of the Saracens.

"Terdecimis demptis ab annis mille ducentis
Tertia lux luxit Octobris, et urbs sacra luxit,
Quinto idus Octobris D. littera Dominicalis,
Deleta est civitas die Sabbati, et deriserunt
Increduli Sabbata cordium Christianorum."

Traditaque est Jerusalem, proh dolor! in manibus nefandorum a nefandis Christianis, et clausæ sunt januæ, positis custodibus. Igitur Alphachini et Cassini, ministri scilicet nefandi erroris, episcopi et presbyteri, secundum opinionem Sarracenorum, primum Templum Domini, quod Beithhalla vocant, et quo magnam salvationis habent fiduciam, quasi causa[1] orationis et religionis, ascenderunt, mundare æstimantes quod spurcitiis et mugitibus horribilibus, legem Maumeti pollutis labiis vociferando "Halla haucaber, Halla haucaber," polluerunt. Coinquinaverunt omnia loca quæ in Templo continentur; locum scilicet præsentationis, ubi mater et Virgo gloriosa Maria Filium Dei, ut Eum secundum legem Moysi Domino sisteret, in manibus justi Symeonis tradidit. Et locum (scilicet confessionis) respicientem contra porticum Salomonis, ubi Dominus mulierem in adulterio deprehensam a dura lege et lapidea, et a lapidatione Judæorum, judicium mutans in misericordiam et legem in gratiam, digito scribente in terra, "Qui[2] sine peccato est, primus in illam lapidum mittat," liberavit. Locum etiam contra Orientem, ubi Judæi Jacobum justum, fratrem Domini propter similitudinem f. 17.

[1] *causa*] om. V. | [2] *Qui*] Joh. viii. 7.

A.D. 1187. vultus dictum, de pinna templi propter verbum et testimonium Jesu Christi præcipitaverunt, atque vecte fullonis percussum occiderunt.

De præcipitatione aureæ crucis.

The cross overthrown.

Auream quoque crucem, sicut et cæteras per omnem, civitatem, funibus innexis, de pinna Templi, ad opprobrium Christianorum, cum magnis clamoribus, subsannando et deridendo adoratores crucis, flentibus Christianis, crines et vestes rumpentibus, pectora et capita tundentibus, præ dolore et tristitia et nimia cordis anxietate jam pene deficientibus, præcipitaverunt. Posuerunt etiam custodes, ne quis Christianorum septa atrii Templi intraret, unde Jeremias: "Repulit[1] "Dominus altare suum, maledixit sanctificationi suæ." Et iterum: "Propter peccata sacerdotum et iniqui- "tates populorum, alieni in domo Domini vocem "dederunt, sicut in die solemni." Ascendit autem ex altera parte Sephidin montem sanctum Sion, atque ecclesiam, novi sacramenti celebratione, frequentatione et orationibus apostolorum et gloriosæ Virginis Mariæ post Ascensionem Domini, adventu Spiritus Sancti super apostolos in die Pentecostes, dormitione B. Mariæ, salutatione Dómini post resurrectionem, dicentis discipulis "Pax[2] vobis," sanctificatam, sui et suorum inhabitantium immunditiis, comessatione, potatione, luxuria, sancta loca et se et suos polluere non metuit. Interim sepulchrum Domini denudatum et omni ornatu exspoliatum est, patulumque omnibus Christianis et Sarracenis commixtim intrantibus; et etiam locus ubi vestigia crucis nostræ redemptionis in monte sancto apparent; dextra parte habentia fissuram magnam in ipso lapide ubi sanguis et aqua de latere Salvatoris in

[1] *Repulit*] Thren. ii. 7. | [2] *Pax*] Luc. xxiv. 26.

cruce pendentis in terra profluxerunt, denudatus et exspoliatus est.[1] A.D. 1187–1188.

Quomodo Salahadinus totam terram Judeæ fere obtinuit.

Civitatem Jerusalem circiter octoginta novem annis gens nostra tenuerat, ex quo ipsam pariter cum Antiochia victoriosa Christianorum recuperavit potentia, cum eam, gentiles prius per annos xl.[2] possedissent. Infra breve tempus Saladinus toto regno Jerosolymitano fere potitus, legem Mahumeti magnificentius extulit, et eam Christianæ religioni præcellere rerum gestarum eventu pro posse probabat. Talia dum agerentur, archiepiscopus Tyri, navi conscensa, tantæ cladis nuntium orbi Christiano detulit, ad lacrymas innumeros concitans, et plures ad vindictam accendens. Primus omnium magnanimus Pictaviæ comes Ricardus, ob ulciscendam Crucis injuriam cruce insignitur, et omnes præcedit facto, quas invitat exemplo. Similiter pater ejus rex Henricus jam vergens in senium, cum rege Philippo et fere universi proceres utriusque regni apud Gisortium crucizantur. Ad tam insigne certamen omnium fervebat studium, et etiam de claustris, abjectis cucullis, migrabant ad castra. Fredericus vero imperator cum suis crucem suscipiens, in comitatu suo habuit septem antistites, cum uno archipræsule, duos duces, comites decem et novem, tres marchiones, tria millia militum, reliquorum circiter octoginta millia, per Hungariam et Constantinopolim transiens. Ejus exercitus graves impugnationes pertulit a Soldano Iconii, antequam Iconium armata manu caperet. Deinde f. 17 *b*. Saladin's proceedings.

[1] *exspoliatus est*] Here on the bottom margin of the Cotton MS. are written with a style three words, the first is illegible, the second and third are Ricard' explicit.

[2] *xl.*] C. In V. the reading is ccc. et lx., partly above the line, partly on an erasure.

A.D. 1188. in Armeniam veniens imperator, in flumine Selefii submergitur, ejusque filius dux Suaviæ super exercitum erigitur. Rumor vero de submersione imperatoris Turcos in Achon a Christianis obsessos valde lætificavit, atque Christicolas cum magna penuria obsidentes, fere usque ad desperationem contristavit.

Siege of Acre by the Christians.

Rex autem Guido cum apud Damascum per annum fere tentus fuisset in vinculis, Salahadinus illum absolvit, facta quadam pactione, et abjurato regno, mare quam citius exul transiret. Cumque rex veniret[1] Tyrum, a marchisio non recipitur, unde Achon petit cum Pisanis et exercitu non modico, urbemque terra marique obsident. Ad hanc obsidionem primo venit classis borealium virorum numero xii. millium. Postea applicuit Jacobus de Avennes, figens tentoria ex adverso turris maledictæ, et paulo ulterius Templarii tendunt.

f. 18. Sane de regno Francorum et Anglorum jam plurimi veniebant, regibus suis non exspectatis. Inter alios venit episcopus Belvacensis cum Roberto fratre suo comite. Venit comes Brenensis et comes de Baro, et Flandrenses plurimi. De Germania venit quidam Landegrave cum Alemannis, qui marchionem a rege Guidone dissentientem Achon venire persuasit. Christiani castra gentilium vicina insiliunt; sed ab oppidanis infestantur, et utrimque multi cæduntur, inter quos et Gerardus de Bedefordia, magister Templi, occubuit. Dum quidam Alemannus cum sociis suis equum fugientem insequeretur, subito exorsus est clamor quod oppidani obsessi exierant ad diripiendas sarcinas. Exinde bellorum ordo confunditur, disperguntur cunei, nullus signorum respectus, ipsi duces ad fugam præcipites fiunt. Ex hac turbatione Turci audaciam resumentes, de nostris quamplurimos prosternunt. Sed Christiani de die in diem crescentes, dum fossatis circa urbem faciendis intendunt, graviter sæpius a Turcis læduntur.

[1] *veniret*] venisset, V.

Turci infra Achon dum famem paterentur, et deditionem urbis obsidentibus offerrent, subvenit Salahadinus l. galeis missis, viris, victualibus et armis onustis, quibus galeæ nostræ captæ sunt et fugatæ et quamdam navem nostram victualibus onustam secum violenter in urbem abduxerunt, suspenderuntque omnes in navi repertos in circuitu murorum in die festo Omnium Sanctorum. A.D. 1189.

Cum jam Pascha instaret marchisus, qui classis reparandæ causa Tyrum secesserat, a Tyro cum ingenti apparatu et copia virorum et armorum et victualium revertitur. Sed obsessi ereptam sibi libertatem æquoris gravius sustinentes, cum galeis suis obviam venientibus procedunt, navali prælio pugnaturi. Sed, Deo volente, victoria cessit Christianis. Interim Turci qui exterius Christicolas obsidebant, fossata nostra terra implebant, nostrisque intra positis feroces faciebant insultus. Unde nunquam securitas, nunquam requies dabatur. Angebantur undique, nunc se observantes ab obsessis in urbe, nunc ab exteriori exercitu Salahadini continue eorum cervicibus imminenti, nunc a parte maris galeis eorum sedentibus in insidiis. Tres turres ligneas nostri fecerant, quibus dum urbem acrius impugnarent, oppidani deditionem offerunt; ita tamen ut ipsis abscedendi libertas et res suas asportandi non denegetur facultas. Nostris vero renuentibus, ecce exercitus Turcorum exterior irruens in fossata, a tergo nostros impugnant; cumque se ab irruentibus defenderent, ignis hostilis machinas nostras succendit, qui nulla diligentia potuit extingui, sicque infelici casu triumphandi spes excidit. A.D. 1190. The siege protracted till Easter 1190, March 25. f. 18 *b*.

Dum oppidani fame affligerentur, equos suos et alterius generis bestias consumunt, contra ritum Mahumeticæ legis. Seniores etiam Christianos captivos foras muros exanimes jaculabantur. Sic angustatis advenerunt tres naves onerariæ et se subito in urbem præcipitaverunt, ita ut nautæ paterentur naufragium. Sufferings of the garrison of Acre.

A.D. 1190. Salahadinus universum exercitum omnium regnorum suorum congregavit, nostrosque per dies octo acrius impugnavit in Pentecosten;[1] Christicolæ vero dum utramque incursionem viriliter sustinerent, plurimi Turcorum in fines patrios redeunt. Ibidem occubuit unus filiorum Salahadini ictu balistæ, cujus obitus et cœptos insultus cohibuit, et exercitum hostilem exterruit. Item dum oppidani fame affligerentur, succurrit eis soldanus, mittens eis xxv. rates frugiferas; sed duæ majores inter turrim muscarum illisæ sunt et[2] rupem quamdam. Cum exercitus noster otii languore torpesceret, vulgus tumultuans sine consilio principum et contra patriarchæ interdictum, die S. Jacobi[3] ad castra hostilia audacter prorumpit, sine duce, sine ductore, sine signis certis, magis spoliis indulgens quam prœliis. Gentiles, visis prodeuntium turmis, de industria paulisper cedunt, sarcinis non asportatis nec tentoriis. Turci vero cum nepote soldani Thecahadino de latibulis irruentes, plebem incaute dispersam et stupidam facili triumpho prosternunt, scilicet circiter v. millia quingentos. Huic agmini fere dissipato multum subvenit magister Radulfus de Alta-ripa, archidiaconus Colecestriæ, qui postmodum cum plurima gessisset insignia, in eadem obsidione fine felici diem clausit extremum.

f. 19. The Christians reinforced.

Nostris diuturna tribulatione decoctis, adduxit Dominus ab extremis finibus terræ fortes auxiliarios, viros insignes, potentes in prælio, scilicet archiepicopos, episcopos, duces, comites, marchiones, barones, milites, et aliam multitudinem de diversis finibus terrarum; quorum summa non cadit in numerum. Comes Henricus de Campania exercitui nostro præficitur ante adventum regis Philippi et regis Ricardi, quorum nepos

[1] *in Pentecosten*] May 20.

[2] *et*] Here in V. occur two interlineations, *ad*, written with a style, and *inter* with ink, apparently by the first hand.

[3] *S. Jacobi*] July 25.

erat, qui etiam postmodum in regem sublimatus est. A.D. 1190.
Dux Suaviæ filius Frederici cum Alemannis instinctu marchisii Achon veniens, seminarium fuit dissensionis, cujus auxilio marchisus de Monteferrato aspiravit ad regnum, eo quod conjugem Emfridi rapuerat, cui jure successionis devolvebatur hereditas terræ illius.

Various incidents during the siege.

Miraculosa quædam tempore obsidionis Achon contingebant. Petraria quædam oppidanorum ex violentia sui omnes machinas nostras comminuit, et hominem ex nostris quem percusserat non læsit. Telum ab interius in quemdam ex nostris emissum omnem armaturam ejus penetravit, sed scedulam nomen Dei continentem et in pectore ejus dependentem penetrare non potuit. Miles inermis, requisitis naturæ vix peractis, Turcum armatum se lancea impetentem lapide prostravit. Ivo de Veteri-ponte decem sociis comitatus versus Tyrum cum tribus nautis in parva navi navigans octoginta piratas occidit bipenni. Cujusdam admiralii genitalia igne Græco combusta sunt, quo machinas nostras incendi proposuerat. Quidam Turcus ignem Græcum natando deferens, a nostris rete capitur. Turcus telo in inguine percussus interiit, qui crucem Dominicam commingere disposuit.[1] Inter Turcos et nostros fit navale prælium; et dum nostri turribus et machinis affixis galeis turrem muscarum comprehendere nituntur, machinæ nostræ succenduntur. Oppidani igne Græco, cum amissione tamen suorum, arietem archiepiscopi de Besenzun succendunt. Classis xv. navium ex Alexandria oppidanis mittitur in auxilium, sed multi f. 19 *b*.
pereunt. Nostris disponentibus congredi cum Salahadino, archiepiscopo Baldewino Cantuariensi ducente,[2] Salahadinus cum suis fugit ad montana. Cum quidam nostrorum versus Caiphas pro victualibus irent et redirent, a Turcis graviter infestantur, sed infestando suc-

[1] *disposuit*] Originally *proposuit* in V.

[2] *ducente*] Altered by erasure in V. to *dicente*.

A.D. 1190. cumbunt, irruente in eos Gaufrido de Liziniaco, fratre regis Guidonis, cum quinque militibus electis super pontem quem præoccupaverant. Marchisus ut regno potiretur, heredem regni, (uxorem scilicet Remfridi adhuc viventis,) dolose desponsavit. Cumque voti esset compos, cum conjuge sua Tyrum regreditur,[1] promittens sub jurejurando se victualium copiam exercitui exhibiturum. Sed pactionis immemor, nulla exercitui fame periclitanti alimenta transmittere voluit.

Death of Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury, and sufferings of the Christians.

Baldewinus archiepiscopus videns et audiens exercitum omnino dissolutum tabernis et scortis et ludis talorum insistere, anxiatus est spiritus ejus usque ad tædium vitæ, æstuque febrili fatiscens, ibidem obdormivit in Domino. Interea diræ famis inedia exercitus noster continue cruciabatur. Nam modii tritici mensura, quam quis facile portaret sub ascella, centum aureis vendebatur, gallina quoque solidis duodecim, ovum sex denariis. Quidam fame pereuntes cadavera equorum cum intestinis devorabant. Intestina equi vendebantur solidis x.; caput cum intestinis vorabant. Equus pluris vendebatur mortuus quam vivus. Famelici ossa a canibus corrosa rodebant, et immunda quæque comedebant. Plerumque circa furnum fiebant iræ, rixæ, contentiones, nonnumquam pugnæ. Alii concurrebant ad clibanum, clamantes: "Ecce moneta, ecce quantum vis "panis pretium, dummodo panis copia detur." Occulte etiam comedebat qui aliquam escam habuit. Deliciosi etiam herbas pro deliciis edebant. Nobiles viri cum non haberent unde viverent, furabantur; unde multi pro acerbitate famis apostatabant. Duo socii xiii. fabas denario emunt. Famelici in Quadragesima carnes comedebant. Numquam dormitavit marchisi maledictio, qui tantæ egestatis fuerat occasio. Præterea ex nimia in-
f. 20. undatione imbrium, quædam vehemens excrevit in hominibus infirmitas, ut more lymphatico toto corpore

[1] *regreditur*] progreditur, V.

distenderentur: unde imbribus et fame populus deperie- A.D. 1190.
bat. Exhortatione tandem episcopi Saresberiensis et aliorum, divites collectam fecerunt, per quam pauperes saturarentur. Post unius naviculæ adventum hodie emebatur iiij. aureis quod heri pro centum. Quidam Pisanus venditor annonæ volens reservare annonam in posterum, ut carius venderet, contigit ut domum cum annona[1] ignis succenderet. Omnes ex tunc certatim escas largiuntur egentibus.

Post Pascha[2] anno ab Incarnatione Domini MC. nona- Arrival of the kings of France and England.
gesimo primo rex Franciæ Philippus applicuit apud Achon, et non multo post, scilicet circa Pentecosten,[3] venit rex Anglorum Richardus: quorum seriem itineris et quæ in itinere gesserint, seu qualiter Achon ceperint, et quanta prælia in terra illa contra Salahadinum commiserint, seu ex qua occasione rex Philippus repatriavit, si quis plenius nosse[4] desiderat, legat librum quem dominus prior Sanctæ Trinitatis Londoniis ex Gallica lingua in Latinum tam eleganti quam veraci stilo transferri fecit.

Epistola Frederici Imperatoris ad Salahadinum.

" Fredericus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator et Letter of emperor Frederic to Saladin, A.D. 1188.
" semper Augustus, et hostium imperii magnificus tri-
" umphator, Salahadino præsidi Sarracenorum quondam
" illustri, exemplo Pharaoris fugere Israelem.

" Devotionis tuæ literas multis retro temporibus ad
" nos destinatas, super arduis negotiis tibi quidem, si
" fides verbis subfuisset, profuturis, prout majestatis
" nostræ decuit magnificentiam, suscepimus, et episto-
" larum alloquiis magnitudini tuæ consulere dignum
" duximus. Nunc vero quia terram sanctam profanasti,
" cui æterni Regis imperamus imperio, in præside Judææ,
" Samariæ, Palæstinorum, in tanti sceleris præsumptuo-

[1] *cum annona*] annonæ, V.
[2] *Pascha*] 14 April.
[3] *Pentecosten*] 2 June.
[4] *nosse*] scire, V.

A.D. 1188. " sam et plectibilem audaciam, debita animadversione
" decernere imperialis officii sollicitudo nos admonet.
" Quamobrem nisi occupatam terram, et omnia resti-
f. 20 *b*. " tuas, adjuncta satisfactione, sacris constitutionibus
" pro tam nefariis excessibus taxata, ne minime legiti-
" mum videamur quærere bellum, a capite calendarum
" Novembrium evoluto anni spatio terminum tibi præ-
" figimus, ad experiendam belli fortunam in campo
" Tahtneos in virtute mirificæ Crucis, et in nomine veri
" Joseph. Vix enim credere possumus hoc te latere,
" quod ex scriptis veterum et in historiis antiquis
" nostri temporis redolet. Numquid scire dissimulas
" ambas Æthiopas, Mauritaniam, Persiam, Syriam, Par-
" thiam, ubi a Parthis Crassi nostri dictatoris fata sunt
" præmaturata, Judæam, Samariam, Maritimam Ara-
" biam, Chaldæam, ipsam quoque Ægyptum, ubi proh
" dolor! civis Romanus Antonius vir insignis, virtute
" præditus, citra nitorem temperantiæ et secus quam
" deceret militem, a tanto culmine rerum emissum,
" minus sobriis Cleopatræ inservierat amoribus? Num-
" quid etiam scire dissimulas Armeniam et innume-
" rabiles alias terras nostræ ditioni subjectas? Norunt
" hæc reges, qui cruore gladii Romam sunt crebrius in-
" ebriati. Et tu quidem in ipsa rerum experientia,
" Deo auctore, intelliges, quid nostræ victrices aquilæ,
" quid cohortes diversarum nationum, quid furor Teu-
" tonicus, etiam in pace arma capescens, quid caput
" indomitum Rheni, quid juventus quæ numquam novit
" fugam; quid proçerus Bavarus; quid Suevus astutus;
" quid Franconia circumspecta; quid in gladio ludens
" Saxonia; quid Thuringia; quid Westfalia, quid
" agilis Brebantia; quid nescia pacis Letharingia; quid
" inquieta Burgundia; quid Alpini salices; quid Spi-
" sania in armento prævolans; quid Bohemia ultro
" mori gaudens: quid Bolenia suis feris ferior; quid
" Austria; quid Stiria; quid Bugrensa; quid partes
" Illiricæ; quid Leonardia; quid Tuscia; quid An-

" caricta̱na Marcia, quid Venetus proretha; quid Spi- A.D. 1188.
" sanus nauclerus; denique qualiter dextera nostra,
" quam senio arguis effœtam,[2] gladios vibrare didicerit.
" Dies illa plena lætitia et jocunditatis et reverentiæ f. 21 *b*.
" triumpho Christi præfixa te docebit."

Huic mandato imperatoris responsoriam etiam Sala- Saladin's answer.
hadini epistolam libello nostro duximus inserendam. Nam superba tyranni fiducia, quam ad resistendum conceperat, ex ipsius tenore clarescit. Eam quidem in ipsa simplicitate verborum in qua fuerat conscripta recitando proponimus, nihil penitus immutantes.

Epistola Salahadini ad Fredericum Imperatorem.

" Illi regi sincero amico, magno, excelso, Frederico
" regi Alemanniæ, in nomine Dei miserentis, per gra-
" tiam Dei unius, potentis, exsuperantis, victoris, peren-
" nis, cujus regni non est finis.

" Grates ei agimus perennes, cujus gratia super totum
" mundum. Deprecamur eum ut infundat orationem
" suam super prophetas suos, et maxime super instruc-
" torem nostrum, nuntium suum, Mahumetum prophe-
" tam, quem misit pro rectæ legis correctione, quam
" faciet apparere super cunctas leges.

" Attamen notum regi sincero, potenti, magno, amico,
" amicabili regi Alemanniæ, quod quidam homo, Henri-
" cus nomine, venit ad nos, dicens se nuntium vestrum
" esse, et detulit nobis quamdam cartam, quam dixit
" esse vestram. Nos fecimus legi cartam, et audivimus
" eum viva voce loquentem, et verbis quæ ore dixit, ver-
" bis respondimus: sed hoc est responsum cartæ. Quod
" si computatis eos qui vobiscum concordant veniendi
" super nos, et eos nominatis et dictis: rex talis terræ,
" et rex alterius terræ, et comes talis, et comes talis, et
" tales archiepiscopi, et marchiones et milites; et si nos
" vellemus enunciare eos, qui sunt in nostro servitio,

A.D. 1188. " et qui sunt intendentes nostro præcepto, et prompti
" nostro sermoni, et qui dimicarent coram manibus nos-
" tris; non posset hoc in scriptis redigi. Et si Christi-
" anorum computatis nomina, Sarracenorum sunt plura,
" et plura abundantius quam Christianorum. Et si inter
" nos et eos quos nominastis Christianos mare est;
f. 21 *b*. " inter Sarracenos, qui non possunt æstimari, non est
" mare inter eos et nos, nec ullum impedimentum veni-
" endi ad nos; et nobiscum sunt Bedewini, quos si
" opponeremus inimicis nostris sufficerent; et Turke-
" manni, quos si effunderemus super inimicos nostros,
" destruerent eos; et rustici nostri, qui dimicarent
" strenue si juberemus contra gentes quæ venturæ super
" terram nostram, et ditarentur de eis, et exterminarent
" eas. Et quomodo? nos habemus nobiscum soldanos
" bellicosos, per quos terram apertam habemus et acqui-
" sitam, et expugnatos inimicos; et hi et omnes reges
" paganismi non tardabunt, cum eos summonuerimus,
" nec morabuntur, cum eos vocaverimus. Et vos cum
" congregati fueritis, sicut carta vestra dicit, et ducetis
" infinitam multitudinem, sicut nuntius vester narrat,
" obviabimus vobis per potentiam Dei, nec sufficit vobis
" terra ista quæ est in maritima, sed transibimus volun-
" tate Dei, et obtinebimus terras vestras universas for-
" titudine Dei. Nam si veneritis, cum toto posse vestro
" venietis, et præsentes eritis cum omni gente vestra,
" et scimus quod in terra vestra nullus remanebit, qui
" se defendere possit, nec terram tueri. Et quando Deus
" victoriam nobis sua fortitudine de vobis donaverit,
" nihil amplius erit, quam ut terras vestras libere capia-
" mus fortitudine sua et voluntate. Adunatio enim
" legis Christianorum bis venit super nos in Babylone,
" una vice apud Damiatam, et altera apud Alexandriam,
" et erat in maritima terræ Jerusalem, et in manu
" Christianorum. In terra Damasci et in terra Sarrace-
" norum in singulis castellis singuli erant domini sibi
" proficientes. Nostis qualiter Christiani utraque vice

" redierunt, et ad qualem exitum venerunt, et hæ nos- A.D. 1188.
" træ gentes refertæ sunt cum regionibus suis, et Deus
" adunavit nobis regiones affluentius, et coadunavit eas
" longe lateque in potestate nostra, et Babyloniam cum
" pertinentiis suis et terram Damasci, et maritimam
" Jerusalem, et terram Gesyræ, et castella sua, et ter-
" ram Roasiæ cum pertinentiis suis, et regionem Indiæ
" cum pertinentiis suis; et per gratiam Dei hoc totum in f. 22.
" manibus nostris est, et residuum regnum Sarraceno-
" rum nostro paret imperio. Nam si mandaremus ex-
" cellentissimis regibus Sarracenorum, non retraherent
" se a nobis; et si summoneremus Calephum de Bal-
" dach, quem Deus salvet, veniendi ad nos, de sede
" excelsi imperii sui assurgeret, et veniret in auxilium
" excellentiæ nostræ. Et nos obtinuimus per virtutem
" Dei et potentiam Jerusalem et terram ejus; et rema-
" nent in manibus Christianorum Tyrus, Tripolis, et An-
" tiochia, et de his non est aliud nisi ut occupentur.
" Attamen si bellum vultis, et si Deus voluerit, ut sit
" per voluntatem suam quod totam terram Christiano-
" rum acquiramus, obviabimus per virtutem Dei, sicut
" scriptum est in literis nostris. Verum si nos de bono
" pacis requisieritis, mandabimus procuratoribus istorum
" trium locorum prædictorum, ut vobis ea sine contra-
" dictione consignent, et vobis sanctam Crucem redde-
" mus, et liberabimus omnes captivos Christianos, qui
" sunt in tota terra nostra, et permittemus vobis ad
" sepulcrum esse unum sacerdotem, et reddemus abba-
" tias quæ solebant esse tempore paganismi, et bonum
" eis faciemus, et permittemus venire peregrinos in
" tota vita nostra, et habebimus vobiscum pacem. Quod
" si carta, quæ ad nos venit per manum Henrici nomi-
" nati,[1] sit carta regis, scripsimus cartam istam pro
" responso, et Deus erigat nos ad consilium suum sua
" voluntate.

[1] *nominati*] nominatum, V.; nominatim, C.

A.D. 1188. " Carta hæc scripta fuit anno adventus prophetæ
" nostri Mahumeti quingentesimo lxxxiiij., gratia Dei
" solius; et Deus salvet prophetam nostrum Mahume-
" tum et suam progeniem, et salvet salvationem salva-
" toris Domini excelsi regis, victoriosi, adunatoris,
" veridici verbi comptoris, vexilli veritatis, correctoris
" orbis et legis, soldani Sarracenorum et paganorum,
" salvatoris duarum sanctarum domorum, et sanctæ
" domus Jerusalem, patris victorum Joseph filii Job, sus-
" citatoris progeniei Mirmuræni."

MAGISTRI THOMÆ AGNELLI,

WELLENSIS ARCHIDIACONI,

SERMO DE MORTE ET SEPULTURA HENRICI REGIS JUNIORIS.

DE MORTE ET SEPULTURA HENRICI REGIS JUNIORIS.

Igitur in illo febrili frixorio consumptis carnibus ac viribus exhaustis, cum spiritus et corporis angustiosa immineret dissolutio, et eluctaretur anima Dominum Fontem vivum sitiens glebæ corporalis onere expediri, divinæ miserationis insigne miraculum enituit, quo Dominus clementiæ respectum in electum suum, quasi testimonio irrefragabili, consignavit. Cum enim in illo vitæ mortisque discrimine multi viri religiosi beato viro assisterent, ut eum vitæ monitis studiosius informarent, unus ipsorum videns quod, cæteris omnibus erogatis, adhuc ei annulus in digito superesset, sic ait, "Jam ad extremum examinis judicium properas, jam "ad reddendam Judici exactissimo rationem iter paras. "Oportet ergo te ab terrenis omnibus impedimentis "expediri ut a procelloso seculi hujus naufragio liber "egrediaris, et in uterum matris tuæ de qua nudus "egressus es nudus revertaris. Omnis itaque terrenæ "proprietatis te cura deserat, ne hostis antiquus, qui "calcaneo tuo (id est fini vitæ) insidiatur, invenire "possit quo bravium currentis impediat. Nam in con-"gressu facilius dejicitur qui habet quo firmius ab "hoste teneatur." Cui beatus vir benignissime respondit quod nec alicujus terrenæ rei curam vel desiderium haberet, nec alicujus proprietatis impedimentum se habere speraret. Ad hæc vir ille religiosus, "Ad-"huc," inquit, "annulum in digito habes, quem expe-"dit ut deponas, quatenus ab insidiatoris laqueis liber "evadas."

A.D. 1182. Incidents immediately preceding the death of the young king Henry.

Erat autem annulus ille saphiri virtute probatissimus,

A.D. 1182. patrique suo regi inter cæteras thesaurorum copias pretiosissimas, quem pater ejus ipsi veniam affectuosius postulanti miserat quando ei exasperationis paternæ offensam remiserat. Siquidem ab initio cum febrili laboraret incendio, nuntiorum intercurrente frequentia patrem suum multimoda sollicitaverat devotionis instantia quatenus ei indignationis adversus ipsum conceptæ rancorem remitteret, atque reconciliationis ac benedictionis suæ ipsi munus impenderet. Itaque cum pater ejus hostium se committere manibus formidaret, et in extremis agentem visitare non posset, signo annuli illius in restitutæ plenitudinem reconciliationis et gratiam paternæ superaddidit benedictionis.

Tunc sic ei vir sanctus respondit, "Annulum qui-
" dem illum non cupiditatis aut levitatis causa retineo,
" sed solummodo ut ante tribunal supremi Judicis
" mihi sit ad manifestæ probationis indicium quod
" hoc signo pater meus omni indignationis rancore
" dimisso, gratiæ plenitudinem mihi restituerit et pa-
" ternæ benedictionis munus impenderit. Verum ut
" illum deponam, si videris expedire, digito meo eum
" detrahe." Cumque ille eniteretur ut annulum extraheret, penitus eum avellere non potuit, quoniam ipsum in paternæ benedictionis signum divina miseratio reservavit. Quis vel cæcús vel mentis obstinatæ tantæ virtutis non miretur indicium? Quis piæ intentionis non collaudet devotionem, quæ paternæ reconcilationis ostensionem tali desiderabat consignari testimonio? Quis audeat diffiteri divinæ non fuisse pietatis indicium quod digitis febrili excoctione attenuatis et carnibus angustiarum incendio consumptis, annulus sic hæreret ut (quod est mirabile in oculis nostris) avelli penitus non prævaleret?

His death, 11 June A.D. 1182. Hujusmodi itaque supra quam dici possit anxiatus et vexatus molestiis, naturæ viribus tantæ oppressionis injuriam ferre non prævalentibus, apud castrum quod Martellum dicitur in lectum decidit, ubi multis diebus

sub tanta pœnitentiæ disciplina et miranda contritionis devotione militavit, ut viris religiosis qui ei assidebant præberet formam et exemplum devotionis, et suis qui aderant præstaret effectum piæ consolationis. Ægritudinis denique invalescente molestia sanctorum occurrentium vallatus patrocinio, iii°. idus Junii felici consummatione diem clausit extremum, et terrenis exuviis depositis migravit ad Dominum. Huic ergo non debet martyrii gloria denegari, qui tantarum persecutionum violentia vitam finivit vice gladii. A.D. 1182.

Itaque cum vir sanctus naturæ debitum exsolvens terræ corpus et animam [Deo] reddidisset, fidelium religiosa devotio qui aderant et viderant tam gloriosi excessus consummationem, et audierant ex sanctorum visione et pia visitatione divinæ miserationis manifestam revelationem, religionis intuitu vestium, quæ sanctum corpus attigerant, minutias devotissime colligerunt; quorum tactu obtinentibus beati viri meritis multi curationis gratiam adepti sunt, Ipso largiente sancto suo sanandi virtutem qui mulieri hemoroissæ tactu fimbriæ suæ præstitit sanitatem. Hominem unum vidi, quem languor fistulosus diutina demolitione vexaverat, qui se ex contactu fimbriarum illarum meritis beati viri intra biduum perfectissimæ curationis munus recepisse asserebat, et in sanitatis adeptæ probationem testes vulnerum cicatrices ostendebat. Cures wrought by his relics.

Placuit etiam Altissimo, qui in sanctis suis semper est et utique mirabilis, ut locum in quo vir sanctus migravit a sæculo signis virtutum primitiaret, et beati viri miraculi testimonio consignaret; et Qui extra portam suscitare dignatus est viduæ filium, extra portam confessori suo signorum indiciis præstitit sanctitatis testimonium. Nam cum corpus extra portam delatum in loco quodam causa requiescionis fuisset depositum, leprosus quidam feretro accedens sancti viri meritis gratiam curationis obtinuit, et sub multorum qui aderant testimonio, deterso corruptionis horrore,

A.D. 1182. integerrimæ restitutum est sanitati. Divinæ siquidem virtutis effectu pustularum[1] tumor horribilis et squamosa faciei inequalitas abscessit, ac pelle mutata, redivivi coloris nitore livoris præcedentis injuriam serenavit. Ad perpetuandam itaque tam admirabilem virtutis memoriam, in eodem loco ad laudem Dei et gloriam beati viri pia fidelium devotione constructa est ecclesia, ubi ad honorem ejus qui locum illum signorum indicio consecravit, martyris continua agitur memoria.

While on the road to Rouen for burial,

Cum itaque corpus Rothomagum, ubi vir sanctus sibi elegerat sepulturam, deferretur, multis inter viam miraculis manifestavit divina miseratio gloriam martyris; ut quod ausu invidiæ æmulorum obstinata malitia diffitebatur, signorum irrefragabile testimonium divinitus eloqueretur. Nam apud Sancti Savini monasterium, ubi beati martyris corpus pernoctavit, cum libitinarii ob declinandum solis æstivi fervorem, itineris sui accelerarent apparatum horæ unius spatio priusquam illucesceret, columna admirandi luminis de cœlis usque supra ecclesiam protensa apparuit; ibidemque (videntibus multis et admirantibus, et ad admirandæ lucis spectaculum concurrentibus) longo temporis intervallo immobilis perstitit, ac diluculo cum corpus exportaretur disparuit.

the body is forcibly interred at Le Mans.

Inter cætera etiam hoc signum virtutis enituit, quod cum corpus sanctum Cenomannis appropinquaret, quatuor extra urbem fere milibus, circulus tam præclaræ lucis consimilis claritatis, quasi crucem intra se continens, in cœlis apparuit, quod vix tanti splendoris radium visus sustinere posset humanus. Luminis autem illius radius usque ad feretrum pertendebatur, et tamdiu corpus sanctum splendoris sui illustratione prosequebatur donec intra beati Juliani ecclesiam cum

[1] *pustularum*] postularum, MS.

debita venerationis laude deportaretur. Clerus itaque ac populus qui occursum exierant, ad tam admirandæ visionis signum obstupescentes, una voce conclamabant divino declaratum indicio ut beati viri reliquiæ sancto sociarentur Juliano; nec sinerent alias sanctum corpus asportare, quod intra parochiæ suæ limites dignatus est Dominus tanti miraculi declaratione divinitus glorificare. Igitur (licet reclamarent qui aderant episcopi et regiæ potestatis ministri) sancti viri corpus a clero et populo piæ devotionis studio est retentum, et ante majus altare honore regio tumulatum. Cœpit autem ad locum sepulturæ ejus plurima confluere ægrotantium multitudo, ibidemque sancti viri meritis remedium obtinere perfectæ curationis; et ad confundendam æmulorum pertinatiam virtutum indiciis cœperunt elucere et indies multiplicari merita sanctitatis. Nam plurimi diversarum febrium vexationibus afflicti, multi paralysi dissoluti, claudi etiam et aridi diversa membrorum debilitatione vexati, meritis ipsius integerrimæ sanitati, largiente Domino, sunt restituti. A.D. 1182.

Ad manifestandam quoque sancti viri gloriam, in partibus Aquitaniæ hoc miraculosum innotuit, quo et divinæ clementiæ bonitatem et beati viri merita Dominus declarari voluit. In diœcesi siquidem Xanctoniensi mulier quædam, etc.

By the influence of the dean of Rouen the body is removed thither.

Crebrescentibus itaque miraculorum indiciis, vir venerabilis Robertus Rothomagensis decanus, ecclesiæ suæ, quæ beati viri frustrata erat sepultura, ægre ferens injuriam, apud regem Anglorum instabat attentius ut faceret super loco sepulturæ novissimam filii sui dispositionem observari, et ecclesiæ Rothomagensi ultimæ voluntatis legatum restitui. Post multos denique et anxios labores, ad multimodam ejus instantiam opportune importunam et importune opportunam, tandem pii laboris et instantiæ effectum meruit, et ut beati viri corpus ecclesiæ Rothomagensi redderetur obtinuit. Evocatis itaque ad hujus executionem nego-

A.D. 1182. tii quibusdam episcopis, et cleri ac populi numerosa multitudine catervatim undique confluente, sanctum corpus a loco sepulturæ, in quo per triginta quatuor dies quieverat, effosum est, et cum honoris et reverentiæ debito Rothomagum sub multæ devotionis pietate et pia devotione deportatum. Videres inter viam stratas publicas, vicos et plateas junco herbisque virentibus ac floribus odoriferis sparsim operiri, undique thura et aromata studiosius adoleri ubi corpus sanctum fuerat transiturum, multique cum gaudio et exulatione, multi cum pia lachrymarum effusione beato viro curabant pro viribus exhibere omnimodum devotionis obsequium.

Nec destituit divina bonitas sancti sui inter viam declarare merita, quem multis in locis manifestissime glorificavit per multa virtutum indicia. Nam ægris undique confluentibus et in itinere feretrum tangentibus, aut orationis ac devotionis pia intentione in ecclesiis ubi corpus quiescebat vigiliis et orationibus pernoctantibus, multis præstitit divina miseratio curationis medelam, ac variis morborum tormentis laborantibus contulit sanitatem.

Miracle at Séez.

In ecclesia Sagiensi inter alia signorum insignia ubi corpus depositum pernoctabat, allati sunt inter cæteras ægrotantium turmas pueri duo fere quadriennes; unus hydropsis tumore plurimum distensus, alter a nativitate cæcus, cui ciliorum nativa conglutinatio aditum visus obcluserat, et ab origine sua brachiorum ac manuum motu et officio destitutus fuerat. Beati itaque viri meritis, cui semper gratissima extiterat innocentia puerilis, ille ab omni tumoris et distensionis injuria plenissime liberatus est; et alter, soluta ciliorum continuitate, luminis solatio potitus. Manuum quoque ariditas et brachiorum stupor immobilis ita detersa sunt, ut nulla erasi languoris vestigia superessent; et sospitatis alacritate gaudentes juncis et floribus circa feretrum sparsis, puerili more sibi invicem colluderent,

Illo hæc ad confessoris Sui gloriam operante qui ad confundendam Pharisæorum avaritiam hydropicum in synagoga Sabbato curavit, et cœci a nativitate mirabiliter oculos aperuit, et manum aridam languido restituit. A.D. 1182.

Eadem etiam nocte mulier quædam, quam ita supra modum hydropsis distensa inflatione intumuerat, ut ipsam intueri humanus abhorreret aspectus, ad sancti viri corpus accessit; et primo doloribus et angustiis immoderate fatigata, supra omnem parturientis gemitum clamoribus et ululatibus ecclesiam implevit. Postmodum vero sub momento temporis beati viri meritis, angustiarum fatigatio conquievit, tumor ille immoderatus recedit, et sub omnium conspectu et admiratione pristinæ habitudinis statum perfectæ curationis gratiam recepit.

Inspection of the remains before interment.

Cum autem beati viri corpus Rothomagum fuisset delatum et a clero et populo debito venerationis officio honorifice susceptum, metuentes ne corpore furtiva surreptione Cenomannis retento, tantis reliquiis frustrati essent et subdola permutatione ludificati, priusquam sepulturæ novissimum adimplerent officium, sub testimonio episcoporum qui aderant, virorumque religiosorum et procerum familiariumque ipsius, loculum in quo sancti viri reliquiæ consignatæ fuerant, in loco secretiori aperuerunt, sudarium in quo involutum erat corpus, conscissis suturis diruperunt. Nudati itaque corporis gloriam omnes admirationis stupore viderunt, et Dominum, qui in sanctis suis semper est et ubique mirabilis, glorificaverunt, quia Ejus mirabili dispositione absque alicujus putredinis injuria corpus ita integrum et illæsum inventum est, ut nec a statu quo consignationis tempore ibidem fuerat repositum, aliquid videretur corruptionis invidia decoloratum. Quodque maximum esse potest sanctitatis ejus indicium, corpus sanctum, cum amplius quam xl. diebus post beati viri excessum, nunc terræ depositum, nunc ardoribus solis

A.D. 1182. esset expositum, nihil sub tanti mora et æstivi fervoris inclementia contraxerat quod spiraret horroris, nihil quod astantium posset nares offendere evaporabat fœti odoris. In tam manifesto itaque virtutis indicio videres omnium Deum unanimiter collaudantium lacrimosa suspiria ubi immolabant laudis et piæ devotionis holocausta. Qui ad tam imparatæ incorruptionis revelationem lacrimas contineret? Quis ad aromaticam fragrantiam[1] quam pro expectato corruptionis fœtore senserit piæ mentis et devotionis thymiamata non incenderet?

The corpse is buried. Igitur corpus sanctum cum hymnis et laudibus et omni devotionis honorificentia in loculo stanneo diligentissime consignatum, in latere majoris altaris est repositum. Verum qui viventem fuerant iniquissime persecuti, etiam mortuum persequi non cessaverunt odio pertinaci, qui ut hominum possent venari gratiam, Dei non reverebant offensam. Nam invidiæ livore contabescentes, cerea signorum monimenta, quæ pia fidelium devotio ad ejus sepulchrum comportabat, [cum] sanctitatis ejus crebrescerent indicia, amoveri fecerunt, et humani favoris causa maluerunt divinæ virtutis opera studiosius silentio occultare quam misericordiam Dei in sanctos Ejus prædicando manifestare. Si etiam esset in manu hominis eidem desiderantissimæ gloriam beatitudinis adimerent, ut alterius notam opprobrii supprimerent. Et quoniam id meruit malitiæ ipsorum pertinatia, translata est ab eis signorum gloria, sicut olim propter malitiam regum clausa leguntur ora prophetarum. Veruntamen in conspectu Altissimi non diminuetur beato viro corona æternæ beatitudinis, illi autem in perpetuum operientur diploide confusionis.

He appears in a dream to his mother, Nec silentio prætereundum censeo illud quod in Anglorum partibus illuxit virtutis insigne quo divinæ pietati complacuit et reginam beati viri matrem divi-

[1] *fragrantiam*] fraglantiam, MS.

nitus consolari, et ipsius meritum et gloriam magnifice declarari. Siquidem cum præfati regis mater in Angliæ partibus sui viri indignatione nimis pertinaci sub diutina incarcerationis injuria multos protraxit annos, et in animæ suæ amaritudine et angustia plurima effluxissent tempora, in diebus illis quibus iste sanctus migravit ad Dominum, vultu super hominem jocundiore et facie sereniori matri suæ, (sicut ex ejus relatione didicimus,) in somnis apparuit, duas in capite coronas habens aureas. Harum una superior inæstimabilis erat splendoris et claritatis supra quam aliquid luminosum esse consuevit in terris; altera vero priori supposita, obscura quidem respectu prioris et modicum habens claritatis. Hac exhilarata mater visione, tanquam matrona perspicacis ingenii, visionis mysterium intellexit, et mortem filii (quam postmodum fama vulgante cognovit,) alacriori mentis patientia sustinuit, spem et fiduciam in Christo habens ipsum in cœlesti coronatum gloria, qui paricidali extinctus fuerat invidia. Quid enim per coronam, ubi nec principium nec finis invenitur, nisi æterna beatitudo intelligitur? Quid per splendorem tam immensæ claritatis nisi gloria illa supernæ felicitatis? Corona quidem superior præclarior erat quam aliquid quod in terris sensibus apparuerit humanis, quia nec oculis vidit, nec auris audivit, nec in cor hominis ascendit quæ præparavit Deus diligentibus Se. Corona inferior obscurior, regni terreni significabat principatum, quia terrena omnia, quantumlibet pretiosa, cœlestibus collata sordescunt, et incipit felicitas temporalis obscurari cum cœperit æternæ beatitudinis splendor declarari. Contra namque sibi invicem collata, magis elucent.

A.D. 1182. queen Eleanor.

THE LEGEND OF FULK FITZ-WARIN.

THE LEGEND OF FULK FITZ-WARIN.

Introduction.

En le temps de Averyl e May, quant les prees e les herbes reverdissent, e chescune chose vivaunte recovre vertue, beaute e force, les mountz e les valeys retentissent des douce chauntz des oseylouns, e les cuers de chescune gent, pur la beaute du temps e la sesone, mountent en haut e sen jolyvent; donqe deit home remenbrer des aventures e pruesses nos auncestres qe se penerent pur honour en leaute quere, e de teles choses parler qe a plusours purra valer.

William the Conqueror's expedition into Wales.

Seygnours, vus avez oy eynz ces houres qe Willam Bastard, duc de Normaundie, vynt, ou grant gent e pueple santz nounbre, en Engleterre; e conquist a force tote la terre, e ocist le roy Heraud; e se fist coroner

[Translation.]

In the time of April and May, when the meadows and the grass grow green again, and every living thing regains its power, beauty and strength; when the hills and the valleys resound with the sweet song of the birds, and the heart of every one, moved by the beauty of the time and the season, soars upwards with joy,—then we ought to recollect the adventures and doughty acts of our ancestors who took pains to seek honour in loyalty, and should speak of such things as may be profitable to many.

Lords, you have heard before now that William Bastard, duke of Normandy, came with a great army and people without number into England, and by force conquered all the land and slew king Heraud, and caused himself to be crowned at

a Loundres ; e si estably pees e leys a sa volent, e dona terres a diverse gentz qe ou ly vyndrent. En ycel temps, Yweyn Goynez fust prince de Gales, e si fust vailaunt e bon guerreour ; e le roy le dota mout le plus. Cesty Yweyn out guaste tote la Marche, e tote fust voyde de Cestre tanqe al mont Gylebert. Le roy se apparilla mout richement, e vint ou grant ost en le countee de Saloburs, e trova tote les villes arses, de Cestre desqe a Salobure ; quar la prince clama tote la Marche pur la sue e aportenaunte a Powys. Le prince se retret, quar yl ne osa attendre le roy. Le roy fust mout sages e pensa quil dorreit les terres de la Marche as plus vaylauntz chevalers de tut le ost, pur ce quil devereynt defendre la Marche de le prince a lur profit e al honour lur seignur le roy. Ly roy apela Rogier de Belehealme ; si li dona tote la counte de Salobure mout franchement ; e si fust apellee Counte Palays. Rogier funda de hors la vylle de Salobure une abbeye de Seynt Piere, e la feffa mout richement ; e tint le

London, and established peace and laws at his pleasure, and gave lands to many of those who came with him. At this time Yweyn Goynez was prince of Wales ; he was a valiant and good warrior, and the king feared him much the more. This Ywein had devastated all the March, and all was waste from Chester to Mount Gylebert. The king arrayed himself very richly, and came with a great army into the county of Saloburs, and found all the towns burnt, from Chester to Salobure ; for the prince claimed all the March as his own and appurtenant to Powys. The prince retreated, for he durst not await the king. The king was very prudent, and determined upon giving the lands of the March to the most valiant knights of all his host, in order that they should defend the prince's March for their own benefit and for the honour of their lord the king. The king called Roger de Belehealme, to whom he gave all the county of Salobure very freely, and he was called earl Palays. Roger founded outside the city of Salobure the abbey of Saint Peter, and endowed it very richly, and he held

counte a tote sa vie. Si comenca un chastiel a Brugge, e un autre chastel comenca en Dynan; mes yl ne les parfist poynt.

Apres qe Roger fust devye, Robert, son fitz, avoit tote la countee de Salobure; e Ernaud, son puysne fitz, avoit Penebrok. Ceux furent gentz trop demesurees e trop culvers; e grantment mespristrent countre lur seignour le roy Henre, fitz Willam Bastard, frere roy Willam le Rous; e parfirent le chastel de Brugge contre la defense le roy Henre. Dont le roy Henrie les desheryta e fist exiler pur tous jours, e dona lur terres as ces chevalers. Le chastel de Dynan, e tut le pays entour devers la ryvere de Corve, ou tut lonour, dona a mon sire Joce, sun chevaler; e denapres retint le surnoun de Dynan, e fust apele par tut Joce de Dynan. Cely Joce parfist le chastiel qe Roger de Belehealme en son temps avoit comence; e si fust fort e vaylaunt chevaler. Et si fust la ville bien longement apelle Dynan, qe or est apellee Ludelawe. Cesti Joce fist fere, desouth la ville de Dynan, un pount de pere e

Subsequent grants by Henry the First.

---

the earldom all his life. He commenced one castle at Brugge and another castle at Dynan; but he did not finish them.

After the death of Roger, his son Robert had all the earldom of Salobure; and his youngest son Ernaud had Penebrok. They were disorderly people, and very cowards, and conducted themselves very ill towards their lord, king Henry, son of William Bastard, brother of king William the Red; and they completed the castle of Brugge, contrary to the orders of king Henry. Wherefore king Henry disinherited them and banished them for ever, and gave their lands to his knights. The castle of Dynan, and all the land thereabout towards the river of Corve, with all the honour, he gave to sir Joce, his knight; who thenceforth took the surname of Dynan, and was always called Joce de Dynan. This Joce finished the castle which Roger de Belehealme had begun in his time; and he was a strong and valiant knight. And the town which is now called Ludelawe was for a very long time called Dynan. Under the town of Dynan this Joce caused to be built a bridge of stone

chaus, outre la ryvere de Temede, en le haut chemyn qe va parmy la Marche, e de Cestre desqe Brustut. Joce fist son chastiel de Dynan de tres baylles, e le envyrona de double fossee, une de dens e une de hors.

William the Conqueror's adventure at Chastiel Bran, which is haunted by Geomagog.

Le roy Willam Bastard aprocha les mountz e les vals de Gales, si vist une ville mout large, close jadys de hautz murs, qe tote fust arse e gastee; e pardesouth la ville, en une pleyne, fist tendre ces pavylons; e la demorreit ce dit cele nuyt. Lors enquist le roy de un Bretoun coment la ville avoit a noun, e coment fust ensi gaste. "Sire," fet le Bretoun, "je vus dirroy. Le "chastiel fust jadys apellee chastiel Bran; mes ore est "apelee la Vele Marche. Jadys vindrent en ceste pays "Brutus, un chevaler mout vaylaunt, e Coryneus, de "qy Cornewayle ad uncore le noun, e plusours autres "estretz du lignage Troyene; e nul ny habita ces par- "ties, estre trelede gentz, grantz geans, dount lur roy "fust apelee Geomagog. Cyl oyerent de la venue

---

and lime over the river of Temede, in the high road which runs through the March, and from Chester to Brustut. Joce made his castle with three baillies, and encircled it with a double ditch, the one within and the other without.

As king William the Bastard drew near the mountains and the valleys of Gales he saw a very large town, formerly enclosed within high walls, which was entirely burnt and pillaged. Underneath the town, in a plain, he caused his tents to be fixed, and there he remained that night. Then the king enquired of a Briton what the town was called, and how it was thus destroyed. "Sire," said the Briton, "I will tell you. "The castle was formerly called Castle Bran, but now it is "called La Vele Marche. There formerly came into this "country Brutus, a very brave knight, and Coryneus, from "whom Cornwall had its name, and many others derived "from the lineage of Troy. No one inhabited these parts "excepting very vile people, great giants, whose king was "named Geomagog. They heard of the arrival of Brutus, and

" Brutus, e se mistrent en la voye a lencountre ; e al " dreyn furent tous le geantz occys, estre Geomagog, " qe fust mervilous grant. Coryneus, le vaylant, dist " que volenters luttreyt ou Geomagog pur esprover la " force Geomagog. Le geant a la premere venue en- " braca Coryneus si estroitement quil debrusa ces trois " costees. Coryneus se coroca ; si fery Geomagog del " pee quil chay de un grant roche en la mer ; e si " fust Geomagog neye. E un espirit del Deble meyn- " tenant entra le cors Geomagog, e vynt en ses parties, " e defendy le pays longement qe unqe Bretoun nosa " habiter. E longement apres, le roy Bran fitz Donwal " fist refere la cite, redresser les murs, e afermer les " grantz fosses ; e fesoit burgh e grant marche. E le " Deble vint de nuyt e oost quanqe leynz fust ; e pu- " sensa unqe nui ny habita."

Le roy senmervyla mout, e Payn Peverel, le fier e hardy chevaler, cosyn le roy, ad tot escote, e dit quil

Payn Peverel undertakes to encounter the spirit.

" marched against him; but in the end all the giants were " killed except Geomagog, who was wonderfully tall. The " valiant Coryneus said that he would like to wrestle with " Geomagog, to try his strength. At the first bout the giant " hugged Coryneus so tight that he broke three of his ribs. " Corynaus grew angry ; he gave Geomagog such a kick that " he fell from a great rock into the sea, and thus was Geo- " magog drowned. A spirit from the devil forthwith entered " into Geomagog's body, and he came into these parts, and " defended the country for a long time so that no Briton " dared inhabit it. A long time after this king Bran the son " of Donwal rebuilt the town, repaired the walls, and cleared out " the great ditches, and made a fortress and a great market- " place. And the devil came by night and carried off all that " was within ; since which time no one has dwelt there."

The king was mightily astonished, and Payn Peverel, that proud and bold knight, the king's cousin, who had heard all this, said that he would put the wonder to the proof that

assayereit cele nuyt la merveille. Payn Peverel se arma mout richement, e prist son escu lusant dor ou une croys de asur endentee, e xv. chevalers e autres sergauntz ; e sen ala en le plushalt paloys, e se herberga yleqe. Et quant fust anuyetee, le temps devynt si lede, neir, obscur, e tiele tempeste de foudre e tonayre, qe tous iceux qe la furent devyndrent si enpourys, quil ne purreint, pur pour, mover pie ne meyn; eynz cocherent a la terre come mortz. Payn, le fer, fust mout poury ; mes senfia en Dieu, de qy yl porta le signe de la croys, e vist qe nul aye navereit si de Dieu noun. Se cocha a la terre, e, ou bone devocioun, pria Dieu e sa mere Marie que ly defendreynt cele nuyt del poer de Deble.

His conversation with Geomagog.

Apeyne out fyny sa preere, vynt le malfee en semblance Geomagog ; e si porta un grant masue en sa mayn ; e de sa bouche geta fu e fumee dont la ville fust tot enluminee. Payn avoit bon espeir en Dieu, e

night. Payn Peverel armed himself very richly, and he took his shield shining with gold with a cross of azure "endentée," fifteen knights and other servants ; and he went to the highest palace and took up his quarters there. When night came on the weather became so bad, so dark and thick, there was such a tempest of thunder and lightning, that all who were there became so terrified that they could move neither foot nor hand for fear, but they lay flat on the ground like dead men. Payn the proud was much alarmed, but he put his trust in God, of whose cross he wore the sign, and he perceived that he would be aided by none but by God alone. He prostrated himself on the ground and with good devotion prayed to God and his mother Mary to defend him that night from the power of the devil.

Scarcely had he finished his prayer when the evil spirit came in the likeness of Geomagog. He carried a great mace in his hand, and out of his mouth he cast fire and smoke, wherewith the whole town was illuminated. Payn had good

se seigna de la croys, e hardiment asayly le malfee. Le malfee hauca sa mace ; si vodra feryr Payn ; mes yl guenchy le coup. Le Deble, par vertu de la croys, fust tut enpoury e perdy force ; quar yl ne poeit adeser la croys. Payn le pursywy, quil ly fery de lespee quil comenca crier e chey tut plat a terre ; e se rendy mat. " Chevaler," fet yl, " vus mavez vencu, ne mie par force " de vus meismes ; eynz avez par vertue de la croys " qe vus portez." " Dy moy," fet Payn, " vus lede " creature, quy vus estes e quey fetes en ceste ville ; " je te conjur en le noun Dieu e de Seynte Croys." Le malfee comenca counter, de mot en autre, come le Bretoun out eynz dit ; e si dit qe quant Geomagog fust mort meintenaunt il rendy lalme a Belzebub, lur prince ; e si entrat le cors Geomagog, e vynt en semblance de ly en ces parties pur garder le grant tresor qe Geomagog aveit amasse e mys en une mesone qe yl avoit fet desouth la terre en cele ville. Payn ly demaunda

---

hope in God; he signed himself with the sign of the cross and boldly attacked the evil spirit, who raising his mace aimed a blow at Payn, but he avoided the blow. By the power of the cross the devil was much terrified and he lost his strength, for he cannot endure the cross. Payn pursued him and so struck him with his sword that he began to cry out and fell flat on the earth and owned himself beaten. " Knight," said he, " you have overcome me, not by your own prowess, but " by the virtue of the cross which you bear." " Vile creature " that you are, tell me," said Payn, " who you are and what " you are doing in this town ; I conjure you in the name of " God and of the Holy Cross." The evil spirit told his story, word for word as the Briton had previously done, and said that when Geomagog was dead he immediately gave up his soul to their prince Belzebub, whereupon he entered into the body of Geomagog, under the guise of whom he came into these parts to guard the great treasure which Geomagog had heaped up and placed in a house which he had made underground in this town. Payn asked him what he was by

quele creature yl fust; e il yl dist qe jadys fust aungle, mes or est par son forfet espirit de Deble. "Quel tre-
" sour," fet Payn, "avoit Geomagog?" "Buefs, vaches,
" cygnes, poons, chevals e totes autres bestes tregettes de
" fyn or; e si avoit un tor dor, qe parmy moy, fust
" son devyn e en ly fust tote sa creance; e il ly dist
" ces aventures qe furent avenir. E deus foyth par
" an soleynt les geantz honorer lur dieu, ce fust le
" tor dor, dont tant or est amassee, qa merveille. E
" pus avynt qe tote ceste countre fust apelle la Blaunche
" Launde; e moy, e mes compaignons, enclosames la
" launde de haut mur e profounde fosse, yssi qe nul en-
" tre fust, si noun par my ceste ville qe pleyne fust de
" mavoys espiritz; e en la lande feymes jostes e tor-
" noyementz; e plusours vindrent pur vere les mer-
" veilles; mes unqe nul neschapa. Ataunt vynt un
" disciple Jhesu qe apele fust Augustyn; e, par sa
" predication, nus toly plusors des nos, e baptiza gent,

---

creation, and he said that he had formerly been an angel, but was now, by his sin, a spirit of the Devil. " What treasure
" had Geomagog?" said Payn. "He had oxen, cows, swans,
" peacocks, horses, and all other beasts moulded in fine gold;
" and he had a golden bull, which in my opinion was his
" prophet, in whom he placed all his faith, and who told him
" what was to happen. Twice in the year the giants are
" wont to honour their god, that is the golden bull, by whom
" this marvellous store of gold is collected. Afterwards
" it came to pass that the whole of this country was called
" La Blaunche Launde; and I and my companions enclosed
" the plain with a high wall and a deep ditch, so that there
" was no entry to it save through this town, which is full
" of evil spirits. In this plain we held jousts and tourna-
ments, and many a one came to witness these marvels; but
" no one ever escaped. At length came a disciple of Jesus
" who was named Augustin, who by his preaching deprived

" e fist une chapele en son noun, dount grant encombrer
" nus avynt."

"Ore me dirrez," fet Payn, "ou est le tresour dont Geomagog's prophecy.
" avez dit?" "Vassal," fait il, "ne parles mes de ce;
" quar yl destyne as autres. Mes vus serrez seignour
" de tut cet honour; e ceux qe vendrount apres vus
" le tendrount ou grant estrif e guere,

" E de ta maunche issera
" Ly loup qe merveilles fra.
" Qavera les dentz aguz,
" E de tous serra conuz.
" E serra si fort e fer,
" Quil enchacera le sengler
" Hors de la Blaunche Launde,
" Tant avera vertue graunde.
" Ly leopard le loup sywera,
" E de sa cowe le manacera.
" Ly loup lerra boys e montz;
" En ewe meiudra ou peschons.
" E tresvoera la mer,
" Environera cet ydle enter.

" us of many of our people, and baptized them, and built a
" chapel in his name, whereby great trouble came to us."

"Now," said Payn, "you shall tell me where the treasure
" is, of which you have spoken." "Vassal," answered he,
" do not speak further of that, for it is destined for others.
" But you shall be lord of all this honour, and those who come
" after you shall hold it with great strife and war. And from
" thy sleeve shall come forth the Wolf who shall do wonders;
" who shall have sharp teeth, and shall be known by all. He
" shall be so bold and so proud that he will drive away the
" Wild Boar from Blaunche Launde, such shall be his great
" power. The Leopard shall chase the Wolf and shall threaten
" his tail. The Wolf shall leave the woods and the moun-
" tains; he shall . . . in the water wherein we fish. He shall
" send across the sea and shall entirely surround this island.

" Audreyn veyndra le Leopart,
" Par son engyn e par son art.
" Pus en ceste lande vendra,
" En ewe son recet tendra."

Qant lespirit ou dit ce, sen issit du corps ; e tiel puour avynt, dont Payn quida devyer. E qant passe fust, la nuyt enclarsyst, e le temps enbely ; e les chevalers e les autres, qenpourys furent, senveylerent ; e mout senmervelerent de laventure qe lur aveit avenu. Lendemeyn, fust la chose mostre al roy e tot lost. E le roy fist porter le cors Geomagog, e gittre en un profond put de hors la ville ; e fist garder la mace, e la mostra longement a plusours, pur la merveille qele fust si graunde.

William's grants of lands in Wales.

Ly roy sen vet de yleqe e vent en une contre joygnant a la Blanche Launde, qe jadys fust a un Bretoun Meredus fitz Beledyns ; e de lees si est un chastelet qest apellee Arbre Oswald ; mes or est apelee Osewaldestre. Ly roy apela un cheveler Aleyn fitz Flaev, e

---

" At the last the Leopard shall conquer by his craft and by " his art. He shall come into this plain and shall occupy " his stronghold in the water."

When the spirit had said this he departed from the body, and such terror came upon them that Payn thought he would have died. When that had passed the night grew clear and the weather became fine. The knights and the others who had been terrified arose, and were much astonished at the adventure which had befallen them. On the morrow the affair was told to the king and the whole army. The king caused the body of Geomagog to be carried and thrown into a deep well outside the town ; he kept the mace and showed it for a long time to many people for this great marvel.

The king departed thence and went into a country adjoining to Blaunche Launde, which formerly belonged to a Briton named Meredus the son of Beledyns, within which is a castle named Arbre Oswald, but now Osewaldestre. The king called a knight named Aleyn son of Flaev, and gave him the

ly dona le chastelet ou tut lonour qe apent. E de cely Aleyn vindrent tous les grantz seignurs Dengleterre qe ount le sournoun de fitz Aleyn. Pus cesti Aleyn fist enlarger mout le chastel.

Ly roys passa la ryvere de Salverne, e vist le pays entour bon e bel; e apela un chevaler ke fust nee en Loreygne, en la cyte de Mees; qe mout fust renomee de force e de bealte e de corteysie, (e sa enseigne fust de un samyt vermayl, e deus poons dor,) e ly dona Alburburs ou tot lonour qapent. E issi dona ly roys a ces meillour chevalers e plus afiez, totes les terres, chaces e fees de Cestre desqe a Brustut.

Ly roy apela Payn Peverel, e ly dona la Blaunche Launde e foreste, guastyne, chaces, e tut le pays. E si aveit une mote environee de merreis e de ewe; e la fyst Payn un tour bel e fort: e fust la mote apelee Wayburs; e si court une ryvere de lees qe de Payn Peverel tint le noun, e si est apelee Peverel. Mes pus

castle with all the honour belonging to it. From this Aleyn are descended all the great lords of England who have the surname of Fitz-Aleyn. This Aleyn afterwards caused the castle to be much enlarged.

The king crossed the river Severn, and saw that the country round about it was good and fair. He called a knight who was born in Loreygne, in the city of Méés, who was much renouned for his strength, his beauty and his courtesey, (on his banner he bore two peacocks of gold on red silk,) and gave him Alburburs and all the honour thereto appertaining. And thus the king gave all the lands, chaces and fees, from Cestre to Brustut to his best and trustiest knights.

The king called Payn Peverel and gave him Blaunche Laund, with its forest, waste lands, chaces and all the country. There was there an eminence surrounded by marsh land and water on which Payn built a tower, fair and strong; the eminence was called Wayburs; a river runs near it which takes its name from Payn Peverel, it is called the Peverel, but after-

fust apellee Pevereyes. Le roy, qant issi aveyt establie ces terres, retorna a Londres, e de Loundre a Normandie, e yleqe morust. Pus reigna en Engletere Willam le Rous, son fitz; e apres ly Henre, son puysne frere, qe pus detint Robert Courtheose, son eyne ffrere, en prisone tote sa vye; lencheson ne vus serra ore dyt.

William Peverel and his two daughters.

Puys avynt qe Payn Peverel morust en son chastel en le Peeke; e Willam Peverel, le fitz sa soere, recust e avoit tut leritage Payn. Pus cely Willam, par coup despee, conquist tote la terre de Morelas tanqe a lewe de Dee, Ellesmere, Maylour e Nauhendon. Cesty Willam fist en la Blanche Launde un tour, e le apela Blaunchetour; e la ville qest entour est uncore apelee Blauncheville, en Englois Whytyntone. En Ellesmere fist un autre tour, e sur lewe de Keyroc un autre. Willam avoit deus beles neces, Eleyne, la eynsne; e Melette, la puysne. E si maria Eleyne al fitz Aleyn; e dona ou ly en mariage tote la terre de Morlas, desqe

---

wards Pevereyes. When the king had thus settled his lands he returned to London, and from London to Normandy, where he died. William the Red, his son, reigned after him in England, after him Henry, his younger brother, who afterwards kept Robert Courtheose his elder brother in prison all his life. The reason for this shall not be told you at present.

Afterwards it came to pass that Payn Peverel died in his castle in the Peek, and William Peverel, his sister's son, received and held all Payn's heritage. This William by force of arms afterwards conquered the whole land of Morelas as far as the water of Dee, Ellesmere, Maylour and Nauhendon. This William made a tower in the Blaunche Launde, which he called Blaunchetour, and the town which is round it is still named Blauncheville, in English Whytyntone. He made another town in Ellesmere, and a third in the water of Keyroc. William had two fair nieces; Eleyne, the elder, and Melette, the younger. He married Eleyne to Fitz-Aleyn, and gave with her in marriage all the land of Morlas as far as the

Keyroc. Melette dassez fust la plusbele ; e, pur sa bealte, fust mout desirree. Mes nul ne ly vynt agree. Willam la enresona, e pria qe ele se discovereit a ly syl y avoit en la terre nul chevaler qe ele voleit prendre a baroun. E si nul tel y fust yl la eydereit a son poer. "Certes, sire," fet ele, "yl ny a chevaler en tot "le mound qe je prendroy pur richesse e pur honour "de terres. Mes, si je james nul averoy, yl serra bel, "corteys, e bien apris, e le plus vaylant de son corps "de tote la Cristienete. De la richesse ne fas je force ; "quar, (je le pus bien dire,) qe cele est riche qe ad "qe son cuer desire." Willam, qant ce oy, surryst ; e dist : "Bele nece, bien avez dit ; e je vus ayderay "a mon poer de tel seignur purchacer. E si vus "dorray Blanchetour e qanqe apent, ou tut lonour. "Quar femme qe ad terre en fee serra dassez plus "desirree."

A tournament to be held at Peverel castle.

Lors fist William une crie en meynte terre, en meynte cite, qe tous les chevalers de valours qe

---

Keyroc. Melette was by far the more beautiful, and in consequence of her beauty was much desired. But no one was acceptable to her. William reasoned with her and asked her to tell him whether there were any knight in the country whom she was willing to take as her husband. And if there were none such, that he would help her to the best of his ability. "Certes, sire," said she, "there is not a knight in all the world "whom I would take for his riches nor for the honour of his "lands. But if ever I shall have one he shall be fair, courteous and well taught, and the most valiant in all Christen-"dom. For riches I care little ; for (as I may well say) to "have what the heart longs for, that is riches." When William heard this he smiled and said, "Fair niece, you have spoken well, "and I will do my best to procure you such a husband. And I "will give you Blaunchetour, with all its appurtenances, and "the entire honour. For the woman who has land in fee is "always more acceptable."

Then William caused it to be proclaimed in many a country and in many a city that all brave knights who wished to tour-

torneier veilent pur amurs, a la feste Seint Michel vienent a chastiel Peverel, quest en la Peeke. E le chevaler qe mieux fra, e le tornoy venkera, avera lamour Melette de la Blaunche tour, e sire serra e seignour de Blanche ville e de tot lonour. Ceste criee fust tost depubliee par plusors terres. Guaryn de Meez, le vaylaunt, ne avoit femme ne enfant. Mes manda a Johun, duc de la Petite Bretaigne, tot laffere de ceste crie, e ly pria ayde e socours a cele bosoigne. L[e] duc fust moult vaylant. Si avoit dys fitz chevalers, les plusbeals e plusvaylantz de corps qe furent en tote la Petite Bretaygne. Roger le eyne, Howel, Audwyn, Urien, Thebaud, Bertrem, Amys, Gwychard, Gyrard e Guy. Le duc maunda ces x. fitz e c. chevalers ou eux, bien mountes e de totes apparillementz richement aprestez, a son cosyn Garyn de Mees. E yl les rescust a grant honour. Eneas, le fitz le roy Descoce, vint ou le conte de Morres e les Brutz, Donbars, Umfrevilles e deus c. chevalers. Sweyn, le prince

---

ney "pur amurs" should come to castle Peverel in the Peek at the feast of Michaelmas. And the knight who should do the best and overcome the tourney should have the love of Melette of the Blaunche Tour and should be lord and master of Blanche Ville and all the honour. This proclamation was speedily published in many lands. Guarin de Meez the valiant had neither wife nor child. But he sent to John, duke of Little Bretaigne, the full import of this proclamation, and asked of him help and succour in this matter. The duke was very valiant. He had ten sons, knights, the fairest and the bravest in all Little Bretaygne. Roger was the eldest, Howel, Audwyn, Urien, Thebaud, Bertrem, Amys, Gwychard, Gyrard, and Guy. The duke sent his ten sons and a hundred knights with them, well mounted and all provided with rich apparel, to his cousin Garyn de Mees. And he received them with great honour. Eneas, son of the king of Scotland, came with the earl of Morres and the Brutz, Dunbars, Umfrevilles, and two hundred knights. Sweyn the prince of Wales came with

de Gales, vint a deus c. escus. Le duc de Borgoyne ou iiic. chevalers. Ydromor, fitz le rey de Galewey, vint ou c. e l. chevalers. Les chevalers Dengletere sunt nonbrez a iiic.

Guaryn de Mees e sa compaignie se herbigerent en tentes faitz en la foreste de lees ou le tornoiment serroit, bien vestuz tot a volente de un samit vermayl. E les destres furent covertz tot a la terre au fuer de guere. Guaryn meismes, pur estre desconuz des autres, avoyt un rest de or. Lors resonerent le tabours, trompes, busynes, corns sarazynes, qe les valeyes rebonderent de le soun. Lors comenca le tornoy dur e fort. La poeit um vere chevalers reverseez des destrers, e meynte dure coupe donee, e meynte colee. La damoisele e plusours dames fuerent monteez une tour, e virent la bele assemble de chevalers e coment chescun se countynt. A descrivre les coupes e continances, je nay cure. Mes Guaryn de Meez e sa compaignie furent ce jour le meylours, plusbeals e plus- Guaryn de Mees distinguishes himself there.

---

two hundred shields. The duke of Borgoyne with three hundred knights. Ydromor, son of the king of Galewey, came with one hundred and fifty knights. The knights of England were reckoned at three hundred.

Guaryn de Mees and his company took their abode in tents made in the forest, near where the tournament should be, well clad at their pleasure in red samite, and their horses were entirely covered to the ground in array of war. Guaryn himself wore a "rest" of gold, that he should not be known. Then sounded the tabors, trumpets, pipes, Saracen horns, so that the valleys re-echoed with the sound. The tourney then begun, stiff and strong. Then might be seen knights thrown from their war horses, many a hard blow given, many a stroke. The damsel with many ladies had ascended a tower, whence they saw this fair gathering of the knights, and how each conducted himself. I do not care to describe the blows and the conduct [of the knights]. But Guaryn de Mees and his company were that day regarded as the best, the handsomest

vaylauntz tenuz. E sur tous si fust Garyn le plus peryse en tous poyntz. Avynt quil avespry; e le tornoy, pur la nuyt, ne purra outre durer. Les chevalers sen alerent a lur ostels. Guaryn e sa compaigne se tornerent privement a lur tentes en la foreste; e se desa[r]merent, e grant joie demenerent. E nul des autres grant seignours ne savoient ou yl devyndrent, ne qy yl furent, tant se countindrent coyement; mes de tous furent desconuz.

Lendemeyn crie fust par tot une joste. Ataunt vynt Garyn a jostes vestu de foyle de ere tot vert hors de la foreste, come cele qe fust aventurous e tot desconu. Quant le duc de Borgoyne lad veu, meyntenant ly corust sur, e ly fery grant coup de une lance. Guaryn le refery, quil tribucha de le chyval enmy la place. Pus un autre, pus le tierce. Melette de la Blanche tour ly manda son gant, e pria quil la defendist. Yl dit qe si freit a son poer; e si se repeira a la foreste e se arma de ces armes vermails, e

---

and the most valiant. And of all of them Guaryn was the most esteemed in all points. It began to grow dusk; and the tourney could last no longer for the night. The knights went to their abodes. Guaryn and his company went secretly to their tents in the forest; where they disarmed themselves and made great joy. None of the other great lords knew what had become of them, or where they were, so quietly did they keep themselves; but they were unknown to all.

On the morrow a joust was everywhere proclaimed. Then went Garyn to the joust, clad in ivy leaves all green out of the forest, like an adventurous knight, and entirely unrecognised. When the duke of Borgoyne saw him he attacked him immediately, and struck him a great stroke with his lance. Guaryn returned the blow so that he fell from his horse in the midst of the place. Then a second, then the third. Melette of the Blanche Tour sent him her glove, and asked him to defend it. He said he would do so as he best might, and having returned to the forest he armed himself in his red armour, and came

vint ou ces compaignons en le champ. E si venqui le tornoy e purprist le champ pur totes les gentz qe la vyndrent. Dount jugement se prist entre tous les grantz seignours e herrautz e disours qe Guaryn, qe fust le chevaler aventurous, a resoun avereit le pris del tornoy e Melette de la Blaunche tour. E yl, a grant joie, la prist, e la dammoysele ly. Si maunderent le evesqe de la countre; e, veaunt touz, le ad espose. Willam Peverel tint une feste mout riche a les esposayles; e, quant la feste fust departy, Guaryn prist sa mulier e sa compagnie, e sen alerent a Blaunche-ville, e demorent yleqe a grant joie quaraunte jours. Donqe repeyrerent les dys freres ou lur c. chevalers a Bretaigne le Menure. Mes Gwy, le puysne frere, remist en Engletere; e conquist par coup despee meyntes beles terres, e si fust apelee Gwy le Estraunge, e de ly vindrent tous les grantz seignurs de Engletere qe ount le sournoun de Estraunge.

and marries the daughter of William Peverel.

Gwaryn de Meez tint longement a grant honour la

War between

---

with his companions into the field. He was victor in the tournament, and held the field against all who came there. Thereupon it was decided among all the great lords, and the heralds, and the poets, that Guaryn, who was the adventurous knight, deserved to have the prize of the tourney along with Melette of the Blaunche Tour. And with great joy he took her, and the damsel took him. So they sent for the bishop, who in the presence of all married them. William Peverel gave a very sumptuous feast at the marriage, and when the feast broke up Guaryn took his wife and his company and they went to Blauncheville, and there they remained for forty days in great joy. Then the ten brothers and their hundred knights returned to Bretaigne le Menure. But Guy, the youngest brother, came back into England, and by the power of his sword won many fair lands. He was called Guy le Estrange, and from him came all the great lords in England who have the surname of Estrange.

Guaryn de Meez held the lordship of Blauncheville for a

Gwaryn de Mees and the Welsh.

seignurie de Blauncheville. Mes Yervard, le fitz Yweyn, prince de Gales, ly fesoit grant damage, ocist ces gentz, destruit ces terres. Atant asistrent jour de bataylle ou meynt prodhome perdy la vye. Al dreyn, torna la perte a Yervard; quar yl perdy plusours de ces gentz; e guerpist le champ, e sen fuist a deshonour. Lors mist Guaryn un chevaler mout fort e vaylant, Gwy, le fitz Candelou de Porkyntone, a garder lonour de Blauncheville e ces autres terres.

Birth of Fulk Fitz-Warin. He is educated by Joce de Dinan.

Avynt qe la dame enseynta. Quant fust delyvres, al houre qe Dieu ordyna, apelerent lenfaunt Fouke. E quant lenfant fust de set anz, si le manderent a Joce de Dynan pur aprendre e noryr. Quar Joce fust chevaler de bone aprise. Jose le rescust a grant honour e grant cherte, le norry en ces chambres ou ces enfauntz; quar yl avoit deus fyles, dont la puysne fust de meyme lage qe Fouke fust, e si fust apelee Hawyse. Sa eynsnee fust apelee Sibylle. A ycel temps grant descord e guere fust entre sire Joce de

---

long time with great honour. But Yervard, son of Yweyn, prince of Wales, did him great harm, slew his people and destroyed his lands. They fixed a day for battle, in which many a good man lost his life. At the last Yervard had the worst of it, for he lost many of his men, he left the field and fled with dishonour. Then Guaryn sent a strong and brave knight, Gwy, the son of Candelou de Porkyntone, to guard the honour of Blauncheville and his other lands.

It so happened that the lady became with child. When she was delivered, at the time which God had appointed, they called the child Fouke. When the boy was seven years old they sent him to Joce de Dynan to be instructed and brought up, for Joce was a knight of a good reputation. Joce received him with much honour and great affection, and brought him up in his house with his own children; for he had two daughters, the younger of whom was of the same age as Fouke, and she was called Hawyse. The elder was named Sibylle. At that time there was a great disagreement and

Dynan e sire Water de Lacy, qe donqe sojorna mout a Ewyas; pur quel descord meint bon chevaler e meynt prodhome perdy la vye; quar chescun corust sur autre, arderent lur terres, preierent e robberent lur gentz, e meinte autre damage fyrent. Quant Fouke fust de xvii. ans, moult parfust beals, fortz e grantz.

Fight between Jocc de Dinan and Walter de Lacy.

Un jour de este, sire Joce leva matin. Si mounta un tour en my son chastiel, pur survere le pais; e regarda vers la montaigne qest apelee Whyteclyf; e vist les champs covertz de chevalers, esquiers, serjauntz e vadletz, les uns armes sur lur destres, les uns a pie: e oyt les chyvals hynnyr, e vist les healmes relusantz. Entre queux vist yl la banere sire Water de Lacy, reflambeaunt novel dor ou un fes de goules parmy. Lors escrie ces chevalers, e les comanda armer e mounter lur destrers e prendre lur arblasters e lur archers, e aler al pount desouth la vile de Dynan, e garder le pount e le gue, qe nul ny passast.

---

war between sir Joce de Dynan and sir Walter de Lacy, who at that time resided much in Ewyas, through which strife many a good knight and many an honest man lost his life, for each one attacked his neighbours, burnt their lands and robbed their people, and did much other mischief. When Fouke was eighteen years old he had grown up handsome, strong and tall.

One summer's day sir Joce rose betimes. He ascended a tower in his castle in order to survey the country, and looking towards the mountain called Whyteclyf, he saw the fields covered with knights, squires, attendants and servants. Some were armed and on horseback, others were on foot. He heard the horses neigh and saw the glancing of the helmets. Among them he perceived the banner of sir Walter de Lacy, shining with new gold, on which was a fess gules. Then he summoned his knights, and commanded them to mount their war horses, to take their cross-bow men and archers, and to go to the bridge under the town of Dynan, to guard the bridge and the ford, so that none should pass.

Sire Water e sa gent quiderent passer seurement; mes les gentz sire Joce les unt russhe arere; e plusours, dambepartz, sunt navfrez e tuez. Atant vint sire Joce e sa banere tote blaunche dargent, a trois lyons dasur passauntz, coronez dor; ou ly v^{c}. qe chevalers qe serjauntz a chyval e a pee, estre les borgoys e lur serjantz qe bons furent. Donqe a grant force passa Joce le pount: e hurterent les ostz corps a cors. Joce fery Godebrand, qe porta la banere de Lacy, par my le cors de une launce. Donqe perdy le Lacy sa banere. Atant la gent sentreferirent, e plusours sunt dambepartz occis. Mes al Lacy avynt le pys: quar yl sen vet fuaunt e desconfitz, e prent sa voie de lees la ryvere de Temede.

Joce is in great danger.

La dame, ou ces filles e ces autre damiseles, fust montee une tour. Si unt veu tot lestour e prient Dieù devoutement quil salve lur seignour e ces gentz de anuy e de encombrementz. Joce de Dynan conust Water de Lacy par ces armes, e le vist fuaunt tout

---

Sir Walter and his people expected to pass in safety; but sir Joce's people took them in the rear; and many on both sides were wounded and slain. Then came sir Joce with his banner entirely of argent, with three lions azure passant, crowned or, and with him were five hundred knights and followers, horse and foot, besides the townsmen and their servants, who were good men. Then Joce crossed the bridge with great force, and the two hosts engaged hand to hand. Joce with a lance pierced Godebrand through the body, he who carried Lacy's banner. Then Lacy lost his banner. The two troops attacked each other, and many were killed on both sides. But Lacy had the worst of it, for he made off, flying and discomfited, and he took his way near the river Temede.

The lady with her daughters and her other damsels had mounted a turret, whence they saw all the skirmish and prayed devoutly to God to save their lord and his people from loss and sorrow. Joce de Dynan knew Walter de Lacy by his arms,

soul; quar yl aveit grant pour de perdre la vie. Si fert son destrer des esperouns, passa mountz e vals, e, en poy de oure, ad ateynt le Lacy en une valee, desouth le boys, vers Champ Geneste. Si ly comaunda retorner. Le Lacy nully ne vist, si sire Joce noun; e se retorna mult hardiement; e sentreferirent durement; quar nul nout cure de autre esparnier. Grantz coupes e fortz sentredonerent. Joce sembla qe la medle dura trop longement, hausa lespee de maltalent; si fery le Lacy al escu, qe tot le porfendy parmy, e ledement le navfra par my le bras senestre. Joce lassaut egrement; e a poy quil ne le ust̃ pris, quant sire Godard de Bruyz, e deus chevalers ou ly, vindrent socoure le Lacy. Sire Godard e ces compaignons mout hardiement asaylent sire Joce de tote partz; e yl se defent de eux come lyon.

La dame e ces fyles, en la tour veient lur seignour si demene qa poyne pussent ester, crient, palment, e grant duel demeynent; quar james ne quident ver lur

But is rescued by Fulk.

---

and perceived that he was running away all alone, for he was greatly afraid of losing his life. He struck his war-horse with his spurs, passed mountains and valleys; and in a short time having overtaken Lacy in a valley under the wood towards Champ Geneste, he commanded him to turn. Seeing no one but sir Joce, Lacy turned very boldly, and they exchanged blows with a good will, for neither thought of sparing the other. Great blows and heavy were interchanged. Joce, thinking that the fight was lasting too long, raised his sword viciously and gave Lacy such a blow on the shield that he clove it in two, inflicting a severe wound on the left arm. Joce assaulted him eagerly, and had nearly taken him when sir Godard de Bruyz and two knights with him came to Lacy's succour. Sir Godard and his companions attacked sir Joce on every side very boldly, and he defended himself like a lion against them.

The lady and her daughters in the tower perceiving their lord thus dealt withal, could scarce endure it; they cried, they beat their hands, they made great lamentation, for never did

seignour en vie. Fouke, le fitz Waryn, fust remys en le chastel; quar yl ne fust qe xviii. anz. Si oy le cry en la tour; monta hastivement, si vist sa dame e tous les autres ploure. Yl sen ala a Hawyse e demaunda quey ly fust e pur quoy fesoit si mourne chere. "Tes "tey," fet ele, "poy resembles tu ton pere qest si "hardy e si fort, e vous estes coward, e tous jours "serrez. Ne veiez vus la mon seignour (qe grant- "ment vus ad chery e suefment norry) est en peryl "de mort pur defaute de ayde? e vus, maveys, alez "sus e jus seyntz, e ne donez ja garde." Le vadlet, pur la repreofe que ele avoit dyt, tot enrouy de yre e de maltalent; e sen vala meintenant de la tour, e trova en la sale un viel roynous haubert e le vesty meyntenant a mieux quil savoit; e prist une grose hasche Denesche en sa mayn. Si vynt a une estable, qe ert de lees la posterne par ount home vet vers la ryvere; e trova la un somer. Yl mounta meyntenant le somer, e sen issist par la posterne, e passa bien tot

---

they expect to see their lord alive. Fouke Fitz-Waryn had been left in the castle, for he was only eighteen years old. Hearing the cry in the tower, he ascended it in haste, and saw his lady and all the others in tears. He went to Hawyse and asked her what was the matter, and why she made such piteous cheer. "Hold your tongue," said she; "you "little resemble your father; he is bold and hardy, and you "are a coward and will always be one. Do not you see "that my lord (who has always treated you kindly and "brought you up tenderly) is there in danger of death for "want of help? And you, pitiful fellow that you are, are "running up and down in safety, without caring for him." The lad grew quite red with anger and spite at the reproof which she addressed to him, and speedily left the tower. Finding in the hall a rusty old hauberk, he put it on as he best could, and took a clumsy Danish hatchet in his hand. He went into a stable near the postern which leads to the river, and in it he found a packhorse, which he mounted forthwith, and going out by the postern he speedily

la ryvere, e vynt al champ ou son seignur fust abatu de son destrer e en poynt de estre ocys, syl ne ust survenu. Fouke aveit un healme lede e ly covry apoy les espaudles; e, a sa premere venue, fery Godard de Bruz, qe aveyt saysy son seignour, de sa hasche, e ly coupa leschyne del dors en deus meytes, e remounta son seignour. Fouke se torna vers sire Andre de Preez, si ly dona de sa hache en le healme de blanc asser, qe tut le purfendy desqe a dentz. Sire Ernalt de Lyls veit bien quil ne puet en nulle manere eschaper; quar yl fust sorement navfre, e se rendy a sire Joce. Le Lacy se defendy, mes en poy de oure fust seysy.

Walter de Lacy and Ernalt de Lyls prisoners in Joce's castle.

Ore est sire Water de Lacy pris e sire Ernalt de Lyls; e sunt menez outre la ryvere vers le chastel de Dynan. Donqe parla sire Joce: "Amys borgeis, mout estes fort " e vaylant; e, si vus ne ussez este, je usse esse pieca " mortz. Je vus su mout tenuz, e serroy pur tous " jours. Vus demorrez ou moy, e je ne vus faudrey

---

crossed the river, and came into the field where his lord was beaten from his war-horse and at the point of being killed had not he come up. Fouke had a shabby helmet, which scantily covered his shoulders; and at his first arrival he struck Godard de Bruz, who had seized his lord, with his axe, and cut the spine of his back in two halves, and remounted his lord. Fouke turned to sir Andrew de Preez, and with his hatchet gave him such a blow on his helm of polished steel that he clove him down to the teeth. Sir Ernalt de Lyls saw well that he could not anyhow escape, for he was sore wounded; so he surrendered himself to sir Joce. Lacy defended himself, but in a short time he was seized.

Now is sir Walter de Lacy taken and sir Ernalt de Lyls with him, and they are conveyed across the river to the castle of Dynan. Then said sir Joce, "Friend burgess, you " are very strong and valiant, and had not it been for you I " should have soon been dead. I am much indebted to you, " and so shall I be for ever. You shall stay with me, and

" james." Joce quida quil fust borgeis: quar borgeys relement ont vestu les armes ; e ceus que lenfant, avoit furent roynous e ledes. Donqe respount lenfant e dit: " Sire, je ne sui nul borgeys, e ne me conussez poynt? " je su Fouke, vostre norry." " Beal fitz," fet il, " beneit " seyt le temps qe je vus unqe nory ; quar james son " travayl ne perdra qe pur prodhome fra." Atant amenerent sire Water e sire Ernalt en une tour, qe est apelee Pendovre ; e yleqe fist mediciner lur playes, e garder a grant honour. E la dame e ces fyles e lur damoyseles, chescun jour, conforterent e solacerent sire Water e sire Ernalt de Lyls.

They are set at liberty by Marion de la Bruere.

Sire Ernald fust jeuene bachiler e bel, e grantement fust suppris de lamur Marioun de la Bruere, une mout gentile damoisele, e si fust la mestre chaunbrere la dame del chastiel de Dynan. Sire Ernald e la damoisele entreparlerent sovent ; quar ele soleit chescun jour venir en la tour, ou sa dame, de conforter sire Water de Lacy

---

" I will never fail you." Joce believed that he was a burgess, for in fact the townsmen had armed themselves, and those which the child wore were rusty and ill-favoured. Then the child answered and said, " Sir, I am no burgess, " do you not know me? I am Fouke whom you have " reared." " Fair son," said he, " blessed be the day when " I reared you, for the work done for a good man is never " thrown away." Then they put sir Walter and sir Ernalt in a tower called Pendover, and there their wounds were attended to and they were kept with great honour, and the lady and her daughters each day comforted and solaced sir Walter and sir Ernalt de Lyls.

Sir Ernalt was a young and handsome batcheler, and he became deeply smitten with love for Marioun de la Bruere, a very gentle damsel, who was the principal chamberwoman of the lady of Dynan castle. Sir Ernalt and the damsel had frequent conversations, for it was her daily custom to come into the tower with her mistress to comfort sir Walter de Lacy and sir

e sire Ernald. Avynt qe sire Ernald, quant veyt temps, aresona la damoysele ; e dit qe ele fust la chose quil plus ama ; e qe tant est suppris de samour, qe repos ne puet avoir, jour ne nuyt, si ele ne se asente a ly ; quar ele ly puet socours fere de tous ces anuys ; e, si ele le voleyt fere, yl la freit seurete a sa volente demeyne qe james nulle autre namera, sy ly noun. E, al plus tost quil serreit delyvres, yl la prendreit a femme. La dammoisele oy la bele promesse, e ly graunta fere sa volente en totes choses : e prist seurete de ly quil la tendreit covenaunt de sa promesse. La damoisele les promit qe ele les eydereit en tous poyntz privement quil fussent delyvres de prisone. E prist towayles e lynceles ; si porta en la tour, e les fist coutre ensemble, e par els avala sire Water e sire Ernalt de la tour, e lur pria quil tenysent lur lealte e la promesse qe eux ly aveynt promys. E yl la dysent qe lealment se contendreynt a ly sauntz fauser nul covenaunt, e la comanderent a Dieu.

Ernalt. Sir Ernalt when he saw the opportunity conversed with the damsel, and told her that he loved nothing in the world so much as her ; and that so deeply was he taken with the love of her that he could have no rest, day nor night, unless she would consent to him, for she could give him relief from all these miseries. If she would do this, he would give her assurance of his own free will never to love any other woman save herself alone ; and as soon as he was at liberty he would take her for his wife. The damsel listened to his fair promises and consented to do as he wished in all things, and took assurance from him that he would keep his promise to her. The damsel promised to help them secretly in all points, so that they should be delivered from prison. She took towels and sheets, and having carried them to the tower she sewed them together, and by them she lowered sir Walter and Ernalt down from the tower, and asked them to keep faith and the promise which they had promised her. And they told her that they would observe it faithfully towards her without violating any covenant, and they commended her to God.

They return to Ewyas.

Sire Water e sire Ernalt tot souls alerent lur chemyn a pee; e, al aube de jour, vindrent a Ewyas, a le chastiel sire Water de Lacy. E quant les gentz virent lur seignur seyn e heyte revenuz, ne fet a demaunder si lees furent: quar yl le quiderent aver perdus pur tous jours.

Joce de Dynan discovers their escape.

Joce de Dynan leva matin, e sen ala a sa chapele de denz son chastel, qe fust fet e dedie en lonour de la Magdaleyne, (dount le jour de la dedication est le jour Seynt Cyryac e lxx. jours de pardoun,) si oy le service Dieu; e, quant avoit ce fait, mounta le plus-halt tour, qest en la terce bayle del chastel, qe or est apele de plusours Mortemer. E pur cele resoun ad le noun de Mortemer, qe uns des Mortemers fust leynz bone piece en garde. Joce survist le pays, rien ne vist, si bien noun. Descendy de la tour; si fist corner a laver, e si maunda pur son prison, sire Water. Quar tant honur ly feseit qe nul jour ne vodra laver ne manger eynz ly. Les prisouns furent quis par tot.

Sir Walter and sir Ernalt went their way on foot all alone, and by day break they arrived at Ewyas, the castle of sir Walter de Lacy. And when the people saw that their lord had returned whole and hearty, ye need not ask whether they were happy, for they thought they had lost him for ever.

Joce de Dynan arose in the morning and went to his chapel within the castle, which was built and dedicated in honour of Mary Magdalen (the day of the dedication of which is Saint Cyryac,[1] with seventy days of pardon); he heard God's service, and having done this he ascended the highest tower (which is that within the third bailey of the castle), now called by many people Mortimer's Tower. It is called Mortimer's Tower because one of the Mortimer's was kept in it in prison for a good while. Joce surveyed the country, and saw nothing and nobody. Having come down he ordered the horn to be blown summoning the people to wash, and he sent for his prisoner, sir Walter. For he did him such honour that he would never wash nor eat without him. The prisoners were sought for everywhere, but all to no pur-

[1] Aug. 8.

Ce fust nyent; quar eschapez erent. Sire Joce ne fist nul semblant quil se repenty de lur aler, ne ja garde ne dona.

Sire Water pensa quil se vengereit ou morreit, maunda pur ces gentz Dirlaunde, e prist souders, chevalers e autres, issi qe fort estour e dur assaut fust entre sire Water e sire Joce. Les countes e barons Dengletere virent la grant mortalite e damage qe fust avenu, e uncore entre eux de jour en jour avynt; pristrent un jour damour entre sire Water e Joce; e yleoqe furent totes grevances redressez e les parties acordeez; e, devant les grantz seignours, furent entrebaysez. He and Walter de Lacy are reconciled.

Joce de Dynan maunda ces letres a Waryn de Mees e Melette, sa bone dame, le piere Fouke. Lenfaunt Fouke fust auke brun; e, pur ce, fust pus apele de plusours Fouke le Brun. Waryn e Melette e grantz gentz vindrent al chastel de Dynan; e furent rescu ileqe a grant honur e joie; e se enveiserent une sy- Fulk marries Hawise, Joce's daughter.

---

pose, for they had escaped. Sir Joce gave no indication that he was sorry for their departure and took no notice of it.

Sir Walter determined that he would be revenged or die, so he sent for his people from Ireland; he took mercenaries, knights and others, so that between sir Walter and sir Joce there was strong war and sharp hostility. The earls and the barons of England saw the great carnage and the mischief that had been committed, and which was going on from day to day. So they fixed a loveday between sir Walter and Joce, and there were all grievances redressed and the parties agreed, and they embraced each other in the presence of the great lords.

Joce de Dynan sent his letters to Fouke's father, Waryn de Mees, and Melette, his good lady. The child Fouke was dark eyed, and for that reason he was afterwards called by many Fouke le Brun. Waryn and Melette and other great people came to the castle of Dynan, and were there received with great honour and joy, where they remained a week.

maigne. Joce molt corteisement parla a Guarin e ly dit: "Sire," fet yl, "vus avez seynz un fitz qe je vus "ay nory. Jespoir quil serra prodhome e vaylant; e "serra vostre heir, sy yl vus survist. E je ay deus "files, qe sunt mes heyrs; e, si vus plust, vodrey je "qe nus fussoms entrealiez par mariage. E donqe ne "doteroms gueres nul grant seignur Dengletere, qe "nostre partie ne serreit meintenu a dreit e a resoun. "E, si vus le volez graunter, je vueil qe Fouke le "Brun espouse Hawyse, ma puysne file, e quil seit "heir de la meyte de tote ma terre." Guarin ly mercia molt de son beal profre, e dit quil le grantereit tot a sa volente demeyne. Lendemayn maunderent a Herford pur le Evesqe Robert de . . . . . Le Evesqe vint; e, a grant honour, fist les esposailles. Joce tint grant feste xv. jours.

Joce leaves Dynan Castle for a time.

Quant la feste fust departy, sire Joce e sire Guarin e lur meynes sen alerent vers Hertlande; quar yleqe

---

Very courteously did Joce speak to Guarin, and said to him, "Sir, you have here a son whom I have reared for you. I "trust he will be a good man and a valiant; and he will "be your heir, if he survives you. And I have two "daughters who will be my heirs; and if it please you I "should like that we should become connected by marriage. "And then we need scarce fear any great lord in England, but "our party will be maintained by right and reason. And if "you will consent, I wish that Fouke le Brun should marry "Hawyse, my younger daughter, who shall be the heir of "the half of all my land." Guarin thanked him much for his good offer, and said that he would grant all with his free will. On the next day they sent to Hereford for the bishop Robert of . . . . . The bishop came and married them with great honour. Joce kept a great festival for a fortnight.

When the feasting broke up sir Joce and sir Guarin, with their retainers, went to Hertlande, for there they wished to

vodreint sojorner une piece. Marion de la Bruere se feynist malade e se cocha en son lyt ; e dit qe si malade fust qe elle ne se poeit mover, si noun a grant peyne. Et demora al chastel de Dynan. Joce comanda qe ele fust guarde tot a talent. E, pur doute de le Lacy e autres gentz, soudea xxx. chevalers et lx. dis serjantz e vadletz ; e les bayla son chastel a garder, tanqe a son rcpeyr en le pays.

Marion de Bruere stays behind and invites Ernalt de Lyls to visit her in the castle.

Quant Joce fust passe, lendemein manda Marion son message a sire Ernalt de Lyls ; e ly pria, pur la grant amiste qe entre eux fust, quil nobliast les covenauntz qe entre eux sunt affermez, e quil viegne hastivement parler ou ly a le chastel de Dynan. Quar le seignur e la dame e la force de lur meynage sunt vers Hertlande. E quil vienge a meisme le lu ou dreyn sen ala de le chastel. Quant sire Ernald avoit oy le mandement sa amie, meyntenant ramanda meisme le messager, e pria, pur samur, qe ele mesurast la hautesse de

remain awhile. Marion de la Bruere pretended to be ill and kept her bed, and said that she was so sick that she could not turn herself except with the greatest difficulty. So she remained in the castle of Dynan. Joce commanded that she should be waited on as she pleased. And for fear of Lacy and the others, he engaged thirty knights and seventy serjeants and servants, and gave them his castle to keep until he should return to the country.

The day after Joce's departure Marion sent her messenger to sir Ernalt de Lyls, and asked him, for the great love which was between them, not to forget the agreements into which they had mutually entered, but to come in haste to speak to her at the castle of Dynan ; for the lord and the lady and the strength of their household had gone to Hertlande. And that he should come to the same place by which he had lately departed from the castle. When sir Ernalt had heard the message of his lady love, immediately he sent back the same messenger, and prayed Marion, for his love, to measure

la ffenestre parount yl issist dreyn de le chastel, e quele gentz e quantz e quele meisnie lur seignour avoit lesse de rere ly, si remandást par le dit messeger. La damoisele, qe nul suspecioun de tresoun naveit, prist un fyl de say, e le vala parmy la fenestre desqe la terre, e tot lestre del chastiel maunda a sire Ernalt. Donqe remanda sire Ernald a sa amie qe le quarte jour, avant houre de mie nuyt, serreit a ly a meisme la fenestre parout yl passa; e la pria qe ele ly atendist yleqe.

Ernalt de Lyls induces Walter de Lacy to join in his plot.

Sire Ernald de Lyls fist fere une eschiele de quyr de meisme la longure de le fyl de saye qe samie ly maunda. Donqe sen ala sire Ernald a soun seignour, sire Water de Lacy, e ly counta qe Fouke, le fitz Waryn de Mees, avoit espose Hawyse, la fille sire Joce de Dynan, e qe sire Waryn e sire Joce aveyent lesse garnesture en le chastel de Dynan, e furent alez vers Hertlande pur quere souders e pur assembler yleqe lur gentz, e pur auner host e pueple santz nombre. "E, quant tut lost

---

the highest of the windows through which he had lately left the castle, and to send him back that information by the said messenger, as also how many and what kind of people the lord had left behind him in his household. Having no suspicion of treason, the damsel took a silken thread, and let it fall from the window to the ground, and told to sir Ernalt all the condition of the castle. Then sir Ernalt sent a message back to his friend that on the fourth day, before the hour of midnight, he would be with her at the same window through which he had gone; and he prayed her to await him there.

Sir Ernalt de Lyls caused to be made a ladder of leather, of the same length as the silken thread which his friend had sent him. Then sir Ernalt went to his lord sir Walter de Lacy, and told him that Fouke, the son of Waryn de Mees, had married Hawyse the daughter of sir Joce de Dynan, and that sir Waryn and sir Joce, having left a garrison in the castle of Dynan, had gone to Hertlande to seek for soldiers, and to assemble their people there, and to collect an army and a countless number of people. "And when all the host

" serra assemble, meyntenaunt vendront a Ewyas, e
" ardrount e prendront vos terres. E, sy yl poent
" vostre corps prendre, vus serrez detrenche en menu
" pieces; e vous e les vos desherytez pur tous jours.
" E ce me mand cele qe vus bien savez; quar ele seit
" e ad oy la verite."

Quant sire Water entendy la novele, devynt tut pal pur angoise; e dit: "Certes, je ne pus crere qe sire " Joce me freit tiele deceyte, de pus qe nus sumes acor- " deez, e, veantz plusours, entrebayseez; e je harrey " mout qe nos piers diseynt qe le acord serreit enfreynt " endreit de moy; e sire Joce est tenuz leal chevaler." " Sire," fet sire Ernalt, " vus estes mon seignur, je " vus garny de vostre damage; quar je say la verite " par cele qe ad oy le consayl. E ne ditez mie autre- " foyz qe je savoy vostre damage e ne le vus vodray " garnyr, ne qe je vus ay menty ma fey." Sire Water devynt molt pensyf, e ne savoit nul bon consayl sur

" shall be assembled, they will immediately come to Ewyas,
" and will burn up and seize your lands. And if they can
" catch you, you shall be cut up into little morsels, and you
" and yours shall be disinherited for ever. And one whom
" you know well sent me this message, for she knows the
" truth, and has heard it."

When sir Walter heard the news he became quite pale with anguish, and said: "Of a truth I could not have believed " that sir Joce would do me such a trick, since we are at " accord, and have embraced each other in the presence of " many people; and I should be much grieved that our peers " should say that the accord had been broken on my part; " and sir Joce is considered as a loyal knight." "Sir," said sir Ernalt, "you are my lord, I warn you of your danger, " for I know the truth through her who heard the plan. " And do not tell me afterwards that I knew of your danger " and would not warn you of it, or that I have belied my " fealty." Sir Walter became very thoughtful, and did not know what to do for the best in this matter. At length he

cele bosoigne. Atant dit sire Ernald: "Qei me loez " vus de fere?" "Sire," fet yl, "creez mon consayl, " si frez bien. Je irroy meisme, ou ma compagnie; si " prendroy par engyn le chastiel de Dynan; e quant " sire Joce avera fayly de soun recet, il vus grevera " le meynz e se retrerra de sa pensee; e, partant, poez " estre venge de ly de le hounte quil nus ad sovent " fait. E, sire, pensez qe, seit ce a droit ou a tort, " home se deit de son enymy venger." Sire Water del tot se mist en le consayl sire Ernalt; e quida quil ly aveit dit veir de quanquil avoit dyt. Mes yl menti come faus chevaler.

The expedition sets out, and Ernalt enters the castle.

Sire Ernald apparilla sa compaignie, qe grant fust; quar yl avoit en sa compagnie, qe chevalers, esquires, e serjeantz, plus qe myl; e vynt al chastiel de Dynan par nuyt; e fist partie de sa compagnie demorer en le boys pres de Whyteclyf, e partie enbucher desouth le chastiel en les gardyns. La nuyt fust mout obscure;

---

said to sir Ernalt: "What do you advise me to do?" "Sir," said he, "follow my advice and you will do well. I will my- " self go with my company, and I will take the castle of " Dynan by stratagem; and when sir Joce has lost his strong- " hold he will trouble you the less and will abandon his " project; and besides, you will have had your revenge for " the disgrace which he has so often done us. And sir, " remember that by right or by wrong it is a duty to avenge " one's self on one's enemy." Sir Walter placed himself entirely at the disposal of sir Ernalt, believing that all that he had said was the truth. But he lied like a false knight.

Sir Ernalt got his company ready, which was large; for he had in his company, what with knights, esquires, and men-at-arms, more than a thousand. He came to the castle of Dynan by night, and made one part of his company remain in the wood near Whyteclyf, and another part to lie in ambush in the gardens under the castle. The night was very

quar yl ne furent aparcu de gueyte ne de autre. Sire Ernald prist un esquier qe porta la eschiele de quyr, e sen alerent a la fenestre ou Marion les attent. E quant ele les vist unqe ne fust si lee. Si en vala jus une corde, e traist sus la eschiele de quyr. Si la ferma a un kernel de le mur; e Ernalt monta bien e legerement la tour, e prist sa amye entre ces bras e la beysa; e fyrent grant joie, e sen alerent en une autre chambre. E soperent, e pus alerent cochier. E si lesserent la eschiele pendre.

Dynan castle taken by Lacy's men.

Lesquier qe la porta ala por les chevalers e la grant compaignee, qe furent enbuchez en le jardyn le seygnur e aylours, e les amena a leschiele. E c. homes bien armes mounterent par leschiele de quyr, e sen avalerent de la tour de Pendovre, e sen alerent par le mur derere la chapele; e troverent le geyte somoilant, quar yl devynt tut pesant contre la mort. E ly pristrent meyntenant, e ly vodreynt aver ruee jus de son tour

---

dark, for they were not noticed by the watch nor any other person. Sir Ernalt took an esquire who carried the leathern ladder, and they went to the window where Marion was waiting for them. Never had she been so glad as when she saw them. She dropped down a cord and drew up the ladder of leather, which she fastened to a battlement of the wall. Ernalt went up into the tower well and nimbly, and took his love in his arms and kissed her, and they made great joy and went into another chamber, where they supped and then went to bed. And they let the ladder hang there.

The esquire who had carried the ladder went for the knights and the main body who were hidden in the lord's garden and elsewhere, and brought them to the ladder. An hundred men well armed went up by the ladder of leather, and descending from the tower of Pendover went along by the wall behind the chapel, where they found the watchman asleep, for he had become heavy on the approach of death. They forthwith seized him and would have thrown him down

en la profonde fosse. E yl cria mercy, e pria quil ly vodreynt soffryr sifler une nôte avaunt quil morust. E yl ly granterent; mes yl le fist pur ce qe les chevalers de leynz se devereynt garnyr. Mes ce fust tut pur nient. Tant come il sifla tut le plus de les chevalers e serjauntz furent decoupees; brayerent e crierent en lur lytz qe Dieus poeit aver pite. Mes les compaignons sire Ernalt furent santz piete; quar quanqe leynz fust misrent a lede mort. E meynte lyncele qe fust blanche a seyr tot fust enrouy de sang. Al dreyn ruerent le gueyte en la profonde fosse, e rompi le col.

Marion de la Bruere kills Sir Ernalt and then commits suicide.

Marion de la Bruere cocha deleez son amy sire Ernald, e rien savoit de la treson qe sire Ernald avoit fet. Si oy grant noise en le chastiel, leva del lit e regarda jus en le chastiel; oyt la noyse e le cry de navfrez, e vist chevalers armeez e les blanks healmes e haubercz. Meyntenant aparcust qe sire Ernald ly avoit descu e

---

from his tower into the deep ditch. He cried for mercy, and requested them to let him blow a note on his horn before his death, and they consented. But he did this in order that the knights who were within should be upon their guard. All, however, was in vain. The more he blew the more the knights and men-at-arms were killed; they screamed and cried in their beds that God would have pity on them. But the companions of sir Ernalt were without pity, for all that were within they put to a shameful death. Many a sheet which had been white in the evening was dyed red with blood. And at the last they threw the watchman into the deep ditch and broke his neck.

Marion de la Bruere slept beside her friend sir Ernalt, and knew nothing of the treason which sir Ernalt had done. Hearing a great noise in the castle she arose from her bed and looked down into the castle; she heard the disturbance and the cry of the wounded and saw armed knights and shining helmets and hauberks. She immediately perceived that sir Ernalt had deceived and betrayed her; whereupon she began

trahi. Si comenca mout tendrement a ploure; e dyt pytousement: "Alas," fet ele, "qe unqe nasquy de " mere; quar, par mon forfet, ad mon seignur, sire " Joce, qe suef me norry, perdu son chastel e sa bone " gent. E, si je ne usse este, rein ne fust perdu! Alas, " qe je unqe cru cest chevaler; quar, par son losenge, " mad yl descu, e mon seygnur, de cuy plus me est!" Marion, tote ploraunte, saka lespeye sire Ernald e dit: " Sire chevaler, esveyllez vus; quar estrange compaig- " nie avez amene en le chastiel mon seignur santz " congie. Mesqe vus, sire, e vostre esquier, fussez par " moy herbygez, les autres, qe seyntz par vus sunt, ne " furent mes. E, depus qe vus me avez descu, vus ne " me poez a reson blamer, si je vus renke service apres " vostre desert. Mes james ne vus avanterez a nulle " amye qe vus averez qe, par ma deceyte, avez conquis " le chastiel de Dynan e le pays." Le chevaler se dresca en estant. Marion, de la espeye qe ele tynt trete en sa mayn, fery le chavaler parmy le cors, e si

to weep very tenderly and said pitiously, "Alas," said she, " that I was ever born of mother, for by my misdeeds my " lord, sir Joce, who has brought me up so tenderly, has lost " his castle and his fair retinue. Had it not been for me, " nothing would have been lost. Alas, that I ever trusted " this knight, for by his fraud has he deceived me, and alas, " my lord, which is more to me." Weeping, Marion drew the sword of sir Ernalt and said, "Awake, sir knight, for " you have brought a company of strangers into my lord's " castle without permission. Unless you, sir, and your " esquire had been harboured by me, the others who have " been let in by your means would not have been here. And " since you have deceived me, you cannot blame me with " reason if I pay you back according to your desert. You " shall never boast to any leman of yours that by my deceit " you got possession of the castle and country of Dynan." The knight arose and got ready. Marion, with the sword which she held drawn in her hand, ran him through the

morust le chevaler meyntenant. Marion savoit bien qe, si ele fust prise, ele serreit lyvre a male mort, e ne savoit qe fere ; mes se lessa cheier a une fenestre devers Lyneye, si rompy le col.

The town of Dynan sacked and burnt.

Les chevalers qe furent en le chastel defermerent les portes, e sen alerent en la vyle, e overyrent la porte de Dynan vers la ryvere, e fyrent tot lur gentz entrer. Si mistrent au fyn de chescune rywe en la vyle grant nombre de gentz, e fyrent esprendre la vile de fu. E, en chescune rywe, fyrent deus feus. Les borgeys e les serjauntz de la vyle, quant vyrent le feu, leverent des lytz, les uns nuz les uns vestuz ; e ne saveint qe fere, quar tut furent a poy forsenez. Les chevalers e les esquiers de Lacy les corurent sur, si les decouperent e ocistrent espessement. Les borgois ne se poeynt, ne saveynt defendre ; quar tous qe trovez furent, furent detrenchez ou ars en le feu. Les damoiseles alerent par les veneles, vyrent lur pieres e lur freres gisir detrenchez par les rwyes, sengenulerent, prierent mercy

---

body, and the knight died immediately. Marion knew well that if she were taken she would be delivered to an evil death ; and not knowing what to do she threw herself from a window towards Lyneye and broke her neck.

The knights within the castle unfastened the gates and went into the town and opened the gates of Dynan towards the river and let all their people come in. At the end of every street in the town they placed a number of men and set the town on fire. In each street they made two fires. The inhabitants and the guards of the town, when they saw the fire arose from their beds, and did not know what to do, for they were all of them nearly out of their wits. Lacy's knights and esquires fell upon them and slew and killed them in multitudes. The townspeople could not defend themselves, all of them who were found were slaughtered or burnt in the fire. The girls as they went by the lanes saw their fathers and their brothers lying murdered in the streets ; they knelt, they asked for mercy, they begged for

e pardon de vye. Ce fust pur nient, e ce qe lestoyre dyt; homes, femmes ou enfauntz, jeounes e grantz, tous furent ocys, ou de arme ou de feu. Ataunt vynt le jour; donqe manderent a lur seignur quil, ou tot son poer, venist al chastel de Dynan. E si fist yl, e fist mettre sa banere sur le Pendovre en signe de victorie quil aveit conquis, ce quil eyns fust en prison mys. Mes la vile e quanqe fust leyns fust arse a neyrs charbouns.

Quant la novele vynt a sire Joce e Guarin de Meez, mout dolent, triste, e morne furent. Si manderent par tot a lur parentz, amys, e a lur gentz demeyne, issi que yl aveient de denz une moys set myl de bone gent bien apparillez. E vindrent a chastel Key, quest ferme desuz un tertre, une lywe de voye de Dynan. Mes chastel Key fust viel a ycel houre, e les portez furent porrys; quar nulle gent ne le aveyent habitee c. ans avaunt. Quar Key, le seneschal mon sire Arthur le roy, le avoit fet, e tot les pays a ly fust apendant,

Sir Joce and his friends try to recover the castle.

---

their lives. All this was useless, as the story tells us; men women, and children, all were killed, young and old, either by the sword or by fire. At length day came, and then they sent to their lord to come with all his strength to the castle of Dynan. And so he did, and he placed his banner upon the Pendover tower in token of the victory which he had gained, he who had once been a prisoner there. But the town and all in it was burnt to black cinders.

When the news came to sir Joce and Guarin de Mees, they were very sorrowful, sad, and troubled. They everywhere summoned their relations, friends, and retainers, so that it came to pass that within a month they had seven thousand soldiers well armed. And they came to castle Key, which is situated upon a hill, one league distant from Dynan. But at this time castle Key was old, and the gates were rotten, for no one had inhabited it for a hundred years previously. Key, the steward for sir Arthur the king, had built it, and

e le noun de ly uncore tient; quar la gent du pays le apelent Keyenhom.

Progress and issue of the siege.

Joce e Garyn e Fouke le Brun, ou lur gent, lendemeyn vont vers le chastiel de Dynan. Si le assailent mout egrement de tote partz. Sire Water e ces chevalers defendent mout hardiement les kernels e les murs. E pus sire Water e ces Irreis sen issirent de le chastel; e si rendirent fort estour a ceux qe de hors furent. Joce, Garin, e Fouke les assaylent de totes partz e les ocient espessement. Les Irreis gisent detrenchez par le pres e jardynz. Issi qe a sire Water e les suens avynt le pys, yl e sa gent se retreyent e entrerent le chastiel, e defendent les murs. E, si yl ussent demoree de hors, bien tost ussent oy noveles mout dures. Sire Joce e sire Warin se retornerent a lur herberges e se desarmerent; e, quant urent mangee, sentresolacerent. Lendemeyn aysaylirent le chastel mout egrement de totes partz; mes ne le purreyent prendre. E quanquil

all the neighbourhood was dependent upon it, and formerly was called from it; for the people of that country called it Keynhom.

Next day Joce and Guarin and Fouke le Brun, with their troops, came to the castle of Dynan, and attacked it very sharply on all sides. Sir Walter and his knights very boldly defended the battlements and the walls. Afterwards sir Walter and his Irish sallied from the castle and made a smart attack on those who were outside. Joce, Guarin, and Fouke assailed them on all sides and slew them in numbers. The Irish lay dead in the meadows and gardens, so much so that sir Walter and his party had the worst of it. He and his people retreated and entered the castle and defended the walls. If they had remained longer out of doors they would speedily have heard very unpleasant tidings. Sir Joce and sir Guarin returned to their quarters and disarmed themselves, and when they had dined they comforted each other. On the next day they attacked the castle very sharply on all sides, but they could not take it. As many, however, as they could meet

purreyent encountrer de hors, les detrencherent. Ceste sege dura longement. Pus apres avynt qe, par le assent de un roy Dengleterre, furent le portes de le chastel, qe treblees erent, ars e espris par feu qe fust illumee de bacons e de grece; e la tour sur la porte ars de denz; e le halt tour, qest en le tierce bayl de chastel, (qe fort e bien ovree fust qe home ne saveit a cele houre nul plus fort ne meylour,) fust de grant partie abatu, e cele bayle apoy tote destruyt.

Death of sir Warin de Mees.

Sire Waryn devynt malades e prist congie de sire Joce; e sen ala a Albrebure soulement ou un esquier, e morust. Fochun le Brun, quant son pere fust mort, vynt a Albrebure, e prist homage e fealte de totes les gentz qe tindrent de son pere; e prist congie de Melette, sa mere, e Hawyse, sa femme; e revynt a sire Joce, e ly counta coment fust avenu de son pere. Dount Joce fust moult dolent de la novele.

Walter de Lacy asks

Sire Water fust dolent e irascu quil avoit perdu sa gent, e mout dota de estre mat e vencu. E se purpensa

---

with on the outside they slew. The siege continued for a long time. But afterwards it came to pass that by consent of a king of England, the gates of the castle, which were treble, were burnt and destroyed by fire fed with bacon and grease, and the tower over the gate was burnt in the inside; and the high tower in third bailey of the castle (which was so strong and so well built that to this hour none greater or better is known to exist) was in great part overthrown, and that bailey almost entirely destroyed.

Sir Waryn became ill and took his leave of sir Joce, and went with only one esquire to Albrebure, where he died. Fochun le Brun, when his father was dead, came to Albrebure, and took the homage and fealty of all the tenants of his father. Having bid farewell to Melette, his mother, and Hawyse his wife, he returned to sir Joce and told him what had befallen his father. Joce was very sad at the news.

Sir Walter was very sorry and angry that he had lost his troops, and he was in much fear of being defeated and van-

help from the Welsh.

mout estroytement. Si maunda une letre a Yervard Droyndoun, prince de Gales, come a son seignur, amy, e parent; e li counta par letre qe sire Willam Peverel, qe tint Maylour e Ellesmere, est mortz; e dit qe ceus terres sunt de sa seignurie aportenauntz a Powys. E sire Willam les tint de le doun le rey Dengletere a tort. E le roy les seysera en sa meyn. "E, si issi " fait, il vus serra mout mal veysyn; quar il ne vus " ayme poynt. E, pur ce, sire, venez chalenger vostre " droit; e, si vus plest, me vueil les socours maunder, " quar je su durement assegee en le chastel de " Dynan."

The Prince of Wales enters the March and besieges sir Joce in Castle Key.

Yervard, quant oy avoit la novele, fist assembler Galeys, Escoteys, Yrreys, plus qe vynt myl, e se hasta vers la marche, ardy les vyles, robba le gentz, e tant avoit grant gent, qe le pays ne les purra contreester. Joce fust cointe e aparcust la venue Yarvard, e yl e sa gent e Fouke se armerent e hardiement assaylerent

---

quished. He considered the matter with great deliberation. He sent a letter to Yervard Droyndoun, prince of Wales, as his lord, friend, and relative, and he told him in that letter that William Peverel, who held Maylour in Ellesmere, is dead, and said that these lands are of his lordship and appurtenant to Powys. And sir William holds them wrongfully of the gift of the king of England. And the king will seize them into his hand. "And if he does this he will be a very bad neigh- " bour to you, for he has no great love towards you. Where- " fore, sire, come and claim your right, and if you please have " the goodness to send me help, for I am closely besieged in " the castle of Dynan."

Yervard, when he had this intelligence, assembled of Welsh, Scotch, and Irish, more than twenty thousand, and hastened towards the March, burning the towns and robbing the people; and such a great troop had he that the country could not withstand him. Joce was wary and perceived the approach of Yervard; and he and his people and Fouke armed them-

Roger de Pouwys e Jonas, son frere, qe vyndrent en la vant garde de lost Yervard. E ocistrent plusours de lur. Roger e Jonas ne poyent durer lestour, e se retrestrent arere. Ataunt vynt Yervard armee, (dont les armes furent de or e de goules quartyle; e en chescun quarter un leopart,) e assayly sire Joce e Fouke. E yl se defendyrent longement e ocistrent plusours de lur gent; mes yl avoient tant gent qe sire Joce ne purra meyntenir lestour, e se retorna vers chastiel Key, a une lywe de Dynan. Mes molt ly mes avynt; quar yl avoit perduz plusours de sa gent. Yervard e ly Lacy, qe donqe lee fust, pursiwy sire Joce e Fouke; e les assistrent en le chastelet e les assaylerent mout egrement. Joce, Fouke, e lur chevalers, treis jours, santz beyvre ou manger, defenderent lur feble e viel chastelet contre tut lost. Al quart jour, dit sire Joce qe greyndre honour serreit pur eux de lessir le chastel e morir en le champ a honour, qe morir en le chastel de feym a desonour. E meintenant vindrent en le champ, e ocistrent

---

selves and bravely attacked Roger de Pouwys and his brother Jonas, who were coming in the advanced guard of Yervard's army; and they killed many of them. Roger and Jonas could not sustain the shock and fell back. Then came Yervard armed (his arms were or and gules quarterly, and in each quarter a leopard,) and attacked sir Joce and Fouke. They defended themselves for a long time and slew many of their people, but the force of the others was so great that sir Joce could not sustain the attack, and fell back upon castle Key, a league from Dynan. But he had much the worst of it, for he had lost many of his people. Yervard and Lacy, who were delighted therewith, pursued sir Joce and Fouke, drove them into the castle and attacked them very fiercely. Joce, Fouke, and the knights defended their weak and old fortress, without food or drink, for three days, against all the army. On the fourth day sir Joce said that it would be greater honour for them to abandon the castle and die on the field with honour than to die of hunger in the castle with dishonour. Immediately they came into the field, and at their

a lur premer avenue plus qe treis cent, qe chevalers, esquiers e sergantz. Yervard Droyndon e ly Lacy e lur gent assaylerent sire Joce e sa gent. E yl se defendirent come leons; mes tant gent les assistrent entre eux quil ne poeynt longement durer. Quar le cheval sire Joce fust ocys, e yl meismes durement navfre; e ces chevalers, les uns pris, les uns ocys.

Sir Joce taken prisoner and Fulk wounded.

Donqe pristrent sire Joce e ces chevalerns e les manderent a prison a le chastel de Dynan, la ou yl soleit estre seignur e mestre. Quant Fouke vyst prendre e amener sire Joce, a poy quil ne forsena de duel e de ire; brocha le cheval de esperons, si fery un chevaler, qe le mena dune launce parmi le cors. Atant vynt Yweyn Keveylloke, un chevaler hardy e fer, e de une launce de freyne fery Fouke parmy la voyde du corps, e la launce debrusa e le tronchoun remist en le cors. Mes les entrayles ne furent rien entameez. Fouke se senty fierement blesse, e rien se poeit defendre. Se

---

first coming they killed more than three hundred persons, knights, esquires, and men-at-arms. Yervard Drondoyon and Lacy, with their people, assailed sir Joce and his followers, who defended themselves like lions, but so many people pressed upon them that they could not hold out long. For the horse of sir Joce was killed and he himself was severely wounded; and of his knights some were taken prisoners and some slain.

Then they took sir Joce and his knights and sent them to be imprisoned in the castle of Dynan, of which he used to be lord and master. When Fouke saw sir Joce taken and carried off he was nearly mad with sorrow and anger. He pricked his horse with his spurs, and with a lance struck one of the knights who was carrying him away through his body. Then came Ywain Keveylloke, a bold and proud knight, and with a lance of ash struck Fouke through the hollow of his body. The lance broke and the wood remained in the body. The bowels, however, were not injured. Feeling himself severely wounded Fouke could no longer defend himself.

mist a la fute, e les autres lenchacerent deus lywes e plus. E, quant ne le poeint ateindre, se retornerent e seisirent totes les terres qe Fouke aveyt. E pristrent Gyoun, le fitz Candelou de Porkyntone, qe le conestable Fouke esteit, e manderent a prison a Rothelam e ces vii. fitz ou ly.

Fouke grant duel fet pur son seignour. Si ad entendu qe le roy Henre est demoraunt a Gloucestre, e sen va laundreit. Si come yl approcha la ville, si fust le roy apres soper alaunt sey dedure en un pree. Si vist Fouke venant arme al chyval, e mout poinousement chyvalchaunt; quar yl ert feble e son destrer las. "Atendoms," fet le roy, "ja orroms noveles." Fouke vint tut a chyval al rey; quar yl ne poeit descendre. Si counta le roy enterement tote la aventure. Le roy rouly les oyls mou ferement, e dit quil se vengereit de tels malfesours en son realme. E ly demanda quil fust et dount fust nee. Fouke counta le roy on ert

Fulk goes to king Henry at Gloucester.

He took to flight, and the others chaced him two leagues or more, and when they could not overtake him they returned and took possession of all the lands which he had held. And they took Guyoun, the son of Candelou de Porkyntone, who was Fouke's constable, and put him in prison at Rothelam, and his seven sons with him.

Fouke made great sorrow for his lord. Having heard that king Henry was staying at Gloucester, he went thither. As he drew near the town the king was going after supper to amuse himself in a meadow. He saw Fouke coming armed on horseback, riding with difficulty, for he was weak and his horse was worn out. "Let us wait," said the king, "we "shall now hear some news." Fouke came on horseback to the king, for he was unable to dismount. He told the king the whole affair, from beginning to end. The king rolled his eyes very fiercely and said that he would take vengeance upon such misdoers within his realm. He asked him who he was and of what family he was born. Fouke told the king where he was born, and of what people, and that he was the

nee e de qele gent, e quil estoit le fitz Guarin de Meez. "Beau fitz," fet le roy, "vus estes bien venuz "a moy; quar vus estes de mon sang, e je vus ayde- "roy." Le roy fist mediciner ces playes, e maunda pur Melette, sa mere, e Hawyse, sa femme, e lur autre meyne. Si les retynt ou ly. E fesoit Hawyse e Melette demorer en les chambres la reygne. Hawyse fust grosse enseinte; e, quant terme vynt, fust delyvres de enfaunt. E firent apeler lenfaunt Fouke. Cely en son temps fust mout renomee, e ce fust a bon dreit; quar yl fust sauntz pier de force, hardiesse, e bountee.

Lacy compelled to deliver sir Joce.

Quant Fouke le Brun fust seyn de sa playe, le roy Henre maunda une letre a sire Water de Lacy, e comanda sur vie e menbre quil ly delyverast Joce de Dynan, son chevaler, e ces chevalers quil tient a tort en sa prisoun; e, si yl ne le fet, yl les vendra quere meymes, e fra tiele justice qe tote Engletere emparlera. Quant sire Water avoyt oy le maundement, molt fust enpoury de le maundement. Si delyvera sire Joce e

---

son of Guarin de Meez. "Fair son," said the king, "you "are welcome to me, for you are of my blood, and I will help "you." The king caused his wounds to be attended to, and sent for Melette his mother, and Hawyse his wife, and the rest of the household. So he had them with him, and he made Hawyse and Melette stay in the queen's chambers. Hawyse was great with child, and when her time came she was delivered of a child, whom they named Fouke. He was very renowned in his time, and well he might, for he had no equal for strength, courage, and bounty.

When Fouke le Brun's wound was healed, king Henry sent a letter to sir Walter de Lacy, and commanded him, upon pain of life and limb, to deliver to him Joce de Dynan, his knight, and the knights whom he wrongfully kept in prison; and that if he did not do so, he himself would come to look for them, and would do such justice that the whole of England would speak of it. When sir Walter had heard the message he was much alarmed at the order. So he released sir Joce and his

ces chevalers, e les vesty e monta honorablement, e les amena par la posterne, de vers la ryvere de Temede e outre le gwe de Temede e outre Whyteclyf, tanquil vyndrent en le haut chemyn ver Gloucestre. Quant sire Joce vint a Gloucestre, le roy le recust mout leement, e ly promist ley e resoun. Joce sojorna ou le roy tantcome ly plust; pus prist congie e sen ala a Lambourne, e sojorna yleqe; e bien tost apres morust e fust enterree yleoqe. Dieus eit merci de la alme!

War between Fulk and the Welsh, at last settled.

Le roy Henre apela Fouke e ly fist conestable de tut son host, e ly comanda tote la force de sa terre, e quil presist gent assez e quil alast en la Marche, si en chasast Yervard Droyndon e son poer hors de Marche. Issi fust Fouke fet mestre sur tous; quar fort ert e coragous. Le rey remist a Gloucestre; quar yl fust malengous e gueres ne poeyt traviler. Yervard avoit pris enterement tote la Marche, de Cestre desqe Wyrcestre; e si avoit tous les barouns de la Marche

---

knights, clothed them and mounted them honourably, and brought them by the postern gate towards the river Temede and across the ford of Temede and beyond Whyteclyf until they came to the high road towards Gloucester. When sir Joce came to Gloucester the king received him very joyfully, and promised that he should have law and reason. Joce stayed with the king as long as he pleased; then he took leave of the king and went to Lambourne, where he resided, and shortly afterwards he died and was buried there. God have mercy on his soul.

King Henry summoned Fouke and made him constable of all his army, and entrusted him with all the force of his district, and that he should take a sufficient body of men and should go to the March and drive Yervard Droyndon and his power out of the March. Thus was Fouke made master over all, for he was bold and courageous. The king remained at Gloucester, for he was ill and scarce could travel. Yervard had entirely occupied the whole of the March from Chester to Worcester, and had dispossessed all the

desheritee. Sire Fouke, ou lost le roy, meint fer assaut fist a Yervard ; e a une batayle de lees Herford a Wormeslowe ly fist fuyr e guerpyr le champ. Mes avant, dambepartz, furent plusours ocys. La guere fiere e dure dura entre sire Fouke e le prince quatre anz. Atant qe a la requeste le roy de Fraunce fust pris un jour damur a Salobure entre le roy e Yervard le prince, e furent entrebeysez e acordeez. E le prince rendy a les barons de la Marche totes les terres quil avoit de eux prises. E al roy rendy Ellesmere. Mes Blancheville e Maylor ne vodra rendre pur nul or. " Fouke," fet le roy, " de pus qe vus avez perdu " Blauncheville e Maylor, en lu de ce vus doyn je " Alleston e tut lonour qapent a tenir perdurable- " ment." E Fouke le mercia cherement. Le roy Henre dona a Lewys, le fitz Yervard, enfant de vii. anz, Jonette, sa fyle ; e en mariage lur dona Ellesmere e autres terres plusours. Si mena Lewys a

barons of the March. Sir Fouke with the king's host made many a fierce assault upon Yervard; and in a battle near Herford at Wormeslowe he made him fly and leave the field. But before he did this many were killed on both sides. The war continued fierce and sharp between sir Fouke and the prince for four years, until at the request of the king of France a love day was held at Salisbury between the king and Yervard the prince, and they embraced each other and were reconciled. The prince gave back to the barons of the March all the lands which he had taken from them. And the king restored Ellesmere. But for no gold would he give up Blancheville nor Maylor. " Fouke," said the king, " since " you have lost Blancheville and Maylor, instead of them I " give you Alleston with all the honour thereupon dependent " to hold for ever." Fouke thanked him gratefully. King Henry gave to Lewys the son of Yervard, a boy of seven years of age, his daughter Jonette, and he gave them Ellesmere and many other lands in marriage. He took Lewys to

Loundre ou ly. Le prince Yervard, ou sa meyne, prist congie du roy, e sen ala vers Gales. Si dona a Rogier de Powys Blauncheville e Maylour. Rogier pus dona a Jonas, soun puysnee frere, Maylour.

Ore avez oy coment sire Joce de Dynan, Sibille, la eyne, e Hawyse, le puisne ces filles, furent desheritez de le chastel e lonour de Dynan, qe sire Water de Lacy tient a tort. Mes pus fust la ville de Dynan reparillee e refetee. E si fust apellee Ludelowe. E si avez oy coment sire Fouke, le fitz Waryn de Meez, est desherytee de Blancheville e Maylour. Sibile, la suere eyne, fust pus mariee a Payn, le fitz Johan, molt vailant chevaler.

Fouke e Hauwyse tant aveient demore ou le roy, quil avoit synk fitz: Fouke, Willam, Phelip le Rous, Johan, e Alayn. Le roy Henre avoit quatre fitz: Henre, Richard Cuer de Lyon, Johan, e Gaufre, qe pus fust counte de Bretaigne le Menour. Henre fust coronee

Family of king Henry II.

London with him. Prince Yervard and his retinue took leave of the king and set out for Wales. The king gave Blancheville and Maylour to Roger de Powys; and afterwards Roger gave Maylour to his younger brother, Jonas.

Now have you heard how sir Joce de Dynan, Sibille his elder daughter, and Hawyse his younger daughter, were dispossessed of the castle and honour of Dynan, which sir Walter de Lacy held wrongfully. Afterwards the town of Dynan was restored and rebuilt, and was called Ludelowe. And you have heard how sir Fouke, the son of Waryn de Meez, is dispossessed of Blancheville and Maylour. Sibile, the elder sister, was afterwards married to Payn fitz Johan, a very valiant knight.

Fouke and Hawyse remained so long with the king that he had five sons; Fouke, William, Philip the Red, John, and Alan. King Henry had four sons; Henry, Richard the lion-hearted, John, and Geoffrey, who after was count of Bretagne the Less. Henry was crowned during his father's life, but

vivant son pere ; mes il morust avant le piere. E apres la mort le pere, Richard ; e apres Richard, Johan, son frere, qe tote sa vie fust maveys et contrarious e envyous. Fouke, le jeouene, fust norry ou les iiii. fitz Henre le roy e mout ame de tous, estre de Johan ; quar yl soleit sovent medler ou Johan.

Anecdote of Fulk and prince John.

Avint qe Johan e Fouke tut souls sistrent en une cnambre juauntz a eschekes. Johan prist le eschelker, si fery Fouke grant coupe. Fouke se senti blesce, leva le piee, si fery Johan en my le pys, qe sa teste vola contra la pareye quil devynt tut mat e se palmea. Fouke fust esbay, mes lee fust qe nul fust en la chambre si eux deus noun. Si frota les oryles Johan, e revynt de palmesoun. E sen ala al roy, son piere, e fist une grant pleynte. " Tes tey, maveys," fet le roy, " tous jours estes conteckaunt. Si Fouke nulle " chose si bien noun vus fist, ce fust par vostre desert " demeyne." E apela son mestre, e ly fist batre fyne-

---

he died before his father. And after the death of the father reigned Richard, and after Richard came John his brother, who the whole of his life was wicked, contrarious, and envious. Fouke the younger was brought up with king Henry's four sons, and was much loved by all of them except John, with whom he had frequent quarrels.

It happened one day that John and Fouke were sitting all alone in a chamber playing at chess. John took the chess board and struck Fouke a great blow with it. Feeling himself hurt, Fouke raised his foot and gave John a blow in the midst of his chest ; his head struck against the wall so that he became giddy and fainted. Fulk was frightened, but was glad that there was no one in the room but them two selves. He rubbed John's ears, who recovered from his swoon. He went to the king, his father, and made a great complaint. " Hold " your tongue, you good-for-nothing," said the king, " you are " always quarrelling. If Fulk has done all that you say, it is " your own fault." He called his master, and caused him to

ment e bien pur sa pleynte. Johan fust molt corocee a Fouke; quar unqe pus ne le poeit amer de cuer.

Quant le roy Henre le pere fust mort, donqe regna rey Richard; si avoit molt cher Fouke le Brun le fitz Waryn pur sa lealte; e fist apeler devant ly a Wyncestre le v. fitz Fouke le Brun: Foket, Phelip le Rous, Willam, Johan, e Aleyn, e lur cosyn, Baudwyn de Hodenet; e les adubba molt richement e les fist chevalers. Sire Fouke le jeouēne e ces freres ou lur compagnie passerent la mer, pur quere pris e los; e noierent parler de nul tornoy ne joustes quil ne vodra estre la. E tant fust preyse par tot qe la gent diserent communement que yl fust santz pier de force, bounte, e hardiesse. Quar yl aveit tele grace quil ne vynt en nul estour quil ne fust tenuz e renomee pur le meylour. King Richard favours Fulk.

Avynt qe Fouke le Brun, lur piere, morust. Le rey Richard maunda ces lettres a sire Fouke, quil venist

---

be well and soundly whipped for his complaint. John was very angry with Fulk, and never afterwards did he love him in his heart.

When king Henry was dead, his son Richard reigned next, who held Fulk le Brun, the son of Warin, very dear for his loyalty. He summoned before him at Winchester the five sons of Fulk le Brun; Foket, Philip le Rous, William, John, and Aleyn, and their cousin Baldwin de Hodenet; he dubbed them with great pomp and made them knights. Sir Fulk the younger and his brothers with their company crossed the sea to seek honour and distinction; and never did they hear of tourney or joust at which they did not wish to be present. And so highly were they esteemed everywhere that it became a common saying that they were without equals as to strength, bounty and bravery. For they had such good fortune that never did they come into any combat without being considered and praised as the best.

Fulk le Brun, the father died. King Richard sent his letters to sir Fulk to come into England to receive his lands, for his

en Engletere a receyvre ces terres, quar son piere fust mort. Fouke e ces freres furent mout dolent qe Fouke le Brun lur bon pere fut mort. Si revindrent a Londre a le roy Richard, qe mout fust lee de eux. Si lur rendy totes les terres dont Fouke le Brun morust seysy. Le roy se apparilla vers la Terre Seynte, e comanda tote la Marche a la garde sire Fouke. Le roy lama mout e chery pur sa lealte e pur la grant renomee quil aveit, e Fouke fust molt bien de le roy tote la vie le roy Richard.

King John grants Fulk's Moris Fitz-Roger of Powys.

Apres cui mort, Johan, le frere le roy Richard, fust coronee roy Dengletere. Donqe maunda a sire Fouke quil venist a ly parler e treter de diverse bosoignes qe tochoyent la Marche, e dist quil irreit visiter la Marche. E sen ala al chastiel Baudwyn, qe ore est apelee Mountgomery. E quant Morys le fitz Roger de Powys, seignur de Blauncheville, aparcust le roy Johan aprocher la Marche, si manda au roy un destrer gras e beal e un girfaut tut blanc muer. Le roy le mercia

father was dead. Fulk and his brothers were very sorrowful that Fulk le Brun their good father was dead. They returned to London to king Richard, who was very glad to see them, and he restored to them all the lands of which Fulk le Brun died seised. The king was preparing for his journey to the Holy Land, and he entrusted all the March to the keeping of sir Fulk. The king loved and favoured him much for his loyalty and for the great reputation which he had, and Fulk stood well with the king during the whole of the life of king Richard.

After Richard's death, his brother John was crowned king of England. Then he sent to sir Fulk to come and talk with him and discuss various matters concerning the March, and said that he was coming to visit the March. He went to castle Baudwyn, now called Montgomery. When Morys, the son of Roger de Powys, lord of Blauncheville, perceived that king John was approaching the March, he sent to the king a fair charger in good condition, and a girfalcon entirely

mout de le present. Donqe vint Moryz parler al rey, e le roy le pria demorer ou ly e estre de son consayl, e ly fist gardeyn de tote la Marche. Quant Morys vist soun temps, si parla au roy e ly pria, si ly plust, qe yl ly velsist confermer, par sa chartre, lonour de Blauncheville, a ly e ces heyrs, come le roy Henre, soun pere, lavoyt eynz conferme a Roger de Powys, son pere. Le roy savoit bien qe sire Fouke avoit dreit a Blauncheville, e se remenbra de le coupe qe Fouke ly avoit eynz donee; e se pensa quil se vengereit par yleqe, e granta qe qaunqe Morys voleyt fere escrivre, yl le enselereyt; e, a ce fere, Morys ly promist c. lyvrez dargent.

Fulk's interview with John.

Yl y avoit bien pres un chevaler qe tut aveit oy qe le roy e Morys aveyent parle, si vynt hastivement a sire Fouke, e ly counta qe le roy confermereit par sa chartre a syre Morys les terres a queux yl avoit dreyt. Fouke e ces quatre freres vindrent devant le roy, e

white for his mews. The king thanked him much for the present. Then come Morys to speak to the king, and the king asked him to stay with him and to be of his council, and made him warden of the entire March. When Morys saw his time he spoke to the king and besought him, if it were his pleasure, to confirm by his charter the honour of Blauncheville to him and his heirs, as king Henry his father had formerly confirmed it to Roger de Powys his father. The king knew well that Blauncheville belonged to sir Fulk by right, and he remembered the blow which Fulk had formerly given him. He thought that by this means he would have his revenge for it, so he granted that whatever Morys should cause to be written, he would seal it; and for doing this Morys promised him one hundred pounds of money.

Close at hand there was a knight who had heard all that the king and Morys had said, and he came in haste to sir Fulk and told him how the king had confirmed by his charter to sir Morys the lands which of right belonged to him, Fulk. Fulk and his four brothers came before the king and asked

prierent quil puissent aver la commune ley e les terres a queux yl aveyent droit e resoun, come le heritage Fouke. E prierent qe le roy velsist recevyre de lur c. lyvres a tieles que yl lur velsist graunter le award de sa court de gayn e de perte. Le roy lur dist qe ce quil avoit grantee a sire Morys, yl le tendreit, quy qe se corocereit ou qy noun. Atant parla sire Morys a sire Fouke, e dit: "Sire chevaler, molt estes fol, qe vus " chalengez mes terres; si vus dites qe vus avez dreit " a Blauncheville, vus y mentez; e, sil ne fust devaunt " le roy, je le proverey suz vostre corps." Sire William, le frere Fouke, sauntz plus dyre, sayly avaunt, si fery de le poyn en my le vys sire Morys, qe tut devynt senglant. Chevalers sentrealerent, qe plus damage ne fut fait. Donqe dit sire Fouke al roy: "Sire roy, " vous estes mon lige seignour, e a vus fu je lie par " fealte, tantcome je fu en vostre service e tancome je " tienke terres de vus; e vus me dussez meyntenir en

---

him that they might have the [benefit of the] common law, and the lands which were theirs by right and reason, as Fulk's inheritance. And they besought the king that he would have the goodness to accept one hundred pounds on condition that he would grant them the award of his court for gain or for loss. The king told them that he would maintain the grant which he had made to sir Morys whether Fulk were angry or not. Then spoke out sir Morys to sir Fulk, and said, "Sir knight, you are very foolish to challenge my " lands. If you say that you have right to Blauncheville you " lie; and were it not for the king's presence, I would prove " it upon your body." Sir William, Fulk's brother, without more words stepped forward, and with his fist gave sir Morys such a blow on the face that it was covered with blood. The knights came between them so that no more damage was done. Then said sir Fulk to the king, "Sir king, you are my " liege lord, and I have become bound to you by fealty since " I have been in your service, and because I hold lands from " you. You ought to afford me reasonable support, and you

" resoun, e vus me faylez de resoun e commun ley ; e " unqe ne fust bon rey ke deneya a ces frankes ten- " auntz ley en sa court ; pur quoi je vus renke nos " homages." E a cele parole sen parti de la court, e vynt a son hostel.

John's knights defeated by Fulk.

Fouke e ces freres se armerent meyntenant, e Baudwyn de Hodenet ensement ; e quant furent passez une demie luwe de la cite, vindrent apres eux xv. chevalers, bien montez e armes, les plus fortz e vaylantz de tote la meyne le roy, e les comaunderent retorner. E diseyent quil aveyent promis al roy lur testes. Sire Fouke retorna e dit : " Beau sires, molt fustez fols " quant vus promistes a doner ce qe vus ne poez aver." Atant sentreferirent de lances e de gleyves, issint qe quatre de plusvaylantz chevalers le roy meintenant furent ocis e tous les autres navfrez au poynt de mort, estre un qe vist le peryl, e se mist a le fute. Vynt a la cite ; le roy ly demaunda si Guarin fust pris. " Nanil," fet yl, " ne rien malmys : yl e tous ces com-

---

" fail me both at reason and common law. Never yet did " good king deny law in his court to his free tenants ; there- " fore I give you back our homages." Having said this he departed from the court and came to his house.

Fulk and his brothers armed themselves immediately, and Baldwin de Hodenet did the like. When they had gone half a league from the city there came after them fifteen knights, well mounted and armed, the strongest and the bravest of all the king's retainers ; and ordered them to return. They said they had promised the king that he should have their heads. Sir Fulk turned round and said, " Fair sirs, you were very foolish " when you promised to give what you could not get." Then they attacked each other with lances and swords, so that four of the king's most valiant knights were speedily killed, and all the others wounded to the point of death, save one, who seeing the peril took to flight. When he came to the city the king enquired of him whether Guarin was taken prisoner. " Not " at all," said he, " nor is he injured a whit ; he and all his

" paignons sunt aleez ; e nus fumes tous ocys, estre " moy, qe, a grant peyne, su eschapez." Fet le roy : " Ou est Gyrart de Fraunce, Pieres de Avynoun, e sire " Amys le Marchys." " Sire, ocys." Atant vindrent x. chevalers tut a pee, quar sire Fouke meyne les destrers. Les uns des chevalers aveyent perdu la nees, les uns le menton ; e tut furent desolees. Le roy jura grant serement quil se vengereit de eux e de tote lur lignage.

Fulk seeks refuge in Bretagne.

Fouke vynt a Alberburs, e conta a dame Hawyse, sa mere, coment aveyent erre a Wyncestre. Fouke prist grant aver de sa mere ; e sen ala, ly e ces freres, a ces cosyns en Bretaygne le Menur, e sojorna tant come ly plust. Le rey Johan seysy en sa meyn totes les terres qe Fouke aveit en Engleterre, e fist grant damage a touz les suens.

Returns to England.

Fouke e ces quatre freres, Audolf de Bracy, son cosyn, e Baudwyn de Hodenet, son cosyn, pristrent congie de lur amys e cosyns de Bretaygne le Menur,

---

" companions have escaped, and all of us excepting myself " are slain, and I have escaped with great difficulty." Said the king, " Where are Gyrart de France, Pieres de Avynoun and sir Amys le Marchys?" " Slain, sire." Then came the knights all on foot, for sir Fulk had made off with their chargers. Some of these knights had lost their noses, some their chins ; all of them were in piteous plight. The king swore a big oath that he would be revenged upon them and all their lineage.

Fulk came to Alberburs and told dame Hawyse, his mother, how he had wandered to Winchester. Fulk took a great sum of money from his mother and went away with his brothers and his cousins into Bretaygne the Less, and sojourned there as long as he pleased. King John seized all the lands which Fulk had in England and did much mischief to all his relations.

Fulk and his four brothers, Audolf de Bracy his cousin, and Baldwin de Hodenet his cousin, bid adieu to their friends in Bretaygne the Less, and came into England. In the day time

e vindrent en Engletere. Les jours se reposerent en boschages e en mores, e les nuytz errerent e travilerent, quar yl noserent attendre le roy, quar yl ne aveyent poer contre ly. Atant vyndrent a Huggeford, a mon sire Water de Huggeford, qe avoit esposee dame Vyleyne, file Waryn de Meez. Mes son dreit noun fust Emelyne; e fust la aunte sire Fouke. Pus Fouke sen va vers Alberburs, e quant vynt ileqe, la gent du pays dient qe sa mere est enterree. Pur qy Fouke fet grant duel e prie mut pitousement pur sa alme.

Fulk attacks Morys.

Sire Fouke e sa gent cele nuyt vont en une foreste, qest apellee Babbyng, qe esta de lees Blauncheville, pur espier Morys, le fitz Rogier. Ataunt vint un vadlet de la meyne Morys: si les aparcust, e sen revet arere e counta Morys ce quil avoit veu. Morys se arma mout richement e prent le vert escu a deus senglers dor batu, dargent fust la bordure, ou flours de glys dasure, e si avoit en sa compagnie les neuf

they rested in woods and moors, and during the night they wandered on and journeyed, for they dared not await the king, they had not sufficient power against him. At length they came to Huggeford, to sir Walter de Huggeford, who had wedded dame Vyleyne, the daughter of Waryn de Meez; but her true name was Emelyne, and she was sir Fulk's aunt. Then Fulk went to Alberburs, and when he came there the people of the county told him that his mother was buried, whereupon Fulk made great moan and prayed very piteously for her soul.

Sir Fulk and his people went that night into a forest called Babbyng, near Blancheville, to watch for Morys Fitz Roger. Then came a valet of the said Morys, who perceiving them returned and told Morys what he had seen. Morys armed himself very magnificently and took his shield, green, with two wild boars of beaten gold (the border was of argent, with fleurs-de-lys of azure); he had in his company the nine sons of Guy

fitz Guy de la Montaigne e les treys fitz Aaron de Clerfountaygne, issint qe xxx. y aveyent bien mounteez e v^c^. de gent a pee.

Quant Fouke Morys vist, hastivement de la foreste issist. Entre eux fust comence dur estour, e yleqe fust Morys navfre parmy lespaudle; e plusours chevalers e gentz a pie occis furent. E, audreyn, Morys senfui vers son chastel, e Fouke le parsywy. Si li quida feryr en fuaunt en le healme, mes le coupe descendy sur le cropoun del destrer. Atant vint Morgan, le fitz Aaron; si trayst de le chastel, e fery Fouke par mi le jaunbe de un quarel. Fouke fust molt dolent qe yl ne se poeit venger a sa volente de sire Morys, e de sa playe en le jaunbe ne dona ja garde. Sire Morys fist sa pleynte al roy qe sire Fouke fust revenuz en Engletere e ly avoit nafvre parmy le espaudle. Le roy devynt si coroce qe a merveyle, e ordina c. chevalers ou lur meynie daler par tot Engletere denquere e prendre Fouke e ly rendre al roy

---

de la Montaigne and the three sons of Aaron de Clerfountaygne, so that there were thirty men well mounted and five hundred foot soldiers.

When Fulk saw Morys, he came speedily out of the forest. A sharp fight was begun between them, and there was Morys wounded through the shoulder, and many knights and foot soldiers were killed. As the last Morys fled towards his castle, and Fulk pursued him. He thought to have struck him on the helmet as he was escaping, but the stroke fell on the saddle of his charger. Then came Morgan the son of Aaron; he shot forth from the castle, and with a crossbow bolt he struck Fulk through the leg. Fulk was very sorry that he could not avenge himself at his pleasure upon sir Morys; and as for the wound in his leg he took no heed of it. Sir Morys made his complaint to the king that sir Fulk had returned into England and had wounded him in the shoulder. The king became wonderfully enraged, and appointed one hundred knights with their retinue to go through all England to search for Fulk and

vyf ou mort. E si averount totes lur costages de [le] roy ; e sil le puissent prendre, le roy les dorreit terres e riche feez. Les chevalers vont par tot Engletere quere sire Fouke. Mes la ou yl entendyrent qe sire Fouke fust, la ne vodreient aler a nul fuer. Quar yl ly doterent a demesure, les uns pur amour quil aveyent a ly, les autres pur doute de sa force e de sa noble chevalerie, qe damage ne mort lur avensist par sa force e sa hardiesse.

Fulk robs the king's merchants.

Sire Fouke e sa compagnie vindrent a la foreste de Bradene ; e demorerent yleqe privement, quar apertement noserent pur ly roy. Donqe vindrent de la outre x. borgeys marchauntz qaveyent de les deners le roy d'Engleterre les plus riches draps, pelures, especes, e gyans pur le corps le roy e la reygne d'Engletere achatez. Si lamenerent par desouth la foreste vers le roy ; e xxiiii. serjauntz armees sywyrent pur garder le tresour le roy.

Quant Fouke aparcust les marchauntz, si apela Johan,

---

take him, and bring him to the king, alive or dead. They were to have all their expenses from the king, and if they would take him the king would give them lands and rich fees. The knights went throughout the whole of England in search of sir Fulk. But wherever they heard that sir Fulk was, there they would not go in any wise ; for they feared him beyond measure. Some loved him ; some feared him for his strength and his noble chivalry, apprehending the danger that might happen to them through his strength and daring.

Sir Fulk and his company came to the forest of Bradene ; and there they remained privately, for openly they dared not for the king. There came thither more than ten burgesses, merchants, who had purchased with the money of the king of England the richest cloths, furs, spices and dresses for the personal use of the king and queen of England. They were carrying these through the forest towards the king ; and twenty four men-at-arms followed to guard the king's treasure.

When Fulk saw the merchants he called his brother John,

son frere, e li dit quil alast parler ou cele gent e quil encerchast de quele terre sunt. Johan fery le destrer de esperouns, si vint a les marchauntz, e demanda quele gent fuissent e de quele terre. Un vauntparlour orgulous e fer sayly avant, e demanda quey yl avoit a fere denquere quele gent y fussent. Johan lur demanda en amour venyr parler ou son seignur en la foreste, ou si noun il vendreynt maugre lur. Atant sayly avant un serjant; si fery Johan de un espee grant coupe. Johan le refery en la teste quil chay a terre palmee. Donqe vynt sire Fouke e sa compagnie, e assaylerent les marchauntz, e yl se defendyrent mout vigerousement. Audreyn, se rendirent, quar force lur fist ce fere. [Fouke les mena en la foreste; e yl ly conterent qe marchantz le roy erent; e quant Fouke ce entendy, mout fu lee. E lur dist: "Sire marchantz, si vus perdisez cest avoyr, "sur qy tornereit la pierte? dite moi le veyr." "Sire," font yl, "si nus le perdisoms par nostre coardise ou par

and told him to go and speak with these people, and discover of what country they were. John struck his horse with his spurs, and coming to the merchants he asked of what nation and country they were. A spokesman, a haughty and proud person, came forward and asked what business it was of his to enquire of what nation they were. John asked them lovingly to come and speak with his master in the forest; if they would not, they should come in spite of themselves. A man-at-arms came forth and struck John a great blow with a sword. In return John gave him such a stroke on his head that he fell senseless to the ground. Then came sir Fulk and his company and attacked the merchants, and they defended themselves very vigorously. At length they surrendered, for they could not do otherwise.

Fulk took them into the forest, where they told him that they were the king's merchants. When Fulk heard this he was much pleased, and he said to them, "Sir merchants, if "you lose this property, on whom will fall the loss? tell me "the truth." "Sir," said they, "if we lose it through our

" nostre maveise garde de meyne, la pierte tornereit " sur nus ; e, si en autre manere le perdisoms, en peril " de mer ou par force de gentz, la pierte tornereit desuz " le roy." " Ditez vus le voyr ?" " Oyl, sire," fount yl. Sire Fouke, quant entendy qe la pierte serreit al roy, donqe fist mesurer le riche drap et riche pelure par sa launce ; e si vesti tous ceux qe ou ly furent, petitz e grantz, de cel riche drap, e dona a chescun soloun ce quil estoit ; mes mesure avoit chescun assez large. De lautre aver prist chescun a volente. Quant il fust avespre, e les marchauntz aveyent bien mange, si les comanda a Dieu, e pria quil saluasent le roy de par Fouke fitz Warin, qe ly mercia mout de ces bones robes. Fouke, ne nul de suens, de tot le tens quil fust exilee, unqe ne voleint damage fere a nully, si noun al roy e a ces chevalers. Quant les marchantz e lur serjantz vindrent navfrez e mayhaymes devant le roy, e counterent al roy ce qe Fouke lur charga, e coment

---

" cowardice, or by our own want of proper care, the loss will " fall upon ourselves ; but if we lose it otherwise, by danger of " the sea, or by force, the loss will fall upon the king." " Are " you speaking the truth ?" " Assuredly, sir," said they. When Fulk understood that the loss would be the king's, then he measured the rich cloth and the costly fur with his lance, and he clothed all who were with him, little and big, in this rich cloth, and to each he gave according to his degree ; but every one had a liberal allowance. Of the other goods, each took what he liked. When evening came and the merchants had dined heartily, he recommended them to God, and asked them to salute the king in the name of Fulk Fitz Warin, who thanked him much for their good dresses. During all the time that he was a banished man neither Fulk nor any of his did damage at any time to any one, save the king and his knights. When the merchants and their men-at-arms came before the king, wounded and maimed, and repeated to him all that Fulk had given them in charge, and how Fulk had taken

Fouke aveit son aver pris, apoy quil ne enraga de ire, e fist fere une criee par mi le realme, qe cely qe ly amerreit Fouke, vyf ou mort, yl ly dorreit myl lyvres dargent; e, estre ce, yl ly dorreit totes le terres qe a Fouke furent en Engleterre.

De yleqe vet Fouke, e vient en la foreste de Kent, e lassa ces chevalers en lespesse de la foreste; e sen vet tot soul chyvalchant le haut chemyn. Si encontra un messager trop jolyvement chauntant; e avoit vestu la teste de un chapelet de rose vermayl. Fouke ly pria pur amur quil ly donast le chapelet; e, si yl avoit a fere de ly, yl ly rendreit le double. "Sire," fet le messager; "il est mout eschars de son aver, qe un chapelet de rose ne vele doner a la requeste de un chevaler." E dona le chapelet a Fouke. E il ly dona xx. sols de loer. Le messager le conust bien, quar yl le avoit sovent veu. Le messager vint a Canterbure; si encontra les c. chevalers qaveyent quis Fouke par mi tot Engleterre; e lur dit: "Seignours, dont venez? Avez

---

his property, he nearly went crazy with fury, and caused it to be proclaimed throughout the realm that to the person who would bring Fulk to him, alive or dead, he would give a thousand pounds in money, and moreover would give him all the lands which belonged to Fulk in England.

Fulk went thence and came into the forest of Kent, and he left his knights in the thick of the forest, and went riding alone along the highway. He met a messenger singing very merrily, who had covered his head with a chaplet of red roses. Fulk asked him to give him the chaplet for love, and if he would treat with him, he would pay him double. "Sir," said the messenger, "he is very niggardly of his property who will not "give a chaplet of roses at the request of a knight." And he gave the chaplet to Fulk, who, in return, gave him twenty shillings. The messenger knew him well, for he had seen him often. The messenger came to Canterbury, where he met the hundred knights who had sought Fulk through all England, and he said to them, "Sirs, whence came you?" Have you

trove ce qe vus avez quis par le comandement nostre seignur le roy e pur vostre avancement?" "Nanyl," fount yl. "Qey me dorrez vus?" fet il, "e je vus "amerroi la ou je ly vy huy e parlay." Tant donerent e promistrent al messager, quil lur dit ou yl ly avoit veu, e coment yl ly dona xx. sols pur le chapelet quil ly dona de gree.

Les c. chevalers firent somondre hastivement tot le pays, chevalers, esquiers, e serjauntz, e enseggerent tote la foreste tot entour. E mistrent tesours e recevours, come furent venours. E mistrent viele gent e autres par tot le champ ou corns, pur escrier Fouke e ces compaignons, quant furent issuz de la foreste. Fouke fust en la foreste; e rien ne savoit de cest afere. Atant oy un chevaler soner un gros bugle. Si avoit suspecion, e comanda ces freres mounter lur destrers, Willam, Phelip, Johan, e Alayn. Ces freres monterent meyntenant. Audulf de Bracy e Baudwyn de Hodenet, Johan Mal-

---

"found him whom you have sought for by the order of our lord "the king and for your own advancement?" "No," said they. "What will you give me," said he, "and I will bring you to "the place where I have seen and spoken with him to-day?" They gave and promised so much to the messenger that he told them where he had seen him, and how he had given him twenty shillings for the chaplet which he had given him for good will.

The hundred knights caused all the country to be summoned hastily, knights, squires, and men-at-arms, and they entirely surrounded the whole forest round about; and they placed beaters and receivers, as if they had been hunters. And they put many persons and others throughout the whole country with horns to give notice of Fulk and his companions when they came out of the forest. Fulk was in the forest, and knew nothing of these doings. At length he heard a knight blow a great horn. He had suspicion, and ordered his brothers to mount their horses, William, Philip, John and Alan. His brothers immediately mounted. Audulf de Bracy, Baldwin

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES CENTRAL

veysyn monterent ensement. Les treis freres de Cosham, Thomas, Pieres e Willam, furent bons arblasters, e tote lautre meyne Fouke furent tost aprestee a le assaut.

Fouke e ces compagnouns issirent de la foreste ; si virent, devant tuz les autres, le c. chevalers qe les aveynt quis parmi Engletere. Si se ferirent entre eux, e ocistrent Gilbert de Mountferrant e Jordan de Colecestre, e plusours autres chevalers de la compaignie. Si passerent outre par my les c. chevalers, e autrefoyth revyndrent par my eux, e les abatirent espessement. Atant survyndrent tantz chevalers, equiers, borgeys, serjantz, e pueple santz nounbre, qe Fouke aparcust bien quil ne poeit durer la batayle. Si se retorna a la foreste ; mes Johan, son frere, fust navfre en la teste par my le healme. Mes, eynz quil tornasent a la foreste, meint bon chevaler, esquiers e serjantz furent detrenchez. Fouke e ces compaignons ferirent les destrers des esperouns, e fuyrent. Les gents par tut leverent la menee sur eux, e les pursywyrent ou menee partut. Atant, entrerent en une veye,

---

de Hodnet, and John Malveysyn mounted likewise. The three brothers of Cosham, Thomas, Piers and William, were good cross-bowmen, and all the rest of Fulk's troop were soon ready for the assault.

Fulk and his companions issued from the forest, and saw, before all the others, the hundred knights who had sought them throughout England. They rushed among them and killed Gilbert de Mountferrant and Jordan de Colecestre, and many other knights of the company. They passed through the hundred knights, and again returned through them, and knocked them down thickly. At length there came so many knights, squires, burgesses, men-at-arms, and people without number that Fulk well perceived that the battle could not continue. So he returned into the forest; but John, his brother, was wounded in the head through the helmet. But before they went back into the forest, many a good knight, esquires, and men-at-arms, were slain. Fulk and his companions struck their horses with their spurs and fled. The people everywhere raised the country upon them, and pursued them with the populace everywhere. At length they entered

e ne vyrent qe un lever lamenee ou un corn. Un de la compaignie le fery par mi le corps de un quarel. Atant lessa le cri e la menee.

Fouke e ses compagnons lesserent lur chyvals ; e, tot apie, senfuyrent vers une abbeye qe lur fust depres. Quant le porter les vist, si corust fermer ces portes. Alayn fust mout haut ; si passa meyntenant outre les murs, e le porter comenca fuyr. "Atendez," fet Alayn ; si ly corust apres, e prist les clefs de ly, e fery de la masuele dont les clefs pendyrent un coup qaresoun ly grevereit pur sa fute. Alayn lessa tous ces freres entrer. Fouke prist un abit de un viel moyne, e se vesty meyntenaunt ; e prist un grant potence en sa mayn, e sen ala hors a la porte. E fist clore la porte apres ly, e sen vet ; vet clochaunt de le un pee, apuant tot le cors a le grant potence. Atant vindrent chevalers e serjantz, ou grant pueple. Donqe dit un chevaler : " Daun veylard moyne, avez vus veu nuls chevalers " armes passer par y cy ?" " Oyl, sire ; Dieu lur

They shelter themselves in an abbey.

---

into a wood and saw only one man raising the country with a horn. One of the company shot him through the body with a quarrel. Then he left off crying for the people.

Fulk and his companions left their horses, and all on foot fled towards an abbey which was near them. When the porter saw them he ran to shut the gates. Alan, being very tall, speedily got over the walls, and the porter began to run away. " Stop," said Alan, and ran after him and took the keys from him, and gave him a blow with the chain from which the keys hung, so that he had reason to be sorry for his flight. Alan let all his brothers enter. Fulk took the habit of an old monk and speedily dressed himself in it, and took a big staff in his hand and went out of the gate. And he shut the gate after him, and went on ; he walked as if lame of one foot, supporting his whole body on the great stick. Then came the knights and men-at-arms with the great mob. Then said a knight, " Old dan monk, have you seen any armed " knights pass here ?" " Yes, sir ; may God repay them

" rende le damage qe il ont fet!" " Qey vus ount " yl fet?" " Sire," fet yl, "je su viels e ne me pus " ayder, tant su defet. E si vindrent VII. a chyvals " e entour XV. a pie: e, pur ce qe je ne lur pooy has- " tivement voider le chemyn, yl ne me esparnierent " de rien; mes firent lur chyvals coure outre moy, e " ce fust prechie dont poy lur fust." " Tes tey," fet il, " vus serrez bien venge eynz huy." Les chevalers, e trestous les autres, hastivement passerent avant, a pursyvre Fouke; e furent bien tost esloygneez une lywe de le abbeye. Sire Fouke estut en pees pur plus ver.

They surprise Sir Girard de Malfee and his company.

Atant vynt sire Gyrard de Malfee e X. compaignons chevalers bien monteez; quar il furent venuz de la outre, e amenerent ou eux chyvals de pris. Donqe dit Gyrard en mokant: " Veiez cy un moygne gros e grant; " e si ad le ventre bien large a herbiger deus galons " de cheus." Les freres Fouke furent de denz la porte, e aveyent oy e veu tote la continaunce Fouke. Fouke,

---

" the mischief which they have done!" " What have they " done to you?" " Sir," said he, "I am old, and I cannot " help myself, so worn out am I. Seven came on horse- " back, and with them fifteen on foot, and because I could " not get out of their way quick enough they did not spare " me, but caused their horses to run against me, and this was " a discourse of which they made small account." " Hold your " tongue," said he; " you shall be well avenged this very day." The knights and all the others passed rapidly onwards, to pursue Fulk, and speedily had they left the abbey a league behind them. Sir Fulk remained in peace to see more.

Then came sir Gyrard de Malfee and ten knights his companions, well mounted; for they had come from a distance, and they brought with them horses of value. Then said Gyrard mockingly, " See, here is a monk, fat and " burly; he has a belly big enough to hold two gallons " of cabbage." Fulk's brothers were within the gate, and they had seen and heard all Fulk's proceedings. Without

santz plus dire, leva le grant potence; si fery sire Gyrard desouth loryle, quil chay tot estonee a terre. Les freres Fouke, quant ce vyrent, saylerent hors a la porte. Si pristrent les x. chevalers e sire Gyrard e tote lur herneys, e les lyerent mout ferm en la loge le porter. E pristrent tote lur herneys e lur bons destrers, e sen alerent qe unqe ne fynerent de errer, eynz quil vindrent a Huggeford; e ileqe fust Johan sanee de sa plaie.

Fulk's interview with the archbishop of Canterbury.

Qant avoient ileqe sojorne une piece, dount vint un messager qe avoit bien longement quis sire Fouke, e ly dit salutz de par Hubert, lercevesque de Caunterbure; e ly pria hastivement venir parler ou ly. Fouke prist sa gent, e vynt de leez Canterbure, en la foreste ou eyntz avoit estee; e lessa tote sa compagnie ileqe, estre Willam, son frere. Fouke e Willam se atyrerent come marchauntz, e vindrent a Caunterbure a le evesqe Hubert. Le archevesqe Hubert le Botiler lur dit:

---

saying more Fulk raised his big staff and struck sir Gyrard beneath the ear, so that he fell senseless to the ground. Fulk's brothers, when they saw this, rushed out of the gate; they took the ten knights and sir Gyrard and all their harness, and bound them very tightly in the porter's lodge. And they took all their harness and their good horses, and went on without stopping anywhere until they came to Huggeford; and there was John healed of his wound.

When they had stayed there a while there came a messenger who for a very long time had been seeking sir Fulk, and saluted him on the part of Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, and asked him to come speedily and speak with him. Fulk took his company and came near Canterbury, in the forest where he had been before, and there he left all his company, except his brother William. Fulk and William dressed themselves like merchants, and came to Canterbury to the bishop Hubert. The archbishop Hubert le Botiler said

" Beal fitz," fet yl, "vus estes bien venuz a moy. Vus " savez bien qe sire Thebaud le Botiler, mon frere, est " a Dieu comandee. E avoit esposée dame Mahaud de " Caus, une mout riche dame, e la plusbele de tote " Engletere. E le roy Johan la desire taunt pur sa " bealte, qe apeyne ele se puet garder de ly. E je la " tienke seyntz, e vus la verrez. E je vus prie, cher " amy Fouke, e comant, sur ma benoysoun, qe vus la " prenez a espouse." Fouke la vist, e savoit bien qe ele fust bele, bone e de bon los, e qe ele avoit en Yrlaunde fortz, chastels, cites, terres, e rentes e grantz homages. Par assent Willam, son frere, e par consayl de le erchevesqe Hubert, esposa dame Mahaud de Caus. Fouke demora deu jours yleqe; e pus prist congie de levesqe, e lessa sa femme yleqe. E revynt al boys a ces compaignouns, e lur conta quanquil avoit fait. Yl ly escharnyerent, e rierent, e le apelerent hosebaunde; e ly demanderent ou il amerreit la bele dame, le quel

---

to them, "Fair sirs," said he, "you are very welcome to " me. You know well that sir Thebaud le Botiler, my " brother, has departed to God. And he had married dame " Mahaud de Caus, a very rich lady, and the fairest of all " England. And king John so much desires her for her " beauty that with difficulty can she guard herself from him. " And I keep her here, and you shall see her. And I pray " you, dear friend Fulk, and command you, upon my bless- " ing, to take her for your wife." Fulk saw her and knew well that she was fair, good and of good reputation, and that she had in Ireland fortresses, cities, lands, and rents and great homages. By the assent of his brother William and by the counsel of the archbishop Hubert he married dame Mahaud de Caus. Fulk remained two days there, and then he took leave of the bishop and left his wife there and returned to the wood to his companions and told them all that he had done. They made game of him and laughed at him, and called him "husband," and asked him where he would put the fair lady, in the castle or in the wood; and

al chastel ou ale boys; e sentresolaserent. Mes grant damage firent a le roy par tot; e a nul autre, si noun a ceux qe furent overtement lur enymys.

Adventure with Sir Pieres de Bruvyle.

Un chevaler qe fust apelee Robert le fitz Sampsoun fust menaunt en la Marche de Escoce, e soleyt mout sovent receyvre sire Fouke e sa gent, e les herbiger a grant honour; e si fust home de grant tresour. E sa femme fust apelee dame Anable, e fust molt corteise dame. En cel temps fust un chevaler en la contree qe fust apelee Pieres de Bruvyle. Cely Pieres soleit assembler tous les fitz de gentils homes de le pays qe volagous erent, e autre rybaudayle; e soleynt aler par le pays, e ocistrent e robberent lele gent, marchanz e autres. Cely Pieres, quant yl ou sa compaignie ala robber les gentz, se fesoit apeler Fouke le fitz Waryn. Pur quey Fouke e ces compaignons furent trop malement aloseez de ce quil naveyent coupe.

Fouke, qe trop longement, pur doute de le roy Johan,

---

they joked together, But much mischief did they everywhere do to the king, and to none other, excepting those persons who were openly their enemies.

A knight called Robert Fitz-Sampson was residing in the march of Scotland, and was wont frequently to receive sir Fulk and his company and to entertain them with great honour. He was a man of great wealth, and his wife was named dame Anable, she was a very courteous lady. At that time there was a knight in the country who was called Piers de Bruvyle. This Piers was in the habit of gathering together all the gentlemen's sons of the country who were addicted to thieving, and other ribalds, and it was their custom to go through the country, killing and robbing the decent people, merchants and others. This Piers, when he or his company went to rob the people, assumed the name of Fulk Fitz-Waryn, whereby Fulk and his companions had a very bad name for a matter in which they were blameless.

Fulk, who for fear of king John dared not tarry too long

ne poeit demorer en un lyu, vint par nuyt en la Marche d'Escoce; e vynt mout pres la court sire Robertz le fitz Sampsoun. E vist grant lumere de denz la court, e oy parler leynz e sovent nomer son noun. Si fist ces compaignons arester de hors. Fouke meismes hardiement entra le court, pus la sala; si vist Peres de Bruville e autres chevalers seantz a soper, e Robert le fitz Sampsoun e sa bone dame e la meyne furent lyez e juteez dune part la sale, e sire Pieres [e] ces compaignons trestouz furent vysureez, e trestous qe servyrent leynz engenulerent devant sire Pieres, e le apelerent lur seignur sire Fouke. La dame, qe just lye de leez son seignur en la sale, dit molt pitousement: "Hay, sire Fouke," fet ele, "pur Dieu merci, je ne "vus unqe meffis; mes vus ay amee a mon poer."

Sire Fouke estut en pees, e avoit escote quantquil aveyent dit; mes quant il avoyt oy la dame parler, qe grant bounte ly avoit fait, pur nulle chose du mounde

---

in one place, came by night into the march of Scotland, and he came very near the court of Robert Fitz-Sampson. And he saw a great light within the court, and heard talking therein, and his own name often mentioned. He made his companions remain outside, but Fulk himself boldly entered the court, and then the hall. He saw Peres de Bruville and some other knights sitting at supper, and Robert Fitz-Sampson and his good lady and their household were bound and laid in one part of the hall, and sir Piers and his fellows were all of them masked, and all who served them there knelt before sir Piers and called him their lord sir Fulk. The lady, who lay bound near her husband in the hall, said very pitifully, "Oh, sir Fulk," said she, "for "God's sake have mercy. I never did you any harm, but "I have loved you as best I might."

Sir Fulk had kept quiet, and had heard everything that they had said; but when he heard the lady speak, who had done him much kindness, for nothing in the world could he bear

ne se poeit plus deporter. Tut santz compaignon se mist avant, e sa espeie trete en sa meyn. E dit: "Ore, "pees, je vus comand, trestous qe seynz voy, qe nul "ne se moeve tant ne quant." E jura grant serement qe, [si] nul fust tant hardy de sey mover, il le detrenchereit en menuz pieces. Pieres e ces compaignouns se tindrent engyneez. "Ore," fet Fouke, "qy "de vus se fet apeler Fouke?" "Sire," fet Pieres, "je su chevaler; si su apelle Fouke." "De par Deus," fet yl; "sire Fouke, levez sus tost. Si liez bien e "ferm tous vos compaignons, ou si noun tut premer "perderez le chief." Pieres fust molt enpourys de la manace, e leva sus; e delia le seignour e la dame e tous les autres de la meynee. E lya bien e ferm tous ces compaignouns. E quant tous furent liez, Fouke ly fist couper les testes de tous iceux quil avoit liez. E quant yl avoit tous ceux compaignons decoleez: "Vus "recreant chevaler, qe vus fetez apeler Fouke, vus y

---

it any longer. Without any companion he stepped forward with his drawn sword in his hand, and said, "Now, peace, "I order you, all of you whom I see here; let no one move "hand or foot." And he swore a great oath that if any one were so bold as to move he would cut him into small pieces. Piers and his companions felt themselves caught. "Now," said Fulk, "which of you causes himself to be "called Fulk?" "Sir," said Piers, "I am a knight; I am "called Fulk." "By God," said he, "sir Fulk, bestir your-"self quickly. Bind well and firm all your companions; if "you do not, you shall be the first to lose your head." Piers was much terrified by the threat and got up, and he unbound the lord and the lady and all the others of the company. And he tied all his companions well and firmly. And when all were bound Fulk made him cut off the heads of all whom he had bound. And when he had beheaded all these companions [he said], "You recreant knight, you who "make yourself be called Fulk, you lie therein. I am Fulk,

" mentez. Je su Fouke, e ce saverez vus bien; e je " vus rendroy qe faucement mavez alosee de larcyn." E ly coupa la teste meyntenant; e quant avoit ce fet, apela ces compaignouns; e soperent la, e se fyrent bien aeese. E issi sire Fouke salva sire Robert e tut son tresour, qe rien ne perdy.

King John persecutes Fulk.

Le roy fist grant damage mout sovent a sire Fouke. E sire Fouke, tot fust il fort e hardy, yl fust sages e engynous; quar le roy e sa gent pursiwyrent molt sovent sire Fouke par le esclotz des chyvals; e Fouke molt sovent fist ferrer ces chyvals e mettre les fers arevers, issint qe le roy de sa sywte fust descu e engynee. Meynt dur estour soffry sire Fouke eynz quil avoit conquis son heritage.

Exploits of John de Rampaigne.

Sire Fouke prist congie de moun sire Robert le fitz Sampsoun, e sy vynt a Alberburs: e fist fere sa loge en une fforeste de leez sur la ryvere. Fouke apela Johan de Raunpaygne. "Johan," fet yl, "vus savez

" and this you shall know right well; and I will pay you " well for having falsely caused me to be charged with " theft." And forthwith he cut off his head; and when he had done so he called his companions, and they supped there and made themselves very comfortable. And thus sir Fulk saved sir Robert and all his treasure, so that nothing was lost.

Very often did the king do great damage to sir Fulk. And sir Fulk was no less wise and crafty than he was strong and bold; for the king and his people very frequently pursued sir Fulk by the footprints of his horses; and Fulk very often had his horses shod and caused the shoes to be put on backwards, so that the king was deceived and cheated in his pursuit. Many a hard fight did sir Fulk suffer before he had gained his inheritance.

Sir Fulk took leave of sir Robert Fitz-Sampson and came to Alberburs; and caused his lodging to be made in a forest near the river. Fulk called John de Raunpaygne. "John,"

" assez de menestralsie e de jogelerye. Estes vus osee " daler a Blancheville e juer devant Morys le fitz " Roger, e denquere lur affere?" " Oyl," fet Johan. Yl first tribler un herbe e la mist en sa bouche; e sa face comenca dengroser e emflyr moult gros, e tut devynt si descoloree qe ces compaignons demeyne a grant peyne le conurent. Johan se vesti asque povrement, e prist sa male ou sa jogelerie e un grant bastoun en sa meyn; vynt a Blancheville, e dit al porter quil fust un jogelour. Le porter le mena devant sire Moris le fitz Roger, e Morys ly demaunda ou yl fust nee. "Sire," fet il, "en la Marche d'Escoce." "E quele " noveles?" "Sire, je ne sai nulles, estre de sire Fouke, " le fitz Waryn, qest ocys a une roberye quil fist a la " mesone sire Robert le fitz Sampson." "Dites vus " voir?" "Oyl certes," fet il; "ce dient totes les " gentz du pays." "Menestral," fet il, "pur vostre " novele je vus dorroy ceste coupe de fyn argent."

---

said he, "you know enough of minstrelsy and jugglery. " Have you courage to go to Blancheville and play before " Morys Fitz-Roger, and discover what they are about?" " Yes," said John. He crushed an herb and put it into his mouth, and his face began to swell and puff out very big, and the whole became so discoloured that his own companions scarcely knew him. John dressed himself very meanly, and he took his box with his jugglery and a great staff in his hand; he came to Blancheville, and said to the porter that he was a juggler. The porter brought him before sir Moris Fitz-Roger, and Moris asked him where he was born. "Sir," said he, "in the march of Scotland." " And what news?" "Sir, I know none, saving of sir " Fulk Fitz-Waryn, who is killed in a robbery which he " was committing in the house of sir Robert Fitz-Sampson." " Are you speaking the truth?" "Yes, certainly," said he, "all the people of the country say so." "Minstrel," said he, "for your news I will give you this cup of pure

Le menestral prent la coupe, e mercia molt son bon seignour.

Johan de Rampaigne fust molt led de vys e de corps; e, pur ce, les rybaudz de leynz ly escharnierent, e defolerent, e detrestreint par ces chevoyls e par ces pees. Yl leva son bastoun, si fery un rybaud en la teste qe la cervele vola enmy la place. "Malveys rybaud," fet le seignur, "qey as tu fet?" "Sire," fet yl, "pur Dieu "mercy, je ne pus meez; jay une maladie qe trop est "grevouse, e ce poez vere par la face qe jay si emflee. "E cele maladie me tent certeygnes houres de jour "tut le seen, dont je nay poer mey meismes a governer." Moris jura grant serement sil ne fust pur la novele quil aveit porte, yl ly freit estre decolle meintenant. Le jogelour se hasta quil fust passee de la, quar molt ly sembla long la demuere. Revynt a Fouke, e counta de mot en autre coment aveit erre; e dit quil avoit oy en

---

"silver." The minstrel took the cup, and thanked much his good lord.

John de Rampaigne was very ugly of face and of body, and consequently the ribalds of the household mocked him and treated him like a fool, and pulled him by his hair and his feet. He raised his staff, and gave a ribald such a blow on the head that his brains flew into the middle of the place. "Wicked rascal," said the lord, "what have you "done?" "Sir," said he, "by the mercy of God, I cannot "help myself. I have a malady which is very grievous, "and you may see this by my face, which is so swollen. "And this malady takes entire possession of me for certain "hours of the day every week, so that I have not the power "to contain myself." Moris swore a great oath that were it not for the news which he had brought him he would have him beheaded forthwith. The juggler hastened his departure thence, for his tarrying there appeared very long to him. He returned to Fulk, and told him word for word how he had proceeded; and he said that he had heard in

la court qe sire Morys e ces xv. chevalers e sa meyne irreynt lendemayn al chastel de Saloburs; quar il esteit gardeyn de tote la Marche. Quant sire Fouke ce savoit, molt fust lee e ces compaignouns ensement.

Lendemeyn leva Fouke matyn e fust armee tot a talent, e ces compaignons ensement. Morys vynt vers Saloburs, e quinze chevalers ou ly, e le iiii. fitz Gwy fitz Candelou de Porkyntone, e sa autre meyne. E quant Fouke ly vist, molt fust lee; e molt fust irree a ly, pur ce quil ly detient a force son heritage. Morys regarda vers le pas de Nesse; si vist un escu quartilee de goules e dargent endentee, e, par ces armes, conust qe ce fust Fouke. "Ore sai je bien," fet Morys, "qe jogelers sunt mensungers; quar la voy Fouke." Morys e ces chevalers furent molt hardis, e hardiement asaylyrent Fouke e ces compaignouns; e les apelerent larouns, e diseyent qe lur testes eynz la vespree serreient assis al haut tour de Salobure.

---

the court that sir Morys and his fifteen knights and his household would go on the morrow to the castle of Saloburs; for he was keeper of all the march. When sir Fulk knew this he was very glad, and so were his companions also.

On the morrow Fulk was up betimes, and was armed all at his will, and his companions in like manner. Moris went towards Saloburs, and fifteen knights with him, and the four sons of Gwy son of Candelou of Porkyntone, and the rest of his household. And when Fulk saw him he was very glad; and he was much incensed against him, because he detained his heritage from him by force. Morys looked towards the pass of Nesse; he saw a shield quartered with gules and argent endented, and by these arms he knew that it was Fulk. "Now "know I well," said Morys, "that jugglers are liars; for "there is Fulk." Morys and his knights were very brave, and boldly they attacked Fulk and his companions, and called them thieves, and said that their heads before evening should be placed upon the high tower of Salobure. Fulk and his

Fouke e ces freres se defendirent molt vigerousement; e yleqe fust sire Morys, e ces XV. chevalers, e les IIII. fitz Gwy fitz Candelou de Porkyntone ocys. E de atant aveit Fouke le meyns enymys.

Fulk takes shelter with Lewys, Prince of Wales.

Fouke e ces compaignons sen alerent de yleqe vers Rothelan de parler ou sire Lewys, le prince qaveit esposee Johane, la fyle le roy Henre, suere le roy Johan; quar le prince e sire Fouke e ces freres furent norys ensemble en la court le roy Henre. Le prince fust molt lee de la venue sire Fouke, e ly demanda quel acord fust entre le roy e ly. "Sire," fet Fouke, "nul, "quar je ne pus aver pees pur nulle chose; e pur ce, "sire, su je venuz a vus e a ma bone dame pur vostre "pees aver." "Certes," fet le prince, "ma pees je vus "grant e doynz, e de moy bon resut averez. Le roy "Dengletere ne pees ou vus ne moy ne autre siet aver." "Sire," fet Fouke, "grant mercis; quar en vus molt "me affy e en vostre grant lealte. E, pus qe vus me

---

brothers defended themselves very vigorously; and there were sir Morys, and his fifteen knights, and the four sons of Gwy Fitz-Candelou of Porkyntone slain. And Fulk had so many the fewer enemies.

Fulk and his companions went from thence towards Rothelan to speak to sir Lewys, the prince who had married Johane, the daughter of king Henry, the sister of king John; for the prince and sir Fulk and his brothers had been brought up together in the court of king Henry. The prince was very glad at the coming of sir Fulk, and asked him what agreement there was between the king and him. "Sir," said Fulk, "none, for I cannot have peace for "anything; and therefore, sir, have I come to you and to "my good lady to have your peace." "Truly," said the prince, "I grant and give you my peace, and from me you "shall have a good reception. The king of England knows "not how to have peace with you, or me, or any other." "Sir," said Fulk, "many thanks, for I trust much in you and "in your great loyalty. And since you have granted me your

" avez vostre pees grantee, je vus dirroy autre chose. " Certes, sire, Morys le fis Roger est mortz, quar je lay " ocys." Quant le prince savoit qe Morys fust mortz, molt fust irree ; e dit qe, sil ne ly avoit sa pees donee, yl ly freit trayner e pendre, pur ce qe Morys fust son cosyn. Donqe vynt la bon dame, e fist acord entre le prince e sire Fouke, issint quil furent entrebayseez e toutz maltalentz pardonneez.

En icel temps grant descord fust entre le prince Lewys e Guenonwyn, le fitz Yweyn Keveyloc ; e a cely Guenonwyn grant partie de le pays de Powys apendeit. E si fust molt orgoylous, hauteyn, e fer, e ne vodra rein deporter le prince ; mes fist grant destruxion en sa terre. Le prince a force avoit tot abatu le chastel Metheyn, e avoit pris en sa meyn Mochnant, Lannerth, e autres terres qe furent a Guenonwyn. Le prince comaunda la mestrie de tote sa terre a Fouke, e ly comaunda coure sur Guenonwyn e destrure totes ces terres. Fouke fust sages e bien avysee, e savoit

---

" peace, I will tell you something else. Of a truth, sir, " Morys Fitz-Roger is dead, for I have killed him." When the prince knew that Morys was dead he was very angry, and he said that if he had not given him his peace he would have had him drawn and hanged, for Morys was his cousin. Then came the good lady and made peace between the prince and sir Fulk, so that they embraced each other and all ill-will was pardoned.

At this time there was great discord between the prince Lewys and Guenonwyn, son of Yweyn Keveyloc ; and to this Guenonwyn a great part of the country of Powys belonged. And he was very proud, haughty, and fierce, and in nothing would he submit himself to the prince ; but he made great destruction in his land. The prince by force had totally beaten down the castle of Metheyn, and had taken into his hand Mochnant, Lannerth, and the other lands which belonged to Guenonwyn. The prince assigned the superiority of all his land to Fulk, and he commanded him to attack Guenonwyn and destroy all his lands. Fulk was prudent

bien qe le tort fust al prince. Si ly dist en bele manere: "Sire, pur Dieu," fet il, "mercy; si vus ce " fetez qe vus avez devysee, vus serrez molt blame en " estrange regneez de totes gentz. E, sire, si vus plest, " ne vus peyse qe je le vus dy, tote gent dient qe " vus avez peschie de ly. E, pur ce, sire, pur Dieu, " eiez mercy de ly; e yl se redressera a vus a vostre " volente, e vus servira de gree. E vus ne savez quant " vus averez mester a vos barouns." Tant precha Fouke au prince e parla, qe le prince e Guenonwyn furent entreacordeez. E le prince ly rendy totes ces terres qe de ly eynz furent prisees.

King John attacks Fulk and prince Lewys.

Le roy Johan fust a Wyncestre. Ataunt vynt la novele a ly qe Fouke avoit ocys Morys le fitz Roger, e quil fust demoree ou Lewys le prince, qaveit esposee Johane, sa suere. Si devynt molt pensyf, e bone piece ne sona parole. Pus dit: "Hay! Seinte Marie, je su " roy, Engletere guye, duc su Dangoye et de Normaun-

---

and very wary, and he knew well that the prince was in the wrong. So he said to him courteously, "Sir, for God's " sake," said he, "pardon! If you do what you have planned, " you will be much blamed in foreign countries by all people. " And, sir, if it please you, let it not annoy you what I tell " you, every one says that you have sinned against him. And " therefore, sir, for God's sake, have mercy on him, and he will " reform himself towards you at your will, and will serve you " to your satisfaction. And you know not when you will " have need of your barons." So long did Fulk preach and talk to the prince that the prince and Guenonwyn were reconciled with each other. And the prince gave him back all the lands which had been previously taken from him.

King John was at Winchester. Then came news to him that Fulk had killed Morys the son of Roger, and that he was staying with prince Lewys who had married Johane, his [John's] sister. He became very thoughtful, and for a good while he did not utter a word. Then he said, "Hay! " Saint Mary, I am a king, I rule England, I am duke of " Angoye and Normandy, and the whole of Ireland is in my

" dye, e tote Yrland est en ma segnorie; e je ne pus " trover ne aver en tot moun poer, pur quanqe je " pus doner, nul qe me velt venger de le damage e " hontage qe Fouke mad fet. Mes je ne lerroy qe je " ne me vengeroy de le prince." Si fist somoundre a Salobure tous ces countes e baronz e ces autres chevalers quil seient a un certeyn jour a Salobure ou tot lur gent.

E quant furentz venuz a Salobure, Lewys fust garny par ces amys qe le roy Johan ly movereit grant guere. E apela Fouke, si ly mostra tote le aventure. Fouke fist assembler al chastel Balaham en Pentlyn xxx. mil de bons houmes; e Guenonwyn le fitz Yweyn vynt ou ces gentz, qe fortz e hardys furent. Fouke fust assez sage de guere, e conust bien tous les passages par out le roy Johan covenist passer. E le passage fust mout escars, enclos de boys e marreis, issi quil ne poeit passer, si noun le haut chemyn. E le passage est apele le Gue Gymele. Fouk e Guenonwyn

---

" lordship, and I cannot find nor have in all my jurisdiction, " for whatever I can give, one who will avenge me for the " damage and the disgrace which Fulk has done me. But " I will not desist until I avenge myself upon the prince." He caused to be summoned to Salobure all his earls and barons and his other knights that they should be on a certain day at Salobure with all their people.

And when they were come to Salobure, Lewys was warned by his friends that king John would wage great war against him. And he called Fulk and told him all the affair. Fulk caused to assemble at castle Balaham in Pentlyn thirty thousand good men; and Guenonwyn, the son of Yweyn, came with his troops, who were strong and bold. Fulk was very wary in war, and well knew all the defiles through which king John must pass. And the passage was very retired, inclosed with woods and marshes, so that he could pass only by the highway. And the pass is called The ford of Gymele. Fulk and Guenonwyn with their troops came to the passage,

ou lur gentz vindrent al passage, e fyrent fouer, outre le hautchemyn, une fosse long, profound e lee ; e firent emplyr la fossee dewe, issi qe nul poeit passer, quei pur le marreis qei pur la fosse. E, outre la fosse, firent un palys trebien bataillee ; e uncore puet home vere la fosse.

Ly roy Johan, ou tot son host, vynt al gue, e la quida passer seurement ; e vyst de la chevalers armes plus qe dys mil qe gardoient le passage. Fouke e ces compaignons furent passez le gue par un prive chemyn quil avoyent feit, e furent de cele part ou le roy fust, e Guenonwyn e plusours autres chevalers ou eux. Le roy escria Fouke, e les chevalers le roy de totes partz assailerent Fouke. Mes molt lur mesavynt quil ne le poeynt avenyr si noun parmy le frount sur la cauce. Fouke e ces compaignons se defendirent com lyons, e sovent furent demonteez e sovent remounteez. E plusours des chevalers le roy furent ocys ; e Guenonwyn fust sorement navfree parmy le healme en la teste.

---

and caused to be dug beyond the highway a long, deep and broad ditch ; and they filled the ditch with water, so that no one could pass, partly for the marsh, partly for the ditch. And beyond the ditch they made a palisade very well fortified ; and the ditch is still to be seen.

King John with all his army came to the ford, and thought to have passed it in safety ; and he saw beyond it armed knights, more than ten thousand, who guarded the passage. Fulk and his companions had passed the ford by a private way which they had made, and were on the side where the king was, and Guenonwyn and many other knights with them. The king observed Fulk, and the king's knights on all sides assailed Fulk. But it was a great disadvantage to them that they could not get at him excepting by the front upon the causeway. Fulk and his companions defended themselves like lions, and often were dismounted and often remounted. And many of the king's knights were killed ; and Guenonwyn was sorely wounded through the helm in the head. When

Quant Fouke veit quil, ne sa gent, ne poeynt durer longement de hors lur fosse, si retornerent par lur prive chemyn, e defendyrent lur palys e la fosse ; e des quarels e autres dartz launcerent e gitterent a les gentz le roy, e ocistrent grant gentz e navfrerent pueple a demesure. Ceste fere e dure medle dura tanqe a seyr. Quant le roy vist tantz de ces gentz ocys e navfrez, tant fust dolent ne savoit qey fere ; mes se retorna vers Saloburs.

Le roy Johan fust home santz conscience, mavois, contrarious, e hay de tote bone gent, e lecherous ; e, syl poeit oyr de nulle bele dame ou damoisele, femme ou fyle de counte ou de barun e dautre, yl la voleyt a sa volente aver ; ou, par promesse ou par don, engyner, ou par force ravyr. E pur ce, fust le plus hay ; e, pur cele encheson, plusours grantz seignurs d'Engleterre aveyent rendu al roy lur homages ; dont le roy fust le meynz dote dassez. King John's character.

Johan Lestraunge, seignour de Knokyn e de Rutone,

Fulk saw that neither he nor his people could long remain on the outside of their ditch, they returned by their private way and defended their palisade and the ditch, and shot and cast quarrels and other darts against the king's troops, and killed many men and wounded an immense number of people. This fierce and hard struggle lasted till the evening. When the king saw so many of his people killed and wounded he was so sorrowful that he did not know what to do ; but he returned towards Saloburs.

King John was a man without conscience, wicked, cross, and hated by all good people, and lustful ; and if he could hear of any fair lady or damsel, the wife or daughter of earl, or baron, or of any other, he wished to have her at his will ; either to entrap her by promise or gift, or to ravish her by force. And for this he was the most hated, and for this cause many great lords of England had given up their homages to the king ; whereby the king was the less feared.

John Lestraunge, lord of Knokyn and of Rutone, always

se tynt tous jours ou le roy, e fist damage as gentz le prince. E, pur ce, le prince fist abatre le chastel de Rutone e prendre ces gentz e les enprisoner: dont Johan fust molt dolent. Le prince vynt al chastel Balaham, e apela Fouke; si ly dona e rendy tote Blancheville, son herytage, e Estrat e Dynorben. Fouke le mercia molt, e prist ceus quil voleyt e sen ala a Blanchevyle; e fist refermer e par tut amender le chastiel.

Another attack upon Fulk.

Johan Lestrange vynt al roy, e ly conta qe Fouke ly avoit fet grant damage de sa gent e abatu le chastiel de Rutone. E pria al roy (quar il fust bien de ly) qe yl ly aydast de poer, e yl se vengereit bien de sire Fouke e de ces gentz. Le roy apela sire Henre de Audelee, qe fust seignour e premer conquerour de le chastiel Rous e de lonour. Si ly comanda prendre x. mil chevalers des plusvaylantz d'Engletere; e quil, e ces chevalers, fuissent en totes choses entendauntz a sire Johan Lestrange. Sire Henre e sire Johan e lur chevalers saparillerent vers

---

kept with the king, and did harm to the people of the prince. And for this reason the prince caused the castle of Rutone to be overthrown and the garrison to be taken and imprisoned; for which John was very sad. The prince came to castle Balaham and called Fulk, and gave and restored to him all Blancheville, his heritage, and Estrat and Dynorben. Fulk thanked him much, and took whom he would and went to Blanchevyle, and caused the castle to be restored and thoroughly repaired.

John Lestrange came to the king, and told him that Fulk had done great damage to his people and had overthrown the castle of Rutone. And he asked the king (for he stood well with him) that he would help him with troops, and that he would avenge himself well upon sir Fulk and his people. The king called sir Henry de Audelee, who was lord and first conqueror of the Red Castle and of the honour. And he commanded him to take ten thousand knights, the most valiant of England; and that he and his knights should in all things be obedient to sir John Lestrange. Sir Henry and sir John

Blauncheville. E, en cheminant, quanquil troverent homes e femmes, ocistrent, e robberent le pays. Le cry se leva par tot.

Fouke fust a Blancheville e tynt yleqe bele compaignee, pur ce quil avoyt donqe son novel entre en ces terres. E furent ileqe de Gales vii^{c}. chevalers, e serjantz plusours. Quant la novele vynt a Fouke qe sire Johan e sire Henre vindrent vers ces parties, se armerent meyntenant, e sen alerent privement al pas de Mudle. E quant sire Johan vist sire Fouke brocha le destrer; sy feri sire Fouke de sa lance qe ele vola en menu pieces. E sire Fouke referi sire Johan en my la face parmy le healme, qe le coupe tote sa vie fust aparisaunt; e sire Johan vola tot plat a terre. Sire Johan fust molt vaylant; sayly tost en pies, e sescria molt halt: "Ore, seynours, a Fouke tous." Fouke respond cum orgoilous: "Certes," fet il, "e Fouke a " tous." Donqe les chevalers dambepartz sentrefery-

---

and their knights set out for Blancheville. And, as they were on their way, whatever men and women they found, they slew them and robbed the country. The cry was raised everywhere.

Fulk was at Blancheville, and kept there a fair company, because he had there his new entry into his lands. And there were there of Wales seven hundred knights, and many serjeants. When the news came to sir Fulk that sir John and sir Henry were coming towards those parts they armed themselves forthwith, and went privately to the pass of Mudle. And when sir John saw sir Fulk he pricked his war horse, and gave sir Fulk such a blow with his lance that it flew into splinters. And sir Fulk repaid sir John by a blow on his face through the helm, the stroke of which was apparent all his life, and sir John fell quite flat upon the ground. Sir John was very valiant, he leaped up speedily upon his feet and cried out aloud; "Now, " lords, all of you upon Fulk." Like a proud man Fulk answered, " By all means," said he, " and Fulk upon all." Then the knights upon both parts struck each other; Fulk,

rent; Fouke e sire Thomas Corbet, e ces autres compaignons, plusours ocistrent. Aleyn fitz Guaryn e Phelip, son frere, furent navfrez. Quant Fouke vist ces freres navfrez, a poy quil nenraga dyre. Sire Fouke se mist en la presse, e quanquil ateynt ne puet avoir socours de mort. Sire Fouke naveit a la jorne qe VII^{c}. chevalers, e les autres furent X. myl e pluz, pur quoy Fouke ne poeit veyndre lestour; si se retorna vers Blancheville. Sire Audulf de Bracy fust demontee en mi la presse, e molt se defendy hardiement; audreyn, fust pris e amenee vers Saloburs.

Sire Henre e sire Johan furent molt leez de la prise. Si vyndrent a Salobure devant le roy, e rendirent sire Audulf al roy, qe ly aresona molt fierement; e jura grant serement quil ly freit trayner e pendre, pur ce quil fust son traytour e son laroun, e avoit ocys ces chevalers, ars ces cites, ces chastels abatuz. Audulf ly respondy hardiement, e dit qe unqe ne fust traytour, ne nul de son lignage.

---

and sir Thomas Corbet, and his other companions slew many. Aleyn the son of Guaryn, and Philip his brother, were wounded. When Fulk saw his brothers wounded, he nearly went mad with anger. Sir Fulk put himself into the press, and whomsoever he reached could have no escape from death. Sir Fulk had at the skirmish only seven hundred knights, and the others were ten thousand and more, wherefore Fulk could not gain the battle; so he returned towards Blancheville. Sir Audulf de Bracy was dismounted in the press, and well and boldly defended himself; at the last he was taken and carried to Saloburs.

Sir Henry and sir John were much delighted with the capture. They came to Salobure before the king, and gave up sir Audulf to the king, who argued with him very proudly; and swore a great oath that he would have him drawn and hanged, because he was his traitor and his thief, and had killed his knights, burnt his cities, and overthrown his castles. Audulf answered him boldly, and said that he never was a traitor, nor any of his kindred.

Fouke fust a Blauncheville, e fist laver e mediciner ces freres e ces autres gentz. Atant ly sovynt de sire Audulf, e le fist quere partot; e quant ne poeyt estre trovee, yl ne ly quida vere a nul jour. Si demena si grant duel, qe home ne poeit greynour. Atant vynt Johan de Rampaygne, e vist Fouke fere tiel duel. "Sire," fet il, "lessez estre ce duel: e, si Dieu plest, " eynz demayn prime orrez bone novele de sire Audulf " de Bracy. Quar, je meismes, irroy parler au roy." Sir Audulf de Bracy delivered from prison.

Johan de Rampaygne savoit assez de tabour, harpe, viele, citole, e jogelerie. Si se atyra molt richement, auxi bien come counte ou baroun. E fist teyndre ces chevoyls e tut son corps entierement auxi neyr come geet, issi qe rien ne fust blanke, si ces dentz noun. E fist pendre entour son col un molt beal tabour; pus monta un beal palefroy, e chevalcha parmy la vile de Salobure, desqe a la porte du chastiel; e de meynt un fust regarde. Johan vynt devant le rey e

---

Fulk was at Blauncheville, and caused his brothers and his other people to be washed and doctored. Afterwards he remembered sir Audulf, and caused him to be sought for everywhere, and when he could not be found he thought never to see him any more. So much grief did he make that no one could make more. At length came John de Rampaygne and saw Fulk make such grief. "Sir," said he, "have done with this lamentation; and (if it please God) "before to-morrow at prime you shall have good news of "sir Audulf de Bracy. For I myself shall go to speak to "the king."

John de Rampaygne was tolerably skilful upon the tabor, harp, viol, citole, and in jugglery. He dressed himself very richly, as much so as any earl or baron. And he stained his hair and the whole of his body entirely black like jet, so that there was nothing white, save only his teeth. And he hung round his neck a very beautiful tabor; then he mounted a handsome palfrey, and rode through the town of Salobure, as far as the gate of the castle, and was stared at by many a one. John came before the king, and put him-

se mist a genoylounz, e salua le roy mout corteysement. Le roy ly rendy ces salutz, e ly demanda dont yl estoyt. "Sire," fet yl, "je su un menestral Ethio-" pien nee en Ethiopie." Fet le roy: "Sunt touz les " gentz de vostre terre de vostre colour?" "Oyl, mon " seignur, home e femme." "Qei dient yl en estrange " regneez de moy?" "Sire," fet yl, "vus estez le plus " renomee roy de tote la Cristienete; e, pur vostre grant " renoun, vus su je venu vere." "Bel sire," fet le roy, " bien viegnez." "Sire, mon seignur, grant mercy." Johan dist quil fust renomee plus pur maveste qe bounte; mes le roy ne lentendi point. Johan fist le jour meynte menestralsie de tabour e dautre instrumentz.

Quant le roy fust alee cocher, sire Henre de Audelee fist aler pur le neyr menestral, e le amena en sa chambre. E fesoient grant melodie, e quant sire Henre avoit bien beu, donqe dit a un vadlet: "Va quere sire Audulf de " Bracy, qe le roy velt ocyre demeyn; quar une bone " nutee avera avant sa mort."

---

self upon his knees, and saluted the king very courteously. The king saluted him in return, and asked him whence he was. "Sire," said he, "I am an Ethiopian minstrel, born " in Ethiopia." Said the king, "Are all the men of your " land of your colour?" "Yes, my lord, men and women." "What do they say of me in foreign realms?" "Sire," said he, "you are the most renowned king in the whole of " Christendom; and for your great renown I am come to " see you." "Fair sir," said the king, "you are very wel-" come." "Sir, my lord, many thanks." John said that he was renowned more for his wickedness than his goodness, but the king did not hear him. John made that day much minstrelsy with his tabor and other instruments.

When the king had gone to bed, sir Henry de Audelee caused the black minstrel to be sent for, and conducted him to his chamber. And they made great melody, and when sir Henry had well drunk, then said he to a valet, "Go, look for sir " Audulf de Bracy, whom the king intends to put to death to-" morrow; for he shall have a pleasant night before his death."

Le vadlet bien tost amena sire Audulf en la chambre, donqe parlerent e juerent. Johan comenca un chanson qe sire Audulf soleit chaunter ; sire Audulf leva la teste ; si ly regarda enmy le vys, e a grant peyne le conust. Sire Henre demanda a beyvre ; Johan fust molt servisable, saily legerement en pies, e devant tous servy de la coupe. Johan fust coynte ; gitta un poudre en la coupe qe nul ne le aparcust, quar yl fust bon jogelere. E tous qe burent devyndrent si sommylous, qe bien tost apres le beyre se cocherent dormyr. E quant tuz furent endormys, Johan prist un fol qe le roy aveit ; si ly mist entre les deus chevalers qe devereynt garder sire Audulf. Johan e sire Audulf pristrent les tuayles e lintheals qe furent en la chambre ; e, par une fenestre devers Salverne, seschaperent e sen alerent vers Blancheville, qe ert XII. lywes de Salobure.

La chose ne poeit longement estre celee, quar lendemeyn fust tote la verite dite al roy, qe mout fust corocee pur leschap. Fouke fust leve matyn lende-

---

The valet very speedily brought Sir Audulf into the chamber ; then they talked and played. John began a song which sir Audulf was accustomed to sing ; sir Audulf raised his head, and looked him straight in the face, and with great difficulty knew him. Sir Henry asked for drink ; John was very useful ; he leaped lightly to his feet, and before all of them he served the cup. John was cunning ; he cast a powder into the cup so that no one perceived him, for he was a good juggler. And all who drank became so drowsy that very soon after drinking it they lay down to go to sleep. And when they were all asleep, John took a fool whom the king had ; he placed him between the two knights who should have guarded sir Audulf. John and sir Audulf took the towels and sheets which were in the chamber, and by a window towards the Severn they escaped, and went towards Blancheville, which was twelve leagues from Salobure.

The matter could not long be hidden, for on the morrow all the truth was told to the king, who was very angry for the escape. Fulk had risen betimes in the morning,

meyn, quar poy aveit dormi la nuyt. Si regarda vers Salobure, e vist sire Audulf e Johan venyr. Ne fet a demaunder sil fust lee quant il les vist; si les corust enbracer e beysir. Il les demanda quele noveles; e sire Audulf ly conta coment Johan se contynt, e coment il eschaperent; dont Fouke, qe eyntz dolent ert, fist deduyt e grant joye.

Fulk's wife and children.

Ore lessum de Fouke, e parloms de dame Mahaud de Caus. Quant le roy, qe tant laveit desirree, savoit de verite qele fust esposee a sire Fouke, son enymy, par le consayl larchevesqe Hubert, molt fist grant damage a le archevesqe e a la dame; quar il la voleit fere ravyr. E ele fuy a moster; e yleqe fust delyvre de une fyle. E larchevesqe la baptiza Hauwyse, qe pus fust dame de Wemme.

Fouke e ces compaignonz vindrent une nuyetee a Caunterbure, e amenerent la dame de yleqe a Huggeford, e demora une piece yleqe. Pus avynt qe la dame

---

for he had slept little that night. He looked towards Salobure, and saw sir Audulf and John coming. There was no need to ask whether he was glad when he saw them; he ran to embrace and kiss them. He asked them what news; and sir Audulf told him how John had managed, and how they escaped; whereat Fulk, who before had been sad, made rejoicing and great joy.

Now let us leave Fulk and speak of dame Mahaud de Caus. When the king, who had desired her so much, knew of a truth that she was married to sir Fulk, his enemy, by the counsel of archbishop Hubert, he did very great mischief to the archbishop and the lady; for he wished to have her carried off by violence. And she fled to the minster, and there was delivered of a daughter. And the archbishop baptized her Hauwyse, who afterwards was lady of Wemme.

Fulk and his companions came one night to Canterbury, and from thence they took the lady to Huggeford, and she remained awhile there. Then it came to pass that the lady was

fust enceinte, e fust privement demorant a Albrebure. E le roy la fist espier, e ele sen ala de yleoqe privement a Salobure ; e ileqe fust espie, e ele fust si grosse qe ele de yleqe ne poeit traviler. E sen fuy a la eglise nostre Dame a Salobure ; e ileq fust delyvre de une file qe fust baptize Johane, qe pus fust mariee a sire Henre de Penebrugge. Pus avoit Mahaud un fitz, qe fust nee sur un montaigne de Gales, e fust baptizee Johan en une russele qe vyent de la Fontaigne de Puceles. La dame e lenfant furent molt fiebles ; quar lenfant nasquist deus moys avaunt son terme. E quant lenfant fust conferme de evesqe, yl fust apelee Fouke. La dame e lenfant, qe febles erent, furent aporteez de la montaigne a une graunge, qe fust celle a Carreganant.

Prince Lewys plots the betrayal of Fulk.

Quant le roy ne se poeit en nulle manere venger de Fouke, ne la dame honyr e prendre, si fist une letre al prince Lewys, qavoit esposee Johane, sa suere ; e ly pria par amour oster de sa meynee son mortel enymy

---

with child, and she resided in privacy at Albebure, and the king caused her to be watched, and she went from thence privately to Salobure ; and there she was watched ; and there she was so large that she could not travel from thence. And she fled into the church of Our Lady at Salobure ; and there she was delivered of a daughter who was baptized Johane, and who was afterwards married to Sir Henry de Penebrugge. Afterwards Mahaud had a son, who was born upon a mountain of Wales, and was baptized in a stream which came from the Maid's Well. The lady and the child were very weak, for the child was born two months before its term. And when the child was confirmed by the bishop, he was called Fulk. The lady and the infant, who were weakly, were carried from the mountain to a grange, which was that at Carreganant.

When the king could in no way avenge himself upon Fulk, nor disgrace nor take the lady, he made a letter to prince Lewys, who had espoused Johane, his sister ; and prayed him for his love to remove from his household his mortal enemy

e son feloun, ce fust Fouke ; e yl ly rendroit tous les terres qe ces ancestres aveyent unqe prises de sa seignurye, a teles quil ly fesoit avoir le cors Fouke. Le prince apela en sa cambre Johane, sa feme, e la mostra le letre qe le roy son frere ly avoit maundee. Quant la dame avoit oy la letre, manda privement a sire Fouke tot le tenour, e qe le roy velt acordeer a son seignur. Quant Fouke oy la novele, molt fust dolent e se dota de tresoun. Si maunda dame Mahaud par Baudwyn de Hodenet privement a levesqe de Canterbure, e assygna Baudwyn de venyr a ly a Dovere.

Fouke e ces quatre frere, e Audulf et Johan de Rampaygne, se armerent tot a talent ; e lur autres gentz vindrent al chastiel Balaha devant le prince. "Sire," fet Fouke, "je vus ay servy a mon poer lealment ; mes " ore, sire, ne siet um a qy affyer. Quar, pur la grant " promesse le roy, me volez vus gerpyr. E le roy vus " ad maundee une letre, la quele, sire, vus avez celee

---

and his felon, who was Fulk, and that he would restore him all the lands which his ancestors had ever taken of his lordship, provided that he would let him have the body of Fulk. The prince called into his chamber Johane, his wife, and showed her the letter which the king her brother had sent him. When the lady had heard the letter, she sent the entire import of it to sir Fulk, and that the king wished to come to terms with her husband. When Fulk heard the news he was very sorrowful, and was afraid of treason. He sent dame Maude by Baudwyn de Hodenet privily to the bishop of Canterbury, and appointed Baudwyn to come to him at Dover.

Fulk and his four brothers, and Audulf and John de Rampaygne, armed them entirely as they wished ; and their other people came to castle Balaha before the prince. "Sire," said Fulk, "I have served you according to my power loyally; but " now-a-days a man does not know whom to trust. For, " through the great promise of the king, you wish to give me " up. And the king has sent you a letter, which, sir, you have

" de moy, dount, sire, je me doute le plus." " Fouke," fet le prince, " demorez ou moy ; quar certes ne le " pensay de vus fere tresoun." " Certes, sire," fet Fouke, "je le crey molt bien; mes, sire, je ne remeyn- " droy en nulle manere." E prist conge de le prince e de tous ces compaygnons. De yleqe tant erra nuyt e jour quil vynt a Dovre ; e yleqe encontra Baudwyn qe la dame mena a larchevesqe. E se mistrent en meer, e aryverent a Whytsond.

Fulk's adventures in France.

Fouke e ces freres e ces autre compaignons, quant vyndrent a Parys, si vyrent le roy Phelip de Fraunce, qe fust venuz as champs pur vere ces chevalers de Fraunce jòstier. Fouke fust uncore mu, e ces compaignons ensement ; quant vyrent tant beal assemble, demorerent pur vere les jostes. Quant les Frauncoys virent chevalers d'Engleterre, se penerent molt le plus de bien fere. Donqe sire Druz de Montbener, un molt orgoilouse Franceys, maunda a sire Fouke e ly pria joster ou ly ; si Fouke meyntenaunt ly granta sa requeste.

" concealed from me, wherefore, sir, I am the more afraid." " Fulk," said the prince, " stay with me ; for assuredly I think " to do you no treason." " Certainly, sir," said Fulk, " I " believe this very well ; but, sir, I will not remain on any " account." And he took leave of the prince and of all his companions. From thence he journeyed night and day until he came to Dover; and there he met Baudwyn, who had taken the lady to the archbishop. And they put to sea and arrived at Whytsond.

Fulk and his brothers and his other companions, when they came to Paris, saw the king Philip of France, who had come into the fields to see his knights of France joust. Fulk was still disguised, and his companions likewise ; when they saw such a fair assembly, they tarried to see the jousts. When the French saw the knights of England, they exerted themselves much the more to do well. Then sir Druz de Montbener, a very proud Frenchman, sent to sir Fulk and asked him to joust with him; Fulk immediately granted him his request.

Fouke e ces freres se armerent e monterent les bons destrers. Johan de Rampaigne fust molt richement atyree e bien mountee ; e si avoit un molt riche tabour, e fery le tabour al entre des renks, dont les montz e les vals rebondyrent e les chyvals sen jolyverent. Quant le roy vist sire Fouke armee, si dist a sire Druz de Montbener: " Avyseez vus bien ; quar cely chevaler " Engleys est molt pruz e vaylant, e ce piert bien." " Sire," fet yl, "ny a chevaler en tot le mond qe je " nosase bien encontrer al chyval ou a pee, cors contre " cors." " De par Dieu ! " fet le roy."

Fouke e sire Druz brocherent les destrers e sentre-feryrent. Fouke ly fery de sa launce parmy leschu e pierca le bon hauberke, e parmy lespaudle qe la lance vola en pieces ; e sire Druz chey tut plat a terre. Fouke prist le chyval sire Druz; sy lamena e le manda en present a sire Druz, quar sire Fouke navoit cure a detenir le chyval. Atant vynt un chevaler Franceis, qe a son vueyl voleit venger sire Druz ; sy fery Fouke

---

Fulk and his brothers armed themselves and mounted their good war-horses. John de Rampaigne was very richly dressed and well mounted, and he had a very rich tabour, and he struck the tabour at the entry of the ranks, so that the hills and the valleys rebounded, and the horses capered. When the king saw sir Fulk armed, he said to sir Druz de Montbener, " Take good heed to yourself; for this English knight is very " handy and valiant, and this is very obvious." " Sire," said he, "there is not a knight in all the world whom I would not " well dare to meet on horse or on foot, body against body." " By God ! " said the king.

Fulk and sir Druz spurred their horses and closed together. Fulk struck him with his lance in the midst of his shield, and pierced his good hauberk, and so through the shoulder, so that the lance flew in pieces ; and sir Druz fell at full length to the ground. Fulk took the horse of sir Druz ; he led it and made it a present to sir Druz, for sir Fulk did not care to keep the horse. Then came a French knight, who at his pleasure wished to avenge sir Druz; he

de sa launce parmy lescu qe sa launce depessa. Fouke le refery enmy le healme qe sa lance tote defruscha ; e le chevaler voida les arcons, volsist ou noun. Les frere Fouke e ces compaignons furent prestz a joster ; mes le roy ne le voleyt sofryr. Le roy vynt poignant a Fouke, e ly dit : "Chevaler Engleys, seiez benet ; "quar trop bien avez fet." E ly pria demorer ou ly. Fouke mercia molt le roy, e ly granta de estre a sa volente. Fouke le jour de meynt un fust regardee, alowe, e preysee par tot. Fouke avoit tele grace quil ne vynt unqe en nul lyu ou hardiesse, chevalerie, prouesse ou bountee fust, quil ne fust tenuz le meylour e santz pier.

Fouke demora ou le roy Phelip de Fraunce, e fust amee e honoree de l[e] roy e la roigne e totes bone gentz. Le roy ly demanda quel noun avoit ; Fouke dit quil fust apelee Amys del Boys. "Sire Amys," fet le roy, "conussez vus Fouke le fitz Waryn, de qy um "parle grant bien partut ?" "Oil, sire," fet il, "je lay

---

struck sir Fulk with his lance such a blow on the shield that his lance went through. Fulk struck back upon the midst of his helm so that his lance broke up into fragments ; and the knight lost the saddle, whether he would or not. Fulk's brothers and companions were ready to joust ; but the king would not permit it. The king came peeping at Fulk, and said to him, "English knight, a blessing upon you ; for you "have done exceedingly well." And he prayed him to remain with him. Fulk thanked the king much, and consented to be at his pleasure. Fulk that day was looked at by many a one, lauded and praised everywhere. Fulk had such grace that he never came into any place in which courage, chivalry, prowess, or bounty were, but he was held as the best, and without peer.

Fulk remained with the king of France, and was loved and honoured by the king, and the queen, and all good folks. The king asked him what name he had ; Fulk said that he was called Amys del Boys. "Sir Amys," said the king, "do you know Fulk Fitz-Waryn, of whom so much good "is spoken everywhere ?" "Yes, sire," said he, "I have

" sovent veu." " De quel estature est il?" "Sire, a " mon entendement, de meisme lestature qe je suy." Fet le roy: " Yl puet bien, quar vaylantz estes ambe- " deus." Fouke ne poeit oir de nul tornoy ne jostes par tute France quil ne voleyt estre, e par tot fust pryse, amee et honoree, pur sa proesse e sa largesse.

His residence there discovered by king John.

Quant le roy d'Engleterre savoit qe sire Fouke fust demorant ou le roy Phelip de Fraunce, manda al roy e ly pria, si ly plust, quil volsist oster de sa meynee e de sa retenance Fouke le fitz Guarin, son enymy mortel. Quant le roi de France avoit oy la letre, si dist par Seint Denys, qe nul tiel chevaler fust de sa retenance; e tiele respounce manda al roy d'Engletere. Quant sire Fouke avoit oy tele novele, vynt al roy de Fraunce e demanda congie de aler. Fet le roy: "Ditez moy si " nulle chose vus faut, e je hautement fray fere les " amendes pur quoy volez departir de moy." "Sire," fet yl, "je ay oy teles noveles parout me covyent partir " a force." E, par cele parole, entendy le roy quil fust

---

" often seen him." " Of what stature is he? " Sire, in my " opinion, he is of the same height that I am." Said the king, " He may well be, for you both are valiant men." Fulk could hear of no tourney nor jousts in all France at which he would not be, and everywhere he was prized, loved and honoured for his prowess and bounty.

When the king of England knew that Fulk was residing with king Philip of France, he sent to the king and prayed him, if he pleased, that he would expel sir Fulk Fitz-Guarin, his mortal enemy, from his household and his retinue. When the king of France had heard the letter, he said by Saint Denys that no such knight was in his retinue, and this answer he sent to the king of England. When sir Fulk had heard this news, he came to the king of France and asked leave to depart. Said the king; " Tell " me whether you want anything, and I will fully cause to " be made to you amends for which you wish to leave " me." " Sire," said he, " I have heard such news that per- " force I must set out." And by these words the king under-

Fouke. Fet le roy: "Sire Amys de Boys, je quid qe " vus estez Fouke le fitz Warin." "Certes, mon " seignur, oyl." Fet le roy: "Vus demorrez ou moy, " e je vus dorroy plus riches terres qe vus unqe navyez " en Engleterre." "Certes, sire," fet il, "yl nest pas " digne de receyvre terres de autruy doun qe les suens " de dreit heritage ne puet tenir a reson."

Fouke prist congie de le roy e vynt a la mer; e vist les nefs floter en la mer, e nul vent fust vers Engletere, e le temps fust assez bel. Fouke vist un maryner, qe sembla hardy e feer, e le apela a ly e dit: "Bel sire, est ceste nef la vostre?" "Sire," fet il, "oyl." "Qest vostre noun?" "Sire," fet il, "Mador del " Mont de Russie, ou je nasqui." "Mador," fet Fouke, " savez vus bien cest mester, e amener gentz par mer " en diverse regions?" "Certes, sire, yl ny ad terree " renomee par la Cristienete qe je ne saveroy bien e " salvement mener nef." "Certes," fet Fouke, "molt

Fulk sails with Mador.

---

stood that he was Fulk. Said the king; "Sir Amys de Boys, " I believe that you are Fulk Fitz-Warin." "Assuredly, " my lord, yes." Said the king; "Do you abide with me, " and I will give you richer lands than you have ever had " in England." Certes, sire," said he, "the man is unworthy " to receive lands from the gift of another, who cannot " reasonably hold those which are his own by right heritage."

Fulk took leave of the king and came to the sea, and saw the ships afloat on the sea, and there was no wind towards England, and the weather was tolerably fine. Fulk saw a mariner, who appeared to be bold and proud, and called him to him and said, "Fair sir, is that your ship?" "Sir," said he, "yes." "What is your name?" "Sir," said he, "Mador " of Mont de Russie, where I was born." "Mador," said Fulk, "do you well understand this occupation, and how to take " people by sea into various regions?" "Certes, sire, there " is no known land within Christendom to which I do not " know how to take a ship well and safely." "Assuredly," said Fulk, "you drive a very perilous trade. Tell me, Mador,

" avez perilous mester. Dy moi, Mador, bel douz " frere, de quel mort morust ton pere?" Mador ly respond qe neyeez fust en la mer. " Coment ton ael?" " Ensement." " Coment ton besael?" " En meisme la " manere, e tous mes parentz qe je sache, tanqe le " quart degree." " Certes," dit Fouke, " molt estes fol " hardys qe vus osez entrer la mer." " Sire," fet il, " pour quoy? Chescune creature avera la mort qe ly " est destinee. Sire," fet Mador, " si vus plest, respo- " nez a ma demaunde. Ou morust ton pere?" " Certes, " en son lyt." " Ou son ael?" " Emsement." Ou " vostre besael?" " Certes, trestous qe je sai de mon " lignage morurent en lur lytz." " Certes, sire," fet Mador, " depus qe tot vostre lignage morust en litz, " jay grant merveille qe vus estes osee dentrer nul " lyt." E donqe entendy Fouke qe ly mariner ly out verite dit qe chescun home avera mort tiele come destinee ly est; e ne siet le quel en terre ou en ewe.

" my fair sweet brother, of what death died your father?" Mador answered that he was drowned in the sea. " How " your grandfather?" " In the same way." " How your " great-grandfather?" " In like manner, and all my rela- " tions, as far as I know, to the fourth generation." " Truly," said Fulk, " it is very foolhardy of you to venture to put to " sea." " Sir," said he, " why? Every creature shall have " the death that is destined for him. Sir," said Mador, " if " you please, answer my question. Where did your father " die?" " Certes, in his bed." " Where died your grand- " father?" " In the same." " And where your great-grand- " father?" " Certainly, all, as far as I know, of my lineage " died in their beds." " Assuredly, sir," said Mador, " since " all your kindred have died in their beds, I am much asto- " nished that you dare go into any bed." And then Fulk perceived that the mariner had told him the truth, that each man shall have such a death as is appointed him, and he does not know whether it shall be by land or by water.

Fouke parla a Mador, qe savoit la manere des nefs, e ly pria, pur amur e pur du suen, quil ly volsist devyser e ordyner une neef; e il mettreit les costages. Mador ly granta; la neef fust fete en une foreste de leez la mer, solum le devys Mador en tous poyntz; e totes cordes e autre herneis, quanqe apendeit, si bien e si richement qa merveille; e fust a demesure bien vitaillee. Fouke, e ces freres, e sa meysne se mistrent en la mer e acosterent Engleterre. Adonqe vist Mador une neef bien batailee venant vers eux; e quant les neefs saprochierent, un chevaler parla a Mador e dit: "Danz maryner, a qy e dount est cele neef qe vus "guyez? quar nulle tiele nest custumere de passer par "ycy." "Sire," fet Mador, "cest la moye." "Par "foy!" fet le chevaler, "noun est; vus estes larounz, "e je le say bien par le veyl quartronee, qest des "armes Fouke le fitz Waryn; e il est en la neef, e "eynz huy rendroi je son corps a roy Johan." "Par "foy!" fet Fouke, "noun freez; mes si rien desirrez A sea fight.

Fulk spoke to Mador, who understood the business of ships, and prayed him for the love [of God?] and for that of himself to plan and build a ship, and that he would meet the outlay. Mador assented; the ship was made in a forest near the sea, according to the plan of Mador in all points; and all the cords and other tackle which belonged to her were so good and so rich that it was wonderful; and she was exceedingly well provisioned. Fulk and his brothers and his retinue put to sea and coasted by England. Then Mador saw a ship well manned coming towards them; and when the ships drew near each other a knight spoke to Mador and said, "Sir mariner, to "whom belongs the ship which you are steering, and whence "is she, for it is usual for none such to pass by here." "Sir," said Mador, "she is mine." "By my faith," said the knight, "it is not so; you are thieves, and I know it well by the "quartered sail, which is of the arms of Fulk Fitz-Waryn; "and he is in the ship, and this very day I will give his body "up to king John." "By my faith," said Fulk, "you will not

" de nostre, vus le averez volenters." " Je averei," fet il, " vus tous, e quanqe vus avez, estre vostre " gree." " Par foy!" fet Fouke, " vus y menterez." Mador, qe bon e hardy maryner fust, lessa sa neef sigler; si trespersa lautre neef tot parmy, dont la mer entra. E si fust la neef pery; mes, eynz, y out meint dur coupe donee. E quant la neef fust vencue, Fouke e ces compaignons pristrent grant richesse e vitaille, e aporterent en lur neef; atant perist e enfoundry lautre neef.

Driven beyond Scotland.

Fouke tot cel an entier demora costeant par Engleterre, e a nul home ne voleit fere mal, si noun al roy Johan; e sovent prist son aver e quant quil poeit del suen. Fouke comenca sigler vers Escoce; atant lur vynt de le occident un vent Favonyn, e lur chaca treis jorneez de la Escoce. Atant virent un yle molt delitable e bel, a ce qe lur fust avys; e se trestrent laundreit e troverent bon port. Fouke e ces quatre freres, e Audulf e Baudwyn, alerent en la terre pur vere le

---

" do so; but if you want anything of ours, you shall have it " willingly." " I will have," said he, " all of you, and whatever " belongs to you, despite your consent." " By my faith," said Fulk, " there you lie." Mador, who was a good and hardy mariner, let his ship sail; he cut the other ship right in two, so that the sea came in. And so was the ship destroyed; but many a hard blow had already been given. And when the ship was conquered, Fulk and his companions took great riches and victual, and carried them into their ship: then the other ship perished and went to the bottom.

Fulk the whole of that entire year continued coasting off England, and to no one did he wish to do any harm excepting to king John; and often took his property and whatever he could of his. Fulk began to sail towards Scotland; then there came from the west a Favonian wind, and drove them for three days beyond Scotland. Then they saw an island very pleasant and beautiful, as it appeared to them, and they drew thither and found a good port. Fulk and his four brothers, and Audulf and Baudwyn, went ashore to see the country and

pays e vitailler lur neef. Atant virent un juvecel gardant berbis, e quant vist les chevalers, sen ala vers eux e les salua de un Latyn corumpus. Fouke ly demanda sil savoit nulle viande a vendre en le pais. " Certes, sire," fet il, " nanil ; quar cest une yle qest " habite de nule gent, si noun de poy ; e cele gent vi- " vent de lur bestes. Mes si vus plest venir ou moy, " tele viaunde come jay, averez volenters." Fouke le mercia e ala ou ly. Le vadlet lur mena par une caverne desoutz terre qe fust molt bele, e lur fist seer, e lur fist assez bel semblant. " Sire," fet le vadlet, " jay un serjant en la montaigne ; ne vus peise si je " corne pur ly ; e bien tost mangeroms." " De par " Dieu !" fet Fouke. Le juvencel ala de hors le caverne e corna sys meotz, e revynt en la caverne.

Bien tost vindrent sis gros e grantz vilaynz e fers, vestuz de grosse e vyls tabertz ; e chescun avoit en sa meyn un gros bastoun dur e fort. E quant Fouke les

Falls among robbers.

---

victual their ship. Then they saw a youth keeping sheep, and when he saw the knights he went to them and greeted them in bad Latin. Fulk asked him if he knew of any provisions for sale in the country. " Of a truth, sir," said he, " none at all ; for this is an island inhabited by only a few " people, and these folk live upon their beasts. But if you will " please to come with me, such food as I have, you shall have " willingly." Fulk thanked him and went with him. The servant took them under the earth through a cavern, which was very beautiful, and caused them to be seated, and made them very fair cheer. " Sir," said the valet, " I have a servant on " the hill ; let it not annoy you if I blow my horn for him, " and we will dine very speedily." " Do so, in God's name !" said Fulk. The young man went outside the cavern and blew six blasts, and returned into the cavern.

Forthwith came six great and tall and fierce clowns, dressed in coarse and dirty tabards, and each had in his hand a great club, hard and strong. And when Fulk saw them he had

vist, si avoit suspecion de maveste. Les sis vyleinz entrerent une chambre e osterent lur tabertz, e se vestirent de un escarlet vert e sodlies dorfreez; e de tous atirs furent auxi richement atireez come nul roy poeit estre. E revyndrent en la sale e saluerent sire Fouke e ces compaignonz; e demanderent les eschecz, e uum lur porta un molt riche eschecker ou meyne de fyn or e argent. Sire Willam assist un geu; mes il le perdy meyntenant. Sire Johan assist un autre; meintenant fust perdu. Phelip, Aleyn, Baudwyn e Audulf, chescun apres autre, assist un giw; e chescun perdy le suen. Donqe dit un des plus fers berchers a Fouke: "Volez vus juer?" "Nanyl," fet il. "Par "foi," fet le bercher, "vus juerez ou luttrez malgre "le vostre." "Par foi!" fet Fouke, "maveys vileyn "bercher, vus y mentez: e, depus qe je dey luttre ou "juer malgre mien, je jueroy ou vus en la manere qe "jay apris." Si sayly sus, haunca lespee; si ly fery qe

---

suspicion of mischief, The six vilains went into a chamber and took off their tabards and clothed themselves in a scarlet "vert," and shoes ornamented with gold, and in all their attires they were as richly dressed as any king might be. And they returned into the hall and saluted sir Fulk and his companions; and they asked for chessboards, and there was brought to them a very rich chessboard, with pieces of fine gold and silver. Sir William played a game, but he lost it immediately. Sir John played another; immediately it was lost. Philip, Aleyn, Baudwyn, and Audulf, one after the other, played a game, and each lost his own. Then said one of the rudest of the shepherds to Fulk, "Will you play?" "No," said he. "By my faith," said the shepherd, "you shall play "or wrestle, whether you will or no." "By my faith," said Fulk, "you wicked vilain of a shepherd, herein you lie: and "since I must wrestle or play despite myself, I will play with "you in the way I have learned," so he leaped up, drew his sword, and gave him such a blow that his head flew into the

la taste vola en my la place ; pus un autre, pus le tierce, issi qe Fouke e ces compaignouns ocistrent tous les vileynz glotouns.

Fouke en une chambre entra e trova une vele seant ; e avoit un corn en sa meyn, e sovent le mist a sa bouche ; mes ele ne le poeit de rien corner. Quant ele vist Fouke ly cria merci ; e il la demanda dont le corn servireit, si ele le poeit corner. La viele ly dist qe si le corn fust cornee, socours lur vendreit a plente. Fouke le corn prist, e en une autre chambre se mist ; donqe vist seet damoiseles, qe a demesure furent beles ; e molt richement furent vestues, e molt riche oevre fesoient. E quant virent Fouke a genoyls se mistrent, e ly crierent merci. Fouke lur demanda dont il estoient ; e la une ly dyt, "Sire," fet, "je su la fyle Aun- " florreis de Orkanye, e mon seignur demorant a un " son chastiel en Orkanie, qest apelee Chastel Bagot, " quest sur la mer, de leez une molte bele foreste. " Avynt qe, je e ces demoiseles, a quatre chevalers e

Fulk frees seven damsels.

---

middle of the place ; then a second, then the third, so that Fulk and his companions killed all the vilain rascals.

Fulk entered into a chamber and found an old woman sitting ; and she had a horn in her hand, and she frequently put it to her mouth, but she could not blow it at all. When she saw Fulk she cried mercy of him, and he asked her of what use the horn would be if she could blow it. The old woman told him that if the horn were blown, aid would come to them plentifully. Fulk took the horn and went into another chamber, where he saw seven damsels, who were wonderfully beautiful, and they were dressed very richly, and were making very rich work. And when they saw Fulk they threw themselves on their knees and cried for mercy from him. Fulk asked them whence they were, and one of them said, "Sir," said she, "I am the daughter of Aunflorreis of Orkanye, and " my lord is resident in one of his castles in Orkanie, which " is called Castel Bagot, which is upon the sea, near a very " beautiful forest. It happened that I and my maidens, with

" autres entrames un batil en la mer ; si alames de-
" duyre. Atant survyndrent les seet fitz la vele de seynz
" ou lur compagnie en une neef. Si ocistrent tous nos
" gentz, e nus amenerent sa ; e si ount desole nos
" corps, estre nostre gree, Dieu le siet. Dont nus
" prioms en le noun Dieu en qy vus creez qe vus nus
" aidez de ceste cheytyvetee, si vus poez decy eschaper.
" Quar je vey bien par vostre semblant qe vus nestez
" mie de ce pays menant."

Fouke conforta les damoyseles, e dyt quil les aydera a son poer. Fouke e ces compaignons troverent grant richesse, vitaille e armure. E ileqe trova Fouke le haubergon quil tynt, si riche e qe molt ama, quil soleit user privement, quil ne voleit en tote sa vie, pur nul aver, vendre ne doner.

Their conflict with the thieves.

Fouke richement garny sa neef, e emena la demoiseles a sa neef, e les eesa en quanquil poeit. E pus comanda totes ces gentz quil se armassent hastivement ;

" four knights and others, went in a boat upon the sea to
" amuse ourselves. Then came the seven sons of the old
" woman near at hand, with their company, in a ship. They
" killed all our people and brought us hither ; and they have
" ruined our bodies against our consent, God knows it !
" Wherefore we pray, in the name of the God in whom you
" believe, to help us from this misery, if you can escape hence.
" For I perceive well by your appearance, that you are not a
" resident in this country."

Fulk comforted the damsels, and told them that he would help them to the best of his power. Fulk and his companions found great riches, provisions, and armour. And there Fulk found the haubergon which he kept, very rich, and which he loved so much that he used to wear it secretly, and which he would not sell or give during the whole of his life for any money.

Fulk provisioned his ship liberally, and took the damsels into his ship, and comforted them as much as he could. And then he commanded all his people to arm themselves hastily ;

e quant tous furent armees a volente, donqe leva Fouke lamenee de le petit corn quil avoit pris de la vele. E donqe vindrent corantz par les champs plus qe deus c. des larons de la countree. Fouke e sa compagnie les corurent sur, e yl se defendyrent vigerousement. Yleqe furent ocys plus qe ij^{c}. des robbeours e larouns; quar yl ny avoyt nulle gent en tote cele yle si robbeours e larouns noun, qe soleyent ocire quanquil porreyent ateyndre e prendre par mer.

Fouke demanda Mador sy ly savoit amener par mer en le realme qe um apele Orkanie. "Oyl, certes," fet il; "ce nest qe un isle, e le Chastel Bagot est molt "pres de le port." Fouke dit: "A cel chastel vodrey "je estre." "Sire, eynz huy vus y serrez." Quant Fouke fust aryvee, dont demanda les damoyseles sy yl aveyent conisance de le pais. "Certes, sire," fet la une, "cest le realme Aunflour, mon piere." Fouke vint al chastiel, e rendy al roy sa fyle e les damoyseles; e il a grant honour les recust, e dona a Fouke riche douns.

Fulk sails for Orkney.

---

and when all were armed at will, then Fulk raised the troop of the little horn which he had taken from the old woman. And then came running through the fields more than two hundred of the robbers of the country. Fulk and his company fell upon them, and they defended themselves vigorously. There were slain more than two hundred of the robbers and thieves; for there were no people in the whole island excepting robbers and thieves only, who used to kill whomsoever they could reach and take upon the sea.

Fulk asked Mador whether he could take them by sea to the kingdom which is called Orkanie. "Yes, certainly," said he, "it is only an island, and Castle Bagot is very near the port." Fulk said, "That is the castle where I want to be." "Sir, "within this day you shall be there." When Fulk had arrived he asked the damsels whether they recognized the country. "Assuredly, sir," said one of them, "it is the realm "of Aunflour, my father," Fulk came to the castle, and gave the king his daughter and the damsels, and he received them with great honour, and gave rich gifts to Fulk.

Sees the serpents driven from Ireland by S. Patrick.

Fouke ad tant siglee pur vere merveilles e aventures quil ad envyronee les vij. yles de le occean, la Petite Bretaygne, Yrlande, Gutlande, Norweye, Denemarche, Orkanye, la graunde Eschavye. En Eschavye ne meynt nul home, fors serpentz e autres lede bestes. E la vist Fouke serpentz cornuez ; e les corns furent molt aguz ; e si ount iiij. peez, e sunt volantz come oysels. Un tel serpent asayly Fouke, e ly fery de son corn e trespersa son escu parmy. Fouke senmervila molt de le coupe, e se avysa molt bien qe quant le serpent ly fery en lescu ne poeit hastivement delyverer son corn ; e Fouke le bota parmy le cuer de son espee. Ileqe vist Fouke beste verminouse qavoit teste de mastyn, barbe epees come chevre, oreiles come de levre ; e autres plusors bestes qe Seint Patrik enchaca d'Yrlande e les encloyst ileqe par la vertu de Dieu ; quar le prudhome Seint Patrik fust bien de ly. E uncore nulle beste venymouse ne habite la terre d'Yrlande, si noun lesartes descowes.

Fulk had sailed so far to see wonders and adventures that he had gone round the seven islands of the ocean, Little Bretaygne, Yrlande, Gutlande, Norweye, Denemarche, Orkanye, La Graunde Eschavye. In Eschavye no one dwells, only serpents and other foul beasts. And there Fulk saw horned serpents, and the horns were very sharp ; and they have four feet ; and they can fly like birds. One of these serpents attacked Fulk, and struck him with its horn, and pierced through his shield. Fulk was much astonished with the blow, and perceived plainly that when the serpent struck him on the shield it could not speedily withdraw its horn ; and Fulk pierced him through the heart with his sword. There Fulk saw a venomous beast which had the head of a mastiff, a thick beard like a goat; ears like a hare; and many other beasts which Saint Patrick drove from Ireland and shut them up there by the power of God ; for the good man Saint Patrick came from near there. And still no venomous beast inhabits the land of Ireland, excepting lizards without tails.

Fouke vet siglant vers le north par la mer occian, outre Orkanye. Si trova tant de freydure e gelee qe home ne poeit la freidure durer, ne la nef en la mer pur la gelee ne poeit avant passer. Fouke se retorna vers Engleterre; a tant vynt une molt hydouse tempeste, dont trestous quidoient pur le tempeste moryr. E il crierent devoutement a Dieu e a Seint Clement quil lur delyvrast del torment. Ceste tempeste lur durra xv. jours; donqe vyrent terre, mes ne savoient quele. Caught in a tempest.

Fouke senela a terre, e vist un chastiel molt bel. Il entra le chastel, quar la porte fust deferme, e ne trova leynz honme ne beste vivant, ne en tot le pays. E senmerveila molt qe si bel lu fust de nully habitee. Revynt a sa neef, si le counta a sa meyne. "Sire," fet Mador, "lessum si la neef, e aloms tous a terre, "estre ceux qe garderount nostre vitaile; e bien tost "paraventure orroms par ascun coment il est de cet "pays." Land at the castle of Carthage.

Fulk went sailing towards the north by the ocean sea, beyond Orkanye. He found so much cold and frost that no one could endure the cold, nor could the ship make way in the sea by reason of the ice. Fulk returned towards England. Then came a very frightful tempest, whereupon all thought that they would die by the tempest. And they cried devoutly to God and to Saint Clement to deliver them from the storm. This tempest continued fifteen days; then they saw land, but did not know where.

Fulk went to the land, and saw a very beautiful castle. He entered the castle, for the gate was open, and within he found neither man nor beast living, nor in all the country. And he was much astonished that such a beautiful place was inhabited by no one. He returned to his ship, and told the tale to his followers. "Sir," said Mador, "let us leave the ship here, "and go all of us to land excepting such as shall take "charge of our provisions; and speedily peradventure we "shall hear from some person how it fares with this country."

The duke's daughter carried off by a dragon.

Quant vindrent a la terre encontrerent un pesant. Mador ly demanda quele terre ce fust, e coment apelee, e purquoy nest habitee. Ly pesant lur dyt qe cest le reygne de Yberie, e cest pays est apellee Cartage. Cest chastiel est al duc de Cartage, qe tient de le roy de Yberye. Cesti duc avoit un file, la plusbele pucele qe um savoit en le regne de Yberye. Cele damoisele mounta un jour le mestre tour de ceste chastel. Atant vynt un dragoun volaunt e prist la damoisele, e la porta sur un haut mount en la mer; si la manga. Cesti dragoun ad ocys e destrut tot cet pays; pur qy nul home nest osee cet pays habiter. Ne le duc nest osee cet chastel entrer, tant est hydous le dragoun.

The dragon's island.

Fouke se retourna a sa galye, e siglerent avant, donqe virent un grant mont en la mer. "Sire," fet Mador, "cest le mont ou meynt le dragon; ja sumes "nus tous en grant peril." "Tes tey," fet Fouke, "uncore ne veiez si bien noun. Dantz Mador, volez "estre mort de poour? Meynt dragon avoms veu, e

When they came to the land they met a countryman. Mador asked him what land this was, and how it was called, and why it was not inhabited. The peasant told them that it was the kingdom of Yberye, and this country is called Carthage. This castle belongs to the duke of Carthage, who holds of the king of Yberye. This duke had a daughter, the fairest maiden known of within the realm of Yberye. This damsel one day ascended the chief tower of that castle. Then came a flying dragon, and took the damsel and carried her to a high mountain in the sea, and there ate her. This dragon had killed and destroyed all that country, so that no one dares inhabit that country. Nor dares the duke enter that castle, the dragon is so terrible.

Fulk returned to his galley, and they sailed onwards until they came to a great mountain in the sea. "Sire," said Mador, "it is the mountain where the dragon dwells; now "are we all in great peril." "Hold your tongue," said Fulk, "so far you see nothing but good. Dan Mador, do you wish "to die of fright? Many a dragon have we seen, and God

" Dieu nus ad bien de peril delyvere. Unqe ne fumes
" uncore en peryl dont, la merci Dee, navoms bien
" eschape. Vostre maveis confort mettreit coars a la
" mort."

Fouke prist Audulf de Bracy, e par degrees monta le mont, qe bien haut ert; e quant vindrent al somet de le mont, virent meint bon hauberc, healmes e espeiez e autres armes gisantz yleqe. E ne vyrent de lees les armes nulle chose, si os des gentz noun. E virent un arbre gros e bel, e une fontaigne pardesouth corant dewe bele e clere. Fouke se regarda de leez, e vist une roche crosee; leva sa destre e se seygna en le noun le Piere e Fitz e le Seynt Espyryt. Saka sa espeye, e mout hardiment se mist de denz, come cely qe senfya del tot a Dieu. E vist une molt bele damoisele plorаunte e grant duel demenaunte. Fouke la demaunda dont estoit. "Sire," fet ele, "je su file al duc de Car-
" tage, e jai este seynz seet anz. E unqe ny vy Cris-
" tien seynz, sil ne venist malgree le suen. E si vus

Fulk discovers the damsel.

" has delivered us from many a danger. Never have we yet
" been in peril from which, thank God for it, we have not well
" escaped. Your bad comfort would put a coward to death."

Fulk took Audulf de Bracy, and by steps ascended the mountain, which was very high; and when they came to the summit of the mountain they saw many a good hauberk, helms, and swords and other arms lying there. And they saw, besides the arms, nothing but only the bones of men. And they saw a large and beautiful tree, and a fountain beneath, running with water fair and clear. Fulk looked around him, and saw a hollow rock; he raised his right hand and signed himself in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost. He drew his sword, and very boldly entered therein, like one who entrusts himself entirely to God. And he saw a very beautiful damsel weeping and making great lamentation. Fulk asked her whence she was. "Sir," said she, "I am daughter to the duke of Carthage, and I have
" been here seven years. And never have I seen a Christian
" here, unless he came unwillingly. And if you have the

" estes de poer, pur Dieu, alez vus ent; quar, si le " dragoun de seynz vienge, james neschaperez." "Cer- " tes," fet Fouke, "uncore ne vueil aler, eynz orroy e " verroy plus. Damoisele," fet Fouke, " qe fet le dra- " goun de vus? ne vus fet il si bien noun?" "Sire," fet ele, "le dragoun est fier e fort, e portereyt un che- " valer armee en ces mountz, sil ly poeit prendre en " ces powees. E meynt un ad si aportee e mangee, " dount vus poez la dehors vere les os. E pluz ayme " humayne char qe nul autre. E quant sa hydouse face " e sa barbe sunt ensenglaunteez, donqe vient il a moy " e me fet laver de clere ewe sa face e sa barbe e son " pys. E quant ad talent de dormyr, vet a sa couche, " qe tot est de fyn or; quar il ad tele nature quil est " trop chaut a demesure; e or est molt freyd par na- " ture; e, pur sey refroidir, yl se couche en or. E " quant vet a sa couche, il prent un gros piere, come " vus poez vere la; si le met al us devant pur doute " de moy, qe je ne le deveroy ocyre en dormant. Quar

---

" power, for the sake of God, depart hence; for if the dragon " comes here you will never escape. "Certes," said Fulk, " never will I depart unless I shall hear and see more. " Damsel," said Fulk, "what does the dragon do to you? " Does he do anything but good?" "Sir," said she, "the " dragon is savage and strong, and he could carry an armed " knight into these mountains, if he could catch him in his " talons. And many a one has he carried and eaten, whose " bones you may see there outside. And he likes human " flesh better than any other. And when his hideous face " and his beard are smeared with blood, then comes he to me " and causes me to wash with clear water his face and his " beard and his breast. And when he wishes to sleep he goes " to his couch, which is all of fine gold; for such is his nature " that he is excessively hot, and gold is very cool by nature, " and to cool himself he sleeps upon gold. And when he " goes to his couch he takes a great stone, such as you may see " there, and puts it before the door, for fear of me, lest I " should kill him when he is asleep. For he has the sense of

" il ad sen de homme, e me doute grantement ; e, " adrein, je say bien qe il mociera." " Par Deu!" fet Fouke, " si Dieu plest, noun fra."

Fouke prist la damoisele ; si la bailla a sire Audulf a garder, e sen issirent de la roche. E ne furent geres issuz quil ne vyrent le dragoun volaunt en leyr venyr vers eux. Si gitta de sa bouche, qe chaut ert, fumee e flambe molt oryble. E si fust trop lede beste ; si avoit grosse teste, dentz quarreez, fers les powes, long la cowe. Le dragoun, quant vist Fouke, si se fery a ly ; e de sa powe en volant ly fery en leschu quil lenracha parmy. Fouke leva lespee, si ly fery le dragoun en la teste auxi durement come il poeit. E le coup ne ly malmist de rien ; ne il ne senmaya de rien pur le coup, tant out dur lescharde e lesclot devant. Le dragoun prent son cours de loyns pur durement feryr ; e Fouke, qe le coup ne puet endurer, guenchy derire larbre qest a utre la fontaygne. Fouke aparcust quil ne poeit le dragoun damager devaunt ; si se avysa

His combat with the dragon.

" a man, and fears me greatly ; and at last I know well that " he will kill me." " By God," said Fulk, " if God please, " he shall not do so."

Fulk took the damsel and gave her to sir Audulf to take care of, and they came out from the rock. And scarcely had they come out when they saw the dragon flying in the air and coming towards them. It cast from its mouth, which was hot, smoke and flame, very horrible. And it was a very ugly beast ; it had a large head, square teeth, cruel claws, a long tail. The dragon, when it saw Fulk, struck at him, and with its claw while flying, gave him such a blow on the shield that it tore it in twain. Fulk raised his sword and struck the dragon on the head as hard as he could. And the blow did him no harm whatever, nor did he waver a whit for the blow, so hard is he of bone and hide in front. The dragon took his course from a distance to strike the harder ; and Fulk, who could not stand the blow, slipped behind the tree which was beyond the fountain. Fulk perceived that he could not damage

a un retorn qe le dragon fist; si ly fery bien del corps sur la cowe, e la coupa en deus. Le dragon comenca crier e brayre; saut a la damoysele; si la voleit prendre e porter aylours, e sire Audulf la defendy. Le dragon prist sire Audulf de sa powe si estroytement qe si Fouke nust venuz plus hastivement il le ust afolee. Donqe vynt Fouke, si coupa la powe, e a grant peyne delyvra sire Audulf; quar durement le avoit de sa powe encloee par my le hauberc. Fouke fery le dragoun en my la bouche de lespee, e par ileqe le ocist.

Fouke fust molt las e se reposa une piece; puis ala a la couche le dragon, e prist le or quanquil yleqe trova e fist aporter a sa galye. Johan de Rampaigne tasta la plaie sire Audulf e la medicina, quar bien savoit de medicines.

Fulk and the damsel go to Carthage.

Mador retorna sa neef vers Cartage; e ariverent en la contree, e rendyrent al duc sa file, qe molt fust lee quant yl la vist. La damoisele ad counte a son seignur

---

the dragon in front, so he watched for a turn which the dragon made, and struck him well upon the body on the tail, and cut it in two. The dragon began to cry and yell; he rushed to the damsel; he wished to take her and carry her off elsewhere, and sir Audulf defended her. The dragon took sir Audulf with his paw so closely, that if Fulk had not come the more hastily he would have been sore hurt. Then came Fulk and cut off the paw, and with great difficulty delivered sir Audulf; for sharply had it clawed him with its paw through the hauberk. Fulk struck the dragon in the midst of the mouth with his sword, and slew it therewith.

Fulk was very weary, and rested himself a while; then he went to the dragon's bed, and took as much of the gold as he found there, and carried it to his galley. John de Rampaigne examined the wound of sir Audulf, and tended it, for he knew well about medicines.

Mador turned his ship towards Cartage; and they arrived in the country, and surrendered to the duke his daughter, who was very glad when he saw her. The damsel told her lord

quele vie ele ad demenee, e coment Fouke ocist le dragoun. Le duc chay as pees Fouke e le mercia de sa file, e ly pria, si li plust, quil volsist demorer en le pays, e il ly dorreit tote Cartage ou sa file en mariage. Fouke ly mercia finement de cuer pur̀ son bel profre ; e dit qe volenters prendreit sa file, si sa Cristienete le poeit soffryr, quar femme avoit esposee. Ce dit, Fouke demora ileqe tanqe Audulf fust seyn de sa playe ; e donqe prist congie del duc, qe molt fust dolent pur le departyr. Le duc lur dona meynt bon juel e bel, e destrers molt bels e ygnels, e a chescun dona ryche dons.

Fouke e ces compaignouns siglerent vers Engleterre. Quant vyndrent a Dovre entrerent la terre, e lesserent Mador ou la nef en un certeyn leu la ou il ly porreyent trover quant vodreyent. Fouke e ces compaignons aveient enquis des paissantz qe le roy Johan fust a Wyndesoure, e se mistrent privement en la voie vers Wyndesoure. Les jours dormyrent e se reposerent, les

Fulk returns to England.

---

what kind of life she had led, and how Fulk killed the dragon. The duke fell at the feet of Fulk and thanked him for his daughter, and prayed him, if it pleased him, to remain in the country, and that he would give him all Carthage with his daughter in marriage. Fulk thanked him in conclusion from his heart for his fine offer, and told him that willingly he would take his daughter if his Christianity would permit it ; because he had espoused a wife. Having said this, Fulk tarried there until Audulf was cured of his wound ; and then he took leave of the duke, who was very sorrowful for his departure. The duke gave them many a good and beautiful jewel, and very fair and fiery war-horses, and to each he gave rich gifts.

Fulk and his companions sailed towards England. When they came to Dover they entered the land, and left Mador in the ship in a certain place where they could find him when they wished. Fulk and his companions had ascertained from the peasants that king John was at Windsor, and they privately took the way towards Windsor. During the day they slept

nuytz errerent tanquil vyndrent a la foreste, e la se herbigerent en un certeyn lyw ou yl soleynt avant estre en la foreste de Wyndesoure. Quar Fouke savoit yleqe tous les estres. Donqe oyerent veneours e berners corner, e pur ce saveyent qe le rey irroit chacer. Fouke e ces compaignons sarmerent molt richement. Fouke jura grant serement qe pur pour de moryr ne lerreit quil ne se vengeroit de le roy qa force e a tort ly ad desherytee, e quil ne chalengereit hautement ces dreytures e son herytage. Fouke fist ces compaignons demorer yleqe, e il meymes, ce dit, irreit espier aventures.

His encounter with king John.

Fouke sen ala e encontra un viel charboner portant un trible en sa meyn; si fust vestu tot neir come apert a charboner. Fouke ly pria par amour quil ly velsist doner ces vestures e sa trible pur du seon. "Sire," fet il, "volenters." Fouke ly dona x. besantz, e ly pria pur samour quil ne le contast a nully. Le charboner

---

and rested themselves, and during the night they went on till they came to the forest; and there they harboured themselves in a certain place where they had before been used to be in the forest of Windsor. For Fulk knew all the windings there. Then they heard hunters and "berners" blowing the horn, and thereby they knew that the king was going to hunt. Fulk and his companions armed themselves very richly. Fulk swore a great oath that for fear of death he would not stop, but he would avenge himself upon the king, who by force and wrong had disinherited him, and that he would challenge loudly his rights and his heritage. Fulk caused his companions to tarry there, and he himself, having said this, would go to look for adventures.

Fulk went on and met an old collier carrying a flail in his hand; his dress was all black, as becomes a collier. Fulk asked him as a favour to have the goodness to give his clothes and his flail for his own. "Sir," said he, "willingly." Fulk gave him ten bezants, and asked him for his love that he would tell this to no one. The collier went his way; Fulk remained

sen va; Fouke remeynt e se vesty meyntenant de le atyr qe le charboner ly avoit donee, e vet a ces charbons si comence de adresser le feu. Fouke vist une grosse fourche de fer; si la prent en sa meyn e dresse saundreyt e landreyt ces coupous.

Atant vynt le roy ou treis chevalers tot a pee a Fouke la ou yl fust adresaunt son feu. Quant Fouke vist le roy assez bien le conust, e gitta la ffourche de sa meyn e salua son seignour e se mist a genoyls devant ly molt humblement. Le roy e ces trois chevalers aveyent grant ryseye e jeu de la noreture e de la porture le charboner; esturent ileqe bien longement. "Daun vy-"leyn," fet le roy, "avez veu nul cerf ou bisse passer "par ycy?" "Oyl, mon seignour, pieca." "Quele "beste veitez vus?" "Sire mon seignur, une cornuee, "si avoit longe corns." "Ou est ele?" "Sire, mon "seignur, je vus say molt bien mener la ou je la vy." "Ore avant! daun vyleyn, e nus vus siweroms." "Sire," fet le charboner, "prendroy je ma forche en meyn?

---

and clothed himself immediately in the dress which the collier had given him, and he went to his coals and began to mend the fire. Fulk saw a great fork of iron, so he took it in his hand and arranged his billets on this side and that side.

Then came the king with three knights all on foot to Fulk, where they saw him mending the fire. When Fulk saw the king he knew him well, and threw the fork from his hand, and saluted his lord and threw himself on his knees before him very humbly. The king and his three knights made great laughter and sport over the politeness and demeanour of the charcoal burner; they stood there for a long time. "Sir villain," said the king, "have you seen any stag or doe "pass this way?" "Yes, my lord, some time ago." "What "beast did you see?" "Sire, my lord, one well horned, it "had long horns." "Where is it?" "Sire, my lord, I can "very easily lead you where I have seen it." "Go on "then, sir villain, and we will follow you." "Sire," said the "collier, shall I take my fork in my hand? for if it were

" quar si ele fust prise je en averoy grant perte."
" Oyl, vyleyn, si vus volez."

Fouke prist la grosse fourche de fer en sa meyn; si amoyne le roy pur archer; quar yl avoit un molt bel arke. "Sire, mon seignur," fet Fouke, "vus plest il " attendre e je irroy en lespesse e fray la beste venir " cest chemyn par ycy?" "Oil," ce dit le roy. Fouke hastyvement sayly en le espesse de la forest, e comanda sa meyne hastyvement prendre le roy Johan; "quar " je lay amenee sa solement ou treis chevalers, e " tote sa meysne est de lautre part la foreste." Fouke e sa meyne saylyrent hors de la espesse e escrierent le roy, e le pristrent meintenant. "Sire roy," fet Fouke, " ore je vus ay en mon bandon; tel jugement froi je " de vus come vus vodrez de moy, si vus me ussez " pris?" Le roy trembla de pour, quar il avoit grant doute de Fouke. Fouke jura quil morreit pur le grant damage e la desheritesoun quil avoit fet a ly e a meint prodhome d'Engleterre. Le roy ly cria mercy, e ly pria

---

" stolen it would be a great loss to me?" "Yes, villain, if " you like."

Fulk took the great fork of iron in his hand, and so he conducted the king to shoot, for he had a very fair bow. " Sire, my lord," said Fulk, "would it please you that I " should go into the thicket and cause the beast to come " this way?" "Yes," said the king. Fulk hastily leaped into the thick of the forest, and ordered his band hastily to take king John, "for I have led him here with only three " knights, and all his retinue is in the other part of the forest." Fulk and his band rushed out of the thicket and observed the king, and took him immediately. "Sir king," said Fulk, "now " I have you in my power; shall I pass such a sentence upon " you as you would upon me if you had taken me?" The king trembled for fear, for he had great dread of Fulk. Fulk swore that he should die for the great damage and the disinheriting which he had inflicted upon him and upon many a good man in England. The king cried him mercy, and begged his

pur amour Dieu la vie, e yl ly rendreyt enterement tou son heritage e quanquil aveit tolet de ly e de tous les suens, e ly grantereit amour e pees pur tous jours; e a ce ly freit en totes choses tiele seurete come yl meysmes voleit devyser. Fouke ly granta bien tote sa demande a tieles quil ly donast, veantz ces chevalers, la foy de tenyr cest covenant. Le roy ly plevy sa fey quil ly tendroit covenant, e fust molt lee que issi poeit eschaper.

King John resolves to take Fulk.

E revynt a soun paleis e fist fere assembler ces chevalers e sa meisne, e lur counta de mot en autre coment sire Fouke le avoit descu. E dit que par force fist cel serement, pur quoy quil ne le velt tenyr. E comaunda que tous se armassent hastivement a prendre ces felons en le parke. Atant pria sire James de Normandie, que fust cosyn le roy, quil poeit aver lavaunt garde; e dit qe les Engleis (apoi tous les grantz) sunt cosyns a sire Fouke, e pur ce sunt treitours al roy e ces felouns ne vueillent prendre. Donqe dit Rondulf, le counte de

---

life for the love of God, and that he would restore to him entirely all his inheritance and whatsoever he had taken from him and all his friends, and would grant him his love and peace for ever; and that thereto he would give him in all things such security as he himself could propose. Fulk granted him well all his demand, upon condition that, in the presence of these knights, he would give him his faith to keep this covenant. The king pledged him his faith that he would keep faith with him, and was very glad to be able thus to escape.

And he returned to his palace and caused to be assembled his knights and his retinue, and told them word by word how sir Fulk had deceived him. And he said that by force he had made this oath, wherefore he would not keep it. And he commanded all to arm themselves hastily, and take these felons in the park. Then prayed sir James of Normandy, who was the king's cousin, that he might have the vanguard, and he said that the English (at least all the nobles) are cousins to sir Fulk, and therefore are traitors to the king, and would not take these felons. Then said Rondulf, the earl of Chester;

Cestre : " Par foy, sire chevaler, (sauve le honour nostre " seigneur le roy, nounpas vostre,) vous y mentez ;" e ly vodra aver feru del poyn, si le counte mareschal ne ust este ; e dit quil ne sount ne unque furent treitours a le roy ne a suens, mes bien dit que tous les grantz e le rey meismes est cosyn al dit Fouke. Dont dit le counte mareschal : " Aloms pursyvre sire Fouke ; " donqe verra le roy qui se feyndra pur la cosynage." Sire James de Normandye e ces xv. compaignouns chevalers se armerent molt richement e tot de blaunche armure, e furent tous noblement mountez de blancz destrers, e se hasta devant ou sa compagnie pur aver pris.

Fulk defends himsel

E tot lur affere avoit Johan de Rampaigne espiee, e counte a sire Fouke, qe ne poeit en nulle manere eschaper si par bataille noun. Sire Fouke e ces compaignouns se armerent molt richement, e se mistrent hardiement contre sire James, e se defendirent vigerousement, e ocisterent tous ces compaignouns estre

---

" By my faith, sir knight (saving the honour of our lord the " king, but not yours,) there you lie ;" and he would have struck him with his fist, had it not been for the Earl Marshal ; and he said that they are not nor ever were traitors to the king nor to his ; but he affirmed stoutly that all the nobles and the king himself is cousin to sir Fulk. Then said the Earl Marshal ; " Let us go to follow sir Fulk, then the king shall " see who will hold back for relationship." Sir James of Normandy and his fifteen companions, knights, armed themselves very richly all in white armour, and were all nobly mounted on white steeds, and he hasted forward with his company to have renown.

John de Rampaigne had espied all their proceedings, and had told it to sir Fulk, who could not in any manner escape but by battle only. Sir Fulk and his companions armed themselves very richly, and put themselves boldly against sir James, and defended themselves vigorously, and killed all these companions excepting four, who were nearly wounded

quatre, que furent apoi navfres a la mort, e sire James fust pris. Sir Fouke e ces compaignouns se armerent meintenant de les armes sire James e des autres Normauntz, e mounterent lur bons destrers que blanks erent, quar lur destrers de meyne furent les e mesgres. E armerent sire James de les armes sire Fouke, e lyerent sa bouche quil ne poeit parler, e mistrent son helme sur sa teste, e chevalcherent vers le roy. E quant yl les vist il les conust par les armes, e quida qe sire James e ces compaignouns amenerent sire Fouke.

Lors presenta sire Fouke sire James a le roy, e dist qe ce fust sire Fouke. Le counte de Cestre e le counte mareschal quant ce virent mout furent dolentz. Le roy pur le present ly comaunda quil ly baysast. Sire Fouke dit quil ne poeit attendre de oster son healme, quar yl ly covensist pursyvre les autres fitz Waryn. Le roi descendy de soun bon destrer e comanda quil le mounta, quar isnel ert a pursiwre ces enymys. Sire Fouke descendy, e mounta le destrer le roi, e sen va vers ces

Again cheats the king.

---

to death, and sir James was taken. Sir Fulk and his companions armed themselves immediately in the arms of sir James and the other Normans, and mounted their good horses, which were white, for their own horses were tired and lean. And they armed sir James in the arms of sir Fulk, and tied his mouth so that he could not speak, and they put his helmet upon his head, and rode towards the king. And when he saw them he knew them by the arms, and he believed that sir James and his companions were bringing sir Fulk.

Then presented sir Fulk sir James to the king, and said that this was sir Fulk. The earl of Chester and the Earl Marshal, when they saw this, were very sorrowful. The king for the present commanded him to kiss him. Sir Fulk said that he could not wait to take off his helmet, for that he must follow the other Fitz-Warins. The king dismounted from his good horse and ordered him to mount it, for it was swift to pursue his enemies. Sir Fulk dismounted, and mounted the King's steed, and went to his companions, and they fled six

compaignouns, e sen fuyrent bien sis lyws de yleqe. E la se desarmerent en un boschage e laverent lur playes, e benderent la playe Willam, son frere, qe durement fust navfre de un de Normauntz, e le tyndrent pur mort, dont tous fesoient duel a demesure.

Le roy comaunda meyntenaunt pendre sire Fouke. Atant vint Emery de Pyn, un Gascoyn, qe fust parent a sire James, e dit quil le pendreit. E le prist, e le amena un poy de yleque, e fist oster son healme ; e meyntenant vist qe ce fu James, e delya sa bouche ; e il ly conta quanqe avynt entre ly e sire Fouke. Emery vint meintenaunt au roy, e amena sire James, qe ly conta coment sire Fouke ly avoyt servy. E quant le roy se apercust estre issi descu molt fust dolent, e jura grant serement qe ja ne se devestereit de son haubreke avaunt quil avoit ces treytres pris. E de ce ne savoit sire Fouke rien.

Fulk pursued.

Le roy e ces countes e barouns les pursierent par le esclot des chivals tant quil vindrent a poy a le

---

good leagues from thence. And then they disarmed themselves in a thicket, and bathed their wounds ; and they bound up the wound of his brother William, who was severely wounded by one of the Normans, and they considered him as dead, whereupon they all made immense lamentation.

The king forthwith commanded sir Fulk to be hanged. Then came Emery de Pyn, a Gascon, who was a relative of sir James, and said that he would hang him. And he took him, and conveyed him a little from thence, and made him take off his helmet; and immediately he saw that he was James, and he unbound his mouth ; and he told him what had passed between him and sir Fulk. Emery came immediately to the king, and brought sir James, who told him how sir Fulk had served him. And when the king perceived that he had been thus deceived he was very sorry, and swore a great oath that he would never divest himself of his hauberk until he had taken these traitors. And of this Fulk knew nothing.

The king and his earls and barons pursued them by the print of their horses until they came nearly to the thicket where

boschage la ou Fouke fust. E quant Fouke les apercust, plourt e weymente Willam, son frere, e se tient perdu pur tous jours. E Willam lur prie quil coupent sa teste e la emportent ou eux, issi qe le roy, quant trovee son cors, ne sache qui yl fust. Fouke dit qe ce ne freit pur le mounde, e prie molt tendrement enploraunt qe Dieu pur sa piete lur seit en eyde. E tiel duel come entre eux est ne veistes unqe greindre fere.

Rondulf, le counte de Cestre, vint en prime chef, e quant apercust sire Fouke comaunda sa meisne arestier. Si voit privement a sire Fouke, e li pria pur le amour de Dieu rendre sei al roy, e yl serroit pur ly de vie e de menbre, e quil serroit bien apesee al roy. Fouke redist qe ce ne froit pur tut le aure du mounde: " Mes, sire cosyn, pur lamour de Dieu je vus prie qe " mon frere, qe la gist, quant il est mors, qe vus facez " enterrer son cors qe bestes savages ne le devourent " e les nos quant mort sumes. E retornez a vostre

But befriended by the earl of Chester.

Fulk was. And when Fulk perceived them, he wept and lamented for William his brother, and considered himself ruined for ever. And William prayed them to cut off his head and carry it off with them, so that the king, when he found his body, should not know who he was. Fulk said that he would not do this for the world, and prayed very tenderly weeping that God for His pity would aid them. And you never saw greater sorrow than what there was between them.

Rondulf, the earl of Chester, came as the principal leader, and when he perceived sir Fulk he commanded his troop to halt. He went privately to sir Fulk, and prayed him for the love of God to surrender himself to the king, and that he would become surety for him for life and limb, and that the king would be well satisfied with him. Fulk replied that he would not do this for all the gold in the world; "but, sir cousin, " for the love of God I pray you for my brother, who lies there, " that when he is dead, you cause his corpse to be buried so " that wild beasts do not devour it, as well as ours when we " are dead. And return to your lord the king, and do to him

" seignur le roy e fetes a ly vostre service sanz feyn-
" tyse e saunz avoir regard a nus qe sumes de vostre
" sang, e nus receveroms ore issi la destine qe a nos
" est ordinee." Le counte tot emplorant retorna a sa meyne; Fouke remeint, qe molt tendrement plourt de piete pur son frere que ly covent a force ileqe lesser, e prie a Dieu quil lur socourt e eyde.

Fulk wounded and carried off senseless.

Le counte comande sa meisne e sa compaignie a le asaut, e yl si ferirent vigerousement. Le counte meismes asayly sire Fouke, mes adrein le counte perdy son chival, e sa meisne fust grant partie ocis. Fouke e ces freres se defendirent hardiement; e come Fouke se defendy sire Berard de Blees ly vynt derire a ly feri de son espee en le flanc, e le quida aver ocis. Ataunt se retorna Fouke e ly referi sur le espaudle senestre ou ambedeus les mayns, e ly coupa le cuer e le pulmoun, e chei mort de soun destrer. Fouke avoit taunt seigne quil palma sur le col de son destrer, e le espeye chey de sa meyn. Donqe comenca duel a merveille entre

---

" your service without guile, and without having regard to us
" who are of your blood, and we will then receive here the
" destiny which is appointed for us." The earl, all weeping, returned to his retinue; Fulk remained, who very tenderly wept for pity for his brother, whom of necessity he was compelled to leave there, and he prayed God to succour and aid him.

The earl ordered his company and his retinue to the assault, and they struck vigorously. The count himself assailed sir Fulk, but at the last the count lost his horse, and his retinue was for the most part killed. Fulk and his brothers defended themselves resolutely, and as sir Fulk defended himself sir Berard de Blees came behind him, and struck him with his sword on the side, and believed that he had killed him. Then turned Fulk, and struck him again on the left shoulder with both the hands, and cut his heart and his lungs, and he fell dead from his horse. Fulk had bled so much that he slid down upon the neck of his horse, and the sword fell from his hand. Then began a marvellous sorrow among the brothers; John his

les freres ; Johan, son frere, sayly derere Fouke sur le destrer e ly sustynt quil ne poeit cheyer, e se mistrent a fuyte ; quar poer ne aveient de demorer. Le roy e sa meyne les pursiwyrent, mes prendre ne les purreynt. Tote la nuit errerent issi qe lendemayn matyn vindrent a la mer a Mador le maryner. Donque reverci Fouke, e demaunda ou il fust e en qy poer, e ces freres ly confortoyent a mieux quil purroient, e ly cocherent en la nef en un molt bel lit, e Johan de Rampayne medicina ces playes.

William Fitz-Waryn taken prisoner.

Le counte de Cestre avoit grantment perdu de sa gent, e vist de jouste ly Willam le fitz Waryn a poy mort, e prist le cors e le maunda a une abbeye pur medeciner. Audrein fust ileqe aparcu, e le roy le fist venyr en litere devant ly a Wyndesoure e la fist ruer en profounde prisone, e molt fust coroce a le counte de Cestre pur ce quil le cela. Fet le roy ; " Fouke est " navfre a la mort, e cesti ay je ore ici ; les autres " averei je bien ou quil seient. Certes men poise dure-

---

brother leaped behind Fulk upon the horse, and held him up so that he could not fall, and they took to flight ; for they had no power to stay. The king and his retinue pursued them, but take them they could not. All the night they went on thus, till in the morning they came to the sea to Mador the mariner. Then Fulk revived, and asked where he was, and in whose power ; and his brothers comforted him the best they could, and put him to bed in the ship, and John de Rampayne tended his wounds.

The earl of Chester had lost many of his people, and he saw near him William Fitz-Waryn nearly dead, and he took the body and sent it to an abbey to be cured. At length he was discovered there, and the king caused him to come in a litter before him at Windsor, and threw him into a deep prison, and was exceedingly angry with the earl of Chester because he had concealed him. Said the king ; " Fulk is " wounded to death, and this one I have here now ; the others " I will have before they know it. Certainly I ought to make

" ment de le orgoil Fouke ; quar si orgoil ne fust il
" ust unquore vesqy, e tant come il fust en vie ny
" out tiel chevaler en tot le mounde ; dont grant pierte
" est de perdre un tel chevaler."

Fulk lands in Beteloye.

En la mer depres Espaigne est une ysle tote close de haut roche, e si nest que une entre. Si est apelee Beteloye, une demie luwe de long e autre tant de lee, e la ny avoit home ne beste habitaunt. Le sisme jour vindrent a ce ysle; Fouke comenca donqe dormyr, quar sis jours devant ne avoit dormy. Ces freres e sa meisne alerent a la terre, e yl meismes soulement dormy en la nef, que fust fermee a la roche. Ataunt survynt un hydous vent e rompy le cordes de la nef e emporta la nef en haute mer. Lors se enveilla Fouke e vist les estoilles e le firmament ; apela Johan son frere e ces autres compaignons, e nully le respondy, e vist quil fust soulement en haute mer. Donqe comenca a plurer e maldire sa destine que ly fust si dure, e regreta ces

---

" much of the pride of Fulk ; for had not it been for pride he
" would still have been alive, and as long as he was alive
" there is not such another knight in all the world; so it is a
" great loss to lose such a knight."

In the sea of Spain there is an island all closed with high rocks, and there is only one entrance. It is called Beteloyne, half a league long and as much in breadth, and there there is neither man nor beast dwelling. On the seventh day they came to this island ; Fulk then began to sleep, for for six days before he had not slept. His brothers and his retinue went to the land, and he himself remained alone and asleep in the ship, which was fastened to the rock. Then arose a hideous wind, and broke the cords of the ship, and carried the ship into the high sea. Then Fulk awoke and saw the stars and the sky ; he called John his brother and his other companions, and no one answered him, and he perceived that he was alone on the high sea. Then he began to weep and to curse his destiny, which was so hard for him, and he regretted his brothers.

ffreres. Lors ly prist un somoil; e bien tost ariva sa nef e la terre de Barbarie a la cite de Tunes.

E yleqe adonqe estoit Messobryns, le roy de Barbarie, ou quatre rois e sis admirals, qe tous furent Sarazyns. Le roi se apua en un tour vers la mer e vist cele merveilleuse galye arive en sa terre, e comanda deus serjauntz aler e vere ce qe fust. Les deus serjauntz entrerent la nef, rien ne troverent, si le chevaler noun qe uncore fust endormy; le un le bota de ces pies e le comaunda esveiller. Le chevaler saut sus come houme effraee, si le fery de le poyn quil chay outre bord en my la mer. Le autre se mist a fuste e vint counter le roi coment ly avynt. Le roi comanda C. chevalers aler prendre cele nef e amener a ly le chevaler. Les C. chevalers tot armes vindrent a la nef e le assailerent de tote partz. Fouke se defent hardiement countre tous, mes adrein se rendy a tieles quil ne averoit si bien noun. Yl le amenerent devant le roy, e il comaunda quil fust bien servi en une chaunbre.

Taken before the king of Barbary.

Then sleep took him, and very soon his ship arrived in the land of Barbary at the city of Tunes.

And there at that time was Messobryns, the king of Barbary, with four kings and six admirals, who all were Saracens. The king was reclining in a tower towards the sea, and saw this wonderful galley arrive in his land, and ordered two serjeants to go and see what it was. The two serjeants entered the ship; they found nothing excepting the knight, who was then asleep. One of them thrust him with his foot and commanded him to awake. The knight leaped up like a man in a fright; he struck him such a blow with his fist that he fell overboard into the sea. The other took to flight, and came to tell the king how it had befallen him. The king ordered a hundred knights to go take this ship and bring the knight to him. The hundred knights all armed came to the ship, and assailed it on all sides. Fulk defended himself bravely against all, but at the last he surrendered himself upon such terms that he could not have better. They brought him before the king, and he ordered that he should be well served in a chamber.

His adventures with Isorie, the king's sister.

Isorie, la suere le roy, le soleit sovent visiter e conforter, e si fust trebele e gentile damoisele; e apercust quil fust playe en la flanke. E ly pria pur amour que yl la dist coment out noun, e de quele terre fust, e en quele manere fust playe. Yl la respoundy quil avoit a noun Maryn le Perdu de Fraunce, e quil ama tendrement de cuer une damoisele file de un counte de son pais, e ele ly refist grant semblaunt damour, mes ele ama plus un autre. "E avynt que ly e moy un " jour fumes assembles par grant amour, e ele me tint " entre ces bras molt estroit; ataunt survynt le autre " qe ama plus, e me feri issi de un espe, e pus me " mistrent en une galye en la mer pur mort, e la " galye me amena en ices parties." "Certes," dit Isorie, "cele damoisele ne fust geres cortois." Isorie prist sa harpe, qe molt riche fust, e fist descaunz e notes pur solacer Fouke; quar le vist bel e de corteise poiture.

Isorie, the king's sister, was wont often to visit him and comfort him, and she was a very beautiful and gentle damsel; and she perceived that he was wounded on the side. And she prayed him for love that he would tell her how he was named, and of what country he was, and in what manner he was wounded. He answered her that he was named Maryn le Perdu, of France, and that he loved tenderly from his heart the daughter of an earl of his country, and that she made him in return great semblance of love, but she loved another more. " And it happened that she and I one day had met for great " love, and she held me in her arms very closely; then came " the other who loved her more, and struck me here with a " sword; and then they put me into a galley on the sea for " dead, and the galley brought me to these parts." "Certes," said Isorie, "this damsel was scarcely courteous." Isorie took her harp, which was very rich, and made descants and notes to solace Fulk, for she saw that he was fair and of courteous behaviour.

Fouke demaund a Isorie la bele quei fust la noyse qe fust devaunt le roi en la sale. "Certes," fet ele, "je le vus dirroi. En la terre de Yberie avoit un "duc qe fust apele duc de Cartage, e avoit une tres "bele fyle, Ydoyne de Cartage. Cele vivaunt, le pere "sojorna en un son chastiel de Cartage. Atant vint "un dragoun qe la prist e emporta en un haut mount "en la mer, e la tynt plus qe sept aunz, si la qe un "chevaler de Engletere, que fust apele Fouke le fitz "Waryn de Mees, vint sur cel mont e ocist le dra-"goun e la rendy a son piere. Tost apres le duc "morust. Ele tient tote la ducheyse. Le roi mon "frere maunda a ly messagers quil la prendroit a "femme, e ele le refusa; e pur vergoyne qe le roi avoit, "fist assembler grant pueple e destruit ces cites, abati "ces chastiels. La damoisele sen fui en estraunge "regne pur qerre socours; mes ore est ele revenue ou "pueple saunz nonbre, e comence fierement a guerrer "le roy, e si est preste de fere bataille countre ost

Battle in which Fulk distinguishes himself.

Fulk asked Isorie the beautiful what was the noise that was before the king in the hall. "Certes," said she, "I will tell "you. In the land of Yberie there was a duke who was called "duke of Cartage, and he had a very beautiful daughter, "Ydoyne of Cartage. While she was alive, the father dwelt "in a castle of his of Cartage. There came a dragon who "took her and carried her to a high mountain in the sea, and "there kept her for more than seven years, until a knight of "England, who was called Fouke the son of Waryn de Mees, "came to this mountain, and slew the dragon, and restored "her to her father. Shortly afterwards the duke died. She "held all the duchy. The king my brother sent messengers "to her that he would take her to his wife, and she refused "him; and for the shame which the king had he assembled a "great quantity of people, and destroyed her cities and over-"threw her castles. The damsel fled into a strange realm to "seek succours; but now she has returned with people without "number, and begins fiercely to war upon the king, and is

" ou chevaler countre chevaler ; issi qe si le suen seit " vencu qe ele ayle vers sa terre, e si le nostre seit " vencu qe le rey mon frere entierement restore ces " damages. E sur ce vindrent huy en sale fieres m e " sagers ; e plust a Dieu Mahoun que vus fussez tiel " qe le bataille de par le roy mon frere ossasez prendre ! " quar grant honeur vus avendreit." " Certes, ma da- " moysele, je su grantment tenuz a mon seigneur le " roy, e nomement a vus ; mes james bataille ne pren- " drei pur Sarazyn countre Cristien pur perdre la vie. " Mes si le roy vueille reneyer sa ley e devenyr Cristien " e estre baptize, je prendroy la bataille e salveroy sa " terre e ces gentz, e ly froi aver cele damoysele dount " me avez counte." Isorie va tot counter Messobryn, son frere, le roy de Barbarie, quanqe Fouke, qe se fet appeler Maryn le Perdu de France, ly out promis. Le roy graunta meyntenaunt quanqe vodra ordyner, si yl purra cele bosoigne issi achevyr.

" ready to do battle [host] against host or knight against " knight ; so that if hers be conquered she should go to his " land, and if ours be conquered the king my brother should " entirely restore her damages. And thereupon came to-day " into the hall proud messengers ; and would that it pleased the " God Mahoun that you were such a one as dared undertake " the battle on the part of my brother the king ! for great " honour would happen to you." " Certes, my lady, I am " greatly beholden to my lord the king, and especially to you; " but never would I undertake battle for Saracen against " Christian, were I to lose my life. But if the king would " renounce his law and become Christian, and be baptized, I " would undertake the battle, and would save his land and his " people, and will cause him to have this damsel of whom you " have told me." Isorie went to tell all to Messobryn, her brother, the king of Barbary, whatever Fulk, who called himself Maryn le Perdu of France, had promised her. The king granted immediately whatever he would ordain, if he could but accomplish this thing.

Le jour qe la bataille fust ordyne, le roy arma mout richement sire Fouke, e Isorie meismes de bone volente ly servy. Le roy e ces Barbaryns, ces admyrals e tous ces autre gentz, furent richement armes, e grant pueple ou eux, e mistrent avant son chevaler Fouke que devereit fere la bataille; e la duchesse mist avant le suen. Les chevalers, que fiers furent, brocherent les chivals des esperouns, e fierent de launces que troncouns volent par les chauns; pus treient les espies, e si entrefierent hardiement. Fouke fery le cheval son compaignon que mort le abati, mes a son vueil yl ust feru le chevaler. Quant le chevaler fust a terre dont dit; "Maveis payen, maveis Sarazyn de male foy, "Dieu de ciel vous maldie; pur quoy avez ocis mon "chival?" Fouqe descendy a pie, e sentrecombatyrent durement tot le jour; quant fust a poy a vespree dit le chevaler a Fouke; "Daun paien, tu es fort e "vigerous; par amours dy moy ou nasquiste vus?" "Si vus plest saver mon nation je ne le vus dirroi

Fulk discovers his brother.

The day of the battle was appointed; the king armed sir Fulk very richly, and Isorie herself with good will served him. The king and his Barbarians, his admirals, and all his other people, were richly armed, and put forward his knight Fulk who was to do the battle; and the duchess put forward hers. The knights who were bold, spurred the horses with spurs, and struck their lances so that the splinters flew through the fields; then they drew their swords and had to do with each other bravely. Fulk struck the horse of his companion so that he fell dead, but he had wished to have smitten the knight. When the knight was on the ground then he said; "Wicked heathen, bad Saracen of an ill faith, may the God "of heaven curse you; why have you killed my horse?" Fulk dismounted on foot, and they fought together fiercely all the day; when it was near the evening said the knight to Fulk; "Sir pagan, you are strong and active; for the love "of me where were you born?" "If you want to know my "nation I will not tell you, unless you tell me first about

" mye, si vus ne me diez eynz del vostre, e je le vus " grant." Le chevaler ly dit quil fust Cristien nez en Engletere, le fiz Waryn de Mees, e fust appele Phelip le Rous. E counta de mot en autre tot par ordre entierement tote sa vie e ces freres, e come la ducheyse vynt en une nef par le ysle de Beteloye, e les rescust en la nef e les sauva. Quar demy an e plus y furent, e mangerent lur chivaus pur feym. " E quant la " countesse nus ust veu, meintenaunt nus conust, e " nus trova quanqe mestier nus fust, e nus counta " que ele vint de Engletere, e la nus avoit quis pur " sa gere meintenyr, e tiele dure vie avoms demeyne." Lors dit Fouke; " Bon frere Phelip le Rous, ne me " conusez vus? je su Fouke, vostre frere." " Nay " certes, daun Sarazyn, non estes, mes ore me vodrez " engyner; par Dieu noun fres!" Donqe ly dit Fouke: " Verroy enseigne," quil bien conust. Donqe demenerent grant joye, e respiterent la bataille tanqe lendemeyn. Phelip conta la ducheyse qe ce fust Fouke

---

" yours, and I will grant it you." The knight said that he was a Christian born in England, the son of Waryn de Mees, and he was called Philip le Rous. And he told word by word in order entirely all his life and that of his brothers, and how the duchess came in a ship by the island of Beteloye, and how she removed them in the ship and saved them. For they were there half a year and more, and they ate their horses for hunger. " And when the countess had seen us, " immediately she knew us, and found us whatever we needed, " and told us that she came from England, and there had " sought for us to carry on the war, and such is the hard " life we have led." Then said Fulk; " Good brother Philip " le Rous, do not you know me?" I am Fulk your brother." " No, truly, sir Saracen, you are not, but now you would " deceive me; by God you shall not do so!" Then said Fulk to him; " Behold a token," which he knew well. Then they made great joy, and they put off the battle till the next day. Philip told the duchess that this was Fulk his brother

son frere ou qy il avoit combatu; issi qe par le consayl Fouke e Phelip e ces autres freres le roy e tote sa meysne furent baptize, e le roy esposa la duchesse a grant honour.

Fouke e ces freres e sa meyne demorerent une piece ou le roy, pus se apresterent mout richement vers Engletere. Le roy lur dona or, argent, chivals, armes, e totes richesses que il voderount aver ou conveyter; e emplyrent lur nef de taunt de richesse qe a merveille. Fulk returns to England.

Quant furent arivez privement en Engleterre, Fouke ordina qe Johan de Rampayne se freit marchaunt e enquerreit ou le roy Johan fust, e si Willam, soun frere, fust en vie ou ne mye. Johan se apparilla molt richement a gyse de marchaunt; vint a Loundres, e se herberga a la mesoune le meyr, e se fist servir molt richement, e se acointa ou le meyr e tote la meyne, e lur dona bel douns; e pria al meir quil ly fesoit aver conisaunce de le rey, issi quil purreit ariver sa His adventures there.

---

with whom he had been been fighting; so that by the counsel of Fulk and Philip and his other brothers the king and all his household were baptized, and the king married the duchess with great honour.

Fulk and his brothers and his retainers stayed some time with the king; afterwards they made themselves ready very richly to go towards England. The king gave them gold, silver, horses, arms, and all riches which they wished to have or covet; and they filled their ship with such riches that it was wonderful. When they had arrived privately in England, Fulk appointed that John de Rampayne should make himself a merchant and enquire where king John was, and whether William, his brother, were alive or not. John dressed himself very richly in the guise of a merchant; he came to London, and took up his abode in the house of the mayor, and caused himself to be served very richly, and acqnainted himself with the mayor and all his household, and gave them fair gifts; and he asked the mayor that he would let him have acquaintance with the king, so that he might have his ship to touch in his land.

nef en sa terre. E quanquil parla fust Latyn corupt, mes le meir le entendy bien. Le meir le amena devant le roy Johan a Westmester, e le marchant mout cortoisement ly salua en son langage. Le roi lentendi bien e demaunda qui il ert e dont vint. "Sire," fet, " je su marchaunt de Grece; si ay este en Babiloyne, " Alexandre, et Ynde le Majour, e ay un nef charge " de avoir de pois, riche dras, perye, chevals, e autres " richesses, qe grantment purreint valer a ceste " reigne." "Je vueil," fet le roy, "qe vus e vos bien " aryvez en ma terre, e je vus serroi garant;" e furent comaundez demorer a mangier. Le meir e le marchant mangerent ensemble devant le roy. Atant vindrent deus serjauntz de mace e amenerent en la sale un chevaler grant corsu, longe barbe e neyre, e fieblement atyre, e le assistrent en my le eyr e ly donerent a manger. Le marchaunt demaunda al meir qui ce fust, e il ly dit un chevaler nome sire Willam le fitz Waryn, e ly counta entierement tote le estre de

---

And all that he spoke was bad Latin, but the mayor understood him well. The mayor brought him before king John at Westminster, and the merchant saluted him very courteously in his language. The king understood him well, and asked him who he was and whence he came. "Sire," said he, "I " am a merchant of Greece;" I have been in Babilon, Alex- " andria, and the Greater India, and I have a ship laden with " 'avoir de pois,' rich cloths, jewels, horses, and other valuables, " which greatly might avail for this realm. "It is my pleasure," said the king, "that you and your people should freely land " on my ground, and I will be warrant for you;" and they were ordered to remain and eat. The mayor and the merchant ate together in the presence of the king. Then came two serejants-at-mace and brought into the hall a knight tall of body, with a long beard and black, and poorly clothed, and placed him in the middle of the floor, and gave him food. The merchant asked the mayor who this was, and he told him that he was a knight named sir William Fitz Waryn,

ly e ces freres. E quant il le oy nomer, donqe fust molt lee quil le vist en vie; mes molt a deseesee de cuer quil le vist si meseyse. Le marchant, al plus tost quil poeit, se hasta vers sire Fouke e ly counta tot soun affere, e fist amener la nef auxi pres la cite come il poeynt. Lendemeyn le marchant prist un palefroy blanc, si bel ne fust en tote le roialme, e le presenta a le roy Johan, qe molt leement le recust pur sa belte. Le marchant dona si largement quil se fist amer de tous, e poeit fere en court quanqe ly plust.

Un jour prist ces compaignons e se armerent bien e pus vestirent lur gounes come a mariners apent; vindrent a Westmoster a court, e ileque furent noblement rescuz, e virent Willam le fitz Waryn, qe fust amene de ces gardeins vers la chartre. Le marchaunt e ces compaignouns, malgree les gardeynz, le pristrent a force e le aporterent a lur batil, que flota assez pres desouz le paleis, e se mistrent eynz. Les gardeynz

Fulk and his companions leave London.

---

and he told him fully all the condition of him and his brothers. And when he heard him named, then was he very joyful that he saw him alive; but very troubled at heart that he saw him in such evil plight. The merchant, as soon as he could, hastened to sir Fulk, and told him all his condition, and caused the ship to be brought as near to the city as he could. On the morrow the merchant took a palfrey, there was not such a beautiful one in all the kingdom, and presented it to king John, who received it very joyfully for its beauty. The merchant gave so liberally that he made himself beloved by all, and could do in the court whatever pleased him.

One day he took his companions, and they armed themselves well and dressed themselves in their gowns as becomes mariners; they came to Westminster to the court, and there they were nobly received, and they saw William Fitz Waryn, who was being brought by his keepers to the prison. The merchant and his companions, despite the keepers, took him by force and carried him to their boat, which was afloat sufficiently near beneath the palace, and put him therein. The keepers

leverent la menee e les pursiwyrent. Les marchauntz furent bien armes e se defendirent hardiement, e seschaperent a lur galye, e singlerent vers haute mer. Quant Fouke vist Willam, son frere, e Jon de Rampaigne qe fust marchant, ne fet a demaunder si lee fust; e sentrebeyserent, e chescun counta autre sa aventure e son meschief. E quant le roy entendy quil fust engyne par le marchant, molt se tynt mal bayly.

They go into Brittany.

Fouke e ces compaignouns aryverent en Bretaigne le Menour, e demorerent la demy an e plus ou ces parentz e cosyns. Atant se purpensa quil ne lerreit pur rien quil nyrreit en Engletere. E quant vint en Engletere, en la Novele Forest, ou yl soleit converser, encontra le roy, que pursiwy un cengler. Fouke e ces compaignouns le pristrent, e sis chevalers ou ly, e le amenerent en lur galye. Le roy e tous les suens furent molt esbays. Molt de paroles furent, mes adreyn le roy lur pardona tot son maltalent, e lur

---

raised the household and pursued them. The merchants were well armed and defended themselves bravely, and escaped to their galley, and sailed to the high seas. When Fulk saw William, his brother, and John de Rampaigne, who was the merchant, one need not ask whether he was glad; and they kissed each other, and each one told his adventures and his misfortunes. And when the king heard that he was beguiled by the merchant, he thought himself badly used.

Fulk and his companions arrived in Brittany the Lesser, and remained there half a year and more with his relations and cousins. At last he resolved that he would be deterred by nothing from going into England. And when he came into England, in the New Forest, where he was wont to spend his time, he met the king, who was hunting a wild boar. Fulk and his fellows took him, and six knights with him, and put them into their galley. The king and all his followers were much alarmed. There were many words, but at length the king pardoned them all his illwill, and restored them all their in-

rendi tote lur heritage, e lur promist en bone fei quil freit crier lur pees par tote Engletere; e a ce fere lessa ses sis chevalers ou eux en hostage si la qe la pes fust crie.

Le roy sen ala a Westmostier, e fist assembler countes, barouns e la cleregie, e lur dit apertement quil avoit de gree graunte sa pees a Fouke le fitz Warin e a ces freres e a tuz lur aherdauntz; e comanda quil fuissent honorement rescuz par tot le roialme, e lur granta entierement tot lur heritage. Quant Hubert le erchevesqe ce oy molt fust lee, e maunda meyntenaunt ces letres a Fouke e al counte de Gloucestre, e a Rondulf le counte de Cestre, e a Hue counte Mareschal, quil venissent hastivement a ly a Caunterbery, e quant furent venuz, ordinerent qe Fouke e ces freres rendreynt a Loundres a le roy. King John is reconciled to Fulk.

Fouke, e ces freres, e les trois countes ou lur poer, se apparillerent auxi richement come yl saveient e poyeynt; His lands are restored to him.

---

heritance, and promised them in good faith that he would cause their peace to be proclaimed through all England; and that he would do this he left his six knights with them in hostage until the peace should be proclaimed.

The king went to Westminster, and caused to be assembled earls, barons, and the clergy, and said to them openly that he had willingly granted his peace to Fulk Fitz Warin and his brothers, and to all their adherents; and he ordered that they should be honourably received by all the realm, and granted them entirely all their heritage. When Hubert the archbishop heard this he was very glad, and sent immediately his letters to Fulk and to the earl of Gloucester, and to Rondulf earl of Chester, and to Hue, earl Marshal, to come speedily to him to Canterbury, and when they were come, that they should appoint that Fulk and his companions should surrender themselves at London to the king.

Fulk and his brothers, and the three earls with their forces arrayed themselves as richly as they knew how to do and could

si vindrent parmi Londre ou noble apparail, e sengenoillerent al roy a Westmoster, e se rendirent a ly. Le roy les recust, e lur rendy quanqe lur fust en Engleterre, e les comaunda demorer ou ly, e si firent yl un moys entier. Puis prist Fouke congie e demora ou le counte Mareschal, e le counte ly dona sur Asshesdoune, Wantynge, e autres terres. Fouke e ces freres se armerent a talent e vindrent a Abyndone, e remuerent de ileqe quanquil purreynt trover a vendre e les firent porter e carier a Wantynge; e fist feyre yleque e ville marchande, que pus ensa ad este tenu e uncore est.

Goes with the earl of Chester in Ireland.

Fouke prist counge de le counte Mareschal e sen ala a le counte Rondulf de Cestre, que se apparilla ou grant pueple vers Yrlaunde pur defendre ces droitz yleque. Quant il furent arivez, si virent grant assemble de lur enymis. Le counte comaunda qe tous se armassent. E le counte avoit ou ly trois juvencels freres, qe furent gent de grant valour e force, e furent armes e bien

---

do; so they came through London in noble apparel, and knelt before the king at Westminster, and surrendered themselves to him. The king received them, and surrendered to them what was theirs in England, and commanded them to dwell with him, and so did they for an entire month. Then Fulk took his leave, and abode with the earl Marshal, and the earl surrendered to him Ashdown, Wantynge, and other lands. Fulk and his brothers armed themselves at their pleasure and came to Abingdon, and removed thence whatever they could find, and caused it to be conveyed and carried to Wantynge; and he made a fair there and a merchant town, which has been held since that time and is still.

Fulk took leave of the earl Marshal, and went to the earl Rondulf of Chester, who was preparing himself with a large body of men to go to Ireland to defend his rights there. When they were come to land they saw a great assembly of their enemies. The earl commanded all to arm themselves. And the earl had with him three young brothers, who were persons of great valour and strength, and were

mountes, e ou eux fust Fouke Ataunt virent un hidous geant entre lur enimys, que fust bien arme tot a pie, hidous, neir e orrible, pluslong que nul autre de XII. pies. E crieout; "Counte de Cestre, maundez moy le "plus vailant chevaler qe vus avez, pur dereyner vostre "dreit." Les treis juvencels, que le oyrent, se mistrent a ly chescun apres autre, e il les ocist meyntenaunt de sa hasche quil tynt. Atant lest Fouke coure le destrer, e ly vodra aver feru de sa launce, e le geant gwencha un poy e fery a Fouke quil le ust a poy afolee. Fouke le dota grantment, e le avysa bien, issi qe de sa launce le fery par mi le cors. Yl chay a terre, e en gisant fery le cheval Fouke e ly coupa les deus pies. Fouke chay a terre, e resailly, e saka lespee e coupa sa teste; e emporta sa hasche a Blauncheville, ou Fouke avoit fet fermer en marreis un chastel fort e bel. E issi conquist le counte tous ces terres e chastiels en Irlaund. E quant avoit ileqe demorree e restorre ces terres, pus retorna en Engleterre.

---

armed and well mounted, and with them was Fulk. Then came a hideous giant among their enemies, who was well armed, all on foot, hideous, black and horrible, taller than any other by twelve feet. And he cried, "Earl of Chester, "send me the most valiant knight whom you have, to try "your right." The three youths, who heard it, went to him, one after the other, and he killed them immediately with the hatchet which he held. Then Fulk let his war-horse go, and would have struck him with his lance, and the giant started aside and struck Fulk so that he had almost disabled him. Fulk feared him greatly, and became very cautious, so that with his lance he smote him through the body. He fell to the ground, and in falling struck Fulk's horse and cut him into two pieces. Fulk fell to the earth, and leaped up again, and drew his sword and cut off his head; and carried his hatchet to Blauncheville, where Fulk had fortified in a marsh a strong and beautiful castle. And so the earl conquered all the lands and castles in Ireland. And when he had tarried there and restored his lands, then he returned into England.

Returns to Blauncheville.

Fouke vint a Blauncheville, e trova ileque Mahaud, sa femme, e ces enfaunz, qe molt furent lee de sa venue, e grant joye entrefirent. Donqe fist Fouke aporter ces tresours e ces richesses ; terres, chivals, dona a ces serjauntz e amis molt largement, e meintint sa terre a grant honour.

Fouke se purpensa quil avoit grantment meserre countre Dieu, come en occisioun des gentz e autres grauntz meffetz ; e, en remissioun de ces peschies, founda une priorie en le honour de Nostre Dame Seinte Marie de le ordre de Grantmont pres de Alberburs, en le boschage, sur la rivere de Sauverne, e si est appelee la Novele Abbeye. E ni a geres apres morust dame Mahaud de Caus, sa femme, e fust enterree en cele priorie. E, bone piece apres qe cele dame fust devye, Fouke esposa une molt gentile dame, dame Clarice de Auberville ; e de la une e lautre dame engendra bials enfauntz e molt vaillauntz.

His daughter married to the Prince of Wales.

Quaunt dame Johane, la femme Lowis le prince de Walys, (que fust la file le roi Henre de Engleterre,) fust

---

Fulk came to Blauncheville, and found there Mahaud, his wife, and his children, who were very glad at his arrival, and they made great joy one with the other. Then caused Fulk his treasures and his riches to be brought ; he gave lands and horses to his servants and friends very liberally, and maintained his land in great honour.

Fulk bethought himself that he had greatly misserved God, as by killing men and by other great misdeeds ; and for remission of his sins he founded a priory in honour of Our Lady Saint Mary, of the order of Grandmont, near to Alberburs, in the forest, on the river of Sauverne ; and so it is called the New Abbey. And shortly after died dame Mahaud de Caus, his wife, and was buried in this priory. And a good while after the death of this lady, Fulk married a very gentle dame, dame Clarice de Amberville ; and of the one and the other lady he begot fair children and very valiant.

When dame Joan, wife of Lowis prince of Wales (who was the daughter of king Henry of England), was dead, from the

devyee, pur le grant renoun de prowesse e de bounte que sire Fouke aveit, yl maunda a ly pur Eve sa file; e il la graunta, e a grant honour e solempnete furent esposee. Mes Lowis ne vesqui que un an e demi apres; morust, e fust ensevely a Aberconewey, saunz heir engendre de Eve. E pus fust ele espose a ly sire de Blancmostiers, que fust chevaler de grant aprise, coragous e hardy.

Fouke e dame Clarice, sa femme, une nuit chocherent ensemble en lur chaunbre; la dame dormy, e Fouke veilla e se purpensa de juvente, e molt se repenti de cuer de son trespeis. Ataunt vist en la chaunbre si grant clarete que a merveille, e se pensa que ce poeit estre. Donque oy une vois come ce fust de tonayre en le heir, e disoit: "Vassal, Dieu te ad graunte ta "penaunce, que mieux valt ci qe aillours." A cele parole la dame enveilly e vist la grant clarete, e mussa sa face de pour. Ataunt envanist cele clarete; e, pus cele clarete, unque ne poeit Fouke vere plus, mes fust veogle pur tous jours.

Fulk's repentance, vision, and blindness.

---

great renown for prowess and bounty which sir Fulk had, he sent to him for Eve his daughter; and he granted her to him, and with great honour and solemnity they were espoused. But Lowis lived only one year and a half after; he died and was buried at Aberconway, without heir begotten of Eve. And afterwards she was married to the lord of Blancmostiers, who was a knight of great skill, courageous and hardy.

Fulk and dame Clarice, his wife, one night were sleeping in their chamber; the lady was asleep, and Fulk awoke and reflected upon his youth, and much he repented him at his heart for his misdeeds. Then came into his chamber such a brightness that it was wonderful: and he wondered what it could be. Then he heard a noise as if it were of thunder in the air, and it said: "Servant, God has granted thee thy penance, "which avails thee more here than elsewhere." At this word the lady awoke and saw the great brightness, and covered her face for fear. Then this brightness vanished; and after this brightness never could Fulk see more, but was blind for ever.

Merlyn prophecied of him under another name.

Cesti Fouke fust bon viaundour e large, e fesoit turner le real chemyn parmi sa sale a soun maner de Alleston, pur ce que nul estraunge y dust passer sil navoit viaunde, ou herbergage, ou autre honour, ou bien de suen. Merlyn dit que

En Bretaigne la Graunde
Un lou vendra de la Blaunche launde.
XII. dentz avera aguz,
Sys desouz e sis desus.
Cely avera si fer regard
Quil enchacera le Leopard
Hors de la Blaunche launde,
Tant avera force e vertue graunde.
Mes nus le savom qe Merlyn
Le dit pur Fouke le fitz Waryn ;
Quar chescun de vus deit estre ensur
Qe en le temps le roy Arthur
La Blanche launde fust appelee
Qe ore est Blaunche vile nomee.

This Fulk was a good purveyor and liberal, and he caused the royal road to be turned by his hall at his manor of Alleston, so that no traveller should pass without food or other honour, or good of his. Merlin says that

In Britain the Great
A wolf shall come from the Blaunche launde.
Twelve sharp teeth shall he have,
Six beneath and six above.
He shall have such a fierce aspect
That he shall chase the Leopard
From the Blaunche launde,
Such strength and great power shall he have.
But now we know that Merlyn
Said this for Fulk Fitz Waryn ;
For each of you must know well
That in the time of the king Arthur
That was called Blaunche launde,
Which now is named Blauncheville.

Quar en cel pays fust la chapele
De Seint Austyn, que fust bele,
Ou Kahuz le fitz Yweyn sounga
Quil le chaundelabre embla,
E qe il a un home acountra
Qe de un cotel le navfra,
E en la coste le playa;
E il en dormaunt si haut cria
Qe roi Arthur oy le a,
E de dormir esveilla.
E quant Kahuz fus esveillee,
Si mist sa meyn a son costee;
Le cotel yleqe ad trovee
Qe parmi ly out navfre.
Issi nus counte le Graal,
Le lyvre de le Seint Vassal.
Yleqe recovery ly reis Arthur
Sa bounte e sa valur,

For in this country was the chapel
Of Saint Austen, which was beautiful,
Where Kahuz the son of Yweyn dreamed
That he stole the candlestick,
And that he encountered a man
Who wounded him with a knife,
And wounded him in the side;
And he while asleep cried so loud
That king Arthur heard him
And awoke from his sleep.
And when Kahuz was awake
He put his hand to his side;
There he found the knife
Which had wounded him through.
This tells us the Graal,
The book of the Holy Vessel.
There recovered king Arthur
His bounty and his valour,

Quant il avoit tot perdu
Sa chevalerie e sa vertu.
De cel pais le lou issist,
Come ly sage Merlyn dist,
E les XII. dentz aguz
Par son escu avom conuz.
Yl porta lescu endentee,
Come les disours ont devisee;
En lescu sunt XII. dentz
De goules e de argentz.
Par le leopart puet estre conuz
Le roy Johan e bien entenduz;
Quar il porta en son escu
Les leopartz de or batu.

His death and burial.

Cesti Fouke remist sept aunz veogle, e soffri bonement sa penaunce. Dame Clarice morust, e fust ensevely a la Novele Abbeye; apres qi mort Fouke ne vesqui qe un an, e morust a Blaunchevyle. E a grant

---

When he had lost all
His chivalry and his power.
From this country issued the wolf,
As the sage Merlyn said,
And the twelve sharp teeth
By his shield we have known.
He bore an endented shield;
As the historians have narrated;
In the shield are twelve teeth
Of gules and of argent.
By the leopard may be known
King John and well understood;
For he bore on his shield
The leopards of beaten gold.

This Fulk remained seven years blind, and suffered well his penance. Dame Clarice died, and was buried at the New Abbey; after whose death Fulk lived only one year, and died at Blaunchevyle. And with great honour he was buried at the

honour fust enterre a la Novele Abbeye; de la alme de cui Dieus eit merci! Joste le auter gist le cors. Deus eit merci de tous, vifs e mortz, AMEN.

New Abbey; upon whose soul may God have mercy! Near the altar lies his body. May God have mercy upon all, the living and the dead! AMEN.

EXCERPTA EX OTIIS IMPERIALIBUS GERVASII TILEBURIENSIS.

GERVASIUS TILEBURIENSIS

DE

Britannia Majori.

Britannia Major, insula quidem oceani, per longum in boream extenditur, a meridie Gallias habens, cujus proximum littus transmeantibus civitas aperit quæ dicitur Ruthubi Portus, unde haud procul a Morinis in austro positis, Menapios Batavosque prospectat. Hæc insula omnium uberrima in longum tenditur octingentis milliaribus, in latum ducentis. Vicenis itaque millibus passuum pro dieta computandis, prætenditur in longum xl. dietis, in latum decem. Verum antiquiores a capite Cornubiæ usque ad finem Scotiæ triginta duas dietas computaverunt. Situation and size of Britain.

Est autem Britannia a Bruto, primo ipsius inhabitatore, dicta, qui cum esset filius Sylvii, filii Ascanii, filii Æneæ, expulsis gigantibus ipsam suo regno, ad instar Trojæ constructo, Trinovanto, decoravit, et nomine suo in posterum nuncupandam instituit. Whence named.

Verum in Gallico littore maris Britannici est Minor Britannia, quæ Armorica dicitur, quæ a filiis imprimis Trojanorum ab ipso Bruto nomen retinens, nunc duces habuit, nunc reges, secundum vicarias temporum vicissitudines. Armorica.

Porro Britanniæ Majoris quatuor ab antiquo legimus partes fuisse; ab occidente Cornubiam, a Corinæo duce, socio Bruti, dictam; a borea Cambriam, quam vulgares Walliam nominant a Walia flumine. Ab aquilone est Albania, quæ nunc Scotia dicitur. In medio vero versus meridiem est Loegria, a Loegrino filio Bruti, cui ad partem venit, sic dicta; sicut a Cambro, fratre ipsius, Cambria, unde et Galenses Cambros se nominant. Sic ab Albaneto eorum fratre Albania dicta per- Britain, how divided.

hibetur. Sane inter Cornubiam et Loegriam satis modicus fluvius est, et inter Cambriam et Loegriam fluvius Sabrinus, et fluvius Libenta, et fluvius Deia. Inter Albaniam et Loegriam modicum fretum, sed propter marinas voragines periculosum, decurrit. Enimvero singulis partibus collateralibus sua nomina retinentibus, Loegria et ipsa tota Britannia nomen suum Anglis cessit; quippe a tempore Careni regis Britonum, qui quintus fuit ab Arcturo, Loegria, Saxonibus in dominationem data, Angliæ nomen accepit ab Anglis, hoc est, Saxonibus, ab Engla-Saxonum insula in Britanniam olim venientibus, Godmundo rege Affricanorum diadema Britonum absorbente et ad Anglorum posteritatem transmittente.

De Hibernia.

Ireland. Hibernia insula inter Britanniam et Hispaniam sita, longiore ab africo in boream spatio porrigitur. Hujus partes Cantabrico intentæ oceano Bregantiam Galliciæ civitatem, ab africo sibi in circium occurrentem, spacioso intervallo procul spectant ab eo præcipue promontorio ubi Iexnæ fluvius ostium est, et in Volabir Lucemque consistunt. Hæc Britanniæ propior, interposita tamen mari insula, in aliqua sui parte insularum dimersione protractior, cœli solisque temperie magis utilis, a Scotorum gentibus peræque colebatur usque ad tempora illustrissimi regis Anglorum Henrici, avi tui, Princeps sacratissime; qui primus, expulsis obscœnis Hiberniensium gentibus, terram Anglis possidendam feodis militaribus distinxit, plurimo tamen Anglorum ac Britonum emptam sanguine. Unde factum est ut terra, quæ ab antiquissimis temporibus lacte pecudum vivens, et Quadragesimam jejuniorum spernens, carnibus crudis utens, et obscœnitati data religionis contemptrix erat, nova incolatus sui religione polleat; et sicut ultima veram religionem coacta suscepit, sic inter alias nationes ritu sancto et religionis ardore plus omnibus

ferveat, episcopalibus sedibus gaudens, monasteriis religiosissimis affluenter fundatis, in copia prædiorum ac hospitalitate plenissima.

In hac insula est quodam maris sinu terra quæ B. Brendani nominatur, in quam muscæ non veniunt, et in qua animalia venenosa non vivunt. De cujus etiam terræ pulvere quovis asperso venenifera serpentum bufonumque genera peremuntur; cui simile scimus probatissimum esse, quod si de terra castri superioris Parisius in quovis loco fiat pulverisatio, statim omnium nocivorum vermium pestis fugatur. Est autem castrum hoc in provincia Viennensi, uno milliario distans a ripa Isaræ fluminis, in confinio urbis Gratinopolitanæ. Sed et de coriis animalium quorumlibet in insula, ut diximus, Hibernia nascentium fiunt corrigiæ tanta efficacia hujus virtutis insignes quod inclusos veneniferos vermes crepare cogunt, et sic statim exspirare. Idem evenit si de rasura corrigiarum aut arborum illic crescentium toxifera conspergantur cum aqua animalia.

Hiberniæ proxima insula Man vocatur, ipsa suo gaudens rege, subdita tamen regno Anglorum, Scotiamque ab oriente respiciens, urbaniore cultu quam solet celebriusque vivens. Sic et Scotia olim a Scotis, vilissimæ conversationis hominibus inhabitata, tunc illis expulsis et accitis militaribus personis infeodatis et in hospitalitate facta expositis, reges habet successive sanctos, aut sanctorum operum usque ad tempora nostra imitatores. Isle of Man.

Nunc urbes Majoris Britanniæ cum suis appendicibus explicemus.

De Anglia.

Anglia, sive Major Britannia, duas habet metropoles, Cantuariensem et Eboracensem. Porro tempore Britonum tres erant in Britannia insula metropolitæ, Legionensis, quæ præeminebat in Cambria, cujus sedis apud Caerlein, Civitatem Legionum. Illinc enim Cæsar England.

duodecim legiones in Hiberniam dimisit, quæ civitatem illam miro opere construxerunt, ubi et Arturus curiam solennem et omnibus incomparabilem instituit, in qua duodecim pares Franciæ ordinavit, ut in catalogo regum Britanniæ inferius, Deo duce, dicetur. Fuit in illis diebus secundus metropolita Londoniensis, sive Trinovantinus. Tertius erat Eboracensis. Sub Legionensi erant episcopi Cambriæ, sub Londoniensi episcopi Loegriæ, sub Eboracensi, Dunelmensis et Carleonensis, et omnes episcopi Scotiæ. Verum tempore Augustini, Anglorum apostoli, cum ad Anglos, paganitatis adhuc more gentis suæ Saxonicæ tenebris involutos, Augustinus prædicator a B. Gregorio missus, in Britannia Christianissimos clericos et monachos cum septem sedibus cathedralibus invenisset, indignantes illi subesse, eo quod Britones hostium suorum, Saxonum, communionem (nedum subjectionem) abominarentur ; tandem regulis Anglorum viros suos religiosos ad martyrii palmam ducentibus, in sanguine sanctorum Dolobernensis ecclesia primatiam obtinuit, et exinde Cantuariensis metropolitam, Trinovantum, suo pallio spoliavit, Legionensem sibi subjiciens metropolin, cum sibi subjectis episcopis.

Canterbury. Cantuariensis ergo archiepiscopus hos habet suffraganeos ; Roffensem, Lundoniensem, Cicestrensem, Exoniensem, Wintoniensem, Batoniensem, Sarisburiensem, Wigorniensem, Herefordensem, Conventrensem, (qui olim fuit Cestrensis,) Lincolniensem, Norwicensem, Eliensem. In Wallia hos habet suffraganeos Cantuariensis ; Menevensem (vel S. David), Landavensem, Bangoriensem, et de S. Asaph.

York. Eboracensis archiepiscopus duos tantum [habet] suffraganeos ; Durhamensem, qui tot gaudet privilegiis Romanæ ecclesiæ, quod jam in plenam se recepit libertatem ; et Carliolensem, qui sæpissime tanto tempore vacat, quod oblivioni datur potius quam subjectioni.

Scottish sees. Episcopi Scotiæ nostris temporibus exempti, domino

Papæ contribuuntur. Sunt autem hi, episcopatus S. Andreæ, Glasguensis, episcopatus Candidæ Casæ, Dunkeldensis, Dunblaniensis, Ardmarchiensis, Brechinensis, Aberdonensis, Murensis (vel Muraviensis), Cathanensis, episcopatus de Aragarthol.

Sic ergo dum "ludit in humanis Romana potentia "rebus," hunc humiliat et hunc exaltat, hunc Argum facit, hunc Polyphemat, utinam hæc sit mutatio dexteræ Excelsi! Etenim plenitudo potestatis apostolicæ multos dignos ejicit et indignos erigit; tanto districtius acceptura arbitrium quanto singularius a summo Deo expectat judicium, a nemine mortalium judicanda. Scotland.

De Hibernia.

Hibernia has habet metropoles quatuor. Archiepiscopus Armachiæ habet suffraganeos, Lugitadunensem, Cluamundi, episcopatum de Chuianas et de Archad, et Ceirduig, et de Damhagge, et de Dauli. Archiepiscopus Dublinensis habet suffraganeos Glenderacensem, Childerensem. Casselenensis habet suffraganeos Cendalvanensem, Luminechensem, de insula Gachai, de Cellumabrac, de Ymelec, de Restleene, de Watrefort, de Lismor, de Clusaman, de Corcoia, de Rosaliche, de Ardford. Tuamensis habet suffraganeos de Magoc, de Cellalad, de Roscomon, de Cumanfert, de Achat, de Cunairi, de Cellum miduac . . . . Sees of Ireland.

Epilogus de operis continuatione.

Excidium Trojanum præmisimus, et sic regnum Romanorum, per successiones temporum, nunc regibus, nunc consulibus, nunc tribunis, nunc imperatoribus, nunc pontificibus creditum; ad ultimum post multas irruptiones lascessitum per Gottos et Longobardos ad Alemannorum atque Gallorum dominium pervenisse, Epilogue, and transition to the history of Britain.

sub nomine Vetusti Imperii docuimus. Et quoniam ex eodem Trojano excidio imperium Romanorum, cujus tenes dominationem, Princeps serenissime, regnum Majoris Britanniæ, ex cujus utero prodiisti, matre tua illustrissimi Henrici regis Anglorum vetustioris filia; regnumque Francorum, cujus pro parte Aquitanica dominium gessisti, prodiere, fœlici trinitatis numero pro patre tribus regnis, ut tribus filiis, enascentibus, dignum fuit annectere seriem regum Angliæ; ut qualiter cum imperio et regno Francorum connexa sit, aut quibus casibus a tua Saxonia reges Anglorum cum ipsis Anglis processerint, memorare possit imperialis tua majestas. Magis quoque accendetur animus tuus ad diligendum, tuendum ac complectendum omne id cujus radicem apud tuos noveris extitisse.

De regno Britonum.

Origin of the Britons.

Post eversionem ergo Trojæ Æneas profugus regnavit in Latio, filium generans Ascanium, qui et ipse genuit Silvium, ex filia Latinii Lavinia. Ex quo filius pro-

Brutus.

cessit Brutus, qui matrem suam in puerperio, (neptem scilicet Laviniæ,) et patrem Silvium in venando peremit. Profugus itaque propter hujusmodi tristes horrendosque eventus Brutus, in Græcia, auxilio Assaraci, progeniem Heleni filii Priami, servituti Pandrasi regis Græcorum addictam, eo quod a Pyrrho Achillis filio in captivitatem ducta fuisset, potentia virtutis suæ liberavit. Sic ergo Imoge, filia Pandrasii, in conjugem ducta, Brutus mari se tradidit cum uxore; Trojanisque relictis, quos a jugo servitutis exemerat. Leogræcia ergo Græcorum insula transacta, responsoque in somnis per Dianam accepto, triginta dierum cursu enavigato, Africa subducta, Aras Philistinorum et Lacum Silviarum inter Nussicadam et montes Azaræ, Malva flumine transito, Mauritania decursa, Columnis Herculis exactis, ad Tyrrhenum æquor pervenit, ubi Corinæum ducem

cum quatuor stirpibus exulum Trojæ, qui Antenoris fugam fuerant comitati, invenit. Corinæum ergo Brutus in socium et auxiliarium evocans, devicto Goferio Aquitanorum rege consuleque Suando a Corinæo bipenne transverberato, ad mare Britannicum venit quod Armoricum sinum respicit, qui nunc Britannia nuncupatur. Ex hinc Albion, oceani insulam, ingreditur, quæ post a Bruto Britannia Major et nunc Anglia nominatur. Ad differentiam ergo Minoris Britanniæ, quæ Gallias contingit, et ad tempus fuerat Bruti fugientis asylus, Albion Britanniæ nomen et regnum accepit. Cujus insulæ pars, Corinæo cedens in partem, Cornubia ab ipso duce dicta est, vel quia ipsa Cornu Britanniæ est.

Cornwall.

Instinctu Veneris, quæ propter judicium pomi Paridi Trojanisque favebat, Brutus ad veteris Trojæ recensendam memoriam condidit firmissimam urbem Trinovantum, in ipsa velut Illium ad orientem constituens, ubi Turris Londoniensis est, firmissima munitione palatium circumseptum continens, aqua Tamensis fluvii, quam quotidie ascendentis maris inundatio replet, in ambitu decurrente. Ad occidentem vero Pergama construxit duo, videlicet muris aggeribusque constructa castra, quorum alterum Bainaldi, alterum baronum de Muntfichet,[1] est ex jure successionis. Hæc scilicet angustarum portarum castella primi aditus sunt defensoria.

Trinovantum built.

Civitatis ampla planities secus decursum Tamensis fluvii, [qui] ex magnitudine marisque refluxu plus mare sapit quam fluvium, per sex miliaria in longum protrahitur, undique ferme flumine Tamasi aut marinis paludibus circumclusa. Murorum firmatur altitudine ex bitumine, quasi minuti lapidis cæmento surgentium, interioribus aggeribus circumdata, turribusque in ambitu murorum cum propugnaculis continuata intercisione surgentibus conspicua, late spaciatur. Fluvialis aquæ et maris connexione portus est, et navigabilis ad

Description of London.

[1] This word has been altered by erasure.

modum pelagi, piscosa in omnium piscium affluentia. Pascuis abundat, nemoribus, omnimodisque venationibus impressa. Argenti dives et auri paucis urbibus invidet; omnibus ipsa merito invidiosa existit. Quis enim tantam populositatem crederet sic legi constringi ferroque stabiliri, sic vinorum copia affluere, cum illic vineæ non plantentur; sic omnia mundana copia fervere; sic sanctorum monasteriorum ac illustrium canonicorum copiosa dicatione regularitateque gaudere? Profecto in ista unica urbe, dextris fundata auspiciis, [sine] exceptione ait illud divulgatum et apud omnes peræque gentes omniumque fastigia regnorum probatissimum Lucani proverbium; "Invida fatorum series, "summisque negatum stare diu."

Cum enim post eversionem Trojæ sexagesimo nondum anno completo urbs Trinovantum, Hely sacerdote populum Israelis regente et Archa Fœderis a Philistæis capta, regnantibus in Troja filiis Hectoris, expulsis posteris Antenoris, constructa sit trecentesimo liiij. anno ante Romulæum urbem [conditam, vix invenire licet ex maximis et antiquissimis urbem[1]] vel unicam quæ vel nomen non mutaverit, vel principatum non amiserit, aut exterius attrita ferro, aut interius civili et intestino bello consumpta. Hæc sola, cum aliarum invidia regionum, quæ ex Dei munere est, Niniven videt subversam, Babylonem destructam, Suevis pro parte maxima deletam, Jerusalem cum Templo eversam, Macedoniam, Persidam, Ægyptum, Caldeam, Judæam, Æthiopiam, regnorum et regum alternasse in vicissitudines, nunc dominando, nunc alterius dominio serviendo. Constantinopolis nuper Gallorum Italicorumque irruptionibus suis gazis spoliatur. Colonia Agrippina Childerici regis Francorum violentiam testatur. Hispania nunc a Gottis, nunc a Paganis, nunc a Karolo, crebras patitur mutationes. Quid ultra? Roma ipsa, de eodem semi-

[1] Erroneously omitted in the Vat. MS.

nario Trojano orta, licet constructione posterior et dominatione potentior, suos tamen cineres vidit sub duce Brenno, incendium suum horruit sub Alarico, quotidianos imminentium ruinarum defectus deplorat, dum more senis decrepiti alieno vix baculo potest sustentari, nihil habens honorabilis vetustatis præter fastum popularem et antiquatam lapidum congeriem.

Brute's issue and successors.

Jam nunc ad historiam recurramus, quæ Bruto tres fuisse filios testatur; Locrinum, a quo Loegria (media pars insulæ) sic dicitur; Albanectum, a quo Albania, quæ nunc est Scotia; Cambrem, a quo Cambria, quæ nunc Wales dicitur. Hi primi insulam diviserunt secundum prænominatos suorum nominum regiones. Albanectum occidit Humber, rex Humbrorum; Humbrum Locrinus, a quo Humber fluvius nomen accepit. Locrinus sagitta percussus in prælio quod habuit cum uxore sua Gondolena, filia Corinæi, interiit. Erat autem causa prælii Estrildis, regina Germaniæ, cujus amore uxorem suam reliquerat.

Gondolina, &c.

Locrino successit Gondolena uxor ejus; post quam Nadan, filius ejus et Locrini. Tunc regnabat Samuel in Judæa, et Homerus claruit. Cui successit Eupercius. Tunc regnabat Euristenus in Lacedæmonia. Huic successit Ebraucus filius, qui condidit Eboracum, alteram Britanniæ metropolim. Hic primus post Brutum in Gallias classem duxit. Tunc regnavit David; Agad, et Nathan, et Asaph prophetavit.

Ebraucus.

Brutus Viride-Scutum.

Post Eboraucum regnavit Brutus, Viride-scutum. Hujus fratres decem et novem Germaniam adepti sunt, auxilio Silvii Albani, qui tunc regnabat in Albania, quæ caput fuit regni Romanorum.

Leil.

Post hunc Leil, a quo civitas Carluil nomen habet. Tunc cœpit Solomon Templum ædificare, et regina Austri venit ad Salomonem.

Rudilibas.

Post hunc Rudibras, qui condidit Caerteuth, hoc est, Cantuariam, metropolim et primatiam Anglorum; et Caerguint, quæ est Guintonia. Caer enim in lingua

Trojana civitas interpretatur. Hic condidit oppidum Paledur, ubi aquila loquebatur cum murus ædificaretur.

Bladud. Post hunc Bladud, filius ejus. Hic fecit Caerbadun, ubi sunt balnea Badonis calida, ad usus mortalium apta, quibus præfecit nomen Minervæ, et ipsis inextinguibiles supposuit ignes, ut nunquam deficiant in favillas, sed ex quo tabescere incipiunt in saxeos globos convertuntur. Tunc Helias oravit, et non pluit annos tres et menses sex. Bladud docuit Britones nigromantiam.

Leir. Huic successit Leir, filius ejus. Hic condidit Caerleir super Soram, quæ est Leircestria, et instituit in regnum Gonorillam filiam suam cum viro suo, duce Albaniæ, Maglanno, et Ragon, alteram, cum viro suo Erewino, duce Cornubiæ, qui expulerunt socerum suum. Post hæc Leir recepit regnum suum per Aganippum regem Galliæ, cui junxerat filiam tertiam Cordoillam, quæ dixit patri, dum filias interrogaret quantum illum diligerent, aliis multa loquentibus, illa respondit; "Quan-" tum habes, tantum vales, et tantum te diligo." Unde post patrem regnavit Cordoilla.

Marganus and Cumedagius. Post quam filii sororum, Marganus trans Humbrum fluvium, Cumedagius citra Humbrum. Cumedagius expulit Marganum, solusque regnavit xxx. tribus annis. Tunc Esias et Osee prophetaverunt. Tunc Roma condita undecimo kalendas Maii, post eversionem Trojæ quadringentesimo quartodecimo anno, a geminis fratribus.

Ravallo. Cumedagio successit Ravallo; cujus tempore cœlum pluit tribus diebus sanguinem, et muscarum affluentia homines moriebantur.

Gurganus. Post hunc Gurganus; post hunc Sisillius; post hunc Jaggo, Gurgantii nepos; post hunc Canninarcus, Sisilli filius, post hunc Gothedudo. Post Porrex, qui fratre suo interfecto, et victo Suardo rege Francorum, fratris auxiliario, ipse quoque a matre interficitur, regno per multa tempora vacante et in sex reges dilacerato:

scilicet, Clotensem regem Cornubiæ, Pinetum regem Loegriæ, Rodonacum regem Cambriæ, Staterium regem Albaniæ.

Post hos Dunigallo, filius Clotessis, solus regnavit, aliis expulsis. Hic primus sibi fecit diadema ex auro. Hic fecit Leges Mulmuntias, quæ adhuc servantur in Anglia. Hic statuit ut templa et strata, ipsæ quoque civitates et aratra colonum, ad se fugientes tuerentur. Dunigallo.

Hic successit Belinus primogenitus secundum leges Trojanorum, in diadema Loegriæ, Cambriæ et Cornubiæ, et Brennus minor sub eo Northanhumbriam usque ad Catanesiam. Belinus tributariam fecit Daciam, regem Guthlacum captum ducens. Hic vias publicas iiij. struxit, et leges, quas postea rex Alvredus scripsit, quas Gildas refert. Brennus expulsus a Northanhumbria successit Segino regi Allobrogum, ducta filia ejus. Hic (quod apud Allobroges maximum erat) in dandis cibis profusus erat, nullique janua ejus prohibebatur. Hic postea cum Belino fratre confœderatus, regulos Francorum et urbes eorum sibi subjecit cum fratre suo intra annum unum. Deinde Romam incendunt, sicut refert Paulus Orosius, et nos supra in titulo de Divisione iiij. Regnorum memoravimus. Belinus.

Mortuo Belino, successit ei Gurguntus Bartirud, filius ejus. Hic Daciam iterum subjecit, Baclisque per mare in xxx. navibus laborantibus Yberniam dedit inhabitandam. Gurgunt.

Post hunc Guithelinus regnavit, cujus uxor Marcia leges Marcias instituit, quas vulgus Marchenelage nominat. Post hunc regnavit uxor jam dicta; post quam frater ejus Danius. Guithelinus, &c.

Post hunc Mormundus, filius Danii, qui strenuus, largus, omnique homini insuperabilis, devoratus est a bellua inauditæ feritatis a partibus Ybernici maris, cum qua diu pugnaverat. Post quem primogenitus ejus Gordonianus, post quem Artingallo pessimus. Quo a principibus deposito, successit frater ejus Elidurus; qui Maurundus, &c.

nimia pietate tentus, fratri de capite suo diadema restituit. Post quem Elidurus iterato regnavit; post quem Ingomius citra Humbrum regnavit, et Peredurus frater ejus in Scotia. Post hæc solus Peredurus monarcha fuit; post quem tertio regnavit Elidurus, quem fratres incarceraverant apud Trinovantum.

Son of Gordianus.

Post quem regnavit Gordoniani filius; post quem Marantis Arcagollonis filius. Post hunc Evrinanus frater ejus. Post hunc Edowallo Ingentii filius. Cui successit Tonus, Peduri filius; cui Karellus, cui Corlus, cui Porrex, cui Carinus, cui Fulgonius, cui Edaldus, cui Eridrogius, cui Urianus, cui Eliud, cui Olodancus, cui Cotranus, cui Gurguntius, cui Marianus, cui Blandudo, cui Capor, cui Oenus, cui Sisillus, cui Belgabadus,[1] cui Abdob, cui Redion, cui Redelchius, cui Samul, cui Penesil, cui Seir, cui Capor, cui Eligut, cui Eli filius ejus. Post hunc Lud[1] filius ejus, a quo Caerlud, quæ prius Trinovantum, et nunc per corruptionem Londoniæ nomen habuit.

Cassibellanus.

Huic successit Cassebellinus, frater Lud, qui a Julio Cæsare impugnatus apud Dorobellum vicit Cæsarem, Nennio fratre Cassibelauni retinente in clypeo suo ensem Julii, cum quo post xv. [dies] apud Trinovantum est sepultus, juxta portam aquilonalem. Est autem nomen ensis Crocea Mors. Cumque resumptis viribus iterato Cæsar Britanniam impeteret, collisis ad palos in Tamasi fluvio fixos navibus, Cæsar ad Morinos et ad turrim Dodres in Flandria, ad tutamen suum erectam, fugere coactus est. Tertio per Androgenum nepotem Cassibellini Trinovantum capitur, ipso eum inducente.

Tenuancius.

Huic vero tributario facto in tribus millibus librarum argenti successit Tenuancius, frater Androgeni,

[1] Hic in musicis instrumentis et modulis omnes cantores excessit. Post hunc Archinais, cui successit Addol, cui Redion, cui Redelchinus, cui Sumel, cui Penesil, cui Leir, cui Capor, cui Gligut, cui Eli filius ejus. Post hunc Lud.—*Edit. Leibnitz.*

filius Lud, dux Cornubiæ. Cui successit Cambellinus, filius ejus; cujus tempore natus est Christus. Cui successit Guiderius, filius ejus; quem tributum negantem Claudius Cæsar, ab ipso primum victus, sumptis armis Britannicis, fraudulenter interfecit apud Porecestriam. Cambellinus. Guiderius.

Cui successit Arturagus, frater ejus, qui in eodem prælio occideret Lælium Hamonem, cujus consilio Claudius prælia gerebat. A quo Amtonia dicta, et Suthamptonia et Northamtonia, quasi australis et borealis mansio Hamonis. Post hæc, confœderatione facta cum Claudio, Claudius construxit Caerglau, hoc est, Gloucestriam, quasi Claudii cestriam, in confinio Cambriæ et Loegriæ. Eo tempore Petrus Apostolus Antiochenam fundavit ecclesiam; veniensque Romam misit Marcum in Ægyptum ad prædicandum Evangelium quod scripsit. Arturagus.

Arturago successit in regno filius suus Marius, qui Roguc, regem Pictorum, vincens, sociis ejus dedit partem Scotiæ quæ Catamnesia dicitur. Qui carentes uxoribus transfretaverunt in Hiberniam, et ex illis sic mixtis nati sunt Scoti. Maurius.

Huic successit filius ejus Coillus, vir strenuus et justus, et Romanis plurimum favorabilis. Huic successit Lucius, ipso melior. Hic primus petiit a Papa Eleutherio doctrinam sibi dari fidei Christianæ; qui duos ei religiosos doctores misit, Faganum et Duvianum. Hi pro xxviij. flaminibus xxviij. episcopatus instituerunt; pro tribus archiflaminibus tres archiepiscopus statuerunt, Londoniensem, Eboracensem et Legionensem, quæ Civitas Legionum super flumen Oscam in Glamorgantia sita fuit. Igitur Londoniensi subjacuit Loegria et Cornubia; Legionensi Cambria, Sabrino flumine ab aliis separata; Eboracensi [Deira et] Albania, quas magnum flumen Humber a Loegria secernit, sicut Gildas scribit. Hic Lucius omnia territoria templis pridem collata contulit ecclesiis et ampliavit. Coillus. Lucius.

Huic sine liberis mortuo successit Severus, legatus

Romanorum, qui vallum inter Deiram et Albaniam jussu imperatoris fecit.

Huic successit filius Bassianus, quem Carausius Brito, ex infima gente procreatus, ordinatus Romæ ut piratas arcerit, occidit, et in regnum ejus successit, dans Pictis locum in Albania, ubi mixtim cum Britonibus permanserunt.

Huic successit Alectus, Roma missus ut Carausium occideret. Quo perempto, quia Alecto Brittiones opprimebat eo quod Carausio adhæserant, tandem Asclepiodotum, ducem Cornubiæ, in regem erexerunt, qui Alectum peremit ; et convocatis Demetis, Venedotis, Deiris et Albanis, Gallum, Alecti collegam, Londonii obsessum ac deditum, decollari fecit apud torrentem Navigallum, quod Anglice sonat Gallebroc, a cæde ejusdem Galli sic nominatum. Isto regnante orta est persecutio Diocletiani, cujus legatus Maximinianus Herculius, princeps militiæ, tyrannice ecclesias Britonum subvertit, omnes Christianos delevit, Albanum magistrum militum in Britannia [apud Verolamum] occidit, ubi nunc abbatia Sancti Albani, xx. millibus passuum a Londonensi civitate, Julium vero et Aaron, cives Urbis Legionum, occidit. Amfibalus, doctor Albani, mutatis vestibus occultatur. Interea Coel, dux Caercolum, hoc est Colecestriæ, conserto prælio peremit Asclepiodotum et regnum accepit. Ex hinc Constantinus senator Britanniam ingressus pacificatus cum Coel, intra paucos dies mortuo Coel, successit in regnum, ducta Elena, filia Coel, in musicis instrumentis et liberalibus artibus doctissima, ex qua nascitur Constantinus, qui patri apud Eboracum sepulto successit in regnum. Quo facto imperatore successit in regnum Octovius rex Gewissiorum usque ad tempus Gratiani et Valentiniani. Hic filiam suam cum regno dedit Maximiano senatori, consanguineo Constantini, nepoti Coel ducis Britonum, patre Britanno, filio Coeli, avunculo Constantini, et matre et natione Romano.

Regnavit ergo Maximianus, et Britanniam Minorem, quæ citra Mare Britannicum Armorica dicitur, subjugavit, perempto Umbaldo, ipsamque Conano dedit, vocans eam Britanniam Minorem, replevitque Britonibus, expulsis Gallis. Ex hinc Maximianus, Germania quoque subjugata, thronum imperii sui statuit Treueris, duosque imperatores dejecit, Valentinianum et Gratianum, uno perempto, altero a Roma fugato. Conanus vero rex Armoricæ propter infestationes Gallorum duxit filiam Dinoeti, regis Cornubiæ, qui Carodoco fratri successerat in regnum; et cum undecim millia virginum militibus suis dari postulasset, a Britonibus in mari periclitatæ sunt, aut ab exercitu Granii et Melogæ, regis scilicet Hunorum et Pictorum, martyrio traditæ. Tunc iidem principes, fautores Granii et Valentiniani, Britanniam vastant; sed per Granium municipem a Maximiano ad Britanniam missum fugantur. Mortuo ergo Maximiano Gratianus regnum obtinuit, et interfectus est.

Britonibus ergo a Granio rege Hunorum et Melga Pictorum et Dacis et Norwegensibus lacessitis, consilio Guitelini, Londoniensis archiepiscopi, Adroenus rex Armoricus Constantinum fratrem suum in regem Majoris Britanniæ instituit.

Cui viriliter regnanti successit Constans filius, mo- Constans.
nachus factus in ecclesia Sancti Amphibali Guintoniæ, et exinde promotus a Vortigerno consule Glocestriæ.

Sed in brevi Constans a Pictis familiaribus suis Vortigern.
occiditur, et Vortigernus in regem erigitur. Ejus tempore applicuerunt in Britannia Saxones Hengistus et Horsus cum socia multitudine, et a Vortigerno recepti possessionibus ditantur, dato solo ad mensuram corii bovini propter munitionem ædificandam, quæ exinde Thwancastria (quasi Castrum Corrigiæ) nuncupatur. Hengisti [quoque filia] illud sollemne ac divulgatum ciphorum invitatorium invenit, "Wascahil," quod interpretatur "Sis hilaris;" et e contra respondetur, "Drinc-

"ail," hoc est, "Bibe hilariter." Sed in Britannico sonant, "Canthinoch" et "Bodnitt." Ab istis Saxonibus ab Englia Insula venientibus, seminarium ortum est Anglorum. Duxit ergo filiam Hengisti adhuc pagani Vortigernus, unde corrupta fuit sincera fides Brittonum, et ad Pelagianam hæresim declinare cœperunt. Sunt tamen a Beato Germano Autisiodorensi et Sancto Lupo Trecacensium episcopis prædicantibus conversi. Unde consilio Brittonum Vortigerno ejecto, Vortinus ejus filius in regem erigitur, et Saxones cum regibus ejiciuntur. Vortino per novercam, filiam Hengisti, novercaliter occiso, redit Vortigernus in regnum; revocatoque Hengisto socero cum innumera Saxonum copia fit ab illis in pago Ambri proditio, in qua nobiles quadringenti octoginta et consules fere omnes Brittonum occultis Saxonum cultellis perimuntur. Tunc urbibus a potestate Vortigerni ereptis consilio Brittonum, ædificavit Vortigernus turrim super ripam exhausti gurgitis, in cujus ædificatione Merlinus prophetare cœpit de draconibus de stagno egressis; quorum alter rubeus Brittones, alter albus Saxones notat. Completa igitur prophetia ut Merlinus prædixerat, Aurelius Ambrosius ex Armorico sinu veniens applicuit, et Vortigernus occiditur cum Hengisto aliisque Saxonibus, fecitque ad memoriam nobilium, qui pridem in proditione Saxonum per Vortigernum fuerant perempti, lapides olim in Childardo, monte Yberniæ, collocatos, ad Ambresbiriam per Merlinum locari in modum choreæ, sicut a gigantibus fuerant dispositi. Unde et in ejusdem choreæ medio Aurelius Ambrosius post aliquos annos sepultus fuit.

Uther Pendragon.

Cui successit Uter frater ejus. Verum in morte Aurelii apparuit stella, unicum habens radium miræ pulchritudinis atque magnitudinis. Ad radium erat globus igneus ad similitudinem draconis extensus, ex cujus ore duo procedebant radii, quorum unus ultra Gallias, alter in Yberniam vergens, in vij. minores ra-

dios terminabatur. Hanc autem novitatis apparentiam Merlinus exposuit dicens; sidus esse Uther, et draconem sub sidere; radium Gallias protensum Arcturum, cujus potentia sibi regna Galliarum subjiciet. Radium minorem filiam, cujus filii ac nepotes Britanniæ Yberniæque regnum obtinebunt per vij. regulos divisum. Audita igitur expositione, Uther duos jussit ex auro dracones fabricari, unum dans majori sedi Guintoniæ, alterum sibi reservans in præliis, et exinde vocatus est Uther Pendragon in lingua Trojana, quod sonat Latine Caput Draconis. Hinc prodiit illud apud Anglos vexillum, draconem habens cum capite aureo, quod vicinis expertum et paganis sub avunculo tuo, illustri rege Ricardo, in ultramarinis partibus terribile fuit, princeps Christianissime.

Sane Uther in amorem Ygernæ, uxoris Gorlois ducis Cornubiæ, vehementer exardescens, occulta Merlini occultatione et incantatione faciem Gorlois induit. Ulfin familiaris Uther assumit speciem Jordani, cui castrum Tartagol dux cum uxore commiserat. Sed et ipse Merlinus mutata specie cum Uther castrum ingreditur inexpugnabile. Uther ergo Ygernam specie viri seductam cognovit prægnantemque reliquit; sicque capto castro Dumilice, in quo dux ad tuendum se incluserat, dux occiditur, ductisque similitudinibus ad verum Uther Ygernam duxit uxorem, ex qua genuit Arcturum et Annam.

Defuncto post multos actus strenuos Uther Pendragon, successit Arcturus, qui cum Colo rege Armoricorum, filio sororis Arcturi ex Biducio Armoricorum rege generato, Saxones Colgrimum et Baldulfum, ipsumque ducem Germaniæ Childericum, post multas victi victorisque fortunas, expulit a Britanniis atque peremit. Hic Scotos, Pictos et Ybernienses contra se et Colum dimicantes in stagno Murais obsessos capit. Erat autem stagnum Lumoney dictum sexaginta insulas continens et sexaginta flumina recipiens, nec ex eis præter unum Arthur.

aliquod ad mare decurrit. Porro in insulis sexaginta totidem sunt rupes et totidem aquilarum nidi, quæ quotannis convenientes prodigium quod erat in regno venturum, novaque superventura, celso clamore communiter edito notificabant. Erat et aliud non longe abhinc stagnum longitudinem habens xx. pedum totidemque in latitudine, altitudinem vero sive natura sive humano artificio constructam. Hoc iiij. piscium genera inter iiij. angulos producebat, nec in aliqua parte alterius pisces reperiebantur. Est et aliud stagnum in confinio Galliarum (sive Cambriæ) prope Sabrinum flumen, quod incolæ Lillevan dicunt. Hoc cum in ipsum mare fluctuat recipitur in modum voraginis, sorbendoque fluctus nullatenus repletur, ne riparum marginem cooperiat. At dum mare decrescit eructat ad instar montis absorptas aquas, quibus demum ripas tegit et aspergit. Interim si tota gens regionis illius facie recta prope astaret, recepta inter vestes undarum aspergine, vel vix vel nunquam elabi valeret quin a stagno suffocaretur. Tergo autem verso non est itineratio timenda, si quis etiam in ripa consisteret.

Arcturus igitur, expulsis Saxonibus, ecclesias restituit, proceres privilegiis, [episcopos] honoribus honoravit. Angesilum in regem Scotorum, Urianum fratrem in regem Murefensium instituit. Loth, qui tempore Aurelii Ambrosii sororem Arcturi duxerat, ex qua Galvanium et Mordredum genuerat, consulem Loudoniæ et provinciarum sibi adjacentium instituit; Yberniam, Orcades Insulas, Daciam, Gothlandiam et Norveiam, sceptro suo subjecit; illas Loth sororio suo gubernanda commendans. Dehinc invadit Gallias, Frollonem tribunum Roma missum ad custodiendas Gallias, Parisius in insula extra muros singulari duello vicit et occidit; Guntardum Pictaviensium ducem ditioni suæ subjecit; Guasconiam expugnans ferro flammaque depopulans ipsam tandem subjugavit, Mensam Rotundam instituit apud Cornubiam in insula Fatata. Emensis itaque

novem mensibus, cum totius Galliæ partes suæ potestati submisisset, concilio Parisius celebrato, statum regni sub lege ac pace confirmans, xii. pares instituit, Hunduro principi Andegaviam, Kaio dapifero Neustriam, quæ nunc est Normannia, largiens. Ex hinc curiam in Cambria Civitate Legionum ad sanctum festum Pentecostes celebravit in Clamargantia super Oscam fluvium. Sane Civitas Legionum duabus eminebat ecclesiis, una Deo dicatarum virginum, sub honore Julii martyris; altera Sancti Aaron socii ejus canonicorum conventu instructa. Tertiam habebat ecclesiam, totius tunc Britanniæ primatem. Nec immerito quarto loco commendabile fuit gymnasium, regiis sumptibus instructum, ducentorum philosophorum, qui liberalibus artibus eruditi cursus stellarum rimabantur et Arcturo venturos eventus pronunciabant. Enimvero in curia solemni tres tunc erant archipræsules, Legionensis, [Londoniensis] et Eboracensis. Hi tres in palatio regali regem coronaverunt. Quatuor reges suffraganei quatuor aureos gladios præferebant; Angesilus rex Albaniæ, quæ nunc est Scotia; Cador rex Cornubiæ; Scatec rex Dumecæ, quæ nunc est Suthgales, id est, Gallia austrina; Caduallo Venedociæ, quæ nunc est Norgales, id est, Gallia borealis. Porro Urianus rex Murefensium cum x. comitibus palatinis, quos consules nuncupabant. Sunt autem comes Claudiocestriæ, comes Guigorniæ, comes Cestriæ, comes Caerguerensis, [hoc est, de Waleriut,] comes Leircestrensis, comes Saresberiensis, comes Batoniensis, comes Dorchecestrensis, comes Radochenensis, hoc est, Exenefordensis, cum duce Doroberniæ, multisque non minoris dignitatis. Sed et ex insulis subjectis rex Yberniæ, rex Uidlandiæ, rex Guthlandiæ, rex Orcadum, rex Norvegiæ, rex Daciæ, dux Rutenorum [hoc est Flandrensium]. Alii tamen Russiam Ruthoniam nominant. Sed et in provincia Narbonensi civitas Rutenensis Bituricensi est archiepiscopo subjecta. Item, consul Bononiensis, consul Cenomanensis, consul Andegavensis, dux

Pictaviensis ; Coelus rex Armoricorum Brittonum ; duodecim pares Galliarum, quos Gerinus Carnotensis conducebat. Sınguli quoque singula parabant officia, regem ad metropolitanam prosequentes ecclesiam. Reginam quoque iiij. præmissorum regum reginæ præcedebant, iiij. albas columbas præferentes. Celebrato solemniter divino obsequio, levioribus mutatoriis rex indutus ad mensam accedit. Regina in suo non minus solemni palatio cum dominabus illustribus discumbit. Sic enim Trojanis mos est, ut solemnibus diebus mares cum maribus, mulieres cum mulieribus, discumbunt seorsim atque distinctim. Finito convivio instaurantur ludi, et pro victoria munus regalis largitionis impenditur. Illic donantur honores, episcopatus assignantur, mutantur veterani, promoventur digni ; et dum circa hæc curia vacat, revocantur ad arma deliciosa juventus, Lucio consule Romano tributum pridem extortum per legatos petente. Unde datis induciis successit nova malorum congeries.

Verum post multa pericula exacta, Lucius conserto prælio trucidatur, multaque Romanorum et non modica Brittonum strage facta, victor Arcturus ubi Romanum invadit imperium, ad proprias ulciscendas injurias revocatur ; dum domestico crimine Modredus ejus nepos custos regni factus, usurpans regnum regis et domini, necnon avunculi præsumpsit fœdare conjugium. Unde post aliquot tempus pugna conserta cum Modredo nefandissimo et Childerico duce Saxonum, auxiliario Modredi e Germania nefandis pactis advocato, rex Albaniæ Angesilus et Galvandus Arcturi nepos, omnium par et in strenuitate omnibus præpar, sub dubio bellorum fato corruunt cum multis ; alteraque pugna renovata, Arcturus vulneratur, omnibus hostibus ab ipso peremptis. Unde secundum vulgarem Britonum traditionem in insula Davalun ipsum dicunt translatum, ut vulnera quotannis [recrudiscentia] sub interpolata sanatione curentur a Morganda fatata ; quem fabulose

Brittones post data tempora credunt rediturum in regnum.

Vulneratus itaque Arcturus, Constantino cognato suo, Cadoris ducis Cornubiæ filio, Britanniam regendam commisit, anno ab Incarnatione Domini quingentesimo xl. secundo. Constantino successit Conanus, Conano Vorporius; cui Malgo quidam, pulcherrimus, robustus et largissimus. Hic omnes insulas suæ ditioni restituit, Yberniam, Yslandiam, [Gothlandiam, Orcades,] Norwegiam et Daciam. Malgano successit Carecius, civilium bellorum amator; cujus sævitiam et inconstantiam non sustinens populus Brittonum et Saxonum, advocant in auxilium contra eum Gundmundum, regem Africanorum, qui ipsum de civitate in civitatem persecutus, cum sæva interminatione tandem in Gallias ire coegit. Sicque Gundmundus tota Loegria, quæ pars melior est et media regni, devastata, fugatis episcopis, destructis ecclesiis, monachis et clericis profugatis, in Gallias transit, auxilium daturus Ysembardo, nepoti Ludovici regis Francorum, qui cum Gundmundo tantum amicitiæ pepigit fœdus, quod ut facilius ejus haberet auxilium de Christiano factus est paganus, sacrifiis idolorum se maculans, ut cum Gundmundo vindictam de Ludovico avunculo suo sumeret, qui (ut asserunt) ipsum vi de Francia ejecerat. Ex isto tempore Saxones Anglos se nominaverunt qui Loegriam possiderunt, et ab eis Anglia dicta est, Britonibus fugatis atque dispersis. Diadema quoque Britonum in Anglos cessit. Constantinus, &c.

Ea in tempestate per plures Loegria divisa regulos in Cancia regem habuit Eldebertum, ad quem Augustinus a Beato Gregorio missus est. Quo ad fidem converso et una cum populo suo baptizato, transiens Augustinus ad Britones, illic septem episcopatus cum Legionense metropolita reperit. Illic abbas Dinot pater mille tunc extitit monachorum, qui solitarii divisique manentes, ex labore manuum sibi victualia quæsitabant. Augustino itaque sibi petente ab illis fieri Ethelbert of Kent. Abbot Dinot.

subjectionem negaverunt, eo quod hostium suorum communionem, nedum subjectionem, abominarentur, maxime cum suum archiepiscopum Britonum diademate insignivissent. Hoc responso motus rex Cantiæ Edelbertus, cum Edelfredo rege Northanhumbrorum et aliis regulis abbatem Dunoad peremit, et monachos ejus de confessoribus martyres fecit. Verum Brittones cum regulis confligentes, advocato Margadud, rege Dematarum et Caduano rege Venedorum et duce Cornubiæ, Edelfridum vulnerant; ipsoque cum suis in fugam versis, Caduanum sibi præficiunt in regem, facta concordia ut Caduanus Britanniam citra Humbriam possideat, Edelfredo ultra Humbriam regnante.

Caduallo. Illis post longam amicitiam defunctis, successerunt filii Caduallo ex Caduano, Eduinus ex Edelfredo. Hi post longam pacem discordes facti sunt, quia Caduallo negabat Eduinum diademate regali post se insigniri, dicens contra veterum esse traditiones regnum unius coronæ duobus coronatis debere submitti. Deinde post multa prælia conserta plurimosque necatos, tandem Caduallo auxilio Salomonis regis Armoricorum, cognati sui, Eduinum occidit, auxilium sibi dante Penda rege
S. Oswald. Merciorum: sicque cum Eduino peremptis regulis, Osualdo successore Edoini cum multis aliis post multas victorias ad martyrium ducto, Caduallo solus in Britannia regnavit. Hic est Oswaldus rex et martyr, cui speciali privilegio virtutum datum est quod quicunque ipsius vigilia jejunaverit in pane et aqua, quot annis id egerit, tot diebus ante obitum suum mortis adventum præsciet. Quod a sanctæ memoriæ Mauritio quondam Parisiensi episcopo, cum moraretur accepimus, qui quinquaginta diebus mortem suam prædixit, eo quod totidem annis jejunium hoc fecisse publice protestatus est. Hic asserit quod quisque qui jejunat vigilias omnium festivitatum Beatæ Mariæ, et Sancti Michaelis, et Sanctorum xj. mille martyrum, quæ est x. kalendas Julii, sino dubio, quantumcunque vulneretur,

sine pœnitentia non morietur; quod in multis probatum et a multis accepimus; sed et id ab eo qui a mortuis resurrexit testificatum est.

Oswaldo successit frater ejus Oswii, cum Cadvallone firmam pactus amicitiam. Sed cum in ipsum Oswi filius ejus Alvredus et Oswaldus filius fratris ejus insurgerent, et in alteram partem tacito Brittonum consilio Penda rex Merciorum auxiliarius advenisset, victus est Penda et occisus. Cui successit beneficio Cadvallonis Wilfridus filius Pendæ. Completis autem xl. et octo annis Cadvallo mortuus est. Corpus balsamo et aromatibus conditum super equum æneum collocaverunt, super occidentalem portam Londoniæ, in signum victoriæ, ad terrorem Saxonum.

Cadualloni successit Cadualladrus, ejus filius, cujus tempore inaudita fames et aeris corruptio insulam totam omnibus pene colonis destituerunt. Unde longo post tempore decurso, Saxones totam insulam occupantes Adelstanum primum regio diademate insignitum sibi [præfecerunt], dividentes regnum per ducatus et consulatus. Cum vero Saxonum tranquillitatem Cadualladrus interrumpere parasset, consilio potitus ac auxilio Alani regis Armoricorum, cognati sui, vox divina intonuit ut cœptis desisteret et ad Sergium Papam properaret, ut peracta Romæ pœnitentia inter Beatos acciperetur, Britonumque regnum tunc primum redituram promisit cum reliquiis corporis sui aliorumque sanctorum, quos propter paganorum metum dudum asportaverant, recuperarent. Consilio igitur divino motus Cadualladrus cœpta deserit, Romam adiit, ibique sub sancta confessione per manus Sergii Papæ languore defunctus sepultus est, anno Domini sexcentesimo octogesimo nono, duodecimo kalendas Maii. Cadwallader.

De regibus Anglorum a tempore Normannorum.

Jam nunc ad reges Anglorum enumerandos veniamus ab eo tempore quo, regno Brittonum profligato, Saxones Anglorum regnum susceperunt, illud vetustissimumque Majoris Britanniæ nomen in Angliæ nuncupationem transmutantes.

Verum quia opus nostrum ad inutilem protractionem ducere superfluum esset ac vano otio plenum, omissis multis regum et regni permutationibus, per regulos et generationes e latere venientes, nunc ab ipsa Anglia nunc a Dacia procedentibus regibus, omisso Canuto strenuissimo rege ejusque sequacibus, ad sanctissimum regem Eduuardum veniamus, cujus fidem et scientiam leges quas scripsit sancte testantur et miracula quotidiana loquuntur. Hic in die Apparitionis anno Domini M.xl. cœlos ingressus sub sancta confessione, hæredem reliquit Haraldum nepotem, virtute corporis incomparabilem, moribus ingenuum, militia singularem ; cujus tanta erat magnanimitas quod omnia sibi terrena subjicienda credebat, et secundum mentis quantitatem successum ipsi prosperitas arridebat. Dum pueriles ageret annos ex mandato regis avunculi sui apud ducem Neustriæ, quam vulgo Normanniam vocant, educatur, eo quod apud nobilissimos Anglos usus teneat filios suos apud Gallos nutriri, ob usum armorum et linguæ nativæ barbariem tollendam. Erat duci illi filius spurius Guillelmus, ex subinducta illi cujusdam filia genitus, eo consilio ut quoquomodo soboles ex eo Normannis nasceretur.

Death of Edward the Confessor.

A.D. 1066. Jan. 6.

Cum ergo more juvenculorum in curia regis hæres Angliæ et filius ducis essent confœderati, tandem venit eis in mentem ut Haraldus [sororem] Guillelmi acciperet in uxorem ac reginam, ac e converso Guillelmus Haroldi sororem in conjugem juraret et ducissam, unoquoque pro suo tempore pacta servaturos jurantibus.

Harold II.

William I.

Mortuo ergo sanctissimo rege Eduardo, Haraldus regnum suscepit, et defuncto duce, Guillelmus ducatum Neustriæ partim vi, partim quibusdam cum rege Francorum pactionibus, obtinuit. Mandat ergo dux regi ut secundum pristina jurata et uxorem suam recipiat, et duci debitam non neget. Quorum utrumque detestatus Haraldus, cum apud castrum Doloberniam in scafa per mare spaciendi causa se faceret cum paucis vectitari, tandem subito flatu avectus in Flandriam, commentus est se ad ducem venisse ut uxorem pollicitam acciperet, et daret promissam. Gaudenter acceptus et ad ducem veniens spondet firmius complere promissa, et ducta sorore ducis redit in Angliam; ubi suæ redditus potestati convertitur in arcum pravum, spretoque totiens iterato jurejurando in tantam ex privilegio singularis militiæ evehitur superbiam, quod omnia tentans et de malitia nullam capiens diffidentiam cum Scotis pugnam aggreditur; et dum inter atrocia vulnera hinc inde inflicta victor extitit, audit ducem Normanniæ, convocatis auxiliariis ex nobili stirpe Francorum, partem meridianam Angliæ intrasse, ut contemptum suum et verecundiam illatam ultore ferro vindicaret.

Comperiens talia rex Haraldus, ut erat audacissimus, vix alligatis vulneribus nuper in pugna factis, occurrit inconsiderate Normannis, exercitu suorum non exspectato. Ejus adventum sentientes Normanni, de paucitate diffisi, de strenuitate regis timentes, aggerem pro muro faciunt, et cum instaret dies Sabbati voto perpetuo se suamque posteritatem obligaverunt quod in perpetuum carnibus die Sabbati abstinerent si de manu fortiorum liberati sine damno secundum justitiam causæ suæ victoriam reportarent. Miserator ergo et misericors Dominus, qui justos exaudit et humiliat sicut vult superbos, quos inter primos insultus paulisper contrivit, in fine cum paucitate victores facit, et Heraldus utrum fuga sibi consuluerit an in prælio ceciderit

adhuc dubium reliquit. Dato igitur populo in dispersionem regeque evanescente, dux Normanniæ Londoniam advectus in regem evehitur, sorore Heraldi in uxorem ducta. Ex hinc prodit Guillelmus rex Anglorum per nuptias et dux Normannorum per paternam successionem. Hic post multos cum Anglis singulares conflictus, potens bellator, justus princeps, in omnibus tam modestus quam strenuus, tres filios reliquit, regem Guillelmum, Robertum cognomento Curtam Hosam, ducem Normannorum, et Henricum.

William II. Defuncto patre, succedit Guillelmus primogenitus in regnum; vir impius, ecclesiarum persecutor, immisericors circa imbelles; qui archiepiscopum Cantuariensem plurimum persecutus, ab angelo percutiente peremptus, Guintoniæ sepultus est sub infamiæ perpetuæ monumento. Dux Normannorum Robertus, inter illos qui per manus sanctissimi Urbani secundi ultramarinam peregrinationem susceperunt, primarius, cum comite Sancti Ægidii Raimundo, patre comitis Namfulsi, et duce Godefrido de Builun, et comite Baldewino, et Boemundo principe, et comite Stephano, et episcopo Aniciense, cum multis proceribus Hierosolymam adiit; vir in armis strenuissimus, misericordia plenus, et sicut sub armis consultissimus, ita depositis armis in perfectiore scientia non defectivus.

Capta Antiochia receptoque Dominico Sepulchro, dux Robertus in regem ultramarinæ acquisitionis eligitur, eo quod filius regis Anglorum strenuitate potens, stemmate cunctos præcelleret. Jam de morte primogeniti fratris sui Guillelmi nuncii adveniunt, et spe regni pacifice obtinendi, regnum sanctum in quo pro Christo pugnandum erat declinavit. Dux quoque Godefridus regnum suscipiendum in excusationem duxit, prætextu sanctæ humilitatis; asserens se indignum illic corona aurea insigniri ubi Christus corona spinea voluit coronari pro nostra salute. Cessit ergo diadema Hiero-

solymitanum comiti Baldewino, eo quod ipse inter tot agones excellentissimo ac singulari ictu paganum armatum per medium in duo frusta diviserat. Dux vero Robertus post multa mirabiliter ac laudabiliter acta, spe regni Anglicani repatrians, Henrico fratri juniori, (qui jam regnum invaserat,) obvius factus apud Tenarchebrai infra fines Normanniæ conserto prælio capitur; ex hinc apud Claudii Castrum quatuordecim annis incarceratus ibidem defunctus est, utroque regno privatus, Hierosolymitano quod contempsit, Anglicano quod appetiit.

Regnavit ergo rex Henricus in pace feliciter, cujus Henry I.
unico filio in mari Britannico naufragato, filia filio imperatoris Romani nuptui traditur. Hæc in tantum paternam sapientiam imitabatur quod cum paucis non dicam suppeditavit imperium, sed et ipsam Romam, quæ caput extat imperii, ditioni voluntatique suæ subjecit. Infra paucos annos, viro defuncto, dum ad patrem rediit in Angliam occultis insidiis capitur, eodemque furore continuato in uxorem ducitur a strenuissimo comite illustri Andegavensium Gaufredo, regis Fulconis ultramarini filio, ex quo suscepit tres filios, Henricum, Gaufredum Plantagenest, et Gulielmum Longam Spatam; rege Anglorum Henrico raptum filiæ dissimulante et de violentia faciente voluntatem. Post aliquot annos mortuo comite Andegavensium Gaufredo, filiaque regis eademque imperatrice retinente jure mariti ex successione filiorum Andegaviam, Turoniam et Cenomanniam, tandem avus, sola imperatrice cum filiis superstite, testamentum condidit, in quo filiam cum Henrico filio comitis Andegavensis instituit hæredem. Verum quia infans nondum trimus, consilium tanto regno debitum non haberet, nec muliebris sexus constantiam tam ferocissimis gentibus edomandis opportunam, necessarium visum fuit tutelæ nomine regem ad tempus inserere, cujus virtute ac strenuitate motus barbaræ gentis refrenarentur et enormia delicta punirentur.

Stephen. Erigitur ergo ex ipsius regis Henrici deliberatione comes Stephanus in regem pro tutore, regis Henrici ex sorore nepos, comitis Theobaldi frater, illustris Henrici Guintoniensis episcopi germanus, vir quidem in fide ferax, in promissis fidelis, militia singularis, simplicitate pius, omnis cupiditatis ac avaritiæ expers. Hic sacramento constrictus quod fideliter regnum tueatur et usque ad præfinita tunc tempora moderaretur, coronatur, inungitur et prospere regit populum, in fortitudine virtutis suæ ab omnibus formidatus et dilectus. Tandem simplicitate bonitatis ductus, circa puniendos compatiens et affligendos emollitus ut arcus humectatus lentescit, et a superbis magnatibus Anglis jam ex lenitate regis in insolentiam ductis, attentatus et impugnatus contradictionem sentit potentum et guerram. Faciebat ad causam seditionis quod, fide oblita et sacramento pridem præstito, consilio asseclarum suorum postposito, in animam gerit imperatricem cum filio legitimo, regni hærede, prorsus exhæredem facere, et loco illorum filium proprium substituere, comitem Eustachium, virum speciosum forma, affabilem, generosum, militibus placentem, largum, militia patrissantem. Huic ad defensionis augmentum in uxorem datur Constantia, regis Ludovici Francorum soror, hujus regis Philippi amita. Sed post modicum tempus, evanescente viro, eadem comiti Tolosano Raymundo nubit, ex qua ortus est comes iste Raymundus, cujus vitam miserandam testatur afflictio.

Henry II. Defuncto Eustachio regis Stephani filio unico, mota fuit in patrem Anglia, nobilibus regni regem propter fidem qua imperatrici tenebatur persequentibus. Exinde jam pubescente Henrico et ad armorum exercitio crescente, ducatus Normanniæ se mittit in deditionem; assumptoque ducis nomine Henricus fideles et potentes regni excitat ad arma. Tandem rebus armis actis strenuiter, dum conserto prælio inter Stephanum et ducem acies hinc inde consisterent, pax fit in hac forma, quod rex Stephanus dum vixerit regni teneret gubernacula, et

adoptatus Henricus in filium post ejus fata succedat regnum.

Nec mora; infra paucos annos defuncto rege Stephano dux coronatur in regem; qui ducta regina Franciæ et a piissimo rege Ludovico dimissa prætextu consanguinitatis probatæ, (filia scilicet quondam illustrissimi ducis Aquitaniæ, comitis Pictaviæ, Alienor,) genuit ex ea filios, contracto sibi dominio Aquitaniæ. Igitur Henricus rex Anglorum, dux Normannorum et Aquitanorum, et comes Andegavensis, genuit Guillelmum primogenitum, qui velut ros matutinus nec solis expectato calore pertransiit. Additur regi filius alter Henricus, qui vix plenæ pubertatis effectus ungitur in regem et diademate paterno coronatur, Juniorque Rex appellatur. Hic statura procerus, effigie præclarus, vultu pro debito jocunditatem et maturitatem prætendebat; speciosus inter filios hominum, affabilis, hilaris et apud omnes gratiosus et omnibus diligebatur, et omnibus amabilis inimicum habere non poterat; militia singularis, ut corporis venustate omnes antecedebat sic strenuitate, favore et morum insigni gratia, largitate et fidei sinceritate omnibus præferebatur. Quid plura? In hoc omnia probitatum et virtutum genera Deus conflavit, et quæ plus illustribus sors singularibus largitur singularius, huic ita omnia contendit generalius et pinguius dare præconia ut nil in eo terrenum fuisse putaretur, si non immatura morte fuisset interceptus. Nempe ut in ipso adolescentiæ fervore vivens mundo fuit solatium, ita moriens universæ militiæ fuit exitium. Unum in ejus planctu memini dixisse;

" Rosa formæ singularis
" Marcet, perit alter Paris,
" Hector alter occubuit.
" Alter primus, non secundus,
" Illi Troja, huic mundus,
" Et jus omne periit."

Cum obiit Henricus cœlum esuriit et mundus abiit mendicus.

Richard I. Post hunc genitus floruit ille rex regum terrenorum Ricardus, in strenuitate, magnanimitate, militia, scientia, et omnis generis virtutibus nulli mortalium secundus; sacri patrimonii Jesu Christi Terræque Sanctæ strenuus defensor; timor gentilium, mors hostium, gladius et tutamen Christianorum, cui mundus ad largitiones non sufficeret, et orbis velut pugillus erat ad dominandum.

Successit proles tertia, comes, aut potius dux Brittonum, Arcturo fabuloso animali virtute non inferior; strenuus, militia pollens, liberalitate excelsus, probitate et magnanimitate incomparabilis, exactis paucis in virtute immensa annis obiit.

John. Adjungitur quartus illustris rex Johannes, cujus incrementum ac laudes præsentiali inspectioni commendo, ne videar aut ex insufficientia mea minus dixisse de eo quam est; aut adulationi deservire in eo quod dixero aliquid quod est. Ecce! quod de leone rugiente quatuor leunculi prodierunt, quorum quilibet in fortissimum crevit leonem, aut itidem spe futuræ nobilitatis minitantem. Nec tacenda sunt insignia illa leonum ubera quæ suo lacte et strenuitate potissimas orbis partes illustraverunt. Dum ex eodem rege Henrico prodiit hinc ducissa Saxoniæ, cujus flos tu, serenissime princeps, ut bonæ arboris dulcissimum pomum processisti, cum illustri comite Palatino Henrico et Guillelmo Longa Spata, fratribus tuis utroque parente conjunctis; necnon nobilissima comitissa Alienora germana tua. Ex altera ejusdem Henrici filia novellæ et insignes plantationes Hispaniæ pullulant, filii illustrissimi regis Compostellani, quorum initia, si medium et finem cœpto prosequuntur auspicio, magis parum præambuli videbuntur quam pedissequi. Ex tertia quondam illustris regis Siculi conjuge prodiit Raimundus dux Narbonensis, comes Tolosæ et marcio Provinciæ, qui uti-

nam utriusque avi fidem, virtutem et constantiam imitabitur, ut sub ducis, comitis et marchionis nomine, virtuti et strenuitati regum avito more æquiparetur.

Hucusque, excellentissime Imperator, regum Angliæ stemma stirpesque perduxi, veniam postulans quia minus dixi, cum ad veritatem strenuitatemque prædecessorumque tuorum recensendam nec dies sufficere posset nec calamus.

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

Aaron, master, receives the confession of Herbert archbishop of Canterbury, 157.
Abacuc, S., king Richard encamps near, 43.
Abaelard, Peter, 11.
Abel, abbot of St. Osyth's, his death, 20.
Aberconway, Llewellyn, prince of Wales, buried at, 44.
Abernith, king Malcolm does homage at, 2.
Abimelec, king of Gerar, 239.
Abingdon, 408.
Abraham, the patriarch, 212, 239.
Acre, 24, 40, 151, 189, 190, 233, 236.
——— siege of, 29, 34, 234, 235.
——— taken by Saladin, 32, 142, 234, 235.
——— taken by the Christians, 252, 253, 254, 255.
——— Rufinus, bishop of, brings the cross from Jerusalem, 219; his death, 21, 225.
Adele, daughter of William I. king of England, 10.
Ademar, bishop of Puy, engages in the crusade, 3.
Adrian IV. pope, 15.
Adrianople, 161, 201.
Æthiopia, 258.
Afaitie, Henry le, physician, 158.
Africa, 67, 69.
Agnellus, Thomas, archdeacon of Wells, 263.
Aix-la-Chapelle, 88, 148.
Ala, daughter of Theobald count of Blois, 13.
Alan, son of Fulk Fitzwarin, 323, 325, 337, 339, 340, 341.
Alani, the, in Saladin's army, 210.
Alban, Saint, 19.
Alberburs, 330, 331, 346, 363, 410.
Albemarle, the earldom of, 61, 101, 136.
——— the castle of, 136.
——— William de, earl of Chester, conspires against Henry II., 18.
——— William de Fortibus, earl of, his death, 188.
Albert, master, *see* Gregory VIII. pope, 23.
Albigenses, their heresy, 192, 195.
Albini, William, defends Rochester castle, 176.
Alemania. *See* Germany.
Alexander III. pope, holds a council at Tours, 15; dies, 19.
Alexandria, 255, 260; troops raised in, 22, 128.
Alexis II. emperor of the East, his history, 75, 76, 149.
——— III. emperor of the East, 142, 143.
——— IV. emperor of the East, 142.
——— V. emperor of the East, 149, 150.
Alice, daughter of Louis VII. king of France, 13.
——— sister of Arthur, count of Brittany, 168, 190.
Alienor. *See* Eleanor.
Aleston, the manor of, 322, 412.
Alnwick, William king of Scotland captured at, 18.
Alphachini, doctors amongst the Saracens, 246, 249.
Alphonsus VIII. king of Castille, marries a daughter of Henry II., 14; his daughter Constance, 13.
Alps, the, 165, 258.
Alta Ripa, Ralph de, archdeacon of Colchester, his efficient service, 254; goes to the Holy Land, 24; dies there, 29, 254.

Alverna, 100.
Alvestot, the bishop of, at the siege of Constantinople, 143.
Amalric, brother of Guy king of Jerusalem, his death, 161.
Ambervile, Clarice de, 410, 411, 414.
Amesford, William de, one of the garrison of Rochester castle, 176.
Amphibalus, Saint, discovery of his relics, 19.
Amys, son of the duke of Little Brittany, 290.
Amys le Marchys, 330.
Anastasius IV. pope, 14; his death, 15.
Ancoritana Marcia, 258, 259.
Andely, the castle of, disputes respecting, 70; taken by Philip Augustus, 143, 144.
——— the island of, 100; taken by Philip Augustus, 143, 144.
Andronicus I. emperor of Constantinople, his death, 75, 76.
Angers, the castle and town of, 139.
Angoulême, the count of, king John marries his daughter, 103, 163; although betrothed to Hugh le Brun, 129, 135.
Anjou, held by the English crown, 22, 352; king John sends an army into, 99; conquered by Philip Augustus, 146.
——— Fulk VI. count of, 9.
——— Geoffrey count of, 12.
——— Henry count of. *See* Henry II. king of England.
——— John count of. *See* John king of England.
——— William de Roches, one of the nobles. *See* Roches, William de.
Anselm, S., appointed to the see of Canterbury, 3; crowns queen Matilda, 4; holds a council, 4; his death, 7.
——— the chaplain, quoted as an authority by the author, 54.
Anthony, the Roman citizen, 258.
Antichrist, 68, 69, 70, 195.
Antioch, taken by the Christians, 7, 74, 251; fortified, 22; Frederic emperor of the Romans buried there, 24; conquered by the Saracens, 261.
Antioch, the patriarch of, writes to the pope, 114.
——— Raymond prince of, 22.
Antwerp, king Richard embarks at, 62.
Aquisgranum. *See* Aix-la-Chapelle.
Aquitaine, passes into the hands of Henry duke of Normandy, 13, 25; given to Otho of Saxony by king Richard I., 70; invaded by Hugh le Brun, 129; disturbances in, 146; recovered by king John, 169.
——— John king of England, cited to Paris as count of, 135, 136.
——— William duke of, 10.
Arabia, 69, 210.
——— Maritima, 258.
Aragon, the king of. *See* Peter II. king of.
Argentan, Oliver de, taken prisoner, 175.
——— Richard de, killed at the siege of Bedford castle, 206.
——— Roger de, an attendant of Richard I., 55.
——— master W. de, his authority quoted, 201.
Arius, his heresy, 69.
Armenia, 24, 252, 258.
Armenians, L. king of the, 258.
Arques, taken by Philip Augustus, 136.
——— castle of, besieged by the French, 138; taken, 145, 146, 313, 412, 413.
Arthur, king, 435; his bones found at Glastonbury, 36.
——— duke of Brittany, 20, 168.
——— his sister. *See* Alice.
Arundel, earl of, sides with king John, 171.
Ascalon, strongly fortified, 22, 229; puts to flight the Saracens, 34; besieged by the Saracens, 236; surrenders, 237.
Ashdown, becomes the property of Fulk Fitzwaryn, 408.
Asia, 24, 69.
Assur, 231; abandoned by the Saracens, 34.
Atie, Gerard de, defends the castle of Loches, 146; he is captured with it, 152.

Audele, Henry le, 356, 358, 360, 361.
Audwyn, son of the duke of Little Bretagne, sent into England, 290.
Augensis comes. *See* Eu, count of.
Augustine, St., of Canterbury, comes into England, 284.
Aunfloreis, of Orkney, her history, 375, 377.
Aunflour. *See* Aunfloreis.
Aupeis, a holy virgin named, her history, 125, 126, 127, 128.
Austria, 53, 258.
——— the duke of, seizes and imprisons king Richard, 55, 58; the king defends himself in the presence of, 59; his miserable death, 65, 73.
Auster, the chapel of, 413.
Auvergne, 100.
Avallon, the island of, king Arthur buried there, 36.
Avennis, Jacobus de, goes to the Holy Land, 23; at the siege of Acre, 252.
Avynoun, Piers de, killed by Fulk Fitz Waryn, 330.

B.

Babbyng, the forest of, 331.
Babylon, 22, 37, 38, 40, 68, 69, 189, 216, 228, 229, 239, 260, 261.
——— soldan of, 189, 235, 237.
Bagot castle, in Orkney, 375, 377.
Balaham castle, in Pentlyn, 353, 356, 364.
Baldac, the caliph of, 190, 261.
Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
——— bishop of Worcester, 20.
——— abbot of Forde, 20.
——— king of Jerusalem. *See* Jerusalem.
——— brother to Geoffrey, duke of Lorraine, engages in the crusade, 3.
Balisanus, of Naples, his cowardice, 226; wishes to treat with Saladin, 246.
Bar, the count of, at the siege of Acre, 252.
Barbary, 53, 397, 400.
Barbeau, the abbey of, king Louis VII. buried there, 19.
Barbeflet, disaster off, 8; Normandy as far as, taken by king Philip, 145.
Bari, the body of S. Nicolas translated to, 2.
Barnwell, ordination at, 193.
Barres, William de, takes the cross, 23.
Bartholomew, of Carcasa, his heresy, 195.
Baruth, 32, 40; taken by Saladin, 21.
Bath, the episcopal see of, 162.
——— Reginald Fitz Josceline, bishop of, his death, 57.
——— Savarin, bishop of, consecrated, 61; his death, 162.
Bavaria, 258.
——— the king of, 147.
——— the duke of, 153.
Baugé, Hugh de, taken prisoner at Mirabel, 138.
Bayeux, burnt by Henry I., 5.
Beauchamp, Hugh de, taken prisoner by the Saracens, 21.
——— William de, his lands given to Fulco de Breaute, 205; dispossessed of the castle of Bedford, 206.
Beaulieu, the abbey of, founded by king John, 147.
Beaumont, the viscount of, leaves king John's party, 139.
Beauvais, the bishop of, 6, 23; taken prisoner by king Richard, 76; at the siege of Acre, 252.
Bec, Hugh earl of Chester buried at, 80.
Becket, Thomas archbishop of Canterbury, banished, 15; murdered, 16; at the instigation of Henry II., 26; his tomb visited by Richard I., 63.
Beda, Ven., his remains found, 5.
Bedefordia, Gerard de, master of the Temple, killed, 252.
Bedford, the castle of, besieged by king John, 205, 206; taken, 207, 208.
——— church of S. Cuthbert at, destroyed, 205.
——— church of S. Paul at, destroyed, 205.

Bedouins, the, 37, 210, 230, 260.
Beithhalla, the Temple named, 249.
Belleem. *See* Bethlehem.
Belehealme, Roger de, 278, 279.
——— Robert, son of Roger, 279.
Belus, king of Hungary, 20.
Belver, overrun by the Saracens, 234.
Berengaria, becomes the wife of king Richard I., 31; returns from Palestine to England, 52.
Bernard, St., enters Citeaux, 7; dies, 13, 14.
Berri, 100.
Bersabe, the well of, 239.
Bertram, son of the duke of Little Bretagne, 290.
Besigebelem, the well of, 239.
Beteloyne, the island of, 396, 402.
Bethany, overrun by the Syrians, 219; destroyed, 240.
Bethlehem, captured by the Saracens, 22, 239.
——— the prior of, 39.
Bethsaida, 215.
Betonoble, 37, 39.
Betsan, 234.
Betun, Baldwin de, with king Richard when he is taken prisoner, 54, 55.
Betunia, Conus de, present at the siege of Constantinople, 143.
Bigod, Hugh, earl, 17; his death, 19.
Blakia, the kingdom of, 162.
Blakus, Johannes, 161, 201.
Blancmostiers, the lord of, 411.
Blaunchelaunde, 288, 412.
Blaunchetour, Malette de. *See* Peverel.
Blauncheville, 288, 290, 293, 322, 323, 326, 327, 328, 331, 347, 356, 357, 358, 359, 409, 410, 412, 414.
Blees, sir Berard de, 394.
Blois, Louis count of, at the siege of Constantinople, 143; killed there, 161, 202.
——— Theobald count of, 10, 11, 161, 202; assumes the cross, 23; dies at the siege of Acre, 29.
——— William de, archdeacon of Buckingham, becomes bishop of Worcester, 186.
Boamund, son of Robert Wiscard, goes to the Holy Land, 3; his palace at Constantinople, 149.
Bohemia, 258.
Bon-Port, Cistercian abbey at, 97.
Boleria, 258.
Bova, Hugh de, employed by king John, 174; drowned, 175.
Borgoyne, the duke of. *See* Burgundy.
Botiler, Hubert le, archbishop of Canterbury, 341, 342, 362, 363, 364, 365.
Boulogne, the comté of, 148.
——— the count of, 77, 135, 136, 148, 152, 169.
——— Eustace, count of, son of king Stephen, 6, 10.
——— Matthew, count of, 148.
——— Reginald, count of, 148.
Bourges, the diocese of, 77.
Bouvines, the battle of, 169.
Boxley, the abbey of, 156, 160.
Braban, M. de, at the siege of Constantinople, 143.
Brabant, 174, 258.
——— Walter Buc de. *See* Buc, Walter.
Brachium Sancti Georgii, the strait so called, 142.
Brachol, Peter de, at the siege of Constantinople, 143.
Bracy, Adolf, cousin to Fulk Fitz Waryn, 330, 337, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 364, 372, 374, 381, 383, 384, 385.
Bradene, the forest of, 333.
Bradwelle, Osborn de, his house haunted by a spirit, 120, 121.
Bran, king, 281.
Braose, Giles de, his possessions restored, 168.
——— William de, 147, 168; surrenders Arthur to king John, 138; expelled from England, 164.
Braute, William, constable of Bedford Castle, 205.
Braybrook, Henry de, seized by Fulco de Breaute, 206.
Brescia, overthrown by an earthquake, 194.

Bretagne, 290, 293, 330, 378, 346; given to Arthur, 101; the inhabitants of, rise against king John, 99, 139, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 146.
——— the count of, taken prisoner, 169.
——— Arthur, count of, 20; his claim preferred to that of king John, 99; the comté granted to him, 101; taken prisoner at Mirabel, 137, 138; deliberations as to his treatment, 139; Hubert de Burgh's conduct towards him, 139, 140, 141; his subsequent treatment and death, 143, 144, 145.
——— Geoffrey, count of, 20, 99, 323.
Brienne, the count of, at the siege of Acre, 252.
British Sea, the, 62.
Brito, taken by Saladin, 236.
——— Robert, starved to death, 63.
Briwere, William, 171.
Bromholm, history of the Rood of, 202, 203.
Bruere, Marioun de la, 300, 301, 305, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312.
Brugge, the castle of, 279.
Brun, Fulk le. *See* Fitz Waryn, Fulk le.
Brun, Hugh, rebels against king John, 128; appeals for protection to the king of France, 135; joins Arthur of Bretagne, 137; taken prisoner at Mirabel, 138. *See* March, Hugh, count of.
Brastut, 280.
Brutus, 280, 424.
Brutz, the, 290.
Bruvyle, Piers de, 343, 344, 345, 346.
Bruyz, sir Godard de, 297, 299.
Buc, Walter, one of king John's retainers, 177; his atrocities, 178.
Buckingham, William de Blois, archdeacon of, 186.
Bugrensa, 258.
Burgarians, the province of the, 195.
Burgh, Hubert de, chamberlain and justiciary to king John, has the custody of Arthur of Brittany, 139; whom he protects, 139, 140; defends the castle of Chinon, 146, 155; taken prisoner by the French, 154; surrenders Dover castle to prince Louis, 182; defeats and kills Eustace le Moyne, 185; a party formed against him, 203; protected by Henry III., 204.
Burgundy, 258, 291, 292.
——— Eudo II., duke of, assumes the cross, 23; joins the army, 37; his treachery, 38, 39, 40, 41; his death, 52.
Burriz, taken by king Richard, 84.

C.

C. episcopus Portuensis, 195.
Caen, William I. buried at, 2; taken by Henry I., 5; taken from king John by Philip Augustus, 145.
Caffachaki, the, invade the Christian territory, 210.
Cafra, overrun by the Saracens, 211.
Cahaus, Maude de, 342, 362, 363, 364.
Caim, Mount, pillaged by the Saracens, 232.
Caiphus, Mount, 34, 231, 255.
Calais, prince Louis collects his army at, 181.
Caldeans, the, 245, 258.
Calixtus II., pope, meets king Henry I. at Gisors, 8; his death, *ib.*
Calne, Richard de, incident which occurred near his house, 119.
Calvary, Mount, 245.
Campania, 73.
——— *See* Champagne.
Cana, of Galilee, 211, 215.
Canaan, 216.
Canis, flumen, 228.
Canterbury, 336, 341, 362, 407, 422.
——— the city of, 63, 156, 159, 168, 174, 181, 183.
——— cathedral church of, 159, 162, 202.
——— convent of, 163.
——— province of, 134.
——— S. Gregory's church at, 157.
——— S. Trinity, church of, at, 157.
——— Baldwin, archbishop of, succeeds

Canterbury—*cont.*
to the see of, 20; goes to the Holy Land, 23; crowns king Richard, 27, 96; builds a chapel at Lambeth, 88; his death, 29, 255, 256.
——— Hubert Walter, archbishop of, 71, 89; returns from the Holy Land, 64; assists at the coronation of king Richard, 64; ornaments the chapel of S. Thomas at Lambeth, 88; mitigates king Richard's severity, 92, 98; crowns king John, 99; intercedes with the king for the Cistercians, 102, 103, 104; his interview with the king, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109; bull of Innocent III. to, 113; sent into France, 144; dissuades king John from sailing into France, 152; his last illness, 156, 157; his death, 158; his character 159.
——— John, bishop of Norwich, proposed election to the see of, 162.
——— Reginald Fitz Joceline, archbishop of, his election, 57; his death, 58.
——— Stephen Langton, archbishop of, consecrated, 163; summoned by the king to Canterbury, 164; goes to Rome, 165; returns to England, 166; mollifies the king's anger, 167; mediates between John and the nobles, 172; the king enraged against him, 173; leaves England, 173; crowns Henry III., 187; translates the relics of Thomas Becket, 188; holds a council at Oxford, 190; sent to Louis IX. of France, 197; at the siege of Bedford castle, 206, 207, 208; his remains translated, 188.
——— William, archbishop of, his death, 10.
Caorzin, taken by king Philip, 25.
Caranza, the abbey of, adopts the rule of the Carthusians, 133.
Carcasa, the town of, 195.
——— Bartholomew of, a heretic, 195.
Carmel, Mount, pillaged, 231.
Carram, the church of founded by Walter Espec, 9.
Carreganant, 363.
Carthage, 380, 381, 384, 385, 399.
Carthusians, the order of the, protected by king John, 110; excepted from contributing to the crusade, 116.
Cassini, the, pollute the temple at Jerusalem, 249.
Castellione, Raymond de, slain by Saladin, 21.
Castellum, Radulphi taken by king Philip, 25.
Castille, Alphonsus IX. king of, 67, 100.
——— Blanche of, 100, 101.
Castle Bagot, 375, 377.
Castle Baudwyn, 326.
Castle Bran, 280.
Caus, Matilda de. *See* Fitz Waryn, Mahaud de.
Cava Templi, taken by Saladin, 22.
Cavan, occupied by Saladin 210.
Caveni, Andrew de, taken prisoner by king John, 138.
Cedron, the torrent, 241.
Celestine II., pope, 11
——— III., pope, 29, 65; his death, 72.
Cenomannia. *See* Mans, Le.
Cesarea, 51, 218; taken by Saladin, 21; abandoned by the Saracens, 34; overrun by Saphadin, 228.
Chali, Cheperol, king Richard I. killed before, 94.
Champagne, Henry count of, 151, 254.
——— Mary, countess of, 151.
——— Theobald, count of, 162.
——— the marshal of. at the siege of Constantinople, 143.
Champ Geneste, 297.
Chartres, the bishop of, anecdote about him, 200.
Cherbourg, taken from king John, 145.
Chester, 278, 280, 321.
——— Harold II. said to have become a monk at, 1.
——— bishops of. *See* Lichfield.
——— constable of, defends Château Gaillard, 144.
——— earl of, 171.
——— Rondulf, earl of, 389 390, 391, 393, 395, 407, 408, 409.

Chester, William de Albemarle, earl of, conspires against Henry II., 18.
Chielmaresford, tempest at, 193.
Chinon, the castle of, Henry II. dies at, 25; given in charge to Robert de Turnham, 99; holds out against the French, 146, 155; but at last is taken, 154.
Cinomannia. *See* Mans, Le.
Cinque Ports, the fleet of, 185, 203.
Cistercians, the order of. *See* Citeaux.
Cisterna Joseph, 217.
Citeaux, the order of, 67, 82, 97, 98, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 141, 147, 149, 160, 161; its origin, 4, 7; persecuted by king John, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 163, 164; exempted from taxation, 116, 130.
Clairvaux, 13, 82.
——— Henry, monk of, 6.
Clement, S., 379.
——— III., pope, 23, 29.
Cleopatra, 258.
Clermont, the council of, 3.
Clerfountaygne, Aaron de, 332.
——— Morgan, son of Aaron de, 332.
Cluni, the abbot of, 58.
——— the order of, 202.
Coggeshale, 20; the abbey of, founded, 11; dedication of the high altar at, 16; plundered, 177.
——— Benedict de Stratford, abbot of, 187; his death, 192.
——— Geoffrey, abbot of, 192.
——— Odo, abbot of. *See* Odo.
——— Peter, abbot of. *See* Peter.
——— Ralph, abbot of, 162; his writings, 163.
——— Robert, converse of, incident which occurred to him, 134.
——— Simon de Toni, abbot of. *See* Toni, Simon de.
———, Thomas, abbot of, 65; his death, 162.
Colchester, the castle of, beseiged, 178, 179.
——— Gilbert de, 338.
——— Ralph de Altaripa, archdeacon of, joins the crusade, 24, 29; does good service in Palestine, 254.
Cologne, archbishop of, 88, 147, 148.
——— the weight used at, mentioned, 60.
Columba, the abbot of, 130.
Comnenus, Alexis, 75.
Conan, duke of Brittany, 20.
Conrad, son of the emperor Frederic, 24.
——— le Marchis, 21.
Constance, daughter of Louis VI., king of France, 6, 15.
——— of Castille, wife of Louis VII., queen of France, 13.
——— duchess of Brittany, 20.
Constantine, the palace of, 75, 149.
Constantinople, 75, 149, 150, 151, 251 besieged and taken by the crusaders, 142, 143, 201.
——— Alexis, emperor of, 142, 143, 149.
——— Andronicus, emperor of, 75.
——— Baldwin, emperor of, 150, 161, 164, 201.
——— Emanuel, emperor of, 75.
——— the patriarch of, 142, 162.
Corbet, Thomas, 358.
Corf Castle, held by Peter de Maullei, 190.
Codini, the, 210.
Corfu, 53, 142.
Cornhill, Reginald de, keeper of Rochester castle, 174, 176.
Cornwall, 280, 425.
Corve, the river, 279.
Coryneus, the giant, 280, 281.
Cosham, Piers, 338.
——— Thomas, 338.
——— William, 338.
Courcelles, the castle of, taken by king Richard, 83, 84.
Courtenay, Elizabeth de, 6.
——— Reginald de, 6.
Coventry, the monks of, 80.
——— bishop of. *See* Lichfield.
Cumani, the, 210.
Cumin, Robert, killed at Durham, 1.
Curcun, Robert de, 170.
Curthose, Robert. *See* Robert.
Cuthbert, Saint, translation of his relics, 5.

Cyprus, 36, 161; king Richard at, 30, 31, 42.
——— the emperor of, 59, 189.
Cyson, the torrent, 219.

D.

Dagworth, incident which occurred there, 120, 121.
Dalmatia, heresy in, 195.
Damascus, 189, 238, 252, 260, 261; besieged by the Christians, 12.
——— king of, 234.
Damietta, 260; besieged by the Christians, 187; taken by them, 189, 193.
Dammartin, the count of, 10.
Dangu, king Richard at, 83, 84, 85.
Danube, the, 55, 65.
Daron, 22, 229; taken by king Richard, 37.
David, king, 239.
——— the tower of, 243.
——— of India (alias Prester John), 190.
Dieppe, taken by king Philip Augustus, 61.
Dee, the river, 288.
Denmark, 36, 62, 378.
——— Canute VI., king of, 62.
Dereham, the abbey of, founded by king John, 160.
Devizes, the nunnery of, 163.
Domesday-Book, compiled, 2.
Domfront, taken by Philip Augustus, 145.
Donald, king of Scotland, 3.
Donwal, 281.
Dotaym, the plain of, 217, 232.
Douay, battle between the French and the Flemings near, 169.
Dover, 30, 174, 364, 365, 385.
——— castle, besieged by Prince Louis, 181, 182, 183, 185, 203, 204.
Dreux, Robert, count of, 6.
Droyndoun, Yerward, prince of Wales, 316, 321.
Duceavia, the port of, 142.
Dunbar, the family of, 290.
Duncan, king of Scotland, killed, 3.
Dunwich, fleet collected at, 181.
Durham, monks settle there, 2.
——— Hugh Pudsey, bishop of, 18.
——— Philip of Poictiers, bishop of, 70.
——— Robert Cumin killed at, 1.
——— Walcher, bishop of. *See* Walcher.
Dynan (Bridgenorth), the castle of, 179, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 323.
——— the town of, 295, 316, 317, 323.
——— Hawyse de, 294, 296, 298, 306, 315, 320, 323, 330.
——— sir Joce de, 279, 294, 295, 296, 297, 299, 300, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 311, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 320, 321, 323.
——— Sibylle de, 294, 296, 298, 323.
Dynorben, 356.

E.

Ebrard, bishop of Norwich, 8, 12.
Edmund, St., his body translated, 85, 86, 87.
Edolfesness, discovery at, 120.
Edom, 216.
Edward, prince of Scotland, killed, 3.
Egle, Gilbert del, present at the deathbed of Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, 157.
Egypt, 22, 210, 228, 232, 238, 258.
——— the king of, 220, 236.
Eleanor, queen, wife of Henry II., goes to Palestine, 12, 31; divorced from Louis VII., king of France, 13; her issue, 14; at Mirabel, 137; imprisoned, 18; her vision about her son Henry, 272, 273; her death, 144.
——— wife of Louis VII., king of France, 10.
——— daughter of king Henry II., 14.
——— sister of Arthur, count of Brittany *See* Alice.

Elias, the prophet, 236.
——— his church on Mount Carmel destroyed, 231.
Elizabeth, St., her relics, 233.
Ellesmere, 288, 322.
Ely, the isle of, besieged.
——— Eustace, bishop of, 70, 165; letter to him from Richard I., 84; sent into France, 144; his death, 171.
——— the church of, made a bishoprick, 7.
——— Geoffrey Ridel, bishop of, dies, 26.
——— John de Fontibus, bishop of, 187, 193, 197.
——— William de Longocampo, bishop of, 28, 30, 58, 70.
——— Richard de Lucy, archdeacon of, 28.
Emaus, 37.
Emanuel. *See* Manuel.
Emfrid, 255.
Endor, 233.
Eneas, son of the king of Scotland, 290.
Epte, the river, 12, 84.
Erkenwald, bishop of London, his translation, 12.
Ernaldi castellum, 37, 38.
Ernaud, son of Roger Belehealme, 299.
Erwell. *See* Orwell.
Eschavye, La Graunde, 378.
Essex, 110, 120, 182.
——— Henry de, fights a duel, 15.
Estrange, Guy le, 290, 293.
——— John, 355, 356, 358.
Estrat, 356.
Ethiopia, 360.
Etrepagni, 12.
Etta. *See* Epte, the river.
Eu, the comté of, taken by Philip Augustus, 136.
——— the count of, 169.
Eudov, incident at, 125, 126.
Eugenius III., pope, 11; his death, 14.
Eustace, son of king Stephen, 6, 10.
——— the monk, a pirate, 172; killed, 185, 203.
Evrard. *See* Ebrard.
Evreux, the city of, 100; taken by Philip Augustus, 62.
Evreux, the count of, 101.
Ewyas, 295, 302, 307.
Eynesham, vision of a monk at the monastery of, 71.

F.

Faba, a castle of the Knights Templars at, 22, 232.
Faicete, John, 243.
Falaise, the castle of, earl Arthur imprisoned in, 139; removed from, 143; taken by king Philip, 145.
Falco, the Norman, 191; serves under king John, 177; at the battle of Lincoln, 185; his history, 204; the castle of Bedford given to him, 205; besieged in it, 206, 207; leaves England, 208.
Falconberg, Eustace de, bishop of London, 188.
Fare, the castle of, 100.
Faversham, the abbey of, founded by king Stephen, 11; queen Matilda buried there, 11, 14.
Fenicis regio, 228, 235.
Ferdinand, son of Sancho, king of Portugal, 164.
Ferrers, the earl of, assumes the cross, 23; opposes king John, 171.
Firminianus, master, secretary to Thomas Becket, 157.
Fitz Aleyn, ... 188.
Fitz Baldwin, Baldwin, earl of the Isle of Wight, 205.
Fitz Candelow, of Porkynton, 350.
Fitz Gerold, Warin, 205.
Fitz Guareyn, Aleyn, 358, 374.
——— Philip, 358, 374, 402, 403.
Fitz John, Payn, 323.
Fitz Peter, Geoffrey, justiciary of England, 168.
Fitz Roger, Morys, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352.
Fitz Sampson, Anable, 343, 346, 347.
——— Robert, 343, 344, 346.

Fitz Walter, Robert, defends Normandy against the French, 143; outlawed by king John, 165; in arms against him, 171, 174, 175, 177.
Fitz Warin, Clarice, second wife of Fulk, 410, 411.
——— Eve, daughter of Fulk, 411.
——— Fulk, his parentage and education, 294; his marriage, 303; goes to king Henry, 319; his wars with the Welsh, 321; his issue, 323; assaults prince John, 324; favoured by king Richard, 325; persecuted by king John, 326, 346; with whom he has an interview, 328; turns highwayman, 333; his adventures, 340; takes refuge in Wales, 350; his wife and children, 362 his adventures in France, 365; and elsewhere, 369; returns to England, 385; his encounter with king John, 386; his exploits abroad, 396; returns to England, 403; king John reconciled to him, 407; goes into Ireland, 408; his sickness and death, 411.
——— Fulk, the younger, 363.
——— Hauise, daughter of Fulk, 362.
——— John, son of Fulk, 323, 325, 333, 337, 341, 394, 396.
——— Mahaud, 410.
——— Philip, the Red, 323, 325, 337, 402.
——— William, 164, 168, 252, 392, 393, 395, 403, 406.
Flanders, invaded by Philip Augustus, 77, 166.
——— Baldwin, count of, 77, 78, 83, 130, 135, 142, 143, 149, 150, 151.
——— Charles, count of, 9.
——— Ferrand of Portugal, count of, 164, 166, 168, 169.
——— Henry, brother of Baldwin, count of, 149.
——— Isabella, countess of, 17.
——— Jane, countess of, 164.
——— Mary of Champagne, countess of, 130, 151.
——— Matilda of Flanders, countess of, 30.
——— Matthew, brother of Philip, count of, 10.
Flanders, Philip, count of, 17, 19, 23, 30, 34, 122.
——— Robert, count of, 3.
Flavigni, the abbot of, preaches in England, 133.
Foliot, Gilbert, bishop of London, dedicates the High Altar at Coggeshall, 16; his death, 23.
Fontevrault, the abbey of, 96; Henry II. buried there, 25.
——— the vicomté of, 138.
Forest, the New, 406.
Fougères, Ralph de, dies at the siege of Acre, 29.
——— William de, revolts from king John, 139.
Fountains, John, abbot of, becomes bishop of Ely, 187, 193.
France, 2, 133, 252, 322, 398, 400.
——— Agnes de Meranie, queen of, wife of Philip Augustus, 112, 113, 133.
——— Alice of Champagne, queen of, wife of Louis VII., her death, 162.
——— Ingeburga, queen of, wife of Philip Augustus, 112, 113.
——— Louis VII., king of, 75, 121, 144.
——— Louis VIII., king of, 100, 101.
——— Louis IX., king of, sends troops into England, 176; plans a descent, 180; arrives, 181; his acts here, 181, 182, 183, 184; returns to France, 185; again arrives in England, 185; leaves it, 186; succeeds to the crown of France, 196, 197; overruns Poitou, 208.
——— Philip Augustus, king of, his descent, 13; succeeds to the throne, 19; resolves to go to the Holy Land, 20, 23; quarrels with Henry II., 24, 25; joins Richard in the crusade, 29, 30, 31, 32; the two kings disagree, 33, 96; Philip returns, 34; invades Normandy, 61, 62, 63, 64; hinders the liberation of king Richard, 74; ravages Normandy, 76; his expedition against Flanders, 77; its issue, 78, 83; defeated by Richard, 84, 85; elected emperor, 88; invades Normandy, 99; makes peace with king John, 100, 101; payment to him, 103; repu-

France—*cont.*
diates his wife, 112, 113, 133; his disputes with king John, 135, 136; assists Arthur of Brittany, 137; besieges the castle of Arques, 138; overruns Normandy, 143, 144, 145, 146; forms a league against England, 148; his tyranny in Normandy, 152; takes the castle of Chinon, 154, 155; overruns Flanders, 166, 169; makes peace with king John, 170; sides with the barons, 172; truce with Henry III., 187; his will, 193; death, 195; incidents which happened in his time, 197, 198, 199.
——— Philip, prince of, son of Philip Augustus, 196.
Frederic I., emperor of the West, 12, 14, 15, 19, 29; goes to the Holy Land, 24, 251, 255; his letter to Saladin, 257; Saladin's letter to him, 259.
Friase, John de, 143.
Fulco, of Nuilly, his history, 80, 81, 82, 130, 133.
Fulham, 12.
Furness Abbey, founded, 11.
Fussien, Johannes, 143.

G.

G. legate. *See* Gualo.
Galeway, the king of, 291.
Galilee, the country of, 215, 217, 218, 220, 221; invaded by Saladin, 210, 236.
——— the see of, 223.
Galloway, Roland, the prince of, comes to Lincoln, 107.
Garizim, mount, overrun by the Saracens, 233.
Gascony, 146, 147, 152, 392.
Gaudii Mons, Saladin encamps at, 243.
Gaza, 34.
Gazara, 54.
Gazaris, 22, 229, 237
Gelasius III. pope, 8.
Geoffrey, count of Anjou, 9, 22.
Geoffrey, count of Brittany, son of Henry II., 9, 14, 20, 323.
——— son of king John, 154.
George, St., the bishop of, 231.
Geomagog, the giant, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 286.
Gerar, 228, 236, 239.
Germany, 53, 55, 133, 147, 252, 255, 258, 259.
——— Frederic I., emperor of, 74, 147.
——— Henry VI., emperor of, has king Richard in custody, 58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 66; his death, 72, 73, 74.
——— Otho IV., emperor of, 88, 133, 147, 148, 163, 164.
Gesrael, ravaged by the Saracens, 232.
Gesyra, 261.
Gessemani, 241.
Ghernemuthe. *See* Yarmouth.
Giffard, David, taken prisoner, 175.
Gilboa, the mountains of, 219.
Gilervallis, Fulco de, taken prisoner, 85.
Ginana, king Richard captured at, 55.
Gisors, pope Calixtus II. comes to, 8 given to Louis VII., 12; held by the French, 61, 76, 83; the French defeated at, 84, 85; ceded to France by king John, 100; the crusade preached at, 251.
Glanville, Bartholomew de, keeper of Oxford castle, 117.
——— Ralph de, 28; takes prisoner the king of Scotland 18; joins the crusade 23.
Gloucester, 319, 321.
——— the earl of, 407.
——— daughter of the earl of, wife of king John, 61, 103.
——— the earldom of, 101.
——— H. de Bohun, earl of, 177.
——— Robert, earl of, 11.
——— William, earl of, 18.
Godebrand, 296.
Gouffern, the abbey of, 141.
Goynez, Yweyn, 278.
Graal, the Holy, 413.

Grandmont, the Order of, 116, 410.
Gravelines, 181.
Gray, John, bishop of, Norwich, proposed election of, to the see of Canterbury, 162.
Greek fire, used by the Turks, 244, 255.
Gregory VIII. pope, 23.
Gualo, papal legate in England, 184, 185, 186.
Guarin. *See* Fitz Warin.
——— Aleyn, son of, 358.
Guenouwyn, son of Yweyn Keveyloc, 351, 352, 353, 354.
Gurnay, Hugh de, 62, 101, 136.
Gutland, 378.
Guy de Lusignan, king of Jerusalem. *See* Jerusalem.
Gwychard, son of the duke of Little Brittany, 290.
Gylebert, mount, 278.
Gymele, the ford of, 353.
Gyrant de France, 330.
Gyrard, son of the duke of Little Brittany, 290.
Gyssic, the territory of, 8.

H.

Haghene, the castle so called, 17.
Haimeric, brother of Guy, king of Jerusalem, his death, 161.
Hainault, Philip count of, 19.
Hampshire, the ports in, 173.
Harold II. killed, 1, 277; said to have become a monk at Chester, *ib.*
Hastings, battle of, 1.
Hedingham, the castle of, taken by king John, 180.
Henry I. king of England, 170, 288, 445; succeeds to the throne, 4; invades France, 5; gains the battle of Tenchebrai, 6; meets pope Calixtus II. at Gisors, 8; gives lands in Wales to his followers, 279: his death and burial, 9, 10.
Henry II. king of England, 28, 100, 101, 117, 122, 151, 191, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 327, 410, 446; his birth, 9; marriage, 13; succeeds to the throne, 14; his expeditions into Wales and France, 15; at enmity with his son Henry, 16, 17; make peace with Flanders and France, 20; assumes the cross, 23, 24, 25, 251; his death, 25, 26.
——— III. king of England, 163; succeeds to the throne, 184; incidents during his minority, 185; makes a truce with France, 187; his coronation, 187; disagreement with his barons, 203.
——— prince, son of Henry II., his birth, 14, 15; crowned, 16, 323; his marriage, 13, 17, 100, 447; his illness, 265; incidents preceding his death, 265, 266; his death, 20, 266, 267; cures wrought by his relics, 267; his body forcibly interred at Le Mans, 268, 269; his father decides that it shall be taken to Rouen, 269 transferred thither, 269, 270; the body rests at Séez, 270; inspection of the remains before interment, 271; buried, 272; appears in a dream to his mother, 273.
——— V. emperor of Germany, marries Matilda, daughter of Henry I. 7; dies, 8.
——— archbishop of Rheims, son of Louis VI. king of France, 6.
——— of Flanders, emperor of the East, 149, 161.
——— messenger to Saladin, 259, 261.
——— duke of Saxony, 14.
——— count of Treves, 13.
——— a Knight Hospitaller, his valour, 215.
Heraclius, patriarch of Jerusalem, comes into England, 20.
——— emperor, 69.
Herebert, bishop of Norwich, 8.
Hereford, 304, 322.
——— Henry de Bohun, earl of, 188.
Hertford, the sheriff of, 110.
Hertland, 304, 305, 306.
Hodenet, Baldwin de, 325, 329, 330, 338, 364, 365, 372.

Honorius II. pope, 8, 9.
Honorius III. pope, 183, 188, 192, 193.
Hospital, knights of the, 52, 114, 116, 189, 218, 225, 227, 228, 239; executed by Saladin, 21.
——— the master of the, his acts in Palestine, 211, 212, 214, 215, 217.
Howel, son of the duke of Little Brittany, 290.
Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, 341.
Huggeford, 331, 341, 362.
——— sir Walter de, 331.
Hugh, son of Henry I. king of France 3.
——— the merchant, 54.
Hungary, 195, 251.
——— Bela, king of, 20, 24.

I.

Iconium, 24, 251.
——— the soldan of, 121.
Idumeans, the, 210.
Illyria, 258.
India, 190, 261.
——— David, king of, surnamed Prester John, 190.
Ingelard, keeper of Windsor Castle, 190.
Ingelburg, wife of Philip Augustus, king of France, 62.
Innocent II. pope, 6, 9, 10, 11.
——— III. pope, 69, 72, 88, 112, 116, 129, 130, 132, 133, 148, 162, 163, 164, 165, 167, 174, 179, 192; his bull for the crusade, 113; England granted to him by king John, 166; his death, 183.
Italy, 194.
Ipswich, 17.
Ireland, 13, 187, 314, 316, 352, 378, 408, 409, 420, 423; overrun by Henry II., 26; king John goes to, 20, 164; pays tribute to the pope, 166.
Isaac, emperor of Constantinople, 24, 142, 149, 201.
Isabella of Angoulême, wife of king John, 63, 168.
Isabella of Hainault, queen of France, 19.
Ishmael, 216.
Isorie, the princess, 398, 399, 400, 401.
Issoudun, taken by king Philip Augustus, 25.
Ivry, ceded to France, 100.

J.

Jacinctus. *See* Celestine III. pope.
Jacob's well, 233.
James, sir, of Normandy, 389, 390, 391, 392.
Japhep, 216.
Jaula, 218.
Jerico, 234.
Jerusalem, 3, 12, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 29, 30, 33, 35, 37, 38, 39, 40, 52, 54, 64, 68, 74, 75, 83, 88, 91, 98, 113, 114, 115, 131, 141, 142, 143, 151, 168, 171, 188, 189, 190, 201, 209, 215, 217, 219, 228, 229, 230, 233, 234, 238, 239, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 261, 262.
——— Amauri, king of, 33, 114, 209.
——— Baldwin, king of, 10, 209.
——— Fulk of Anjou, king of, 9.
——— Geoffrey de Bouillon, king of 4, 10.
——— Gui de Lusignan, king of, 21, 22, 33, 36, 40, 161, 209, 217, 218, 225, 226, 227, 252, 256.
——— Henry, king of, 35, 72, 151.
——— John de Brienne, king of, 164, 189, 193, 221.
——— Mons Gaudii at, 230.
——— the Patriarch of, 20, 42, 114, 219.
——— the Temple of. *See* Temple.
Jesrael, 219, 232.
Jews, the, 12, 20, 27, 28, 191.
Job, Joseph, son of, 262.
——— B., the church of, 232.
Johanna, daughter of king Henry II., 14, 322, 350, 352, 363, 364, 410.
John, the Baptist, his relics, 233.
——— Prester, of India, 190.

John, prince, son of king Henry II., 14, 20, 30, 52, 61, 63, 64, 448; succeeds to the throne, 99; makes peace with France, 100; his exactions, 101; his quarrels with the Cistercians, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 163, 164; his wives, 129; summoned to Paris, 135, 136; captures Arthur at Mirabel, 137; his cruel treatment of Arthur, 139, 140; returns into England, 144; deprived of Normandy, 144, 145; and other parts of France, 146, 152; founds the abbey of Beaulieu, 147; his indecision and cowardice, 152, 153, 154; his expedition into Ireland, 164; gives England to the pope, 166; goes into France, 168; his exploits there, 169; returns into England, 170; his disputes with his barons, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 204, 205; his death, 183, 184; his adventures with Fulk Fitz Warin, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 333, 334, 346, 350, 351, 352, 371, 385, 387.
Joppa, 21, 22, 34, 40, 41, 42, 44, 50, 51, 52, 231; taken by the Saracens, 229.
——— Guy, count of, 209.
——— Sibilla, countess of, 209, 220.
Jordan, the river, 216, 219, 234.
Josaphat, 241, 243, 245.
Joseph, the cistern of, 232, 233.
——— the son of Job, 262.
Judea, 217, 218, 257.
Julian, St., church of, at Le Mans, 268, 269.
Jumas, the spy, 39.
Justinian, the emperor, 149.

K.

Kaeu, Anselm de, leader of the crusade, 143.
Kahere, 189.
Kahuz, son of Yweyn, 413.
Kent, the county of, 155, 156, 173, 176, 181.
Keveylloke, Ywain, 318, 351.
Key, steward to king Arthur, 313.
Key castle, 313, 317.
Keyroc, the water of, 288, 289.
Kingston, 186.
Kirisac, emperor of the East. *See* Isaac.
Kirkham abbey founded, 9.
Knokyn, 355.

L.

Lacford, king John bled at, 183.
Lacy, Hugh de, driven out of Ireland, 164.
——— Walter de, his adventures, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303 305, 306, 307, 312, 314, 315, 317, 318, 320, 323.
Laghtune, king John bled at, 183, note.
Lambeth, the chapel of S. Thomas the martyr at, 88.
Lambourne, 321.
Landgrave, a certain, joins the crusades, 252.
Lanaham, story of a girl born there, 121.
Lanfranc, archbishop of Canterbury, 1, 3.
Langres, the bishop of, assumes the cross, 82.
Lannerth, 351.
Lateran, council of, 179,
Launde, La Blaunche, 284, 285, 286, 287.
Lazarus, 240.
Legio, 232.
Leicester, 18.
——— earl of, 144.
——— Robert, earl of, 17; joins the crusade, 23; defends Rouen, 62.
Le Mans. *See* Mans.
Leonardia, 258.
Lesnes, the abbey of, 19.
Lestrange. *See* Estrange.
Lewis. *See* Louis.
Lewellyn, prince of Wales, 194.
Lezignan, Geoffrey de, his courage in Palestine, 256; taken prisoner at Mirabel, 137, 138; makes peace with king John, 169.

Lichfield, Hugh Nonant, bishop of, his death, 80.
Lidda, ravaged by the Saracens, 230.
——— the bishop of, 219, 226, 227.
Liége, 165.
Lieman, the district of, 210.
Limoges, the vicomte of, 94.
Lincoln, the battle of, 11; conference at, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111; the barons defeated at, 185.
——— Hugh, Saint, bishop of, 96; his history, 110, 111, 112; canonized, 188.
——— William of Blois, bishop of, 162.
Lincolnshire, 188.
Lindsey, the district of, 183.
Lisbon, 12.
Loches, the castle of, defended by Gerard de Atie, 146; taken, 152.
Lombardy, earthquake in, 7.
London, 5, 11, 63, 172, 175, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 185, 288, 323, 326, 403, 407, 408, 425.
——— Tower of, 173, 204.
——— St. Paul's, church of, 186.
——— Temple, new, 187.
——— Erkenwald, bishop of, 12.
——— Falconberg, Eustace de, bishop of, 188, 193.
——— Foliot, Gilbert, bishop of, 23.
——— Gervase, dean of, 184.
——— Maurice, bishop of, 4.
——— Richard Nigel, bishop of, 28; his death, 89.
——— Robert de Sigello, bishop of, 12.
——— Saint-Marie Eglise, William de, bishop of, 89, 147, 165, 177, 197; resigns his pastoral staff, 188, 208.
——— Trinity, Holy, prior of, book written by him, 257.
Longespee, William, his descent, 9.
Longocampo, William de, bishop of Ely, joins the crusade, 28.
Longport, the abbey of, 79.
Longvilliers, the abbey of, founded by king Stephen, 11.
Lorraine, 258.
——— Geoffrey, duke of, 3, 10.
Los, the abbot of, 130.
Louis VI., king of France, 6.
——— VII., king of France, 14, 15; his descent, 6, 10; goes to Jerusalem, 12; divorced from queen Eleanor, 13; his wars with Henry II., 14, 15, 17; his death, 19; his daughter Mary, *see* Mary, empress of the East.
——— VIII., king of France, 20, 21.
——— prince of Wales, 350, 351, 352, 353, 363, 364, 410, 411.
——— son of Yervard, 322.
Louvaine, the duke of, 10, 88, 148, 165.
——— Mary, daughter of Henry IV., duke of, 148.
Lucelane, the abbot of, 130.
Lucius III. pope, 11, 19, 20.
Lucy, Geoffrey de, bishop of Winchester, 28, 151.
——— Richard de, 19, 28, 151.
Ludlow, 279, 323.
Luzabel 225.
Lyls, Ernalt de, his adventures, 299, 300, 301, 302, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311.
Lyneye, 312.
Lynn, fleet at, 181; king John at, 183.

M.

Mador, 369, 377, 379, 384, 395.
Mahoun. *See* Mahomet.
Mahomet, 69, 234, 235, 249, 251, 253, 259, 262, 400.
Maidstone, monster at, 155.
Maine, overrun by Philip Augustus, 416.
Malcolm, king of Scotland, ravages England, 1, 2; killed, 3.
Malachi, S., his death, 13.
Maldon, the canons of, 19.
Maledoim, overrun by the infidels, 234.
Malekin, a familiar spirit called, 120, 121.
Malfee, Gyrard de, 340, 341.
Malveysyn, John, 338.
Mandeville, Geoffrey de, his death, 12.

Mandeville, Geoffrey de, the younger, his death, 16.
Mandeville, earl of Essex and Gloucester, 171, 177, 179.
——— William de, assumes the cross, 23; his death, 26.
Mans, Le, conquered by William I., 2; by William II., 4; by Henry II., 25; by the Bretons, 99; burnt by king John, 137, 138; the body of prince Henry forcibly buried at, 268, 271.
——— the church of S. Julian at, 268, 269.
Mantes, burnt by king William I., 2; the French defeated at 83, 84; king Philip Augustus dies at, 196.
Manuel, the emperor, 75; his son, *see* Alexis II.
Marchadeus, one of king Richard's retainers, 85, 95.
Marche, La Vele, 280.
Marche, Hugh le Brun, count de la, his feud with king John, 135, 169.
Marchys, Amys le. *See* Amys.
Marescancia, the Christians defeated at, 21, 223, 224, 225.
Margaret, queen of Scotland, her death, 3.
——— wife of Henry, son of Henry II., 20.
——— daughter of Louis VII., king of France, 13.
Maroch, the king of, 67.
Marseilles, 53.
Marshall, Hugh, earl, 390, 391, 407, 408.
——— William, earl of Pembroke, 180; his death, 187.
Martel, the castle of, Henry, son of Henry II., dies at, 20, 266.
Martha, sister of Lazarus, 240, 241.
Mary, sister of Lazarus, 240, 241.
——— daughter of Malcolm, king of Scotland, 10.
——— empress of the East, 75.
Masphat, 240.
Matilda, queen, wife of Henry I., 4, 8.
——— queen, wife of king Stephen, 10, 11, 148; buried at Faversham, 14.
——— of Portugal, countess of Flanders, 30.
Matilda, empress, daughter of Henry I., 9, 11, 16.
——— daughter of Henry II., 14.
Mauleun, Savaric de, taken prisoner by king John, 138; joins his party, 146, 169, 177, 183; besieges Colchester castle, 178; wounded, 180; reinforcements sent to him, 208.
Maullei, Peter de, defends Corf castle, 190.
Mauritania, 258.
Mayence, 7.
——— archbishop of, goes to the Holy Land, 74, 88.
Mayli, Jakelin de, a Templar, 215.
Maylour, 288, 322, 323.
Mecca, 69.
Media, 190.
Meez, Emelyne de, 331.
——— Guaryn de, 290, 291, 292, 293, 303, 306, 313, 314, 320, 399, 400.
——— Melette de, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 303, 314, 315, 320, 323, 331.
——— Vyleyne de. *See* Meez, Emelyne de.
Melchisedec, 212.
Melrose, the abbey of, 16.
Melsa, the abbot of, 105.
Merlin, the prophecies of, 146, 412, 414.
Merle, William de, taken prisoner, 77.
Messina, 29, 33.
Messobryns, king of Barbary, 397, 400.
Metheyn, the castle of, 351.
Milan, 7.
Mirabel, the castle of (in Palestine), 22, 229.
———, ——— (in France) 137, 138.
Mirmurenus, 262.
Mochnant, 351.
Modin, Mount, 230.
Montaigne, Gui de la, 332.
——— Rupinus de la, 24.
Montbener, Druz de, 365, 366, 367.
Monte, Leunin de, 114.
——— Vetus de, 35.
Montferrat, Boniface, marquis of, 129, 143, 151, 161, 227.
——— assassinated, 33, 35, 59.
——— Gilbert de, 338.

Montfort, Robert de, 15.
——— Simon de, his crusade against the Albigenses, 191, 192.
Montgomery, 326.
Montmorenci, Matthew de, 143; overthrown by king Richard, 85.
Montroyal, Reginald, prince of, 209, 218; killed, 228.
Mont de Russie, 369, 370, 371.
Moray, Simon, bishop of, 17.
Moreton, William, count of, taken prisoner, 6.
Morene (a Gascon), 177.
Morelas, 288.
Moremund, the abbey of, 36.
Morkulf, emperor of Constantinople. *See* Alexis V.
Morref, earl of, 290.
Mortimer, Hugh de, 15.
Moubray, Roger de, conspires against Henry II., 18; taken prisoner, 21.
Mudle, the pass of, 357.
Muret, the battle of, 166.
Myra, S. Nicolas of. *See* Nicolas.

N.

Nabuchodonosor, 68.
Nantes, besieged, 169.
Nauhendon, 288.
Naum, 233.
Navarre, Sancho VI. king of, 31.
Nazareth, 211, 215, 217, 219; taken by the Saracens, 21, 231.
Neapolis, deserted by its inhabitants, 233.
——— Balisanus, prince of, 218, 246; his cowardice, 226.
Neefle, ceded to France by Henry, count of Anjou, 12.
Nesse, the pass of, 349.
Neuilly, Fulco of, his history, 80, 81, 82.
Nevers, the count of, besieges Windsor Castle, 182.
Neville, Geoffrey de, returns from Rochelle, 208.
——— Hugh de, 103; information given by him, 45.
New Abbey, 410, 414, 415.
Newark, king John dies there, 184.
Newcastle-upon-Tyne, founded, 2.
New Forest, the, 147, 406; William Rufus killed in, 4.
Nicea, 161.
Nicolas, Saint, 71; translation of, 2.
Nicolas, chosen emperor by the Greeks, 149.
Nicolas, sent legate to England, 170.
Noradin, 12.
Norfolk, 202; wasted by king John, 182.
Normandy, 1, 6, 12, 16, 25, 64, 70, 136, 154, 155, 197, 204, 288, 352, 391, 392; overrun by Philip Augustus, 61, 62, 143, 144, 145, 146, 152; seized by king John, 99, 100, 101.
——— sir James of, 389, 390, 391, 392.
Northampton, 206, 207; king John at, 152; seized by the barons, 171.
Northumberland, ravaged by William I., 1; by king Malcolm, 2; by king William the Lion, 18.
——— the barons of, rise against king John, 167, 171, 178, 183.
——— the men of, kill bishop Walcher, 2.
——— Robert, earl of, kills king Malcolm, 3.
Nonancourt, given up by king John, 100.
Norway, 378.
Norwich, 12.
——— Ebrard, bishop of, 8, 12.
——— Geoffrey of, put to death by king John, 165.
——— Herebert, bishop of, 8.
——— John de Gray, elected bishop of, 162, 167, 170.
——— Pandulf Masca, bishop of, 144, 174, 197.
——— William, bishop of, 12.

O.

Odo, abbot of Coggeshall, 16; his death, 18.
Olivet, Mount, 241, 243.
Oreford, the castle of, 117.
Orkney, 375, 377, 378, 379.
Orleans, Henry de Dreux, bishop of, 6.
Orwell, prince Louis lands at, 176.
Oswald, Saint, 5, 440.
Oxford, heretics punished at, 122; council at, 190.
——— Alberic de Vere, earl of, dies, 169, 190.
——— Robert de Vere, earl of, dies, 190.

P.

Palays, earl, 278.
Palestine, 229, 257.
Pandulf, master, 165.
——— Masca, Papal Legate, arrives in England, 186; assists at the coronation of Henry III., 188; at the translation of Becket, 188, 189.
Paphos, the island of, 194.
Paris, 6, 20, 79, 80, 135, 136, 136, 161, 192, 365.
——— Maurice, bishop of, begins to build N. Dame of Paris, 79.
——— Odo, bishop of, harsh treatment of, 112.
——— Peter, chanter of. *See* Peter.
Paschal II. pope, 8.
Pasci, 100, 195.
Patricius, Thomas, 246.
Patrick, Saint, 398.
Peek, the, 288, 290.
Pembroke, the county of, 279.
——— William Marshal, earl of, sent into France, 144; expostulates with king John, 152; supports him, 171; his death, 187.
———, ———, the younger, his wars with the Welsh, 194.
Pendover, 300, 309, 313.
Pentlyn, 353.
Penebrugge, Henry de, 363.
——— Joane, wife of Henry de, 363.
Perche, Robert, count of Dreux and, 6, 161; goes to the Holy Land, 29.
——— Stephen, count of, killed, 161.
——— count of, killed at the battle of Lincoln, 185.
Perdu, Maryn le, 398, 400.
Perendun, the canons of, migrate to Maldon, 19.
Persenna, the abbot of, 68, 131.
Persia, 190, 258.
Perugia, 183.
Peter, son of Louis VI., king of France, 6.
——— abbot of Coggeshall, 18.
——— II., king of Aragon, killed, 166.
"Petit," king of Spain. *See* Castille, Alphonsus IX., king of.
Peverel castle, in the Peek, 288, 290.
——— the river, 287.
——— Eleyne, 288.
——— Melette, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 296, 297.
——— Payn, 281, 282, 285, 286, 287, 288.
——— William, 288, 289, 293, 316.
Pevereyes, the, 288.
Pharaoh, king of Egypt, 257.
Philip, count of Flanders, 10, 20.
——— I., king of France, 3, 6.
——— II., king of France, 20, 365, 367, 368; makes peace with Flanders, 20; assumes the cross, 251; goes to the Holy Land, 20, 254, 257.
——— son of Louis VI., king of France, 6.
——— son of Philip II., king of France, 20.
——— the Red. *See* Fitz Waryn, Philip.
——— master, the king's clerk, gives information to the author, 54.
Philippopolis, 149.
Philistines, the, 228.
Pictavinus, Petrus, 161.
Pinu, monasterium de, 97.
——— M. abbot of, goes to the Holy Land, 98; was with king Richard at his death, *ib.*
Pisa, 23, 54, 252.
Plantagenet, Geoffrey, count of Anjou, 9.

Plessis, the castle of, 177.
Poios, a town called, 195.
Poitiers, 11, 70, 169.
Poitou, 138, 146, 152, 167, 170, 177, 187; seized by France, 208.
——— the count of, 144.
——— Richard, count of, 251.
Pomfret, Peter de, hanged, 167.
Pontigny, the monastery of, 97.
Porchester, king John at, 152.
Porkyntone, Candelou de, 294, 319, 349, 350.
——— Guy de, 294, 319, 350.
Porrac, Gilbert de, bishop of Poitiers, 11.
Portugal, 164.
——— Alphonsus, king of, 30.
Powys, 278, 316, 351.
——— Jonas de, 317, 323.
——— Morys de, 326, 327, 328, 330, 331, 332.
——— Roger de, 317, 323, 326, 327.
Preez, sir Andrew de, 299.
Premonstratensians, the order of, 97, 116, 160, 240.
Preneste, the cardinal bishop of, 131, 132, 133, 147.
Prester John, 190.
Priulli, the abbey of, incident at, 199, 200.
Ptolomais, 41, 51, 72, 75, 142, 231; king Richard sails for, 31, 32; the inhabitants massacred, 34.
Publicani, the, 18.
Pullani, 226.
Puy, the bishop of, 3.

Q.

Quincy, Saher de, surrenders his charge to king Philip, 143.

R.

Rainerius, of Naples, sent to treat with Saladin, 246.
Rama, 231.
Ramsey, 12, 186.
Ramula, 43.
Randulf, earl of Chester. *See* Rondulf.
Rasseleme, 210.
Raunpaygne, John de, 346, 347, 348, 359, 364, 365, 384, 390, 395, 403, 406.
Raymond, count of S. Giles, 7.
——— count of Toulouse, 3.
——— count of Tripoly, 21.
Reading, 15, 179.
——— the abbey of, 174.
Red Castle, the, 356.
Reginald, prince, of Sidon, killed, 21, 226, 228.
Reinerius, master, his history, 131, 132, 133.
Remfrid, his wife, 256.
Rheims, 197.
——— Henry, archbishop of, 6.
——— Peter, of, 79.
——— William, archbishop of, 13, 79, 122, 123; goes to the Holy Land, 23; his death, 147.
Richard I., king of England, 14, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 120, 135, 136, 144, 162, 191, 448; joins the crusade, 23, 251, 254; his coronation, 26; sets out for Palestine, 29; conquers Cyprus, 30, 31; arrives in Palestine, 32; strife with Philip Augustus, 33; his exploits in the Holy Land, 34, 35, 37, 40, 41, 42, 43, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 323, 324, 325, 326; made prisoner on his way home, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57; harshly treated, 58, 59; ransomed, 60; returns to England, 62; goes into France, 63; his wars there, 83, 84, 85; his death and character, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97.
——— son of king John, his birth, 163; goes to Rochelle, 168.
——— archbishop of Canterbury, consecrated, 18; dies, 20.
Richmond, the comté of, 101.
Rievaulx, the abbey of, founded, 9.
Ris, king of Wales, 15.
Rivers, Baldwin de, his property seized by king Philip, 24.
Roasia, the district of, 261.

Robert, son of king William I., founds Newcastle, 2; joins the crusade, 3; returns to England, 4; loses Caen, 5; taken prisoner at Tenchebrai, 6; confined for life, 6, 288.
——— bishop of Hereford, 304.
——— count, brother of the bishop of Beauvais, 252.
——— count of Dreux, 6.
——— count of Perch, 6.
——— dean of Rouen, 269.
——— the boy of S. Edmund's, 20.
Roche Andeli. *See* Andeli.
Rochelle, repulses king Philip, 146; the English sail for, 154; king John at, 168; surrenders to the French, 208.
Roches, Peter de, bishop of Winchester, 162.
——— William de, rises against king John, 139, 146.
Rochester, 156, 175, 176.
——— the castle of, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177.
——— Gilbert de Glanville, bishop of, 156, 158, 169, 173.
——— Ithamar, bishop of, 176.
Roger, son of the Duke of Bretagne, 290.
——— [Richard], bishop of Winchester, 18.
——— archbishop of York, 16, 19.
Rome, 18, 19, 30, 68, 69, 70, 71, 88, 89, 113, 131, 132, 143, 162, 163, 165, 167, 168, 170, 190, 258.
Rondulf, earl of Chester, 389, 391, 393, 394, 395, 407, 408, 409.
Rothelam, 319.
Rouen, 70, 99; besieged, 17, 62, 145; surrenders to king Philip, 146; Henry, son of Henry II., buried there, 20, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272.
——— the castle of, 143, 144, 145.
——— the archbishop of, 70, 100, 144.
——— Robert, dean of, 269.
Rous, Philip le. *See* Fitz Waryn, Philip.
Rubra Cisterna, 38, 234.
Rueil, the valley of, 61, 143.
Ruffinus, bishop of Acre, 21.
Runymead, conference at, 172.
Rutone, 355, 356.

S.

Sacra Cella, the abbot of, 130.
Safadin, brother of Saladin, 22, 61, 228, 229, 230, 236, 250.
Saforia, 222, 228.
——— the fountain of, 218.
——— the valley of, 210, 218.
Saint Denis, near Paris, 196.
Saint Edmund's, 177, 178; the abbey of, 17, 63, 97, 202.
Saint George, the town of, 21.
——— count of, joins the crusade, 3, 15; does homage for Toulouse, 17; his actions in Palestine, 53, 77.
Saint Giles, Raymond, count of, marries the widow of prince Eustace, 6; joins the crusade, 3, 15; does homage for Toulouse, 17.
——— Raymond, count of, 53; his marriage, 70; joins king Richard, 77.
——— Raymond, count of, 191.
——— Omer, the castle of, besieged, 83.
Saint Osyth, Abel, abbot of, 20.
——— Ralph, abbot of, 162.
Saint Pol, H., count of, 143, 151.
Saint Valery, Bernard de, 268.
Saint Victor, Hugh de, 11.
Saintes, the diocese of, 269.
Saladin, his wars with the Christians, 21, 22, 32, 33, 34, 35, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 57, 68, 210, 218, 220, 224, 228, 230, 234, 235, 237, 238, 239, 242, 243, 246, 248, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 257.
——— his death, 53, 61.
——— his letter to the emperor Frederic, 259.
——— his brother. *See* Safadin.
——— his nephew. *See* Thecahadinus.
——— his son, 254.
Salem. *See* Jerusalem.
Salisbury, 322.
——— the castle of, 182.

Salisbury, Herbert Porre, bishop of, his death, 185.
——— Hubert Walter, bishop of, 28; joins the crusade, 23, 257.
——— William de Longespee, earl of, goes to Rochelle, 154; sent into Flanders, 168; there taken prisoner, 169; joins the barons, 171; with John's party, 177; liberates the French, 179; surrenders Salisbury castle to prince Louis, 182.
Salobure, the earldom of, 278, 279, 349, 353, 355, 358, 359, 361, 362, 363.
Saltry, the abbey of, 12.
Samaria, 232, 233, 236, 257.
Sampson. *See* Sanson.
Samuel, the prophet, 240.
Samuel, Saint, 40.
———, ——, the monastery of, 230.
Sandwich, king Richard lands at, 62.
Sanson, 237.
Saphadin. *See* Safadin.
Saracens, the, 38, 67, 69, 70, 114, 115, 142, 189, 190, 210, 213, 221, 225, 227, 228, 230, 235, 236, 237, 238, 242, 243, 247, 248, 257, 260, 261, 262, 397.
Sarepta, 236.
Sarney, the abbot of, 131.
Saron, overrun by the Saracens, 230.
Sartis, de, the abbey, founded, 9, 10.
Savaricus. *See* Mauleun, Savaric de.
Savigni, the abbey of, 133; miracle at, 268.
——— John de, gives information to the author, 184.
Saxony, the duchy of, 147, 258.
——— the duke of, 88.
——— Frederic, duke of, 12.
——— Henry, duke of, 88, 147, 163.
——— Otho, son of Henry, duke of, 70, 88.
Scarburgh, the church of, 79.
Sclavonia, 54.
Scotland, 290, 316, 343, 344, 372, 422.
——— Alexander II. king of, knighted, 164; succeeds to the throne, 170; joins prince Louis, 183; marries the princess Joanna, 190.
Scotland, William, king of, taken prisoner at Alnwick, 18; has a conference with king John, 107, 110; his death, 170.
Scottish sea, the, 178.
Sebaste, 233.
Seez, incidents at, 270, 271.
Seine, the river, 19, 144, 145, 192.
Selef, the river, the emperor Frederic drowned in, 74, 257.
Sens, conference at, 195.
——— the archbishop of, 125, 126, 127, 128.
Sephadin. *See* Safadin.
Severn, the river, 361, 410.
Sepulchre of our Lord, the, 248.
Sibilla, wife of Guy de Lusingan, 22.
Sibton, the abbey of, founded, 13.
Sicily, 58, 72; king Richard resides at, 29, 33.
——— Frederic, king of, chosen emperor of Germany, 164, 166.
——— Johanna, queen of, daughter of Henry II., 52, 70, 191.
——— Tancred, king of, 59; his death, 64, 66.
——— William III., king of, 58, 66.
Sidon, 21, 74, 236.
——— Reginald, prince of, 218, 226.
Simon, the leper, 240.
——— Magus, 124.
Sion, 68, 217, 248, 250.
Slaghtune, 183, note.
Sodom, 216.
Soissons, 62.
Soldan, the. *See* Babylon, soldan of.
Solomon's porch, 249.
Someron, mount, 232.
Sor, the abbey of, 36.
Soreed, 233.
Sotengaine, serves under king John, 177; surrenders Dover castle, 182.
Spain, 396; invaded by the Saracens, 67.
Spec, Walter de, religious houses founded by him, 9.
Spisania, 258, 259.
Stagno, Willelmus de, an attendant on king Richard, 55.

Stanes, conference near, 172, 173.
Stanore, prince Louis lands at, 181.
Stephen, Saint, the gate of, 242.
——— count of Blois, becomes king of England, 10, 446; his religious foundations, 11; loses Normandy, 12, 100; his death, 14; his daughter, 148.
——— chancellor of Lincoln, 18.
——— brother of the count of Blois, 29.
Stiria, 258.
Stratford, the abbey of, 187.
——— Benedict de, 187.
Stretfleur, the abbey of, incident at, 141.
Stutville, Robert de, taken prisoner at Tenchebrai, 6.
——— captures William, king of Scotland, 18.
Suffolk, wonderful incidents in, 118, 120; ravaged by king John, 182.
Surrey, the parts of, 173.
Suabia, Philip, duke of, 88, 147, 148, 252, 253.
Swein, prince of Wales, 290.
Sylo, 230, 239, 240.
Syria, 22, 189, 210, 219, 220, 225, 243, 258.
——— Saladin, king of. *See* Saladin.

T.

Tabor, mount, 21, 219, 232, 233, 234.
Tafneos, 229, 258.
Tahtneos. *See* Tafneos.
Tedekin, nephew of Saladin, 21.
Temede, the river, 280, 296, 321.
Tenchebrai, the battle of, 6.
Tenham, the manor of, Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, dies there, 156.
Temple of Jerusalem, destroyed, 248, 249, 250.
——— the knights of the, their exploits in Palestine, 39, 52, 54, 116, 189, 194, 218, 222, 223, 225, 227, 232, 237, 252; beheaded by Saladin, 21; their costume, 134.
Temple, the Master of the, 114, 209, 211, 214, 217, 219, 227, 252.
Thames, the river, 150, 180; low, 7; frozen, 13, 151.
Thaneos, 189.
Thebaud, of Little Brittany, 290.
Thecahadinus, Saladin's nephew, 242, 254.
Theobald, archbishop of Canterbury, 10, 11, 14; dies, 15.
Tholomais. *See* Ptolomais.
Thomas Patricius, 246.
Thouars, Raymond, viscount of, deserts king Richard, 170.
Thusci, Alan de, overthrown by king Richard, 85; taken prisoner by king John, 138.
Thrace, 161, 201.
Thuringia, 258.
Tiberias, 21, 211, 218, 219, 220, 221, 224, 228.
——— the battle of, 213, 215, 216, 217, 218.
Til, 216.
Tilbury, Gervase of, story told by him to the writer, 122.
Tilety, the abbey of, 14, 169; plundered. 177.
Tirel, Walter, kills William II., 4.
Toni, Simon de, abbot of Coggeshall, 16; becomes bishop of Moray, 17.
Toulouse, 15, 17, 168, 192, 195.
——— the count of, 164, 166, 168.
——— Johanna, countess of, 164.
Touraine, the province of, 101, 146.
Tours, council at, 15; captured by king Philip, 25; restored to king John, 101; burnt by him, 138.
Trèves, 58.
Tripoli, 22, 75, 218, 220, 221, 238, 261.
——— count of, 21, 22, 189, 208, 211, 217, 218, 220, 221, 222, 223, 225, 226.
——— countess of, 221.
Troy, 280.
Troyes, the bishop of, 143.
——— Henry, count of, joins the crusade, 23; made king of Jerusalem, 35, 151.
——— Mary, countess of, her descent, 35.

Tunis, the city of, 397.
Turcomans, the, 210, 230, 260.
Turcopoli, the, 217, 218, 225.
Turks, the, 43, 47, 48, 210, 211, 213, 220, 223, 224, 225, 228, 238, 242, 244, 245, 248, 252, 253, 254, 255.
Turnham, Robert de, gives up Chinon to king John, 99; active for the king, 146; taken prisoner by the French, 152.
Tuscia, 258.
Tusculum, Nicolas, bishop of, arrives in England, 167.
Tyne, the river, 2.
Tyre, 21, 24, 35, 42, 75, 142, 164, 189, 229, 236, 237, 252, 253, 255, 256, 261.
——— the archbishop of, 217, 251.

U.

Umfrevilles, the, 290.
Urban II. pope, 3, 4.
——— III. pope, 20, 23.
Urien, son of the duke of Bretagne, 290.

W.

Wabrune, the canons of, 202, 203.
Walcher, bishop of Durham, killed, 2.
Wales, invaded by William I., 277, 280; by Henry II., 15, 25; a giant of, 120; a wonderful event in, 141; a Cistercian abbey in, 147; invades England, 164; at war with the earl of Pembroke, 194.
——— the Marches of, 204, 278, 280, 316, 321, 322, 326, 327, 349.
——— Louis, prince of. *See* Louis.
——— Sweyn, prince of, 290.
——— Yerward Droyndoun, prince of, 294, 316, 317, 321.
——— Yweyn, prince of, 294.
Walter, Hubert, appointed bishop of Salisbury, 28.
Wantynge, 408.
Warden, the convent of, 206.
Warmatia, 58.
Warren, William, earl of, 10, 15.
——— earl of, 171.
Wasceville, Gilbert de, betrays Gisors to the French, 61.
Wells, Thomas Agnellus, archdeacon of, 263.
Wellstream, king John's baggage lost in the, 184.
Wemure, Hawyse, lady of, 362.
Westminster, 63, 103, 404, 405, 407, 408; coronations at, 4, 14, 16, 27, 99, 187; interments at, 8; consecrations at, 89, 186; buildings at, 188.
Westphalia, 258.
Whitby, 2.
Whitclif, 295, 308, 321.
Whitington, 288.
Whitsand, prince Louis's fleet at, 181
Wight, the Isle of, 154.
——— earl of. *See* Fitz Baldwin, Baldwin.
William I., king of England, incidents during his reign, 1, 2, 146, 443; invades Wales, 277, 280.
——— II., king of England, 279, 288; incidents during his reign, 2, 3, 444; killed by Walter Tirel, 4.
——— son of king Henry I., his death, 8.
——— son of king Henry II., 343; his birth, 14; his death, 15.
——— king of Scotland, invades England, 17; taken prisoner, 18.
——— king of Sicily, 14.
——— count of Aquitaine, 10.
——— the boy of Norwich, crucified, 70.
——— with the Beard, 70.
——— son of Fulk Fitz Warin, 325, 328, 337, 341, 342.
Winchester, 325, 330, 352; king Richard crowned at, 64; king John at, 154, 182.
——— Geoffrey de Lucy, bishop of, 28.
——— Henry, bishop of, his death, 16.
——— Peter de Roches, bishop of, consecrated, 162; justiciary of England, 168; suspends the archbishop of Canterbury, 174; sent into France, 180; elected archbishop of Damietta, 190.

Winchester, Saher de Quincy, earl of, 176; his death, 188.
Windsor, 172, 385, 386, 395.
——— castle, 164, 182, 183, 190.
Wolpit, incident there, 118, 119, 120.
Wolstan, Saint, translation of, 186.
Wolverhampton, 160.
Worcester, 184, 186.
——— Silvester, bishop of, his death, 186.
——— William de Blois, bishop of, 186.
Wormeslowe, 322.
Wolfrunehamtune, 160.

X.

Xantonia. *See* Saintes.

Y.

Yarmouth, fleet at, 181.
Yberye, 380, 399.
Ydoyne, of Cartage, 399.
Ydromor, son of the king of Galeway, 291.
Yervard Droyndoun, prince of Wales, 316, 317, 318, 322, 323.
York, 2, 150, 422; Jews killed at, 27; besieged, 180.
——— Geoffrey, archbishop of, 20; imprisoned, 30; goes to Rome, 71.
——— Paulinus, archbishop of, 176.
Yorkshire, 102, 120.
Ypres, 77.
——— William de, takes prisoner Robert, earl of Gloucester, 11.
Yvri. *See* Ivry.
Ywein, prince of Wales, 294, 353, 413.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[.—750.—10/75.]

CATALOGUE

OF

RECORD PUBLICATIONS

ON SALE

BY

Messrs. Longman & Co., and Messrs. Trübner & Co., London;
Messrs. James Parker & Co., Oxford and London;
Messrs. Macmillan & Co., Cambridge and London;
Messrs. A. & C. Black, Edinburgh;
and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Calendars of State Papers, &c. - - - - -	3
Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages - - - - -	9
Publications of the Record Commissioners, &c. - -	26
Works Published in Photozincography - - - -	30

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

[Imperial 8vo., cloth. *Price* 15*s.* each Volume or Part.]

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most "complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional "point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the "want of proper Calendars and Indexes."

Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls :—

Calendarium Genealogicum; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* Charles Roberts, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 Vols. 1865.

This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, ELIZABETH, and JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. I. and II.), and MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN, (Vols. III.–XII.). 1856–1872.

Vol. I.—1547–1580.
Vol. II.—1581–1590.
Vol. III.—1591–1594.
Vol. IV.—1595–1597.
Vol. V.—1598–1601.
Vol. VI.—1601–1603, with Addenda, 1547–1565.
Vol. VII.—Addenda, 1566–1579.
Vol. VIII.—1603–1610.
Vol. IX.—1611–1618.
Vol. X.—1619–1623.
Vol. XI.—1623–1625, with Addenda, 1603–1625.
Vol. XII.—Addenda, 1580–1625.

These Calendars render accessible to investigation a large and important mass of historical materials. The Northern Rebellion of 1566–67 ; the plots of the Catholic fugitives in the Low Countries ; the numerous designs against Queen Elizabeth and in favour of a Catholic succession ; the Gunpowder-plot ; the rise and fall of Somerset ; the Overbury murder ; the disgrace of Sir Edward Coke ; the rise of the Duke of Buckingham, &c. Numerous other subjects are illustrated by these Papers, few of which have been previously known.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. I.–XII.); *by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., and WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vol. XIII.); and *by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vol. XIV.). 1858–1873.

Vol. I.—1625–1626.
Vol. II.—1627–1628.
Vol. III.—1628–1629.
Vol. IV.—1629–1631.
Vol. V.—1631–1633.
Vol. VI.—1633–1634.
Vol. VII.—1634–1635.
Vol. VIII.—1635.
Vol. IX.—1635–1636.
Vol. X.—1636–1637.
Vol. XI.—1637.
Vol. XII.—1637–1638.
Vol. XIII.—1638–1639.
Vol. XIV.—1639.

This Calendar presents notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers relative to the history of the period to which it refers. Many of them have been hitherto unknown.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. I.—1649–1650. 1875.

This Calendar is in continuation of those during the reigns from Edward VI. to Charles I., and contains a mass of new information.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860–1866.

Vol. I.—1660–1661.
Vol. II.—1661–1662.
Vol. III.—1663–1664.
Vol. IV.—1664–1665.
Vol. V.—1665–1666.
Vol. VI.—1666–1667.
Vol. VII.—1667.

Seven volumes of this Calendar, of the period between 1660 and 1667, have been published.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII. Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

These two volumes of State Papers relate to Scotland, and embrace the period between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are notices of the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, Esq., B.A., Trinity College, Dublin, Barrister-at-Law (Ireland). Vol. I.—1171–1251. 1875.

This is the first volume of a selection of all documents relating to Ireland, preserved in the Public Record Office, London; the work is to be continued to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860–1867.

Vol. I.—1509–1573. | Vol. II.—1574–1585.

The above have been published under the editorship of Mr. Hans Claude Hamilton; another volume is in the press.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by the* Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 1872–1874.

Vol. I.—1603–1606.
Vol. II.—1606–1608. | Vol. III.—1608–1610.

This series is in continuation of the Irish State Papers commencing with the reign of Henry VIII.; but, for the reign of James I., the Papers are not confined to those in the Public Record Office of England.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY Esq. 1860–1870.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.
Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1617–1621.

These volumes include an analysis of early Colonial Papers in the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862–1872.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.
Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515–1518. | Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519–1523.
Vol. IV., Part 1.—1524–1526.
Vol. IV., Part 2.—1526–1528.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared

in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547–1553. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553–1558. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest.

A valuable series of Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merits a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. The domestic affairs of England are of course passed over in these volumes, which treat only of its relations with foreign powers.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, (Vols. I.–VII.), and ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law, (Vols. VIII. and IX.) 1863–1874.

Vol. I.—1558–1559.
Vol. II.—1559–1560.
Vol. III.—1560–1561.
Vol. IV.—1561–1562.
Vol. V.—1562.
Vol. VI.—1563.
Vol. VII.—1564–1565.
Vol. VIII.—1566–1568.
Vol. IX.—1569–1571.

These volumes contain a Calendar of the Foreign Correspondence during the early portion of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, deposited in the Public Record Office, &c. They illustrate not only the external but also the domestic affairs of Foreign Countries during that period.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1868–1874.

Vol. I.—1557–1696.
Vol. II.—1697–1702.
Vol. III.—1702–1707.

The above Papers connected with the affairs of the Treasury comprise petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State, grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c. They illustrate civil and military events, finance, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. 1867–1873.

Vol. I.—1515–1574.
Vol. II.—1575–1588.
Vol. III.—1589–1600.
Vol. IV.—1601–1603.
Vol. V.—Book of Howth; Miscellaneous.
Vol. VI.—1603–1624.

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland, deposited in the Lambeth Library, are unique, and of great importance. The Calendar (now completed) cannot fail to be welcome to all students of Irish history.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. 1862–1868.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.
Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509–1525.
Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain, and the corresponding portion removed from Simancas to Paris. Mr. Bergenroth also visited Madrid, and examined the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katharine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. 1873.

Vol. III., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1525–1526.

Upon the death of Mr. Bergenroth, Don Pascual de Gayangos was appointed to continue the Calendar of the Spanish State Papers. He has pursued a similar plan to that of his predecessor, but has been able to add much valuable matter from Brussels and Vienna, with which Mr. Bergenroth was unacquainted.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864–1873.

Vol. I.—1202–1509.
Vol. II.—1509–1519.
Vol. III.—1520–1526.
Vol. IV.—1527–1533.
Vol. V.—1534–1554.

Mr. Rawdon Brown's researches have brought to light a number of valuable documents relating to various periods of English history; his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FŒDERA. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. I.—Will. I.–Edw. III.; 1066–1377. Vol. II.—Ric. II.–Chas. II.; 1377–1654. 1869–1873.

The "Fœdera," or "Rymer's Fœdera," is collection of miscellaneous documents illustrative of the History of Great Britain and Ireland, from the Norman Conquest to the reign of Charles II. Several editions of the "Fœdera" have been published, and the present Syllabus was undertaken to make the contents of this great National Work more generally known.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price 2s. 6d.*

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price 2s. 6d.*

In the Press.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. III.—1586, &c.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. IV., Part 3.—1529, &c.

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FŒDERA. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. III.—Appendix and Index.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. VI.—1555, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. XV.—1639–1640.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. Vol. III., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by the* Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. IV.—1611, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. II.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. X.—1572–1574.

In Progress.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. IV.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1622, &c. Vol. V.—America and West Indies, 1661, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III., &c., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. (1760–1800), and JOHN RINGWOOD ATKINS, Esq. (1801–1829).

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. Vol. IV.—1708, &c.

CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, Esq., B.A., Trinity College, Dublin, Barrister-at-Law (Ireland). Vol. II. 1252, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. XI.—1575, &c.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[Royal 8vo., half-bound. *Price* 10*s.* each Volume or Part.]

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an "uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's "royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, "and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional know-"ledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He "would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His "wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the "ancient historians of this realm, and assured His Majesty that whatever "expense might be necessary for this purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. The Chronicle of England, by John Capgrave. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

   Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.

   This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house ; and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is printed for the first time.

3. Lives of Edward the Confessor. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.

   The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,686 lines, addressed to Alianor, Queen of Henry III., and probably written in the year 1245, on the occasion of the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author. The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between the years 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. It does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, but is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between the years 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. Monumenta Franciscaná ; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1858.

   This volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It has been the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed.

5. Fasciculi Zizaniorum Magistri Johannis Wyclif cum Tritico. Ascribed to Thomas Netter, of Walden, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.

   This work derives its principal value from being the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. When written, the disputes of the school-

men had been extended to the field of theology, and they appear both in the writings of Wycliff and in those of his adversaries. Wycliff's little bundles of tares are not less metaphysical than theological, and the conflict between Nominalists and Realists rages side by side with the conflict between the different interpreters of Scripture. The work gives a good idea of the controversies at the end of the 14th and the beginning of the 15th centuries.

6. The Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland ; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece ; by William Stewart. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, and was written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends, and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." Strict accuracy of statement is not to be looked for in such a work as this ; but the stories of the colonization of Spain, Ireland, and Scotland are interesting if not true ; and the chronicle is valuable as a reflection of the manners, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed. The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this metrical version, and the student of language will find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern lowland Scotch.

7. Johannis Capgrave Liber de Illustribus Henricis. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been, in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three distinct parts, each having its own separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the Empire, and extends from the election of Henry I., the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, and extends from the accession of Henry I. in the year 1100, to the year 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of King Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world.

Capgrave was born in 1393, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for the history of which period his work is of some value.

8. Historia Monasterii S. Augustini Cantuariensis, by Thomas of Elmham, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* Charles Hardwick, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191. Prefixed is a chronology as far as 1418, which shows in outline what was to have been the character of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norfolk, and most probably with Elmham, whence he derived his name.

9. Eulogium (Historiarum sive Temporis) : Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366 ; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. Haydon, Esq., B.A. 1858–1863.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Malmesbury, in Wiltshire, about the year 1367. A continuation, carrying the history of England down to the year 1413, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially

of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1356 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

The contents of this volume are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in the year 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest in connexion with the period are given in an appendix.

11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* CHARLES A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz.: A Life by Robert Redman; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author; Versus Rhythmici, written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.

12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I. Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and early part of the fifteenth centuries.

The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the fourteenth century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the twelfth, thirteenth, and early part of the fourteenth centuries.

13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in the year 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and

comes down to the year 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the kingdom, which are not to be elsewhere obtained, and some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. A Collection of Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, from the Accession of Edward III. to the Reign of Henry VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1859–1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires, and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another. The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us, through the decline of the feudal system, to the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable value to the philologist.

15. The "Opus Tertium," "Opus Minus," &c., of Roger Bacon. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—never before printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon: also a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologiæ.*"

16. Bartholomæi de Cotton, Monachi Norwicensis, Historia Anglicana; 449–1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Archiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially) is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. Brut y Tywysogion; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

This work, also known as "The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. A Collection of Royal and Historical Letters during the Reign of Henry IV. 1399–1404. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events. The period requires much elucidation; to which it will materially contribute.

19. The Repressor of over much Blaming of the Clergy. By Reginald Pecock, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Churchill Babington, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "Repressor" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born

about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and against their general doctrines the "Repressor" is directed. Pecock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Pecock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual mediæval reward—persecution.

20. Annales Cambriæ. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in the year 447, and come down to the year 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, which was also used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout, though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Blegewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V. and VI. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861–1873.

These volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use. Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before, and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.

The Topographia Hibernica (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in the year 1183, the second in 1185–6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the Topographia of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony, with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon. The Expugnatio Hibernica was written about the year 1188 and may be regarded rather

as a great epic than a sober relation of acts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history.

Vol. VI. contains the Itinerarium Kambriæ et Descriptio Kambriæ.

22. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Wars of the English in France during the Reign of Henry the Sixth, King of England. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861–1864.

The letters and papers contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impériale, and the Depôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the line of policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and such other provinces of France as had been acquired by Henry V. We may here trace, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared to read of its final overthrow.

23. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, according to the several Original Authorities. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* Benjamin Thorpe, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to the year 1154, is justly the boast of England; for no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, either in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In this edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Reigns of Richard III. and Henry VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* James Gairdner, Esq. 1861–1863.

The Papers are derived from MSS. in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from these documents is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. Letters of Bishop Grosseteste, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (131 in number) are here collected from various sources, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time. They range in date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066–1200. Vol. III.; 1200–1327. *By* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862–1871.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials, when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history and not

under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages; the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which the original portions are distinguished from those which are mere compilations. When possible, the sources are indicated from which such compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice has also been given of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. Royal and other Historical Letters illustrative of the Reign of Henry III. Vol. I., 1216–1235. Vol. II., 1236–1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862–1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of them, especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. Chronica Monasterii S. Albani.—1. Thomæ Walsingham Historia Anglicana; Vol. I., 1272–1381: Vol. II., 1381–1422. 2. Willelmi Rishanger Chronica et Annales, 1259–1307. 3. Johannis de Trokelowe et Henrici de Blaneforde Chronica et Annales, 1259–1296; 1307–1324; 1392–1406. 4. Gesta Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, a Thoma Walsingham, regnante Ricardo Secundo, ejusdem Ecclesiæ Præcentore, compilata; Vol. I., 793–1290: Vol. II., 1290–1349: Vol. III., 1349–1411. 5. Johannis Amundesham, Monachi Monasterii S. Albani, ut videtur, Annales; Vols. I. and II. 6. Registra quorundam Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, qui sæculo xv^mo^ floruere; Vol. I., Registrum Abbatiæ Johannis Whethamstede, Abbatis Monasterii Sancti Albani, iterum susceptæ; Roberto Blakeney, Capellano, quondam adscriptum: Vol. II., Registra Johannis Whethamstede, Willelmi Albon, et Willelmi Walingforde, Abbatum Monasterii Sancti Albani, cum Appendice, continente quasdam Epistolas, a Johanne Whethamstede Conscriptas. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., Cambridge and Oxford; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1873.

In the first two volumes is a history of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., written by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of St. Albans and prior of the cell of Wymundham, belonging to that abbey. It is printed from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 13 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the third volume is a Chronicle of English History, attributed to William Rishanger, monk of Saint Albans, who lived in the reign of Edward I., printed from the Cottonian Manuscript, Faustina B. IX. (of the fourteenth century) in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219–231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cottonian Manuscript, Claudius E. III., fols. 306–331: Also an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol by Edward I., 1291–1292, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., attributed to William Rishanger above mentioned, but on no sufficient ground: A short Chronicle of English History,

from 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A short Chronicle from 1297 to 1307, Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with an addition of Annales Regum Angliæ, probably by the same hand: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1299, 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History. 1295 to 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: and a fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1285 to 1307, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library.

In the fourth volume is a Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: Annals of Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe a monk of St. Albans, from MS. Cotton, Claudius D. VI.: A continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henricus de Blaneforde, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A full Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer of St. Albans, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and an account of the benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the fifteenth century, from MS. VI. in the same Library.

The fifth, sixth, and seventh volumes contain a history of the Abbots of St. Albans, and of the fortunes and vicissitudes of the house, from 793 to 1411, mainly compiled by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of the Abbey in the reign of Richard II.; from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum; with a Continuation, from the closing pages of the Parker MS. No. VII., in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

The eighth and ninth volumes, in continuation of the Annals, contain a Chronicle, probably written by John Amundesham, a monk of St. Albans.

The tenth and eleventh volumes relate especially to the acts and proceedings of Abbots Whethamstede, Albon, and Wallingford, and may be considered as a memorial of the chief historical and domestic events occurring during those periods.

29. Chronicon Abbatiæ Eveshamensis, Auctoribus Dominico Priore Eveshamiæ et Thoma de Marleberge Abbate, a Fundatione ad Annum 1213, una cum Continuatione ad Annum 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. Macray, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. I., 447–871. Vol. II., 872–1066. *Edited by* John E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863–1869.

The compiler, Richard of Cirencester, was a monk of Westminster, 1355–1400. In 1391 he obtained a licence to make a pilgrimage to Rome. His history, in four books, extends from 447 to 1066. He announces his intention of continuing it, but there is no evidence that he completed any more. This chronicle gives many charters in favour of Westminster Abbey, and a very full account of the lives and miracles of the saints, especially of Edward the Confessor, whose reign occupies the fourth book. A treatise on the Coronation, by William of Sudbury, a monk of Westminster, fills book iii. c. 3. It was on this author that C. J. Bertram fathered his forgery, *De Situ Brittaniæ*, in 1747.

31. Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. Years 20–21, 21–22, 30–31, and 32–33. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1873.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, and have been held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and were received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great

legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of the attention of the general reader on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. Narratives of the Expulsion of the English from Normandy, 1449–1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in the year 1450. The history commences with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ends with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The whole period embraced is less than two years.

33. Historia et Cartularium Monasterii S. Petri Gloucestriæ. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. H. Hart, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863–1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester. The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester, the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. Alexandri Neckam de Naturis Rerum libri duo; with Neckam's Poem, De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth century. In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckam was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; "but he neither can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities." Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century. The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre; and though there are many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole, above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. Leechdoms, Wortcunning, and Starcraft of Early England; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. Oswald Cockayne, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1864–1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. Annales Monastici. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066–1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066–1263; Annales de Burton, 1004–1263. Vol. II.:—Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519–1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1–1291. Vol. III.:—Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia, 1–1297; Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia, 1042–1432. Vol. IV.:—Annales Monasterii de Oseneia, 1016–1347; Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes, 1066–1289; Annales Prioratus de Wigornia, 1–1377. Vol. V.:—Index and Glossary. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1869.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces all the more important chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are ten in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. Magna Vita S. Hugonis Episcopi Lincolniensis. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and, being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs. The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186; he died on the 16th of November 1200; and was canonized in 1220.

38. Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard the First. Vol. I.:—Itinerarium Peregrinorum et Gesta Regis Ricardi. Vol. II.:—Epistolæ Cantuarienses; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in December 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function of metropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. belonging to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. Recueil des Croniques et anchiennes Istories de la Grant Bretaigne a present nomme Engleterre, par Jehan de Waurin. Vol. I.,

Albina to 688. Vol. II., 1399–1422. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864–1868.

40. A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, by JOHN DE WAVRIN. Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding Vol. I.) *Edited and translated by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

This curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV. to England in the year 1471, after the second deposition of Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Vols. III., IV., and V. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, M.A., late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge. 1865–1874.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation, and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion, is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land. To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. LE LIVERE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVERE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE. *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "Le Livere de Reis de Engletere." Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French.

It is supposed that Peter of Ickham must have been the author, but no certain conclusion on that point has been arrived at.

43. CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1406. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866–1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. Matthæi Parisiensis Historia Anglorum, sive, ut vulgo dicitur, Historia Minor. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067–1253. *Edited by* Sir Frederic Madden, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1866–1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also written by Matthew Paris) giving fuller details, which has been called the "Historia Major." The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. Liber Monasterii de Hyda: a Chronicle and Chartulary of Hyde Abbey, Winchester, 455–1023. *Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by* Edward Edwards, Esq. 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources, which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from tradition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements, which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments. There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English.

46. Chronicon Scotorum: a Chronicle of Irish Affairs, from the Earliest Times to 1135; with a Supplement, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150. *Edited, with a Translation, by* William Maunsell Hennessy, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1866.

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked, year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are, the invasions of foreigners, and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. The Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, in French Verse, from the earliest Period to the Death of Edward I. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1866–1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and that he lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum," in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, down to the death of Henry III., and in the third a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars. The language is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. The War of the Gaedhil with the Gaill, or, The Invasions of Ireland by the Danes and other Norsemen. *Edited, with a Translation, by* James Henthorn Todd, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin. 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in

the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not himself an eye-witness, must have derived his information from those who were eye-witnesses. The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. Gesta Regis Henrici Secundi Benedicti Abbatis. The Chronicle of the Reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., 1169–1192; known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.

This chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the student.

50. Munimenta Academica, or, Documents illustrative of Academical Life and Studies at Oxford (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. Henry Anstey, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.

This work will supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. Chronica Magistri Rogeri de Houedene. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868–1871.

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (*see* No. 49); but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase; occasionally the two works entirely agree; showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work: it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

52. Willelmi Malmesbiriensis Monachi de Gestis Pontificum Anglorum Libri Quinque. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by* N. E. S. A. Hamilton, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1870.

William of Malmesbury's "Gesta Pontificum" is the principal foundation of English Ecclesiastical Biography, down to the year 1122. The manuscript which has been followed in this Edition is supposed by Mr. Hamilton to be the author's autograph, containing his latest additions and amendments.

53. Historic and Municipal Documents of Ireland, from the Archives of the City of Dublin, &c. 1172–1320. *Edited by* John T. Gilbert, Esq., F.S.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland. 1870.

A collection of original documents, elucidating mainly the history and condition of the municipal, middle, and trading classes under or in relation with the rule of England in Ireland,—a subject hitherto in almost total obscurity. Extending over the first hundred and fifty years of the Anglo-Norman settlement, the series includes charters, municipal laws and regulations, rolls of names of citizens and members of merchant-guilds, lists of commodities with their rates, correspondence, illustrations of relations between ecclesiastics and laity; together with many documents exhibiting the state of Ireland during the presence there of the Scots under Robert and Edward Bruce.

54. The Annals of Loch Cé. A Chronicle of Irish Affairs, from 1014 to 1590. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with a Translation, by* William Maunsell Hennessy, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1871.

The original of this chronicle has passed under various names. The title of "Annals of Loch Cé" was given to it by Professor O'Curry, on the ground that it was transcribed for Brian Mac Dermot, an Irish chieftain, who resided on an island in Loch Cé, in the county of Roscommon. It adds much to the materials for the civil and ecclesiastical history of Ireland; and contains many curious references to English and foreign affairs, not noticed in any other chronicle.

55. Monumenta Juridica. The Black Book of the Admiralty, with Appendices. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L. 1871–1874.

This book contains the ancient ordinances and laws relating to the navy, and was probably compiled for the use of the Lord High Admiral of England. Selden calls it the "jewel of the Admiralty Records." Prynne ascribes to the Black Book the same authority in the Admiralty as the Black and Red Books have in the Court of Exchequer, and most English writers on maritime law recognize its importance.

56. Memorials of the Reign of Henry VI.:—Official Correspondence of Thomas Bekynton, Secretary to Henry VI., and Bishop of Bath and Wells. *Edited, from a MS. in the Archiepiscopal Library at Lambeth, with an Appendix of Illustrative Documents, by* the Rev. George Williams, B.D., Vicar of Ringwood, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Vols. I. and II. 1872.

These curious volumes, which are of a very miscellaneous character, were, in all probability, compiled under the immediate direction of Bekynton, and commenced before he had attained to the dignity of the Episcopate. They contain many of the Bishop's own letters, and several written by him in the King's name. Besides these, there are letters sent to himself while he was the Royal Secretary, as well as others addressed to the King. This work will elucidate some obscure points in the history of the nation during the first half of the fifteenth century.

57. Matthæi Parisiensis, Monachi Sancti Albani, Chronica Majora. Vol. I. The Creation to A.D. 1066. Vol. II. A.D. 1067 to A.D. 1216. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrary of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge. 1872–1874.

This work contains the "Chronica Majora" of Matthew Paris, one of the most valuable and frequently consulted of all the ancient English Chronicles. It is now published from its commencement, for the first time. The editions by Archbishop Parker, and William Wats, severally begin at the Norman Conquest.

58. Memoriale Fratris Walteri de Coventria.—The Historical Collections of Walter of Coventry. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, from the MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1872–1873.

This work, now printed in full for the first time, has long been a *desideratum* by Historical Scholars. The first portion, however, is not of much importance, being only a compilation from earlier writers. The part relating to the first quarter of the thirteenth century is the most valuable and interesting.

59. The Anglo-Latin Satirical Poets and Epigrammatists of the Twelfth Century. Vols. I. and II. *Now first collected and edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A., Corresponding Member of the National Institute of France (Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres). 1872.

The Poems contained in these volumes have long been known and appreciated as the best satires of the age in which their authors flourished, and were deservedly popular during the 13th and 14th centuries.

60. Materials for a History of the Reign of Henry VII., from original Documents preserved in the Public Record Office. Vol. I. *Edited by* the Rev. William Campbell, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools. 1873.

This volume is valuable as illustrating the acts and proceedings of Henry VII. on ascending the throne, and shadows out the policy he afterwards adopted.

61. Historical Papers and Letters from the Northern Registers. *Edited by* James Raine, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1873.

The documents in this volume illustrate, for the most part, the general history of the north of England, particularly in its relation to Scotland.

62. Registrum Palatinum Dunelmense. The Register of Richard de Kellawe, Lord Palatine and Bishop of Durham; 1311–1316. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1873–1875.

Bishop Kellawe's Register contains the proceedings of his prelacy, both lay and ecclesiastical, and is the earliest Register of the Palatinate of Durham.

63. Memorials of Saint Dunstan Archbishop of Canterbury. *Edited, from various MSS., by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1874.

This volume contains several lives of Archbishop Dunstan, one of the most celebrated Primates of Canterbury. They open various points of Historical and Literary interest, without which our knowledge of the period would be more incomplete than it is at present.

64. Chronicon Angliæ, ab Anno Domini 1328 usque ad Annum 1388, auctore Monacho quodam Sancti Albani. *Edited by* Edward Maunde Thompson, Esq., Barrister-at-Law, and Assistant-Keeper of the Manuscripts in the British Museum. 1874.

This chronicle gives a circumstantial history of the close of the reign of Edward III. which has hitherto been considered lost.

65. Thómas Saga Erkibyskups. A Life of Archbishop Thomas Becket, in Icelandic. Vol. I. *Edited, with English Translation, Notes, and Glossary, by* M. Eiríkr Magnússon, Sub-Librarian of the University Library, Cambridge. 1875.

This work is derived from the Life of Becket written by Benedict of Peterborough, and apparently supplies the missing portions in Benedict's biography.

66. Radulphi de Coggeshall Chronicon Anglicanum. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A. 1875.

This volume contains the "Chronicon Anglicanum," by Ralph of Coggeshall, the "Libellus de Expugnatione Terræ Sanctæ per Saladinum," usually ascribed to the same author, and other pieces of an interesting character.

In the Press.

Roll of the Privy Council of Ireland, 16 Richard II. *Edited by* the Rev. James Graves, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.

The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vol. VII. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire.

Chronicle of Robert of Brunne. *Edited by* Frederick James Furnivall, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law.

Chronica Monasterii S. Albani.—7. Ypodigma Neustriæ; Historia, a Thoma Walsingham, Monacho Monasterii S. Albani, conscripta. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., Cambridge and Oxford; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law

Corpus Historicum Eboracense. Chronica Pontificum Ecclesiæ Eboraci auctore Thoma Stubbs Dominicano; and other Documents relating to the Primacy of York. *Edited by* James Raine, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society.

Materials for a History of the Reign of Henry VII., from original Documents preserved in the Public Record Office. Vol. II. *Edited by* the Rev. William Campbell, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools.

Register of Malmesbury Abbey: preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.

Materials for the History of Archbishop Thomas Becket. Vol. I. *Edited by* the Rev. James Craigie Robertson, M.A., Canon of Canterbury, and Professor of Ecclesiastical History, King's College, London.

The Historical Works of Ralph de Diceto, Dean of St. Paul's. 1181–1210. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.

Matthæi Parisiensis, Monachi Sancti Albani, Chronica Majora. Vol. III. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, B.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrary of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge.

The Metrical Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester. *Edited by* William Aldis Wright, Esq., M.A.

Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. VI. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Rawson Lumby, B.D., Fellow of St. Catharine's College, Cambridge.

A Collection of Sagas and other Historical Documents relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* George Webbe Dasent, Esq., D.C.L., Oxon., and M. Gudbrand Vigfusson, M.A.

Thómas Saga Erkibyskups. A Life of Archbishop Thomas Becket, in Icelandic. Vol. II. *Edited, with English Translation, Notes, and Glossary, by* M. Eiríkr Magnússon, Sub-Librarian of the University Library, Cambridge.

Monumenta Juridica. The Black Book of the Admiralty, with Appendices. Vol. IV. *Edited by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L.

Registrum Palatinum Dunelmense. The Register of Richard de Kellawe, Lord Palatine and Bishop of Durham; 1311–1316. Vol. IV. *Edited by* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

In Progress.

Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. IV.; 1327, &c. *By* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. Years 33, 34, and 35. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

PUBLICATIONS
OF
THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.

Rotulorum Originalium in Curiâ Scaccarii Abbreviatio. Henry III. —Edward III. *Edited by* Henry Playford, Esq. 2 Vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25*s.* boards, or 12*s.* 6*d.* each.

Calendarium Inquisitionum post Mortem sive Escaetarum. Henry III. —Richard III. *Edited by* John Caley and John Bayley, Esqrs. Vols. 3 and 4, folio (1821—1828), boards: Vol. 3, *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 4, *price* 24*s.*

Librorum Manuscriptorum Bibliothecæ Harleianæ Catalogus. Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. Hartwell Horne. Folio (1812), boards. *Price* 18*s.*

Abbreviatio Placitorum. Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. George Rose and W. Illingworth, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18*s.*

Libri Censualis vocati Domesday-Book, Indices. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, Vol. 3). *Price* 21*s.*

Libri Censualis vocati Domesday-Book, Additamenta ex Codic. Antiquiss. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, Vol. 4). *Price* 21*s.*

Statutes of the Realm. *Edited by* Sir T. E. Tomlins, John Raithby, John Caley, and Wm. Elliott, Esqrs. Vols. 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 Vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.* each; except the Indices, *price* 30*s.* each.

Valor Ecclesiasticus, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* John Caley, Esq., and the Rev. Joseph Hunter. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817–1834), boards. *Price* 25*s.* each.
*** The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Rotuli Scotiæ in Turri Londinensi et in Domo Capitulari Westmonasteriensi Asservati. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* David Macpherson, John Caley, and W. Illingworth, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. Hartwell Horne. Vol. 2, folio (1819), boards. *Price* 21*s.*

Fœdera, Conventiones, Litteræ, &c.; or, Rymer's Fœdera, New Edition. Vol. 3, Part 2, 1361—1377, folio (1830): Vol. 4, 1377—1383 (1869). *Edited by* John Caley and Fred. Holbrooke, Esqrs. Vol. 3, Part 2, *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 4, *price* 6*s.*

Ducatus Lancastriæ Calendarium Inquisitionum post Mortem, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings, to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. Harper, John Caley, and Wm. Minchin, Esqrs. Folio boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31*s.* 6*d.*; Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21*s.*

Calendars of the Proceedings in Chancery, in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth; with Examples of earlier Proceedings from Richard II. *Edited by* John Bayley, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21*s.* each.

Parliamentary Writs and Writs of Military Summons, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42*s.*

Rotuli Litterarum Clausarum in Turri Londinensi asservati. 2 Vols. folio (1833, 1844). Vol. 1, 1204—1224. Vol. 2, 1224—1227. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. *Price* 81*s.*, cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

Proceedings and Ordinances of the Privy Council of England. 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir Nicholas Harris Nicolas. 7 Vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98*s.*; or separately, 14*s.* each.

Rotuli Litterarum Patentium in Turri Londinensi asservati. 1201—1216. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

*** The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9*s.*

Rotuli Curiæ Regis. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28*s.*

Rotuli Normanniæ in Turri Londinensi asservati. 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12*s.* 6*d.*

Rotuli de Oblatis et Finibus in Turri Londinensi asservati, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

Excerpta e Rotulis Finium in Turri Londinensi asservatis. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* Charles Roberts, Esq. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32*s.*; or separately Vol. 1, *price* 14*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

Fines, sive Pedes Finium; sive Finales Concordiæ in Curiâ Domini Regis. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Hunter. In Counties. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11*s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8*s.* 6*d.*; Vol. 2, *price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Ancient Kalendars and Inventories of the Treasury of His Majesty's Exchequer; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 3 Vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42*s.*

Documents and Records illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831—1837. 1 Vol. folio (1837), boards. *Price* 8*s.*

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 Vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with a Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from 7th to 10th century; and Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, 2 Vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, continued in force. With a Translation of the Welsh. Also, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Glossary, &c. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44*s.* Or, 2 Vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36*s.*

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE, 2, 3, 4 HEN. II., 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE, 1 RIC. I., 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records of the Department of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 Vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45*s.* 6*d.*

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 15*s.*

THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. *Price* 42*s.* Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11; *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS (ACTA DOMINORUM AUDITORUM). 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES (ACTA DOMINORUM CONCILII). 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25*s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21*s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price* 12*s.*

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND. Henry VIII. —Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 Vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price* 40*s.*

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 Vols., 4to. (1830—1852), cloth. *Price* 5*l.* 15*s.* 6*d.*; or separately, *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

DOMESDAY BOOK, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086; fac-simile of the Part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., Director. 35 Parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861–1863) boards. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.* to 1*l.* 1*s.* each Part, according to size; or, bound in 2 Vols., 18*l.*

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each accord-" ing to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor; the present possessor; how many hides were in the manor; how many ploughs were in demesne; how many homagers; how many villeins; how many cottars; how many serving men; how many free tenants; how many tenants in soccage; how much wood, meadow, and pasture; the number of mills and fish-ponds; what had been added or taken away from the place; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor; the present value; and how much each free man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward; who then held it; its value in the time of the late king; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be " traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, " it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, " nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk, and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

---

*For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed; Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribble and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 688 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.

FAC-SIMILES of NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS, from WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR to QUEEN ANNE, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey. *Price*, each Part, with translations and notes, double foolscap folio, 16*s*.

Part I. (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.). 1865.
Part II. (Henry VIII. and Edward VI.). 1866.
Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth). 1867.
Part IV. (James I. to Anne). 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part, for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580-3.

Public Record Office,
November 1875.